

Philippe Rigoard
Editor

Atlas of Anatomy of the Peripheral Nerves

The Nerves of the Limbs –
Student Edition

 Springer



ATLAS OF ANATOMY OF THE PERIPHERAL NERVES

ATLAS OF ANATOMY OF THE PERIPHERAL NERVES

THE NERVES OF THE LIMBS

—

STUDENT EDITION

Philippe Rigoard
(MD, PhD)
Professor of Neurosurgery

N3Lab, PRISMATICS: Neuromodulation & neural networks,
Poitiers University Hospital, France

 Springer

Editor
Philippe Rigoard
Spine and Neuromodulation Functional Unit
Department of Neurosurgery
Poitiers University Hospital
Poitiers
France

Translation from the French language edition 'Atlas d'Anatomie Des Membres - Nerfs Peripheriques' by Philippe Rigoard © Elsevier Masson, Issy-les-Moulineaux, 2016; ISBN : 978-2-294-74244-6

ISBN 978-3-319-43088-1 ISBN 978-3-319-43089-8 (eBook)
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-43089-8

Library of Congress Control Number: 2017953122

© Springer International Publishing Switzerland 2017

This work is subject to copyright. All rights are reserved by the Publisher, whether the whole or part of the material is concerned, specifically the rights of translation, reprinting, reuse of illustrations, recitation, broadcasting, reproduction on microfilms or in any other physical way, and transmission or information storage and retrieval, electronic adaptation, computer software, or by similar or dissimilar methodology now known or hereafter developed.

The use of general descriptive names, registered names, trademarks, service marks, etc. in this publication does not imply, even in the absence of a specific statement, that such names are exempt from the relevant protective laws and regulations and therefore free for general use.

The publisher, the authors and the editors are safe to assume that the advice and information in this book are believed to be true and accurate at the date of publication. Neither the publisher nor the authors or the editors give a warranty, express or implied, with respect to the material contained herein or for any errors or omissions that may have been made. The publisher remains neutral with regard to jurisdictional claims in published maps and institutional affiliations.

Printed on acid-free paper

This Springer imprint is published by Springer Nature
The registered company is Springer International Publishing AG
The registered company address is: Gewerbestrasse 11, 6330 Cham, Switzerland

Contributors

Editor, Author

Philippe Rigoard

Professor of Neurosurgery
Spine and Neuromodulation
Functional Unit
Neurosurgery Department
Poitiers University Hospital
Poitiers
France

Project Manager, Co-author

Romain David

Resident, Faculty of Medicine
Limoges University
N3Lab Laboratory
Poitiers University Hospital
Poitiers
France

Graphic Designer

Kévin Nivole

Computer Engineer
N3Lab Laboratory
Poitiers University Hospital
Poitiers
France

Co-authors

Justine Bardin

Resident
Faculty of Medicine
Poitiers University
Poitiers
France

Paul Roblot

Resident
Faculty of Medicine
Bordeaux University
Bordeaux
France

Collaborators: Clinicians

Jean-Philippe Giot

Plastic Surgeon
Hospital Centre
Grenoble
France

Line Jacques

Neurosurgeon
University of California
San Francisco
USA

Tanguy Vendevre

Orthopedical Surgeon
Poitiers University Hospital
Poitiers
France

Bénédicte Bouche

Senior Consultant
Center for Pain Relief
Trélazé
France

Eryk Eisenberg

Senior Consultant
Department of critical care
Clermont-Ferrand University Hospital
Clermont-Ferrand
France

Laurent Soubiron

Senior Consultant
Department of Anesthesiology
Poitiers University Hospital
Poitiers
France

Philippe Denormandie

Orthopedical Surgeon
Raymond Poincaré Hospital
Garches
France

Collaborators, Researchers, Graphic Designers and Technicians

Bertille Lorgeoux

Clinical Research Associate
N3Lab Laboratory
Poitiers University Hospital
Poitiers
France

Olivier Monlezun

Associate Practitioner
N3Lab Laboratory
Poitiers University Hospital
Poitiers
France

Manuel Roulaud

Clinical Study Coordinator
N3Lab Laboratory
Poitiers University Hospital
Poitiers
France

Clarisse Habbouche

Medicine Student
Faculty of Medicine of Poitiers University
Poitiers
France

Redaction Contributors

Nancy Ladmirault

Secretary of N3Lab Laboratory
Poitiers University Hospital
Poitiers
France

Carole Robert

Secretary of Radiology Department
Poitiers University Hospital
Poitiers
France

Translators

Maxime David

M.A. in Languages and Economy Post-graduate
La Rochelle University
La Rochelle
France

Lee Wesley

Pain clinic
St Thomas & Guy's Hospital
London
United Kingdom

Foreword I

There is no argument that one cannot be a surgeon without detailed knowledge of anatomy. And of all human organs and systems, the anatomy of the nervous system is by far the most complex and most fascinating – something even non-neurosurgeons would probably agree. But the fascination frequently, and reasonably so, focuses on the central nervous system; after all, the anatomy of the brain and spinal cord is inseparable from their function, and the brain functioning makes a person alive. But the peripheral nervous system is what connects the brain and spinal cord with the rest of the body, what carries information to and from it, makes us move and feel, in effect allowing us to function.

When I first heard about Dr. Rigoard's project aimed at creation of comprehensive but user-friendly atlas dedicated to the anatomy of the peripheral nervous system, I was very doubtful that he will be able to pull it through – a prominent and busy practicing neurosurgeon, who, on top of his professional life, is deeply dedicated to his family, is not expected to complete such grandiose task while maintaining a full-time clinical practice. But he proved me wrong – this atlas is a reality and its level surpasses all expectations! A combination of high-quality anatomical drawings with amazing computer graphics and deep understanding of functionality of the peripheral nervous system is the basis of this anatomical masterpiece.

When I discussed the contents of this atlas with its creator, Dr. Rigoard reminded me that there is a concept of dividing peripheral nervous system into three main components: the cranial system that contains both somatic sensory motor, special senses and vegetative part, and develops from branchial arches; the axial system that includes prototypic mixed sensory motor nerves, gets derived from metameric spinal branches, and also includes vegetative component; and, finally, the so-called exploratory system that focuses on exploration of the surrounding environment and allows one to move around and gather information from outside world using the “extensions” of the trunk called limbs. This volume of the atlas is dedicated to the latter system and is focused on the innervation of limbs starting with dedicated plexuses and continuing with major peripheral nerves.

Anatomy books are the milestones in development of modern medicine. Just few years ago, we all celebrated 500 year anniversary of the original publication of “The Fabric of the Human Body” by Andreas Vesalius – and that book is alive even now. Reading the Rigoard's atlas of the peripheral nervous system, I could not resist the temptation to compare and contrast these two treatises separated by a half of millennium: the anatomy did not change, and neither did the much needed attention to detail. What changed is our understanding of function, and, most notably, our ability to develop three-dimensional representation of anatomy, and this difference makes this anatomical atlas more practical and more useful.

Merging art and science, Dr. Rigoard and his team succeeded in creating a remarkable teaching tool that will help innumerable medical students and trainees all over the world to better understand peripheral nerves. As a matter of fact, I feel that this atlas will be most beneficial to the practicing neurosurgeons and neurologists who can use it to augment their daily practice through improved familiarity with anatomical nuances that explain a multitude of clinical conditions and guide various diagnostic and therapeutic procedures.



Professor Konstantin V. Slavin, MD, FAANS
Department of Neurosurgery
University of Illinois at Chicago, Chicago, USA
Past President, American Society for Stereotactic and Functional Neurosurgery, www.assfn.org
Director (ex officio), North American Neuromodulation Society, www.neuromodulation.org
Director-at-Large, International Neuromodulation Society, www.neuromodulation.com
Vice-Secretary, World Society for Stereotactic and Functional Neurosurgery, www.wssf.org
kslavin@uic.edu

Foreword II

The *Atlas of Anatomy of the Peripheral Nerves* written by Prof. Philippe Rigoard has an innovative approach ranging from anatomy and neurosurgery to medical imaging.

At first glance, one is immediately struck by the modern, rich iconography of this book dedicated to the nerves of the limbs.

Basing their work on real anatomical facts, the author uses computer technology in order to transfer the knowledge necessary for exploration, diagnosis and medical and surgical care.

The study of each nerve is considered in all its aspects: embryology, morphology, physiology, medicine and surgery. All of this is accompanied by new scientific acquisitions.

This work confers great honour to the author and his international team, whose members are all passionate about anatomy, computer science or innovating surgery.

I am firmly convinced that the students following initial or neurosurgery courses will highly benefit from this wonderful pedagogical book dedicated to peripheral nerves.

Pierre Kamina
Professor Emeritus of Anatomy
Poitiers University
Poitiers, France

Acknowledgements

To Jean-Philippe Giot,

For all the hours spent in front of our computers during the atlas' beginnings, discovering and then trying to familiarise with Blender to infuse my watercolour sketches of classical anatomy with a graphical virtuality and to give them a life in dynamic 3D.

To Monique,

For her exemplary tenacity and generosity she shows day to day for us. For the skill with which she coloured some figures with her left hand and also her kindness for reading the achieved atlas.

To Bénédicte Bouche,

Genuine artist of stimulation. For her unique vision of peripheral nerve stimulation, her genius, her enthusiasm and her sincerity.

To Line Jacques,

For being so generous as to supply us with some pictures of surgical views that correspond to more than 20 years of experience in peripheral nerve regeneration in Canada.

To Maxime,

The ambassador of the international version of this book. His persistence, his devotion and his very linguistic skills have proven to be very useful for making the English version of this atlas come to life. A big thank you.

To Nancy,

For her precious collaboration, her friendship and her taste for adventure.

To Prof. Françoise Lapierre,

Without whom I would never have become a neurosurgeon with a keen interest for anatomy, handicap surgery and peripheral nerves. Her day-to-day accompaniment, trust and kindness have allowed many adjustments and have allowed me to discover myself. She instilled a demanding nature as well as humility in my everyday life. She made me understand that humour could be a resource and a form of wisdom that is worth many other forms of knowledge. She asked me to explore every nook of the unexpected in order to adapt, grow and resist. Finally, more than anyone else, she made me feel the desire to give freely to learning surgeons and anatomists so as to feel accomplished through my students and realise that, ultimately, the goal of teaching is *sharing*.

To Prof. Benoit Bataille,

For the freedom he always bestowed upon me and for his support as a mentor.

To Dr. Bertrand Leriche,

Who uncovered a small part of his talent, taught me and patiently watched me decompress my first carpal tunnels and femoral cutaneous nerves, at the Hospital Centre of Saint Pierre, Island of Reunion, as a father would have. May his benevolence and kindness here be gratified.

To Prof. Konstantin Slavin,

Who welcomed me so warmly in his Department of Neurosurgery in Chicago in summer 2013. Beyond his very impressive surgical skills and worldwide recognized expertise in the neuromodulation field, I discovered a Man guided by selfless principles, inspired by Art and driven by a peculiar positive energy. He is to be remembered by his students and colleagues alike as one of this century's most brilliant pioneers of neuromodulation. I am honored for my path to have crossed his and grateful for the moments we shared exploring Neurosurgery. I will always remember him as an example and try to follow his steps, as a source of inspiration.

To Prof. Kamina,

Who welcomed me with open arms as soon as I arrived in Poitiers in 2000 and who trusted me from the beginning and suggested that I express my interest for anatomy, right since my first semester of internship in surgery, in the frame of the amphitheatres of the Faculty of Medicine of Poitiers, a chalk in the hand.

To Dr. Dominique Bastian,

My first professor of anatomy, in the Faculty of Medicine of Saints-Pères, Paris, a brilliant mind, marginalised by his avant-garde vision of modern anatomy. An exceptional draughtsman. An artist capable of accommodating us for several years, several times a week, in his office above the rooftops of the Quartier Latin to draw so many memories, paintings and charts on the walls. It was with him that the first step of popularisation of the human body allowed me to discover the extent to which humans can be considered so complex and so simple at the same time. It was with him that the vision of a structure prolonged itself in that of an animated body, when he allowed me to walk through the doors of the Gobelins School of Arts or those of the course of morphology in Ecole des Beaux-Arts.

To Prof. Vincent Delmas,

For the trust that he always granted me.

To Prof. Jean-Pierre Richer,

Prof. Jean-Pierre Faure and Dr. Cyril Breque and all the personnel of the anatomy laboratory of the medicine faculty of Poitiers University for their warm welcome. We were able to come and work regardless of the time or circumstances and always be welcome with a smile and great professionalism. Thank you for your sincerity and complicity. Thank you for always being by our side.

To Prof. Remy Guillevin for giving access to his radiology department for my team, as well as all the technicians specialised in medical electroradiology of Poitiers Hospital Centre for their kindness, their availability and their advice.

To the N3Lab:

Bertille, for her meticulous assembly work; this atlas was a revelation. She has truly bewildered us.

Manuel, for his faultless availability and his samurai spirit.

Olivier, for his management skill and day-to-day cheerfulness.

For all the students learning neurosurgery or anatomy and those pertaining to the spine department of Poitiers Hospital Centre who worked for the project of this atlas:

Guillaume

Sophie

Eleonore

Enel

Clarisse

Aziz

Paul

And particularly to two young and bright learning anatomists,
Justine Bardin and Romain David,
who managed to find the strength and courage to dive, like two conquerors, in this anatomical atlas, whilst still studying medicine, and to sublimate their watercoloured works to the highest degree to make this book unique and contemporary. May their passion of “beautiful and well-done work” be rewarded with a career as bright as they deserve.
Romain, this adventure has brought you to a revelation and has progressively propelled you from “second in command” to “navy captain”. I hope that this paternal inspiration will help you navigate across the most beautiful seas of the human anatomy, quench your thirst of discovery and go on a quest, in your turn, to find “‘seconds’ in command” that will deserve the way you share your passion and inspiration. You will then be rewarded for all the sacrifices that made you a wonderful project manager and a fellow traveller without equal.
May you hereby be gratified.

To Kevin Nivole,
For his exceptional investment in the graphical and computing conception of the atlas. We made a great anatomist of you!
This atlas owes you a lot.

To Nathalie L’Horset-Poulain and the publishing house Springer, for the trust they granted us and the allure of this relationship. May this book be the first of a long and beautiful collaboration.

To my family, my parents and my brother.

To Nathy and Manoé,
The two sunshines of my life, who brighten my vision on so many things.
I dedicate this atlas to you, as the result of intense labour and many compromises, so that it seals a chapter, a time of our lives, at the end of which so many expectations and dreams, far from work and books, must now be satisfied. Thank you for respecting my passion for all these years and, above anything else, believing with such intensity in our love.



The hanging garden

Philippe Rigoard,
New Caledonia, December 2015

Painting inspired from the tropical plants and flowers of Monique and Jean-Pierre Le Leizour's garden
Acrylic paint, oil, cardboard, personal photographs, watercolour, charcoals and felts

Preamble

PHILOSOPHICAL APPROACH OF AN ANATOMICAL GARDEN

*Is there anything more beautiful than a garden adorned with fruit trees and odoriferous plants,
at the base of which flows a crystal clear water?
The Silence Relay (Le Relais du Silence), Saintes,*

Poitou-Charentes, 2014

This enchanting garden will exhilarate our senses, offering us its multicoloured palette, and it will distil its spices reminding us that it is nature itself, as opposed to the artificial elaboration of the mind, and that it is the opposite order to the well-reasoned, the unconscious against the constructed.

Trying to decompose the morphology of a garden without altering it completely, in order to measure its beauty and savour its meanders a little more, corresponds to the challenge of producing an anatomy atlas that is intended as innovative.

The quest of this garden is the anatomical journey that is given to you in this book. It is a journey along collateral arteries and muscle frameworks, a journey at the core of the human body.

Anatomy is a science applied to medicine; it's a living discipline, a day-to-day reality. In the way that anatomy is currently taught to students, the proliferation of teaching materials and platforms is too often privileged as well as the literary and theoretical character, even though this teaching should primarily be visual and tactile. Where the main subjects are curvatures and reverse curvatures, it should be possible to learn how to draw them and how to feel them.

What is the use of anatomy?

Anatomy, from its morphological approach, starts straight at the physiological, radiological and even semiological knowledge. It is anatomy that allows a young student in medicine to learn the distinction between "normal" and "pathological". From its surgical approach, anatomy will then guide the novice as the confirmed surgeon to highlight one structure or another to realise an approach they are not used to. The anatomical basics should seal the medical skill and help the (future) doctor to build up his knowledge of mankind.

The teaching of anatomy must remain simple and in the end rather popular. The human body is a living painting.

It should focus on the progressive development of a figurative GPS* in the head of an individual and, this way, use the technological tools at our disposal nowadays, converting surface into volume, a paper sheet into layers and textures. This has led us to offer an atlas defined in three dimensions.

This atlas has been conceived in an atypical and unique way to correspond, in a manner of speaking, to an illustrated log-book, just like what a young companion may gather along his medical formation.

*GPS: global positioning system

«The hanging gardens,
They are the ideal perpetually sought and fleeting of an artist,
They are the inaccessible and inviolable refuge.... »

Jehan Alain, poet, organist and composer (1911–1940)



About This Book

It was in 2007 that the idea of an atlas of anatomy of peripheral nerves had germinated in the mind of Prof. Philippe Riguard, an aficionado of drawing and anatomy since his beginnings.

Initially constituted of a collection of sketches, then watercolours, the computer technology has then made it richer thanks to Dr. Jean-Philippe Giot, his accomplice in medicine studies, and also thanks to an original approach using the 3D computer graphics software “Blender”.

The use of this 3D tool has brought a whole new dimension to these sketches. The chroma keying of the nerve and vascular paths in overprint of the watercolours has first and foremost highlighted the important structures on the original anatomical sketches. Furthermore, the use of alpha and texture blending has exacerbated the notions of “superficial” and “deep” amongst tissues. The aim was therefore to provide a new perspective on classic and surgical anatomy views.

This “companion guide for apprentice surgeon” used to be meant for a young audience. It was in the continuation of this line of thought that the first watercolours, revisited with chroma keying, were published in 2009 in the *Neurochirurgie* medical journal in order to illustrate the most common surgical approaches of peripheral nerves.

Since 2010, fresh, strong energies have converged towards this project, and the new hired collaborators have not only enhanced it but also revisited and completely transformed it, giving it its current shape. This has been possible especially thanks to the implication of Mr. Kevin Nivole, a competent, freshly graduated computer engineer, to whom we owe the partnership with the Japanese team of Dr. Kousaku Okubo whom we would like to show our appreciation to. This collaboration has enabled us to access a morphological database (BodyParts3D, concept label for FMA*) and to use it in order to conceive the raw material for a genuine 3D anatomy atlas over a few years: a patiently worked-on prototype, structure after structure, texture after texture and curve after curve.

In the end, since the beginning of 2013, this atlas features perfectly keyed, realistic and original structures of bones, muscles and viscera. After two more years of hard work, Kevin Nivole’s undeterred passion led to de novo development of vascular and nerve elements in human limbs, as well as an ultimate level of refinement of the textures of every featured structure: bone, tendon, muscle, etc. At this point, the team discussed about reflections, roughness, clarity, gloss, elasticity and even gleaming effects. Team interactions bloom, language evolves, and the renders prove to be more and more surprising each time.

This is how the transition to 3D graphics became possible and led to the production of authentic 3D views.

Following the development of this tool, the team discerned an incredible range of possibilities, as the 3D environment enabled the capacity of trying out an infinite number of anatomical views as well as many angles of attack for its pictures. It progressively showed us the human body’s nerves in a unique way and imprinted indelibly their intimate relations with all the other structures in our memories to the smallest detail. It is this enthusiasm that we wished to share with the reader and that made us give a central place to illustrations in this atlas, majorly supporting the descriptions through its sheer visual impact. Each illustrated chart is therefore composed of several figures and created whilst keeping in mind the possibility for it to be read independently, nearly without need to read through the text. As a second step, we elected to produce it under a written form but using a fully corresponding double-page disposition in order to be as comprehensive as possible and to be able to give satisfaction to the seasoned reader. In most cases, the anatomical structure presentation will be under the shape of a “plane per plane” dissection. However, the use of alpha blending has favoured their revealing in layers called “muscle layers” or “neurovascular layers”.

The leading concept was to apprehend space differently.

Students, as staunch supporters of learning by heart, sometimes victims of an ill-adapted “over-education”, will therefore be able to build their own vision of space: a keystone of anatomical comprehension. Passionate and competent anatomists will enjoy strolling through this atlas, sharpening their knowledge or learning information again. There lies the reason why we mentioned the idea of a GPS in the philosophical preamble of this book.

To conclude this brief glimpse, this anatomy tool is a product of time, constantly evolving. Therefore, the reader will not be surprised by the diversity, the succession and the combination of teaching materials. We wish for this atlas to become a suitable complement for student and professional individuals who would enjoy to immerse themselves in the scenery of peripheral nerves as though to abandon themselves in it or better yet as though to find themselves.

We wish you a pleasant anatomical journey!

Romain David
Project Manager and Co-author

*License Bodyparts3D
BodyParts3D website

<https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.1/jp/>
<http://lifesciencedb.jp/bp3d>

Abbreviations and Nerve Color Code

Nerves of the Upper Limb

The Axillary Nerve	Ax
The Musculocutaneous Nerve	MC
The Radial Nerve	R
The Median Nerve	M
The Ulnar Nerve	U
The Suprascapular Nerve	SSc
The Long Thoracic Nerve	LT

Nerves of the Lower Limb

The Obturator Nerve	O
The Femoral Nerve	F
The Sciatic Nerve	Sc
The Tibial Nerve	T
The Common Fibular Nerve	Fi
The Lateral Femoral Cutaneous Nerve	LFc
Other Nerves	IH & II

Table of Contents

Contributors	V
Foreword I	VII
Foreword II	IX
Acknowledgements	XI
Preamble	XV
About this Book	XVII
Abbreviations and Nerve Color Code	XIX

I MORPHOLOGICAL AND FUNCTIONAL ANATOMY OF THE PERIPHERAL NERVE

The Normal Nerve	2
Morpho-Functional Anatomy	2
General Organisation of the Peripheral Nerve	2
The Nerve's Structure and Physiology	4
Schwann Cell and Myelination	6
Mechanical Properties of the Nerves	7
Vascularisation of the Peripheral Nerves	8
Neuromuscular Junction and Transmission	10
Main Mechanisms of Synaptic Formation.....	12
The Injured Nerve	14
Physiology of the Damaged Nerve	14
Pathophysiological Mechanisms.....	14
Nerve Degeneration	16
Mechanisms of Neural Repair	18
Axonal Sprouting.....	18
Neurotrophic Factors	20
Potential Functional Consequences	20
Functional Regeneration	20
Neuroplasticity	20
Conclusion	21
▶ Bibliography.....	22
▶ References	23

The Plexus	24
Data Learned from Embryology	24
Embryological Development of the Peripheral Nerves	24
Growth of Precursor Cells.....	24
Development of Segmental Spinal Nerves	24
Development of the Innervation of Limbs	26
Introduction.....	26
Innervation of the Limbs in Adults	28
Origin and Constitution of the Limbs' Nerves	28
The Notion of Plexus	32
▶ Bibliography.....	34
▶ References	35

II NERVES OF THE UPPER LIMB

The Brachial Plexus	38
The Brachial Plexus	40
Morphological Data	40
The Brachial Plexus' Relations.....	42
At the Supraclavicular Level.....	42
At the Infraclavicular Level	44
▶ References	48
Peripheral Branches	50
The Axillary Nerve	54
Morphological Data	54
Origin	54
Path	54
Neurovascular Relations	54
Collateral Branches.....	54
Terminal Branches	54
Motor Function	62
Sensitive Function.....	62
Anastomoses	62
Pathology	64
Aetiology.....	64
Clinical Significance	64
Clinical Forms.....	64
Complementary Examinations.....	64
Treatment	64
The Musculocutaneous Nerve	68
Morphological Data	68
Origin	68
Path	68
Neurovascular Relations	68

Collateral Branches	74
Terminal Branches	74
Motor Function	74
Sensitive Function	74
Anastomoses	74
Pathology	83
Aetiology.....	83
Clinical Signs.....	83
Complementary Examinations.....	83
Treatment	83
The Radial Nerve	88
Morphological Data	88
Origin	88
Path	88
Neurovascular Relations	88
Collateral Branches.....	94
Terminal Branches	94
Motor Function	94
Sensitive Function.....	98
Anastomoses	98
Pathology	104
Posterior Interosseous Nerve Syndrome.....	104
Aetiology.....	104
Clinical Signs.....	104
Clinical Forms.....	104
Complementary Examinations.....	104
Treatment	104
The Median Nerve	108
Morphological Data	108
Origin	108
Path	108
Neurovascular Relations	108
Collateral Branches.....	118
Terminal Branches	118
Motor Function	118
Sensitive Function.....	118
Anastomoses	118
Pathology	128
Anterior Interosseous Nerve Syndrome.....	128
Aetiology.....	128
Clinical Significance	128
Complementary Examinations.....	128

Treatment	128
Carpal Tunnel Syndrome	128
Clinical Signs	130
Anatomical Atypias	130
Clinical Atypias	130
Differential Diagnosis	130
Treatment	130
The Ulnar Nerve	134
Morphological Data	134
Origin	134
Path	134
Neurovascular Relations	144
Collateral Branches	144
Terminal Branches	144
Motor Function	144
Sensitive Function.....	144
Anastomoses	144
Pathology	154
Cubital Tunnel Syndrome	154
Aetiology.....	154
Clinical Significance	154
Clinical Forms.....	154
Complementary Examinations.....	154
Treatment	156
Ulnar Tunnel Syndrome (Guyon's Canal)	156
Aetiology.....	156
Clinical Signs	156
Clinical Forms.....	156
Complementary Examinations.....	156
Treatment	156
The Suprascapular Nerve	160
Morphological Data	160
Origin	160
Path	160
Neurovascular Relations	160
Collateral Branches	160
Terminal Branches	160
Motor Function	160
Pathologies	163
Aetiology.....	163
Clinical Significance	163

Complementary Examinations.....	163
Treatment	163
The Long Thoracic Nerve	166
Morphological Data	166
Origin	166
Path	166
Neurovascular Relations	166
Terminal Branches	166
Motor Function	166
Pathologies.....	169
Aetiology.....	169
Clinical Significance	169
Treatment	169
► Bibliography.....	171
III NERVES OF THE LOWER LIMB	
The Lumbosacral Plexus	176
The Lumbosacral Plexus	178
Morphological Data	178
The Lumbar Plexus	178
Morphological Data	180
The Sacral Plexus.....	180
Relationships Between the Lumbar and Sacral Plexuses.....	182
Peripheral Branches	188
The Obturator Nerve	192
Morphological Data	192
Origin	192
Path	192
Neurovascular Relations	192
Collateral Branches.....	200
Terminal Branches	200
Motor Function	200
Sensitive Function.....	200
Anastomoses	200
Pathology	206
Obturator Neuralgia	206
Aetiology.....	206
Clinical Significance	206
Complementary Examinations.....	206
Treatment	206
The Femoral Nerve	210
Morphological Data	210

Origin	210
Path	210
Neurovascular Relations	210
Collateral Branches	210
Terminal Branches	216
Motor Function	216
Sensitive Function.....	216
Anastomoses	216
Pathology	222
Femoral Nerve Syndrome or Femoral Neuralgia.....	222
Aetiology.....	222
Clinical Significance	222
Complementary Examinations.....	222
Treatment	222
The Sciatic Nerve	226
Morphological Data	226
Origin	226
Path	226
Neurovascular Relations	232
Collateral Branches.....	232
Terminal Branches	232
Motor Function	232
Sensitive Function.....	232
Anastomoses	232
Pathology	242
Aetiology.....	242
Clinical Significance	242
Clinical Forms.....	242
Complementary Examinations.....	242
Treatment	242
The Tibial Nerve	246
Morphological Data	246
Origin	246
Path	246
Neurovascular Relations	246
Collateral Branches.....	254
Terminal Branches	254
Motor Function	254
Sensitive Function.....	254
Anastomoses	254

Pathology	260
Soleus Syndrome	260
Aetiology.....	260
Clinical Significance	260
Complementary Examinations.....	260
Treatment	260
Tarsal Tunnel Syndrome	262
Aetiology.....	262
Clinical Significance	262
Clinical Forms.....	262
Complementary Examinations.....	262
Treatment	262
The Common Fibular Nerve	266
Morphological Data	266
Origin	266
Path	266
Neurovascular Relations	266
Collateral Branches.....	266
Terminal Branches	272
Motor Function	272
Sensitive Function.....	272
Anastomoses	272
Pathology	278
Fibular Nerve Injury.....	278
Aetiology.....	278
Clinical Significance	278
Clinical Forms.....	278
Complementary Examinations.....	278
Treatment	278
The Lateral Femoral Cutaneous Nerve.....	282
Morphological Data	282
Origin	282
Path	282
Neurovascular Relations	282
Terminal Branches	282
Sensitive Function.....	286
Pathology	288
Meralgia Paraesthetica	288
Aetiology.....	288
Clinical Significance	288

Other Nerves	292
The Iliohypogastric Nerve	292
Morphological Data	292
The Ilioinguinal Nerve.....	294
Morphological Data	294
Pathology	296
▶ Bibliography.....	298
▶ General Views	300
Index	304

Part I
MORPHOLOGICAL
AND FUNCTIONAL
ANATOMY OF THE
PERIPHERAL
NERVE

Morpho-Functional Anatomy

General Organisation of the Peripheral Nerve

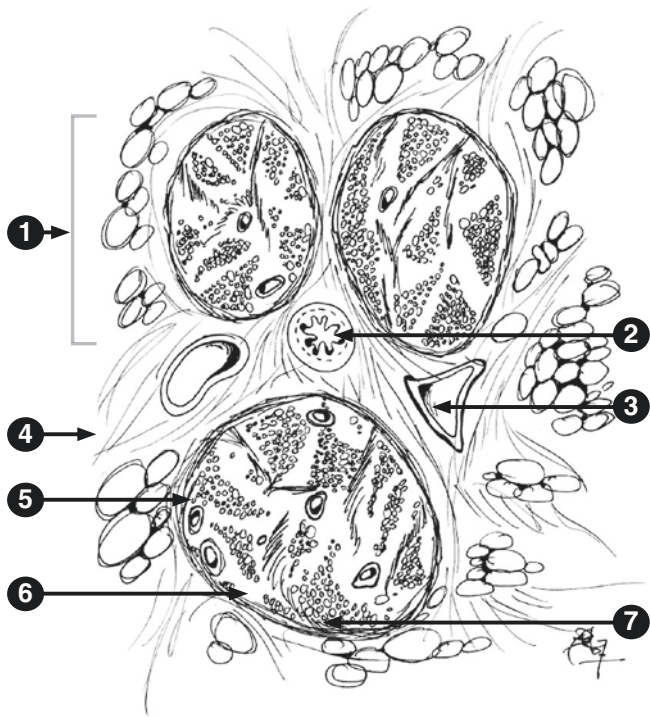
The peripheral nerve is the “cable” used by the motor, sensory and vegetative neurons’ axons to circulate in the peripheral nervous system. It conveys information between these neurons and their effectors in both directions (sensitive receptors, skeletal muscles and viscera). The afferents towards the periphery correspond to the motor and autonomous functions of the nerve, whilst the efferents, originating from the periphery and in charge of carrying information towards the central nervous system, correspond to the sensory nucleus of the nerve. The information is transmitted as nerve impulses, the properties of which depend on, amongst other things, the intrinsic characteristics of the nerve itself.

In adult state, the nerve fibres, constituted of axons and Schwann cells that are associated to them, are grouped in fascicles, wrapped in the perineurium. The perineurium is constituted of layers of perineurial cells of fibroblastic origin, separated by bundles of collagen and linked together by tight junctions. The nerve fibres are associated to Schwann cells which are the only glial cells of the peripheral nervous system. These have an essential role in axon maintenance, myelination and regeneration processes. The nerve fascicles are contained in an areolar connective tissue known as epineurium which contains fibroblasts, collagen and fat in variable proportions. This sheath participates in the fixation of the nerve inside the surrounding structures. It contains the lymphatic and vascular network (vasa nervorum) which crosses the perineurium to communicate with the network of arterioles and venules in the endoneurium. The epineurium constitutes between 30 and 70% of the total surface of the section of a nerve trunk (Figure 1).

A nerve can be constituted of between one and a hundred or so fascicles, their number and distribution being constantly variable thanks to a great number of exchanges of anastomoses. In addition, to a macroscopic level, anastomoses between different nerves are frequent, for instance, the Martin-Gruber anastomosis between the ulnar and median nerve (Figure 2).

It possesses a resistance to stretching thanks to the double action of the “undulating” architecture of the fascicles and the nerve fibres that it contains (Figure 3), but also thanks to the elasticity of the perineurium. The homeostasis of this micro-environment is obtained and maintained by a complex vascular system and by the active barrier constituted by the perineurium. Like the central nervous system, a real blood-nerve barrier is found, its tightness being linked to the properties of the perineurium and to the presence of tight junctions (zonula occludens) between the capillary endothelial cells that penetrate into the endoneurium and the perineurium cells.

- 1 Nerve fascicle
- 2 Vasa nervorum : arteriole
- 3 Vasa nervorum : venule
- 4 Epineurium
- 5 Perineurium
- 6 Nerve fibre
- 7 Capillary



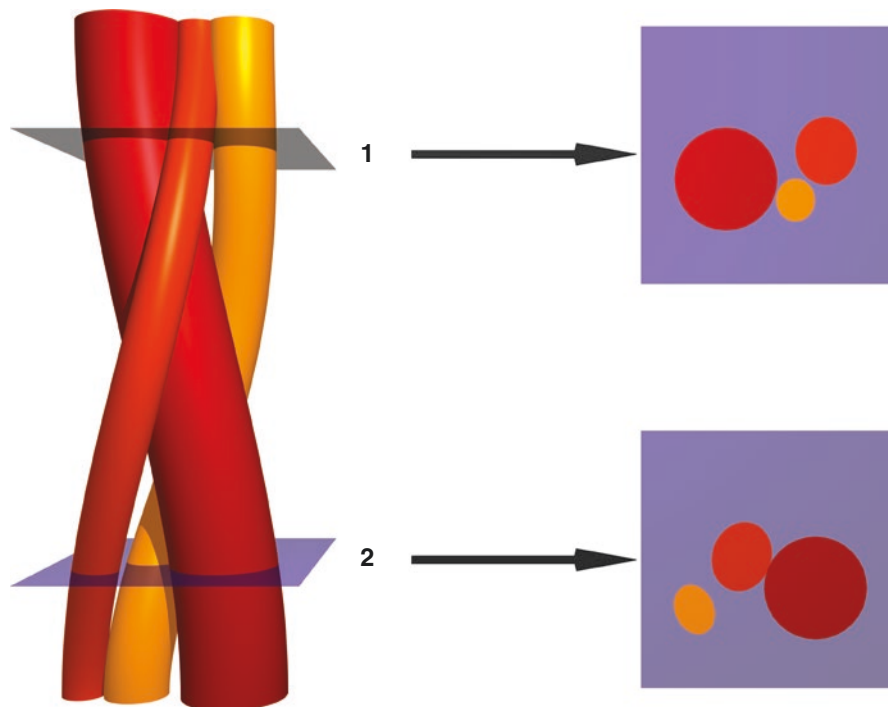
© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure 1. Axial section of a peripheral nerve



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure 2. Anastomoses of various nerves



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure 3. Architecture of fascicles and nerve fibres

The Normal Nerve

The Nerve's Structure and Physiology

Axon

The axon is the cylindrical prolongation of the cytoplasm of the neuron. Its main role is the transmission of nerve impulses. It can only be conceived in the context of a functional unity between the neuron and its target. Its survival is linked to that of the neurons and its targets. Since it does not possess its own capacity of protein biosynthesis, its contents are carried from the core to the periphery by the axonal flow.

Cytoskeleton

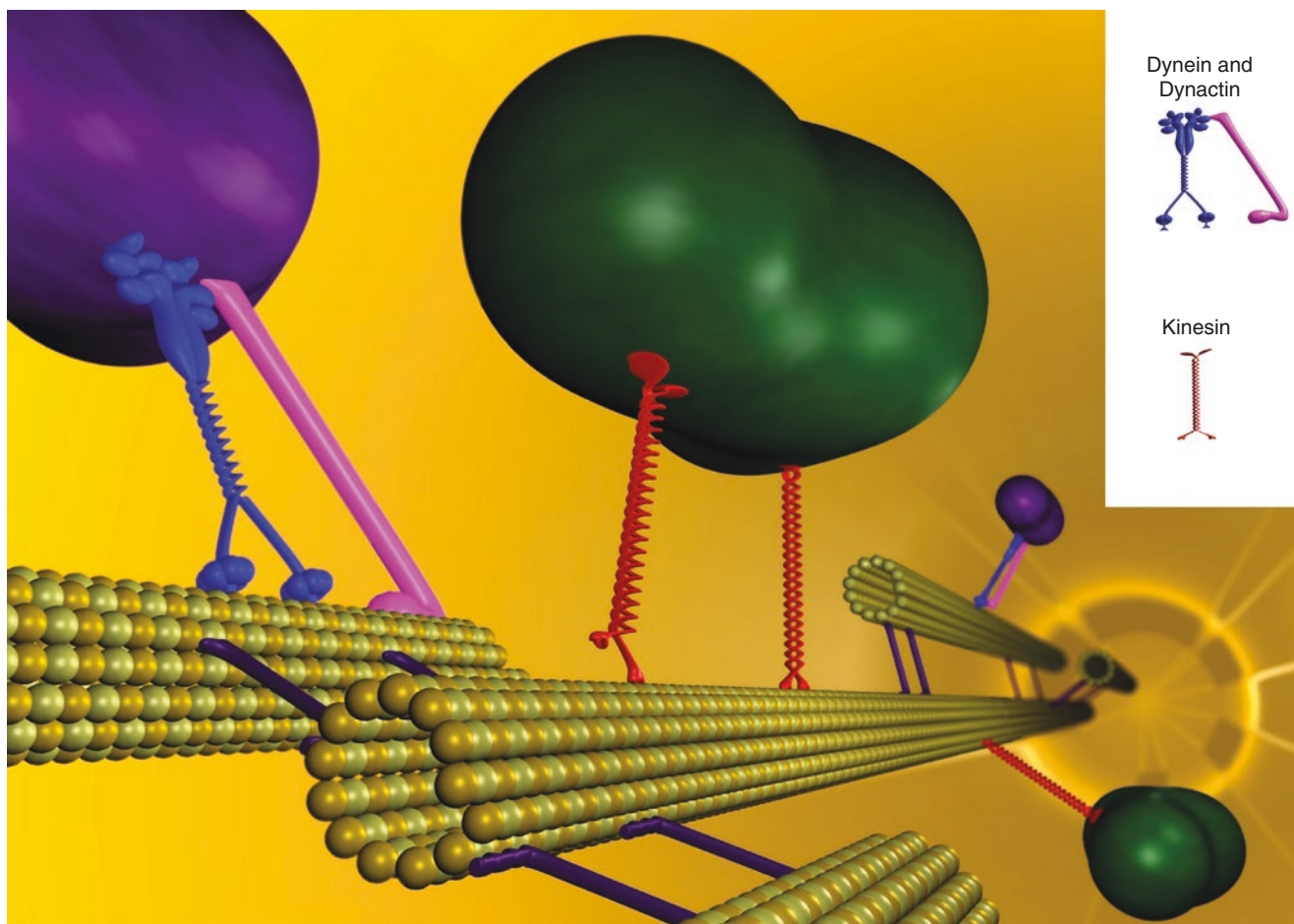
The axonal cytoskeleton has a microfibrillar structure composed of three main groups of proteins: the microfilaments, the microtubules and the intermediate filaments including the neurofilaments. These contribute to the maintaining of the shape and growth of the axon. The neurofilaments are constituted of an assembly of three proteins which spread apart during the process of phosphorylation, giving them a fundamental role in the determination of the axonal diameter. This diameter is correlated to myelination, and it is therefore an essential structural parameter. The microfilaments, constituted of an assembly of polymers of globular actin (G-actin), are generally located in areas in motion and at the level of the membrane anchorages which have a significant role in the mobility of the axonal growth cone and in the synaptogenesis. The microtubules, which are heterodimers of alpha and beta tubulin, form hollow tubules on which many other proteins implicated in the processes of assembly and stabilisation as well as the interactions with the rest of

the cytoskeleton get fixed on. These microtubules participate to the growth and to the axonal flow.

Axonal Flow

The axonal flow constantly circulates in both anterograde and retrograde directions at variable speeds according to the elements transported and the type of fibres (Table 1). It guarantees a permanent communication between neurons, axon terminations and target cells. It is divided into two fast anterograde and retrograde transports, one slow anterograde transport and one path reserved for mitochondria. On the one hand, the fast anterograde flow transports the vesicular and tubular structures containing the precursors of the neurotransmitters and the membrane proteins, and on the other hand, it transports the mitochondria and membrane lipids. The slow anterograde flow carries the structural proteins of the cytoskeleton and polyproteins. The fast retrograde flow takes back the cellular waste, transports enzymes, growth factors and lysosomal vesicles, and participates in the retro-control of the activity of the soma by the target. This transport is allowed by microtubules thanks to motor proteins (Figure 4): principally kinesin (for the anterograde flow) and dynein (for the retrograde flow).

For the peripheral motor neurons, it is the neuromuscular synapse that corresponds to the extremity of the axon termination relating to its target. At this level, the electric signal is transformed in a chemical signal by mechanisms described hereafter. The arrival of the impulse causes the entrance of calcium by the opening of the voltage-dependent calcium channels, thus triggering a spate of intracellular activation ending with the fusion of the membrane and the synaptic vesicles containing the neurotransmitters, liberated in the synaptic cleft by exocytosis.



Dynein and Dynactin



Kinesin



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure 4. Axonal cytoskeleton

Fibre type		Role	Myelination	Diameter (μm)	Conduction speed (m/s)
Sensory					
A $\alpha\beta$	Ia	Proprioception: muscle spindles	+	12–20	70–120
	Ib	Golgi tendon organ	+		
	II	Cutaneous sensitivity: touch	+	5–12	30–70
A δ	III	Cutaneous pressure: temperature	+	2–5	12–30
C	IV	Cutaneous pain: pain	–	0.4–1.2	0.5–2

Table 1. Classification of nerve fibres

The Normal Nerve

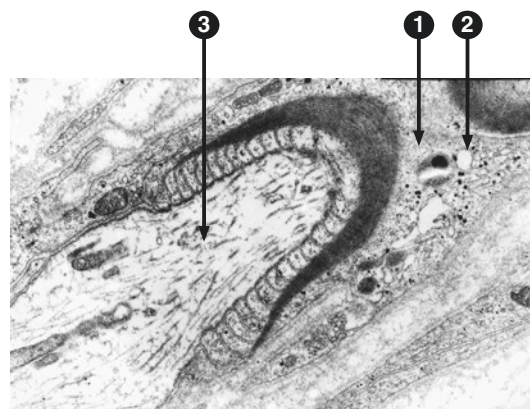
Schwann Cell and Myelination

The Schwann cells are the only glial cells represented in the peripheral nervous system (Figure 5). In the mature peripheral nerve, Schwann cells are distributed as longitudinal chains running along the axons. There is a direct relation between the thickness of the myelin sheath and the diameter of the axon and between the diameter of the axon and the internodal distance. The increase of the myelin sheath's thickness and the internodal distance are correlated to that of the diameter of the axon (Figure 6).

Myelination (Figure 7) is observed in the peripheral nervous system (PNS) for axons with a diameter above 1–1.5 μm . The axon's diameter is not the only determining factor of myelination. It follows the histogenesis and happens later, after about 4 months of foetal life. The Schwann cell begins its myelination on a definite segment of the axon. The transitional area separating two myelinated segments is called node of Ranvier. The space separating two nodes of Ranvier is called the internodal space. The myelin sheath ends on each side of a node with a paranodal region.

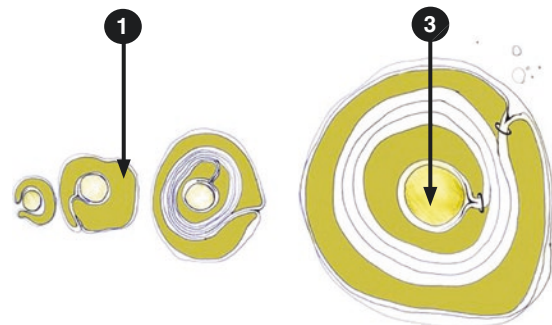
Myelination speeds up nerve conduction. The conduction of the impulse is continuous (uninterrupted) in the unmyelinated fibres; the maximum obtained speed is limited to 15 m/s. In the myelinated fibres, the excitable membrane is confined to the nodes of Ranvier because the myelin possesses isolating properties. This conduction thus becomes saltatory, from node to node, and can attain speeds up to ten times its original (120 m/s). The number of impulses that can be carried by these fibres is also much greater. Myelination optimises the energetic output of the fibre.

The basal membrane of the Schwann cell directs the axon's growth.



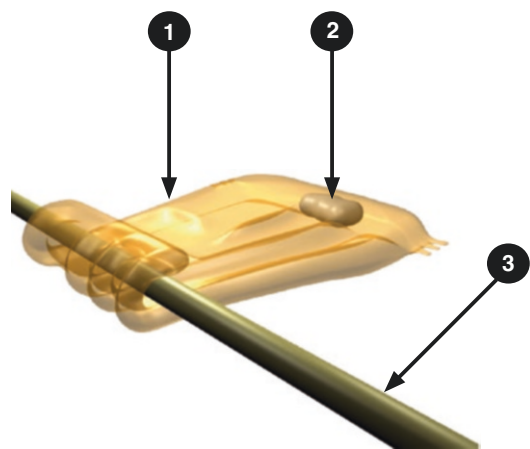
© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure 5. Schwann cell (electron microscopy)



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure 6. Myelination process (axial section)



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

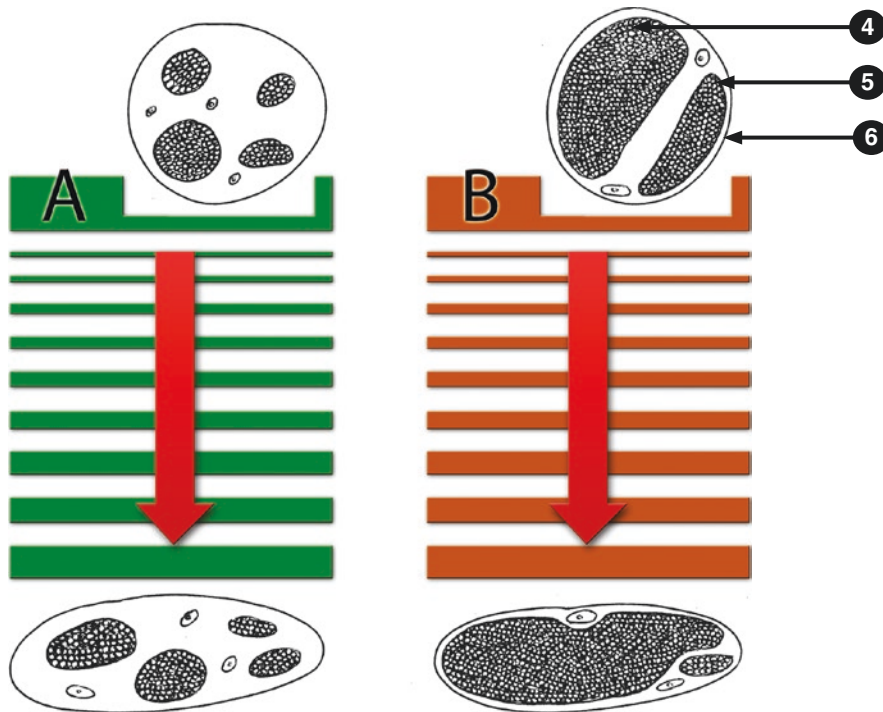
Figure 7. Myelination process

- 1 Schwann cell
- 2 Schwann cell nucleus
- 3 Axon

Mechanical Properties of the Nerves

A peripheral nerve possesses a certain resistance to stretching, thanks to not only the double action of the “undulating” architecture of the fascicles (Figure 3) and the nerve fibres that it contains but also to the elasticity of the perineurium. The tension forces first apply on the fascicle and then on the fibres which, due to this elasticity, keep their normal form for a long time. These forces provoke a shrinking of the fascicle’s diameter and an increase of the pressure inside the fascicle that ends up compromising the vascularisation of the nerve if they are applied for too long. A number of factors including the intensity, speed and duration of application of these constraints condition the resistance to stretching. The resistance to these compressing forces varies with the number of fascicles and the girth of the epineurium. The nerves which contain a great number of fascicles and a thin epineurium are weaker against compressing forces (type B fibres compared to type A, in Figure 8), as well as the roots that do not possess a structure corresponding to an epineurium and which have a thinner perineurium.

- 4 Nerve fascicle
- 5 Epineurium
- 6 Perineurium



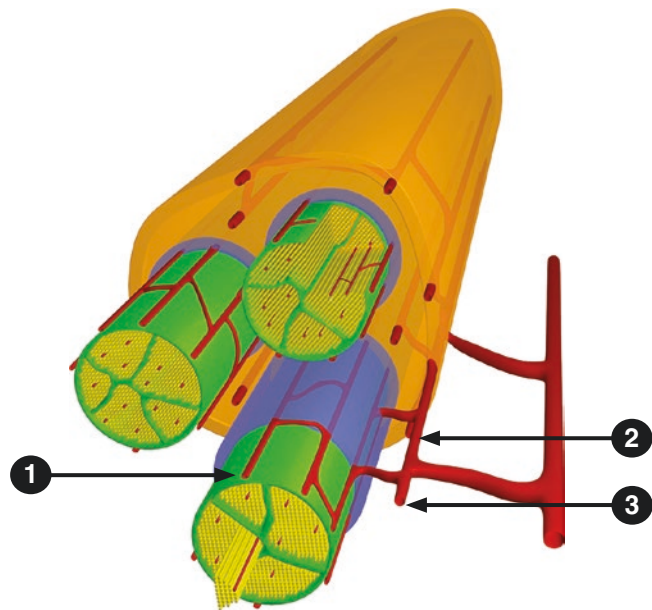
© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure 8. Strength model of a nerve against compression

The Normal Nerve

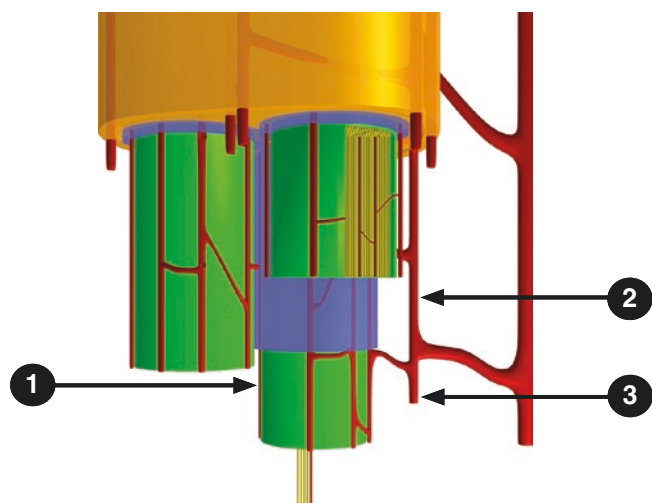
Vascularisation of the Peripheral Nerves

This vascularisation is special on many fronts. The axon's trophicity is particularly dependent of the endoneurial micro-environment because of the soma's remoteness. The homeostasis of this micro-environment is obtained and maintained by a complex vascular system and by the active barrier constituted by the perineurium. The arterial supply comes from the trunci which are closest to the nerve. Each artery is divided into a descending branch and an ascending branch before splitting into several epineurial branches. There are two distinct systems which are functionally independent but contain a great number of anastomoses: one is extrinsic and constituted of regional feeder vessels and arterio-capillary vessels of the epineurium, and the other is intrinsic and constituted of endoneurial capillaries in a longitudinal distribution (Figure 9). As a result, there is a considerable overlapping between the vascularised areas by the segmental arteries which cross them. The relatively low metabolic needs of the nerve compared to the high basal blood flow and the possibility to function in a situation of anaerobiosis grant the nerve a special resistance to ischemia. However, the central fascicular area remains weaker than the subperineurial area, probably because of a higher density of capillaries and a better penetration of the nutritive substances through the perineurium. There also seems to be a border zone of susceptibility to ischemia between two longitudinal territories. As in the central nervous system, there is a real blood-nerve barrier, its tightness being linked to the properties of the perineurium and to the presence of tight junctions between the endothelial cells of the capillaries penetrating into the endoneurium and the perineurium cells. The epineurial and transepineurial vasa nervorum are innervated by thin plexuses made of amyelinic vegetative nerve fibres, some being sympathetic (vasoconstricting) and others being parasympathetic (vasodilating). The endoneurial capillaries have a smooth, underdeveloped muscular system that suggests a weak autoregulation.



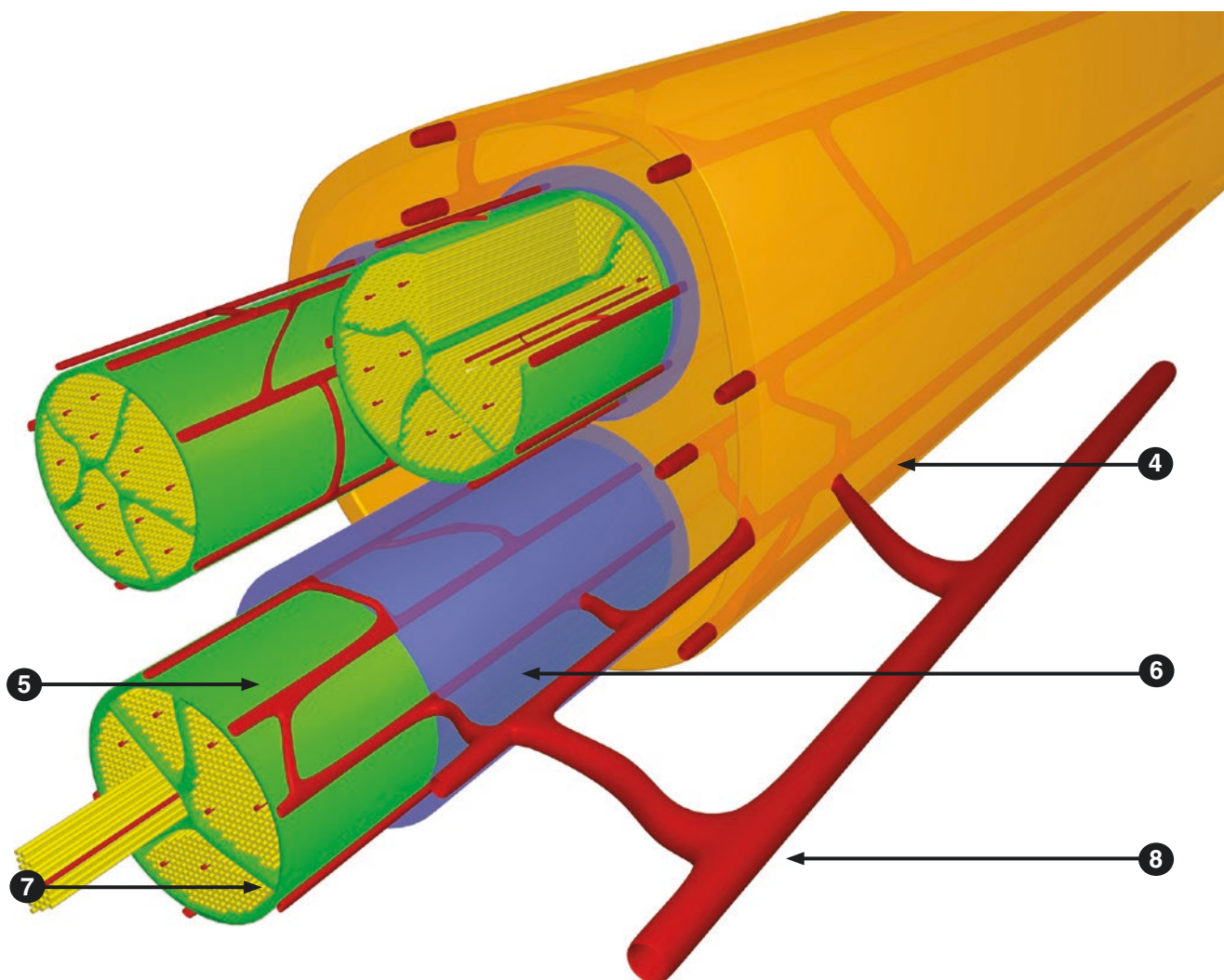
© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure 9a. Longitudinal view of vascularisation



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure 9b. Side view of vascularisation



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure 9c. Microstructure of a peripheral nerve

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 Epineural arterial branch | 5 Endoneurium |
| 2 Ascending arterial branch | 6 Perineurium |
| 3 Descending arterial branch | 7 Axon |
| 4 Epineurium and connective tissue | 8 Vasa nervorum |

The Normal Nerve

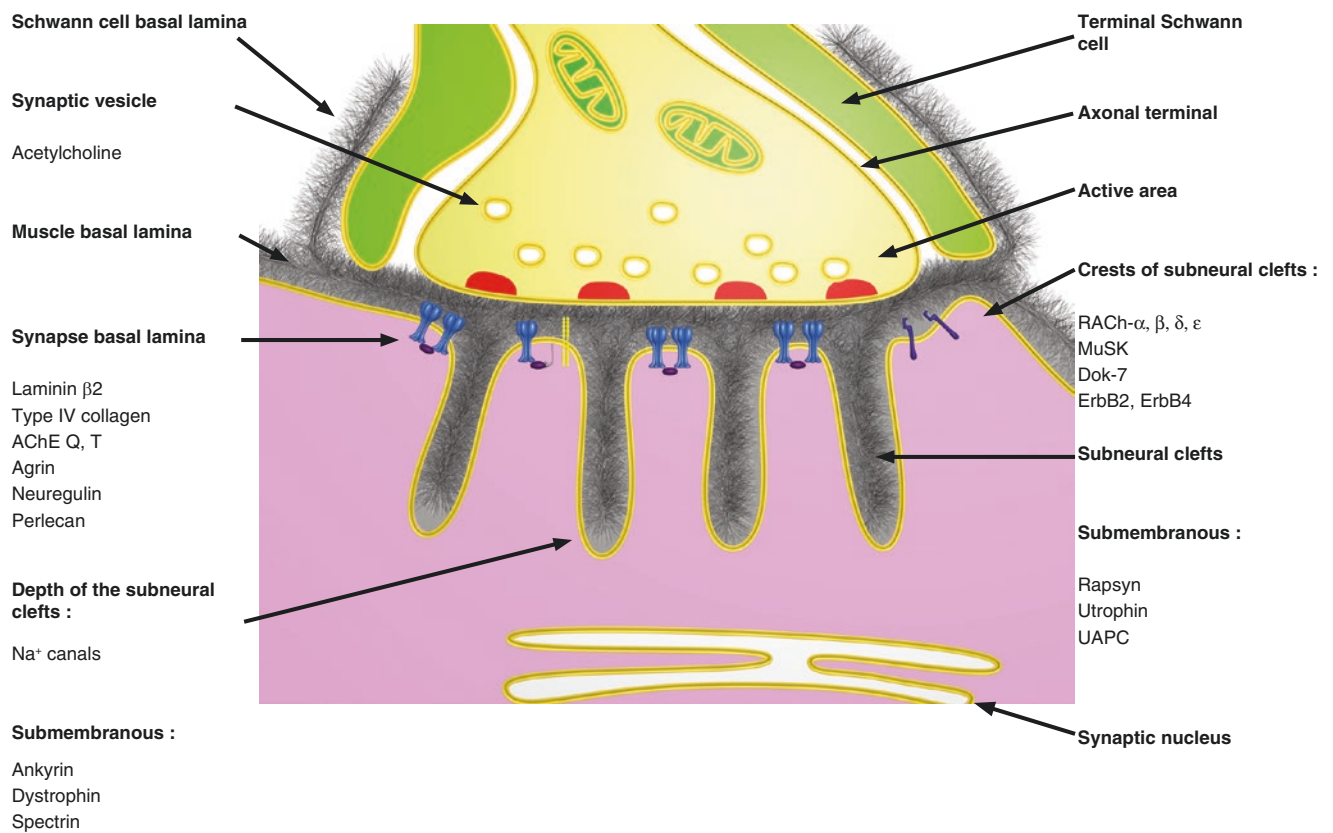
Neuromuscular Junction and Transmission

The musculoskeletal system is the mechanical interface between our nervous system and the external world. The mechanical properties of muscles have been very largely preserved during the phylogenesis of the vertebrates. These have been crucial in the adaptation of the neuronal mechanisms for movement.

A single motor neuron is bombarded by synaptic stimuli, which will result in determining the manner of and intensity at which the target muscle fibre will participate to the realisation of a motor programme. This response of the nerve cell to a stimulus is allowed by a modification of its membrane properties. The neuromuscular synapse is the junction area between the axon of a motor neuron and a muscular cell. In mammals (with a few exceptions), there is no real contact at the synaptic level. The synaptic gap (between 10 and 40 nm) separating these cells acts as an isolating structure. This neuromuscular junction (NMJ) (Figure 10) is made up of the apposition of highly differentiated domains of three kinds of cells: the nerve termination of the motor neuron, the Schwann cell called “terminal” and the postsynaptic membrane of the muscle fibre. These three elements are surrounded or linked together by a basal lamina, which is a favourable micro-environment for the exchange of molecular signals that control the formation, maturation and sustenance of the NMJ. The NMJ forms a functionally and structurally differentiated complex, the goal of which is to guarantee the

synaptic transmission within the neuromuscular apparatus by managing the propagation of the motor neuron’s impulse towards the skeletal muscle fibre.

The nerve termination releases a neurotransmitter in the synaptic gap, the acetylcholine (ACh), which connects on specific nicotinic receptors (the receptors of the acetylcholine or AChR), located under the invaginations’ cristae or subneural folds of the postsynaptic membrane of the muscle fibre. The activation of these receptors causes a depolarisation of the muscle membrane leading to a chain reaction named excitation-contraction coupling (ECC) inducing the contraction of the adjacent muscle fibre. Several tools have been developed to characterise in a simple way the morphological aspect of the normal NMJ and the abnormalities that ensue from the pathological modifications of these junctions. The advent of molecular biology has allowed the discovery of a great number of synaptic molecules concentrated at the junction and thus favoured the understanding of the physiopathological mechanisms implied in the phenomena of denervation and reinnervation and in neuromuscular pathologies. For example, the congenital myasthenic syndromes, which form a heterogeneous group of affections of genetic origin, lead to a dysfunction of the neuromuscular transmission. Their characterisation relies on bringing to light structural abnormalities in the NMJ, mutations in the genes coding the concentrated proteins at the level of the motor areas, and on the molecular mechanisms by which such mutations induce the illness.



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure 10. The neuromuscular junction (According to Sanes and Lichtman 1999)

The Normal Nerve

Main Mechanisms of Synaptic Formation

Synaptic formation is a necessary process during neuronal development allowing communication between two neurons. One of the main characteristics of the development of the nervous system is the specificity of its connections. As such, the axons' migration towards their target and the formation of the synapses are selective processes, implicating many recognition molecules, most of which remain unknown.

The synthesis and distribution of the acetylcholine receptors at the level of the postsynaptic membrane of the NMJ indeed seem regulated by anterograde signals originating from the motor neuron. The differentiation of axonal termination is however regulated by retrograde signals. The nerve and muscle have distinct roles in the differentiation of the synaptic compartment. The initial steps of this differentiation and formation of the neuromuscular junction require several postsynaptic molecular agents including receptor tyrosine kinase protein MuSK and rapsyn. The dependency to agrin or motor neuron remains controversial, whilst the following steps of the axonal growth and the sustainment of the postsynaptic apparatus mostly depend on neural agrin and on a specific signal emanating from the nerve fibre, responsible for the dispersion of the remnants of aggregates of ectopic acetylcholine receptors, all this possibly managed by the acetylcholine itself. The neuregulin essentially intervenes in the sustainment of the Schwann cell which guides axonal growth. The synaptic formation of the central nervous system actually presents a high number of similarities with the development of motor innervations. This allows the study of some mechanisms of recovery of the nerve connections after a traumatic or degenerative nerve injury and thus leads to the discovery of new treatments that could favour recovery on a functional point of view.

One can distinguish three fundamental steps in synaptic formation: the creation of a connection between the growing axon and its target cell, the differentiation of the axonal growth cones into a nerve termination and finally the formation of postsynaptic structures in target cells. These steps depend on intercellular interactions mediated by signals, responsible for the recognition by the axon of the appropriate postsynaptic cell, and the coordination of the formation of various pre- and postsynaptic structures at the synapse's level.

As soon as there is contact between the extremity of a growing axon and a myotube, a neurotransmission occurs, even in a rudimentary form, notably by the intermediary of the acetylcholine vesicles. This leads to the creation of the synaptic zone, especially thanks to many retrograde signals, coming from the muscle and going towards the axon. Indeed, the intrinsic properties of the various involved cellular elements are not sufficient. Studies have shown that after a denervation synapses are able to regenerate, especially if there is a preserved postsynaptic membrane. Furthermore, the presynaptic specialisation of the axon starts only after contact with a muscle. It is then obvious that a muscle feedback on the axons exists, but the actual mechanisms are yet to be known. Two types of cell adhesion molecules, the N-CAM and the N-cadherin, situated at the level of the axonal terminations and myotubes, would stabilise the contact between the muscle and nerve.

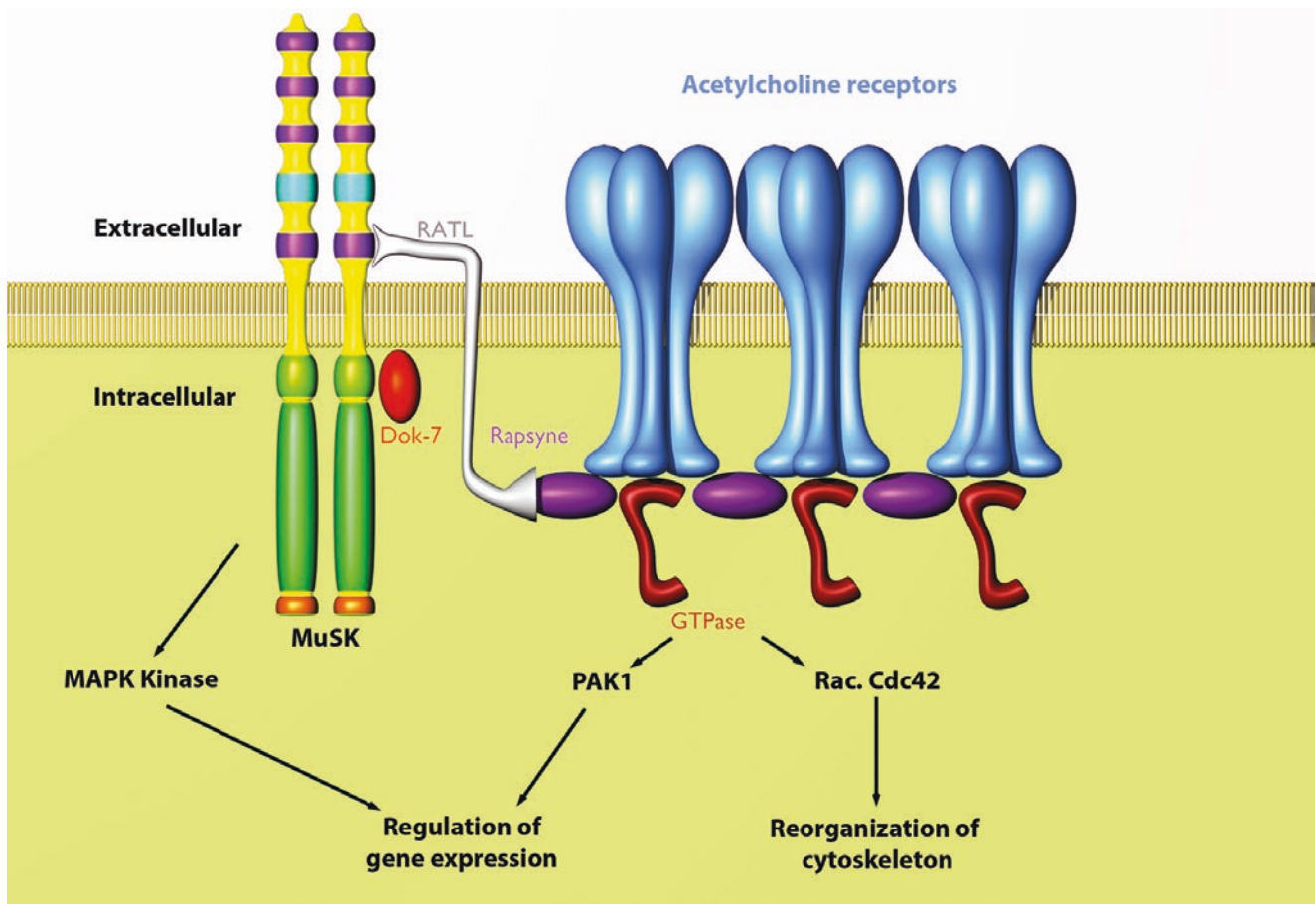
The synaptic formation completes that of the nervous system by giving it its functionality. It needs a rigorous spatio-temporal organisation: the nerve termination has to reach a specific area of the target cell, and the synaptic membrane needs to be very sensible to the neurotransmitters sent by the corresponding nerve termination. This functional set has to be stable enough to subsist for a whole lifetime, but at the same time adaptable enough to evolve with the learning processes.

Synaptogenesis is a highly specific process as well: even though the pre- and postsynaptic cells are able to synthesise their own components, the exchange of many signals is necessary in order to coordinate their activity at all times. As for the NMJ, *in vitro* models have initially proved that two molecules, the agrin and the ARIA neuregulin $\beta 1$, could be responsible for the accumulation, synthesis and maturation of the acetylcholine receptors. Knockout of the genes coding for these two molecules has been used in mice to clarify their role during the junction's development.

The latest concepts have allowed a very clear specification of the role of each of these molecules in the maturation of the NMJ. MuSK remains the hub of postsynaptic differentiation. The accumulation and synthesis of AChR are guided by agrin (aggregation of receptors by way of the interaction of the MuSK/agrin complex with the rapsyn but also with a

characteristic action preventing their separation) and Dok-7 that allows their phosphorylation to MuSK. The maturation of AChR could also result from the interaction between agrin and MuSK via the implication of GTPases (Rac/Cdc42) in the transcriptional regulation of the receptors' subunits (Figure 11). The neuregulin emanating from the nerve would essentially act by its interaction with its receptors situated on the surface of the terminal Schwann cell and is now considered a key molecule in the sustainment of the Schwann cell and so, through these means, of nerve regeneration.

The involvement in the synapses of the CNS of some of these molecular actors illustrates quite well the complexity of the anterograde and retrograde interactions required for the formation, development and sustainment of the NMJ. The scientific interest aroused by the major challenge of public health to try and figure out the mechanisms allowing for neuron plasticity and reparation, especially at the level of the CNS, has led to the discovery of some factors influencing axon regeneration and opened the way to new therapeutic propositions, their aim being to restore function in the event of a nerve injury.



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure 11. Role of the kinase proteins in the transmission of nerve impulse (According to Valenzuela, 1995, Zhou, 1999)

Physiology of the Damaged Nerve

Peripheral nerve injuries are frequent and can cause serious disabilities. Their treatment sometimes leads to functional regeneration which often remains incomplete and random, despite the practice of rather sophisticated surgical techniques.

Two main classifications of peripheral nerve injuries have been established by Seddon and Sunderland (Figure 12). Seddon suggests a segmentation of injuries based on the residual function within the nerve. This classification distinguishes three degrees: neurapraxia, axonotmesis and neurotmesis. Sunderland adds two more degrees between axonotmesis and neurotmesis.

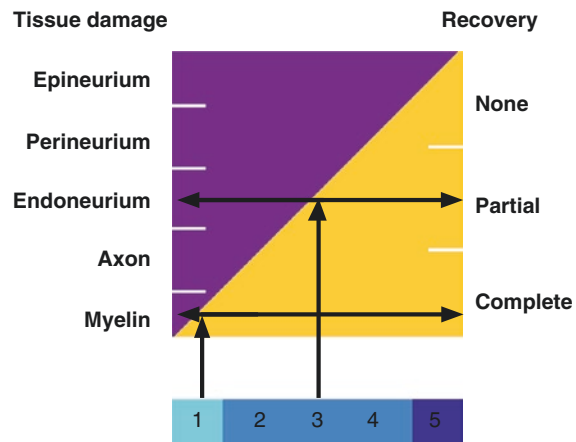
Pathophysiological Mechanisms

The most common causes of nerve injuries are traffic accidents, mostly those involving motorcycles. Statistically, peripheral nerve injuries are more frequent in the upper limbs (73.5% of traumatic injuries), particularly involving the ulnar nerve. The injury mechanisms most frequently implicated are traction, division, crushing and in a moderate way ischemia related with a compression on the peripheral nerve.

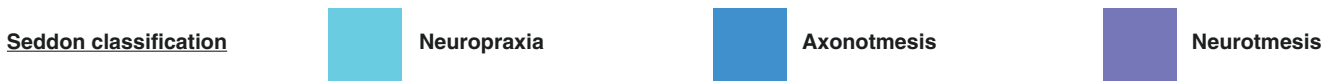
It seems important to insist on this type of damage in the sense that it is the one which characterises the genesis of entrapment neuropathy, regardless of which nerve is afflicted by compression.

A brief compression will stop nerve conduction and axonal transport, leading to a total motor and sensory paralysis (acute ischemia, followed by a regeneration occurring a few minutes later, e.g. the fibular nerve after keeping the legs crossed, numbness when waking up because of a compression of the median nerve at the brachial canal, etc.).

A chronic compression initially leads to a degeneration limited by the integrity of basal membranes. At the beginning, a distortion and an overlapping of the paranodal myelin emerge. Several layers of myelin can be involved, with a conduction slowdown. At the level of the affected segment, the myelin can retract itself in onion bulb formations and lead to a significant increase of endoneurial collagen. Ischemic phenomena coexist with a breakdown of the blood-nerve barrier (Figure 13). Prolonged compression leads to a degeneration of the distal nerve, with disuse atrophy, the paralysis happening in a belated way. The relieving of the compression will lead to a complete regeneration of the function if it happens before the denervation. The compression syndrome treatment efficiency illustrates this. The previous myelin is replaced and a proliferation of Schwann cells guarantees its reconstitution. Repeated cycles of demyelination and remyelination can follow and go so far as to coexist in neighbouring areas. The afflicted nerve segments show Schwann cells in an onion bulb shape and an increase in the density of the endoneurial interstitial tissue by proliferation of the collagen. The continuity of basal membranes allows for functional regeneration for a long time after treatment.

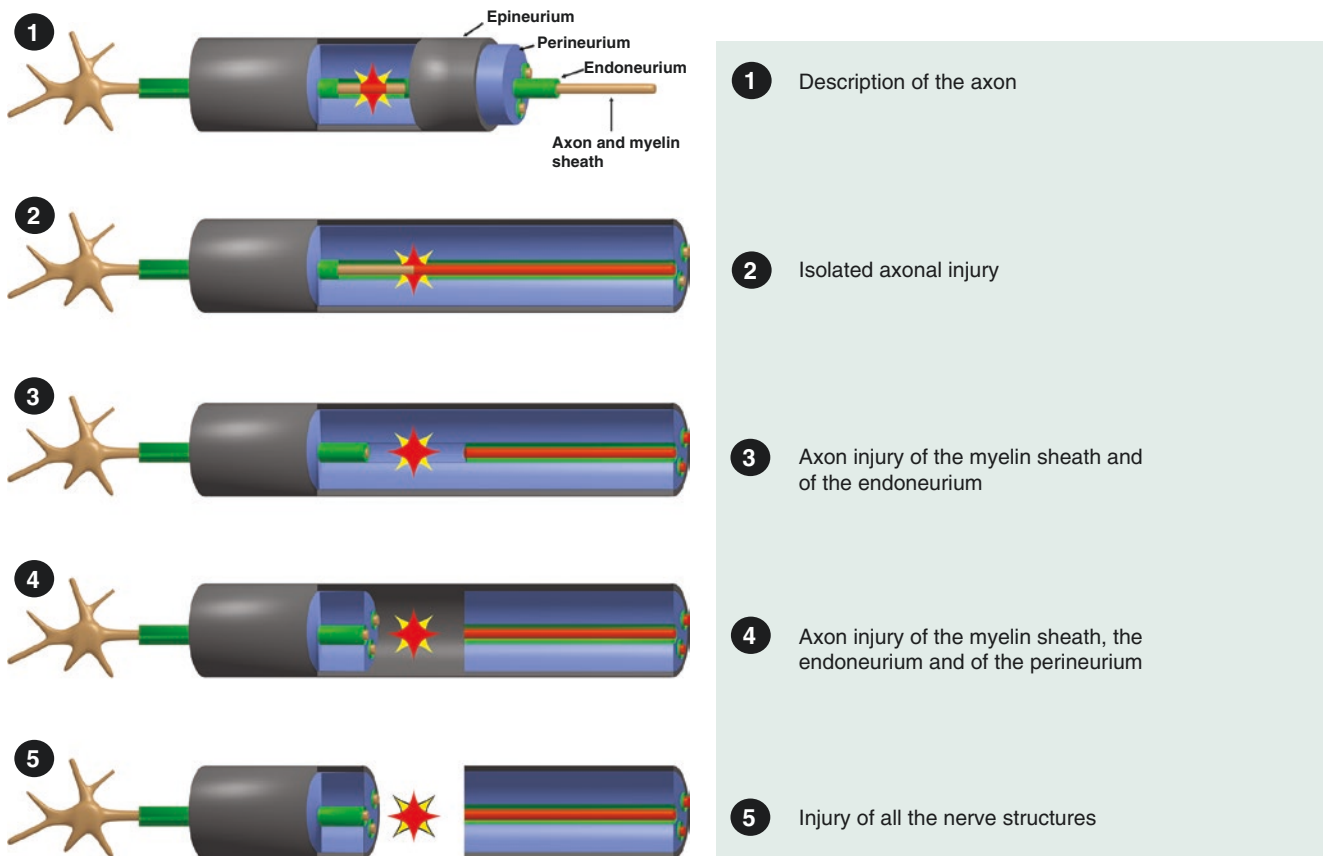


Sunderland classification



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure 12. Diagram of recovery according to the level of tissue injury (According to Seddon [3] and Sunderland [4])



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure 13. Various types of axon injury structure

Nerve Degeneration

In cases of acute nerve damage or chronic compressions without division of the axonal continuity (injuries of the first degree), we find some modifications of the myelin sheath starting with a contusion extending up to the concerned paranodal area (Figure 14). It can extend over a few adjacent segments and cause a decrease in conduction speed. In acute cases, one can observe conduction blocks even though an electrophysiological test of each of the nerve's extremities remains normal. There is a regenerative process that leads to a remyelination after an elimination of the damaged myelin. In chronic compressions, successive demyelination-remyelination cycles lead to the formation of a segmental onion bulb-shaped morphology linked to the proliferation of Schwann cells and to the expansion of the interstitial endoneurial content invaded by collagenic material. In second-degree and above injuries, there are visible changes at the level of the injury's area, but it is mostly the distal segment that will suffer a process of anterograde degradation called Wallerian degeneration, according to a chain of events whose initial trigger is calcium dependent. The first modifications lead to a myelinic and axonal fragmentation and start in the first hours after the trauma. It takes place with the same kinetics as the Wallerian anterograde degeneration, namely, a retrograde degeneration. It generally only affects some segments with an identical lesional sequence (Figure 15).

The degeneration reaches its peak after a division of the nerve containing in and of itself an interruption of the basal membranes and a functional failure of the emitting function of the neuron, the somatodendritic ramifications being the receiving function. The peripheral nerve's reaction is unique, which differentiates it from the constituting elements of the central nervous system. The existence of initiated compensating mechanisms within the motor neurons during pathological or traumatic processes is accepted without doubt nowadays [5, 6]. It has thus been demonstrated that after axonal injuries, the peripheral nervous system's neurons were able to regenerate their axons to reinnervate various targets [7].

A : Diagram of a nerve under physiological conditions

B : Diagram of a possible traumatic injury

- 1 Healthy neuron
- 2 Myelin sheath
- 3 Axon
- 4 Cell nucleus
- 5 Injured myelin before phagocytosis
- 6 Injured myelin
- 7 Wallerian degeneration of the axonal swelling
- 8 Soma
- 9 Macrophage

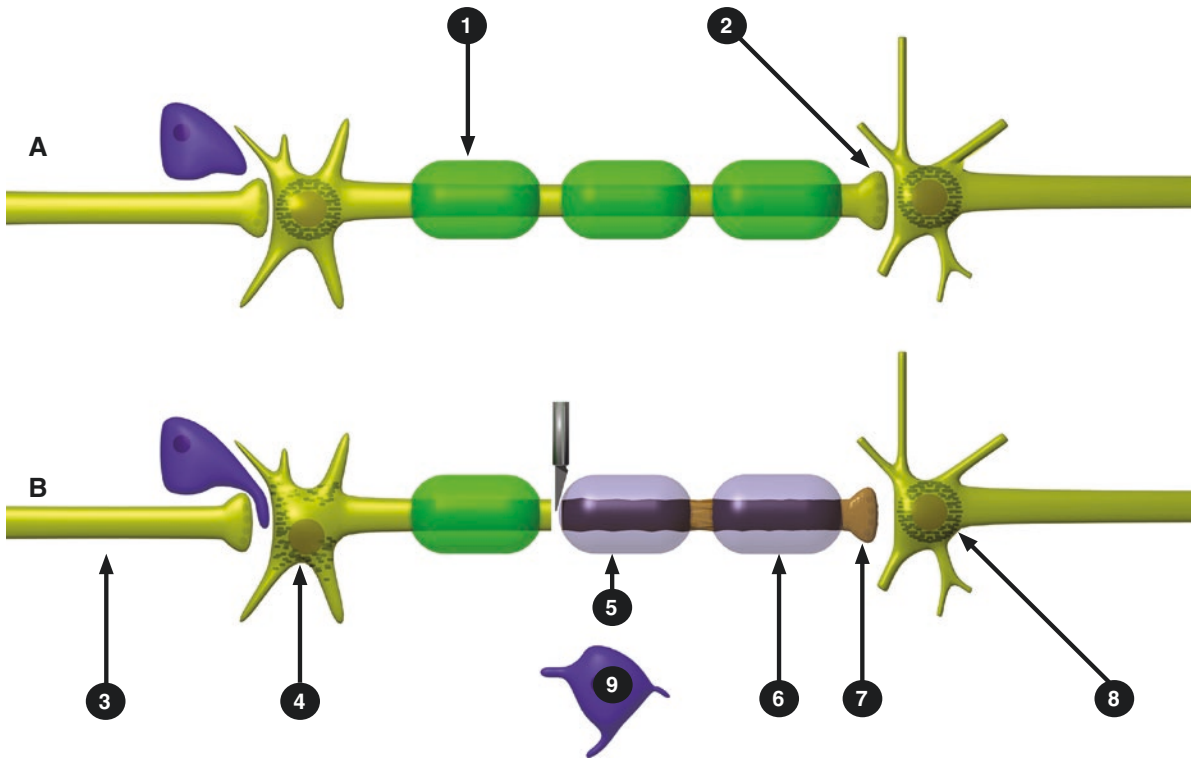
A : About 24 hours after injury. Wallerian degeneration of the distal part of the peripheral nerve. First signs of chromatolysis.

B : 10 to 21 days after injury. First signs of denervation atrophy of the target muscle fibres. Band of Bungner along the proliferating Schwann cells. Formation of axonal growth cone at the level of the proximal swelling. Visible chromatolysis.

C : Several months after injury. Extensions of axonal sprouting growing at various speeds, among which one or several extend within the band of Bungner, but haven't reached their target. Advanced stage of muscle denervation. Regression of the chromatolysis reactions in the soma.

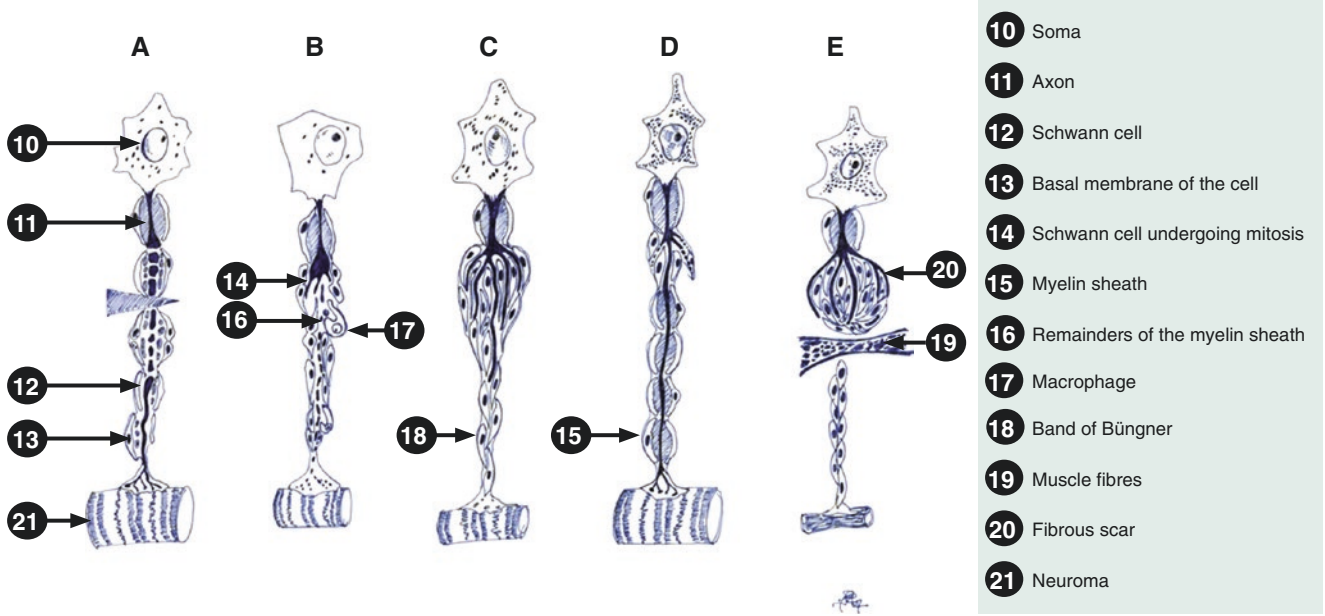
D : Reinnervation of the target organ by the faster-growing axons. The motor end plate becomes functional again and conduction is restored. Regression of the other extensions. Progressive remyelination. The muscle fibres recover a subnormal thickness.

E : Formation of a neuroma. The muscle fibres that were denervated for more than a year destructure and are subject to an important interstitial fibrosis.



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure 14. Traumatic injury of an axon (According to Keirstead et al. (1999))



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure 15. Various types of axon degeneration

Mechanisms of Neural Repair

In acute trauma, regeneration only begins at the end of the Wallerian degeneration phase, whilst in moderate injuries the process begins nearly immediately. A chain of events follow the trauma, involving neurotrophic factors and cell signalling molecules. Schwann cells have an essential role: firstly, by intensifying the synthesis of adhesion molecules to their surface and by favouring the growth of extracellular protein matrix and, secondly, by activating certain genes by means of neurotrophic factors linking themselves to tyrosine kinase receptors.

Axonal Sprouting

When an injury afflicts the peripheral nerve, an axon sprouts back from the proximal segment towards the currently degenerating distal fragment, colonising it by tunnelling in order to reach the synapse again and this way form a new nerve termination. Thus, motor neurons can not only constitute a new NMJ but also synapses of the three types of the PNS axons (motor, sensory and autonomous system).

The main mechanism involved is represented by axonal sprouting. It allows surviving motor neurons to increase the size of their motor unit (MU) (including the motor neuron and all the muscle fibres innervated by it), reinnervating the denervated muscle fibres to reach several times the size of a normal MU [8–15]. However, when there is only 20% functional MU, the expanding capacity of the MU is insufficient to reinnervate all the denervated muscle fibres: an amyotrophy then takes place.

Axonal sprouting allows for the apparition of thin axonal ramifications coming from healthy axons. It starts at the level of the proximal extremity of damaged fibres, generally in the first hours after the trauma, but sometimes there can be several days before the cellular prolongation appears from the damaged proximal extremity. A growth cone forms at the extremity of the regenerating axon. It is a specialised apparatus, with motility abilities, endowed with “exploration” properties. The scar tissue’s characteristics at the level of the damaged area, if unfavourable, can prevent the axon from reaching the distal extremity, getting lost in the conjunctive tissue and growing chaotically to form a neuroma in the

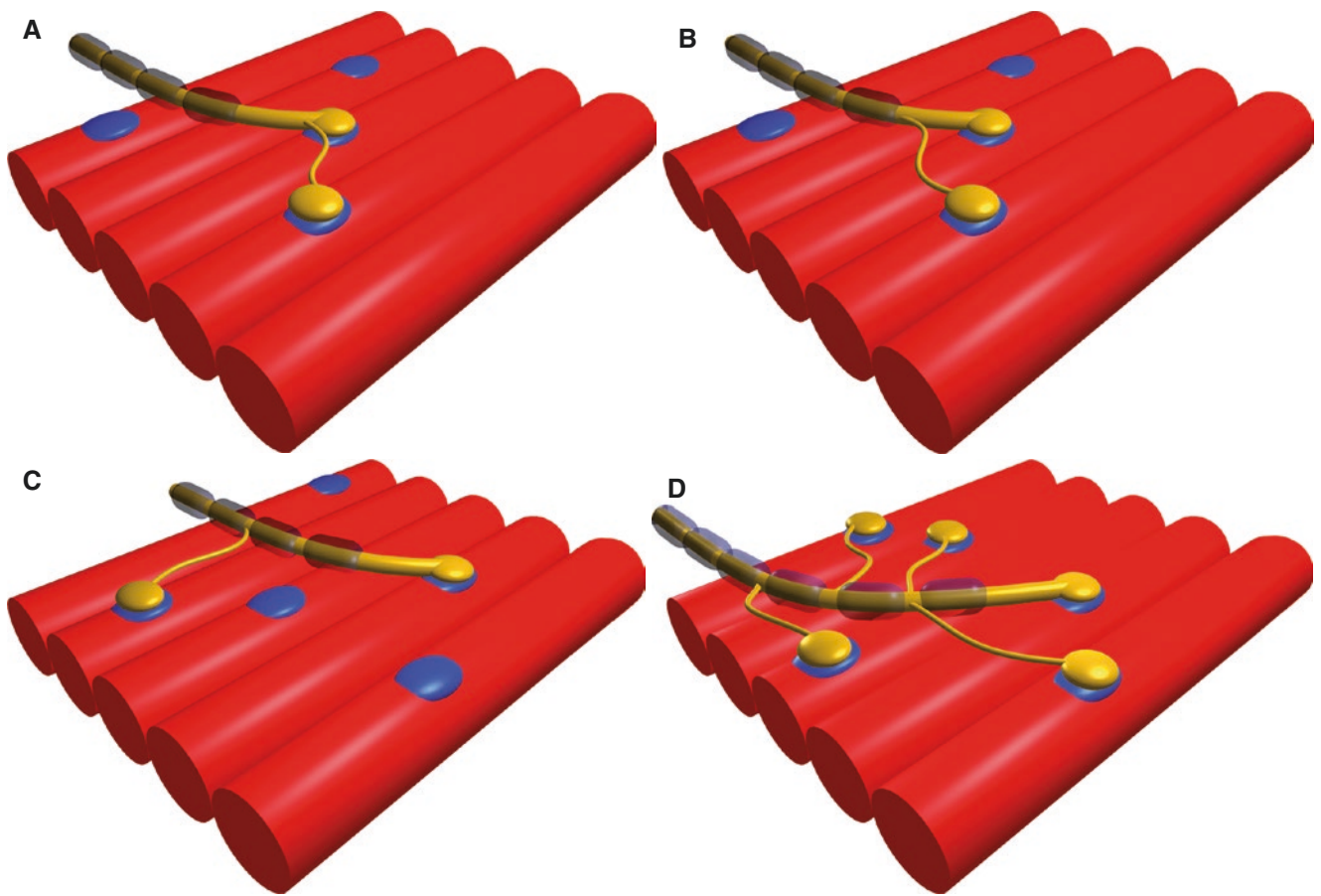
region of the proximal stump. Some axons can nevertheless get through the scar, forming a neuroma called “neuroma-in-continuity”.

Three categories of axonal sprouting are defined according to their function at the level of the emerging sprout: the “ultra-terminal” sprouting which guides the axonal sprout towards the NMJs (Figure 16a) with a base emerging from the main axon just before its blooming in the synapses, the preterminal sprouting taking its source more distantly from the axonal termination (Figure 16b) and the nodal sprouting at the level of the nodes of Ranvier (Figure 16c). An intense axonal germination becomes necessary when more than 85% of the motor neurons have been destroyed and remains random when only 20% of these have subsisted. In extreme cases, a single axon can then emit several types of sprouting (Figure 16d), or even several sprouts of the same type (Figure 16e). The capacity of motor neurons to increase the number of muscle fibres within their MU, thanks to axonal sprouting by a factor of three to eight, was demonstrated by electrophysiological tests [8–11]. Furthermore, it has been demonstrated that even though there is a diminution of the number of MU during denervations, the remaining MUs are compensated by an increase of contractility proportional to the degree of denervation.

Axonal sprouting is a crucial parameter to consider when trying to understand the pathophysiological mechanisms that are responsible for motor neuron loss, but also in clinical implications that it can create in the context of various pathologies such as polymyelitis, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, partial nerve injuries or even functional denervations.

Despite the attempts of motor compensation involved in these pathologies, it has been clearly demonstrated that an absence of activity, or on the contrary a neuromuscular activity that is too intense, was harmful to axonal sprouting in the patient’s partially denervated muscles.

The understanding of these mechanisms at the base of these contradictory effects has led more recently to a suggestion of reeducation strategies for patients based on moderate muscular mobilisations, favouring axonal sprouting and optimising perhaps a potential functional regeneration.



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure 16. Axonal sprouting (According to Tam et al. [13])

A : Extension coming from the main axon before expansion into the synaptic gutters

B : Preterminal Sprouting emerging remotely from the axonal terminal

C : Nodal sprouting in relation to the nodes of Ranvier

D : One axon can therefore emit several types of sproutings

The Injured Nerve

Neurotrophic Factors

The smooth progress of degeneration/regeneration processes requires a sophisticated cellular communication system, triggering complex cellular signalisation spates, as well as an elaborate trophic and tropic system, similar to those of the inflammatory processes. Factors such as the NGF (neurotrophic growth factor) or BDNF (brain-derived neurotrophic factor) and many others have been identified and participate to its cellular survival and sustenance in normal conditions. NGF, for example, is modulated in an extremely dynamic way by the target of the peripheral nerve and then transported at the soma's level by the retrograde axonal flow. Its concentration at the soma's level diminishes during an injury. It could be the molecular factor triggering regeneration processes. These neurotrophic factors are linked to specific receptors that transmit the cell signalisation and regulate the activation of many genes. For instance, we can find these receptors on Schwann cells forming bands of Bungner, the concentration of which increases after an injury. They are themselves subjected to complex regulation mechanisms. NGF is also found in the growth cone and transmitted to the soma in a retrograde way, thus continually stimulating axonal growth, as well as guiding it by an interaction with Schwann cells.

Potential Functional Consequences

Axonal regeneration doesn't imply a functional *restitutio ad integrum*. It ends with a maturation process within the new axon at a lower speed than its first growth phase and can last up to a year. Remyelination follows a similar scenario to the one observed during the development leading to an alignment of Schwann cells that wrap around each axon of a myelin sheath with multiple layers. It begins within 2 weeks after axonal regeneration.

Functional Regeneration

It doesn't necessarily need a perfect regeneration of the nerve's architecture. However, the effects of a prolonged denervation, significantly altering the functional regeneration, are proportional to its evolution period. They are linked to nerve regeneration difficulties but also to the modifications of the target at the peripheral and central levels (neuroplasticity). The key factor of nerve regeneration is the

conservation of basal membranes. Even in the case of significant motor regeneration, the functional result is hampered by concomitant sensory deficiencies, especially proprioceptive. Sensory receptors can persist after a year and allow functional reconnections. The sensory scheme is relatively well conserved in first- and second-degree injuries, thanks to the connections from the correct axons to correct receptors. After more acute injuries and nerve regeneration, sensory regeneration is always incomplete. Finally, let's highlight the very poor possibility of regeneration of vegetative fibres. Many factors participate to this phenomenon: notably the impossibility for some axons to gain their receptors back, the existence of crossed reinnervations, and a possible degradation of some receptors, or some cortical modifications linked to neuroplasticity.

Neuroplasticity

Peripheral nerve injuries and their regeneration cause functional modifications of the corresponding cortical areas. These modifications can be found at the level of the thalamic projections, the brain stems and probably at the medullary level following a sequence that remains unknown. This phenomenon is a part of cerebral plasticity. The recovery will be complete if the denervated area is minor or limited and if it is wider, with silent residual cortical areas. The end of these substitution and reorganisation cycles is divided into two phases: a precocious first phase of quick reactivation within a few hours and then a second, slower phase. The same mechanisms can be observed on the motor facet. In peripheral nerve injuries, there are sensory modifications caused by cortical modifications: irrational sensations due to substitutions of impulses and over-representation of adjacent areas generating hyperpathia, troubles of localisation, astereognosis and hypersensibility (hyperesthesia, hyperpathia, dysesthesia). Phantom limb pain finds some of its anatomical substrate in these rearrangements. The peripheral nerve's regeneration, incomplete, will once again disturb this organisation. The taking over of these projection areas will generally remain incomplete, even after a long evolution period. It is more often than not chaotic, in patches; some reinnervated areas can have several representations or none at all. These representations can be misplaced. The last reorganisation leads to a cortical representation that is smaller and disharmonious, conserving patches of representation in adjacent areas. This territorial compromise is the source of dysfunctions.

Conclusion

The peripheral nerve's reaction to an injury is unique and differs from the one encountered at the level of the central nervous system. It takes place according to a complex process of degeneration and regeneration that remains to this day only partially elucidated. The molecular and cellular biology's progresses bring additional hope towards future therapeutic and medico-surgical advances in taking charge

of peripheral nerve injuries, optimising the already astounding abilities of spontaneous regeneration. Perhaps they will also allow researchers to better understand why the central nervous system doesn't possess such properties and bring stimulation and regeneration strategies in the neuraxis as well as in the peripheral nervous system.

Bibliography

1. Erlanger J, Gasser HS (1930) The action potential in fibers of slow conduction in spinal roots and somatic nerves. *Am J Physiol Legacy Content* 92(1):43–82
2. Hunt CC (1954) Relation of function to diameter in afferent fibers of muscle nerves. *J Gen Physiol* 38(1):117–131
3. Seddon H (1943) Three types of nerve injuries. *Brain* 66:122–128
4. Sunderland S (1951) Classification of peripheral nerve injuries producing loss of function. *Brain* 74:491
5. Grimby G, Einarsson G, Hedberg M et al (1988) Muscle adaptive changes in post-polio subjects. *Scand J Rehabil Med* 21(1):19–26
6. Trojan DA, Gendron D, Cashman NR (1991) Electrophysiology and electrodiagnosis of the post-polio motor unit. *Orthopedics* 14(12):1353
7. Fu SY, Gordon T (1997) The cellular and molecular basis of peripheral nerve regeneration. *Mol Neurobiol* 14(1–2):67–116
8. Brown MC, Ironton R (1978) Sprouting and regression of neuromuscular synapses in partially denervated mammalian muscles. *J Physiol* 278(1):325–348
9. Vrbová G, Wijetunge A et al (1989) Partial denervation of the rat soleus muscle at two different developmental stages. *Neuroscience* 28(3):755–763
10. Gordon T, Pattullo MC (1993) Plasticity of muscle fiber and motor unit types. *Exerc Sport Sci Rev* 21(1):331–362
11. Jansen JK, Fladby T (1990) The perinatal reorganization of the innervations of skeletal muscle in mammals. *Prog Neurobiol* 34:39–90
12. Rafuse VF, Gordon T, Orozco R (1992) Proportional enlargement of motor units after partial denervation of cat triceps surae muscles. *J Neurophysiol* 68(4):1261–1276
13. Tam SL, Archibald V, Jassar B et al (2001) Increased neuromuscular activity reduces sprouting in partially denervated muscles. *J Neurosci* 21(2):654–667
14. Thompson W, Jansen JKS (1977) The extent of sprouting of remaining motor units in partly denervated immature and adult rat soleus muscle. *Neuroscience* 2(4):523–535
15. Yang JF, Stein RB, Jhamandas J et al (1990) Motor unit numbers and contractile properties after spinal cord injury. *Ann Neurol* 28(4):496–502
16. Luff AR, Hatcher DD, Torkko K (1988) Enlarged motor units resulting from partial denervation of cat hindlimb muscles. *J Neurophysiol* 59(5):1377–1394
17. Rafuse VF, Gordon T (1996) Self-reinnervated cat medial gastrocnemius muscles. I. comparisons of the capacity for regenerating nerves to form enlarged motor units after extensive peripheral nerve injuries. *J Neurophysiol* 75(1):268–281
18. Rafuse VF, Gordon T (1996) Self-reinnervated cat medial gastrocnemius muscles. II. Analysis of the mechanisms and significance of fiber type grouping in reinnervated muscles. *J Neurophysiol* 75(1):282–297

References

- Delmotte A, Rigoard S, Buffenoir K et al (2009) Physiologie du nerf traumatisé. *Neurochirurgie* 55:S13–S21
- D'Houtaud S, Buffenoir K, Sztermer E et al (2009) Mécanismes contrôlant le bourgeonnement axonal à la jonction neuromusculaire. *Neurochirurgie* 55:S63–S68
- D'Houtaud S, Sztermer E, Buffenoir K et al (2009) Formation et régénération synaptique. *Neurochirurgie* 55:S49–S62
- Keirstead HS et al (1999) Enhanced axonal regeneration following combined demyelination plus schwann cell transplantation therapy in the injured adult spinal cord. *Exp Neurol* 159(1):225–236
- Rigoard P, Buffenoir K, Bauche S et al (2009) Organisation structurale, moléculaire, formation et maturation de la jonction neuromusculaire. *Neurochirurgie* 55:S34–S42
- Rigoard P, Buffenoir K, Wager M et al (2009) Organisation anatomique et physiologique du nerf périphérique. *Neurochirurgie* 55:S3–S12
- Rigoard P, Chaillou M, Fares M et al (2009) Applications énergétiques: Jonction neuromusculaire and transmission. *Neurochirurgie* 55:S92–S103
- Rigoard P, Lapierre F (2009) Rappels sur le nerf périphérique. *Neurochirurgie* 55(4):360–374
- Rigoard S, Wager M, Buffenoir K et al (2009) Principaux mécanismes impliqués dans la transmission synaptique au sein de l'appareil neuromusculaire. *Neurochirurgie* 55:S22–S33
- Sanes JR, Lichtman JW (1999) Development of the vertebrate neuromuscular junction. *Annu Rev Neurosci* 22(1):389–442
- Valenzuela DM, Stitt TN, Distefano PS et al (1995) Receptor tyrosine kinase specific for the skeletal muscle lineage: expression in embryonic muscle, at the neuromuscular junction, and after injury. *Neuron* 15(3):573–584
- Zhou H, Glass DJ, Yancopoulos GD et al (1999) Distinct domains of MuSK mediate its abilities to induce and to associate with postsynaptic specializations. *J Cell Biol* 146(5):1133–1146

Data Learned from Embryology

Embryological Development of the Peripheral Nerves

Two phases are distinguished in the development of peripheral nerves: the growth of precursor cells and the development of segmental spinal nerves.

Growth of Precursor Cells

The axons of the motor neurons in the anterior horn leave the neural tube when the first striated muscle fibres appear in the myotome through cell fusion. The growing axons have a growth cone at their extremity on which pseudopods are constantly developing. These pseudopods attempt to find a way between the sclerotome's cells until they reach a muscle fibre with which they can form a synapse (Figure 17). The next axons change the direction of their growth cone according to the slightly more advanced precursor fibres, which improves their chances of reaching their terminal organ. Axons directed in the wrong direction or supernumerary that cannot find yet to be innervated muscle fibre will degenerate. The sensitive spinal ganglion cells peripheral axons establish a link with motor nerve fibres whilst the central axons form synapses with the central neurons of the alar lamina. Ventral axons follow the myoblasts that migrate in the ventral abdominal wall and in the buds at the extremities. Synapses are formed when these myoblasts become myotubes (Figure 17).

Development of Segmental Spinal Nerves

Basal Lamina and Alar Lamina

During neural differentiation, the ectoderm layer thickens and determines the shape of the neural tube. The ventral bulge of the sheath corresponds to the basal plate, whilst the dorsal bulge corresponds to the alar plate. The basal and alar laminae evaginate in the ependymal canal so that a neural fold appears between them. The motor neurons of the anterior horn are situated in the basal plate, from which the axons leave the future spinal cord by the anterior root. The sensitive neurons are situated in the alar plate on which the afferent axons coming from the spinal ganglia cells end.

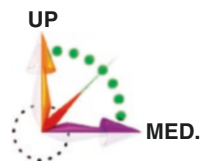
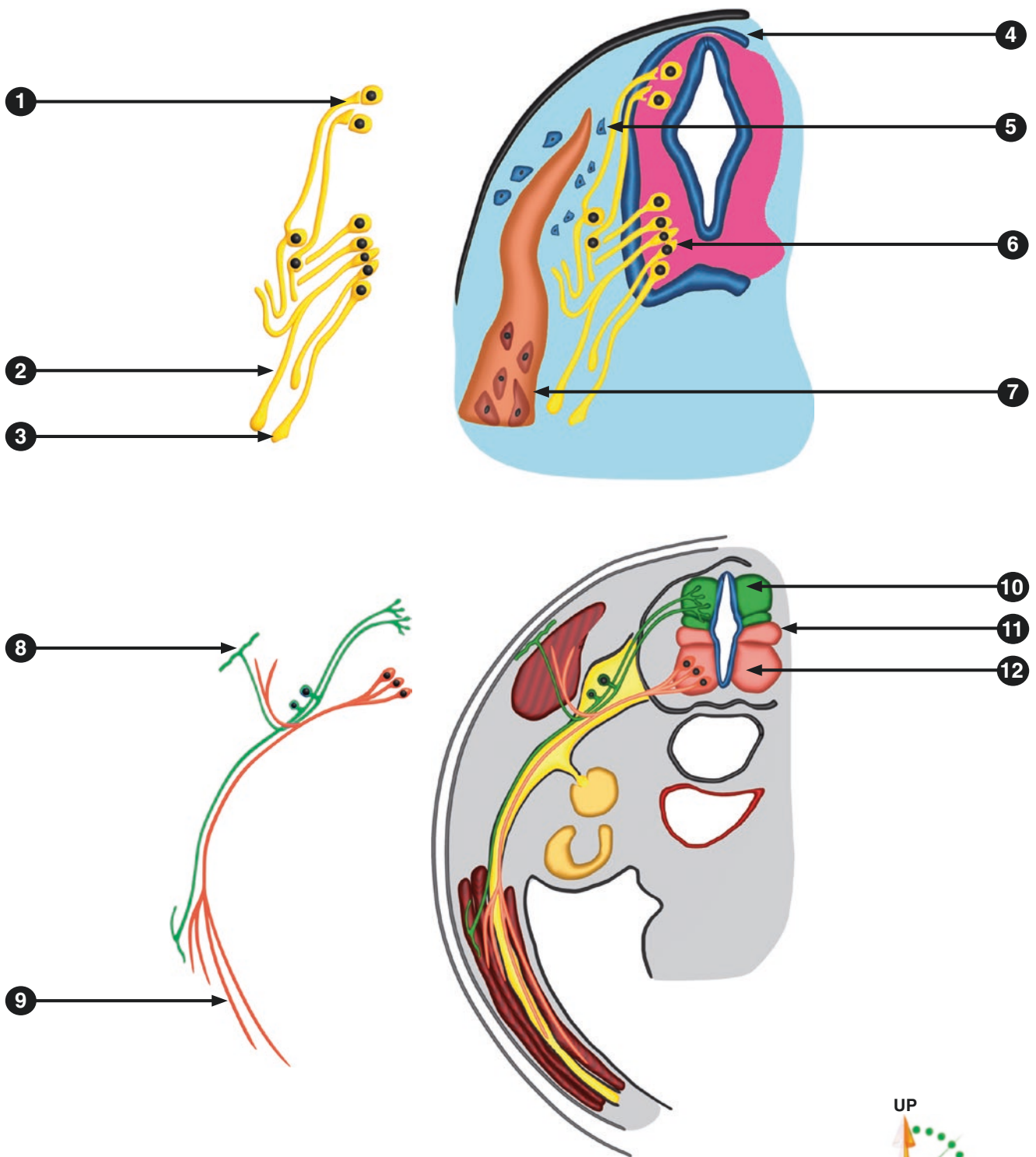
Peripheral Nerve Pathways

The precursor fibres that have reached their target determine the progression pathway of the spinal nerves' axons. They carry the following axons taking the shortest path towards the target cells that came from somites. Each somite has a corresponding spinal nerve. The axons form a ventral motor root and a dorsal sensitive root, as well as a dorsal branch for the dorsal muscles and a ventral branch for the ventral muscles and the corresponding skin areas.

Formation of the Myelin Sheath

The auxiliary cells of the axons (Schwann cells) of the spinal nerves come from the neural crest. They migrate towards the periphery with the axons through the first-stage spinal ganglion. They form the cells that surround the peripheral nerve fibres by taking axons into a deep invagination of their cell membrane (nonmyelinated fibres). In the myelinated-to-be fibres, the plication of the membrane of the Schwann cell winds itself several times around the axon.

- 1 Sensitive neuron
- 2 Pioneer fibre
- 3 Growth cone
- 4 Neural tube
- 5 Spinal ganglion
- 6 Motor neuron
- 7 Myotome
- 8 Dorsal root
- 9 Ventral root
- 10 Alar lamina
- 11 Sulcus limitans
- 12 Basal lamina



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure 17. Growth of the pioneer fibres and development of the secondary spinal nerves

Development of the Innervation of Limbs

Introduction

The complexity of limb innervation comes from the entwinement of several embryonic and constitutional factors. It is the precocity of this innervation and of the connections established between nerves and primitive mesenchymal condensations, which would actually be the origin of the differentiation of muscle groups.

This innervation begins in a synchronous way with the formation of the limb buds. Several embryogenesis classifications are established one after the other according to the development's evolution. The stages of Blechschmidt [1] begin after 23–26 days of embryogenesis (Figure 18).

Notion of Motor Innervation

Just after the beginning of neurulation, at about 5 weeks of development, the nerves grow in the limb buds from the outline of a plexus constituted by contiguous spinal nerves. The division of the primitive muscle mass by the sclerotome (first signs of bones) in two muscle groups also leads to a division of the nerves in two independent groups. The division of the nerves in dorsal branches corresponds to the dorsal extensor muscle groups, whilst the division of the nerves in ventral branches corresponds to the ventral flexor muscle groups. As they migrate, the outlines of muscles carry their innervation. Thus, in a general manner, the majority of muscles keep an innervation known as “original”.

Notion of Cutaneous Innervation

In the embryo, cutaneous innervation is spread on the walls of the trunk in segmental bands called dermatomes.

When the limb buds appear, the dermatomes that cover them begin to change. They increase in length and evaginate from the trunk, which in the end excludes them from the innervation of the soon-to-be thoracoabdominal wall.

In 1893, an English physiologist, Dr Sherrington, experimentally demonstrated that a single cutaneous area is innervated by several dorsal rami in monkeys [2]. In humans, dermatomes were first highlighted in pathologies. Henry Head [3] showed that a zoster-like infection caused a skin rash and an hyperalgesia on a very precise area observed in an identical way in several subjects.

Several years after, in 1933, Foerster [4] provided a remarkable description of dermatomes based on surgical sections of different dorsal rami during the first surgeries on spastic patients and the analysis of nerve injury cases linked to tumours or other causes. His dermatome mapping closely corresponded to the one suggested by Head a few years before and by Sherrington in monkeys. Keegan and Garrett [5] later revised Foerster's anatomical description. Their description is based on noticing that a compressive disc herniation causes hypoesthesia in a precise area, relatively constant and coherent with the previously described notion of dermatome. The basic premise claimed that such compression was monoradicular. Their description is still used in many recent publications.

This consequence of limb development explains why the C4 dermatome is immediately adjacent to the T2 dermatome at the level of the thoracic wall and why the L2 and S3 dermatomes are also more caudally contiguous. The intermediate dermatomes between C5 and T1 are in charge of the innervation of upper limbs. The intermediate dermatomes between L3 and S2 are in charge of the innervation of the extremities of lower limbs.

At the level of limb formation, the somite migration is more complex because of a torsion phenomenon responsible for the rotation of dermatomes innervating the lower limbs and evolving in parallel with the extremities transformation, in a synchronous way.



Blebschmidt stage 13



Blebschmidt stage 14



Blebschmidt stage 17



Blebschmidt stage 20



Blebschmidt stage 20



Blebschmidt stage 23



Blebschmidt stage 23

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure 18. Embryogenesis and first steps of dermatome development in human embryo (According to Blebschmidt et al. [19])

Innervation of the Limbs in Adults

Origin and Constitution of the Limbs' Nerves

The limb's nerves come from spinal nerves, linked to the neuraxis by two roots, the anterior motor root and posterior sensitive root; there are therefore two types of radicular innervation:

- Motor radicular innervation for muscle groups of shared origin. Each muscle generally receives its motor innervation from several spinal nerves, which explains why a radicular lesion rarely causes a complete motor paralysis.
- Sensitive radicular innervation corresponding to a precise cutaneous area, also called dermatome.

According to their location, the innervation area of spinal nerves may or may not keep a metameric disposition on the whole.

The dorsal and ventral rami headed for the trunk keep a metameric organisation. In contrast, the branches destined to

the limbs see their nerve fibres intertwine at the level of peripheral relay centres that act like genuine shunting yards, constituting the limb plexuses. A limb nerve can therefore come from motor and sensitive nerve fibres coming from different spinal nerves. This explains why the sensitive cutaneous area overlaps that of the adjacent spinal nerves and thus several dermatomes.

When it comes to the distribution of dermatomes in the upper limb, several studies have been performed giving different representations according to authors. Currently, the description most often used is Keegan and Garrett's representation, without forgetting that the difference between each individual remains considerable (Figure 19). It can be especially noticeable that, at the level of sensitive areas, the description of the innervation of the hand is difficult to generalise (Figure 20).

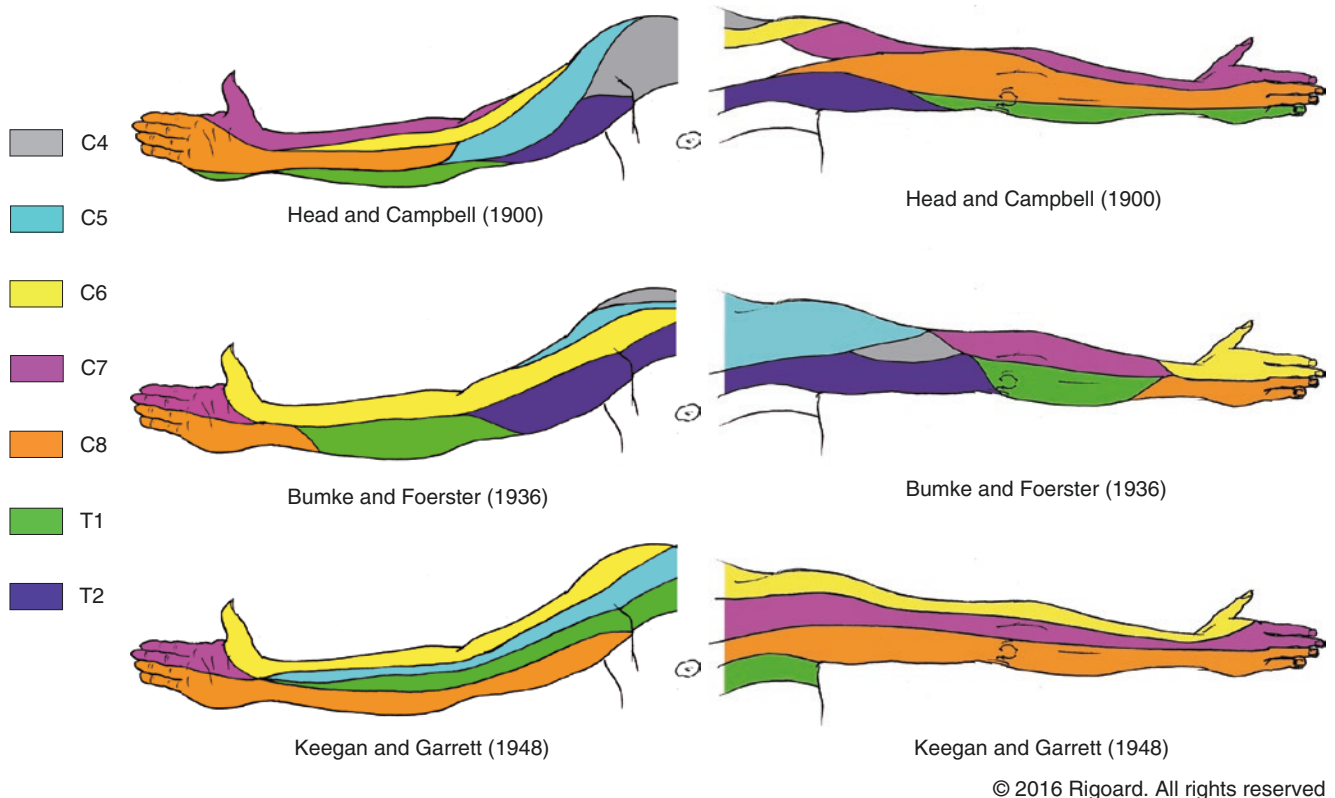


Figure 19. Various anatomical representations of the dermatomes of the upper limb

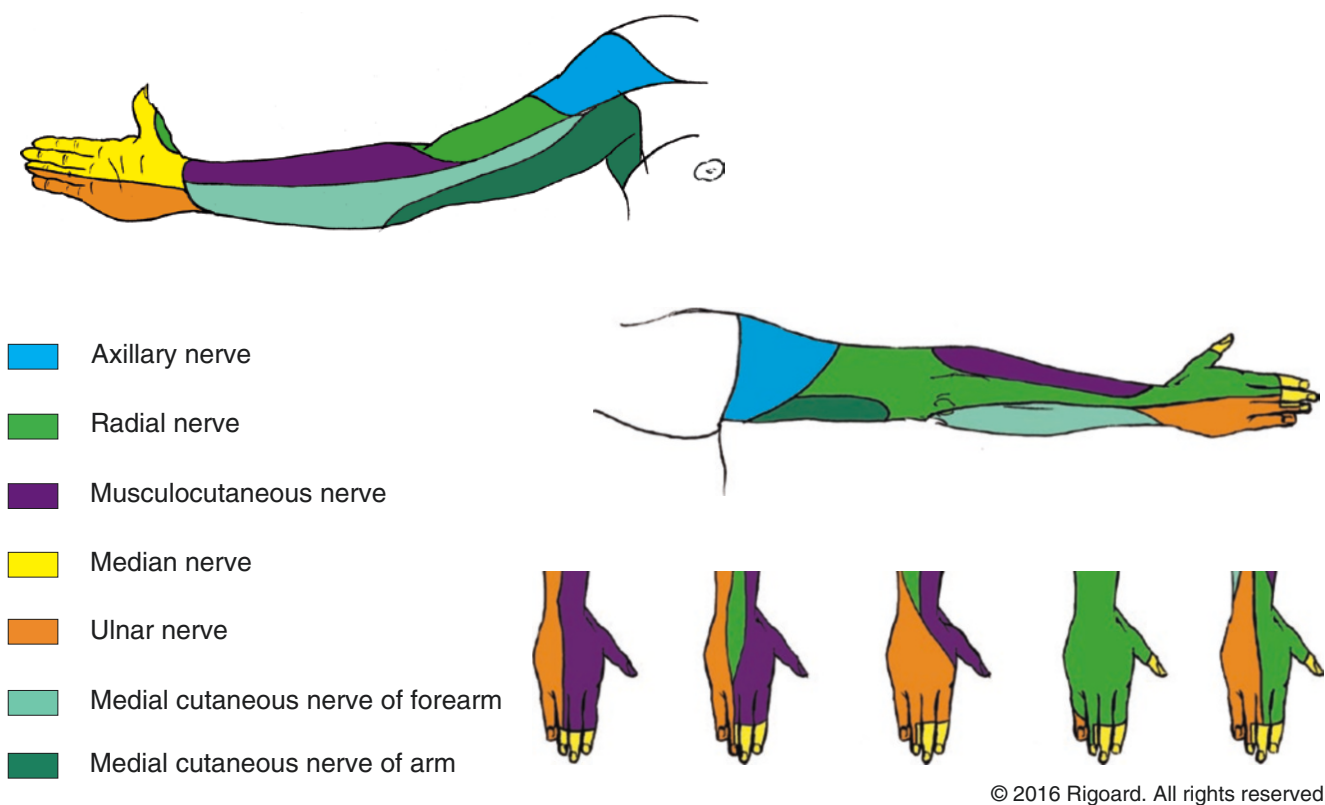


Figure 20. Sensitive innervation territories of the nerves of the upper limb and its variations in the hand

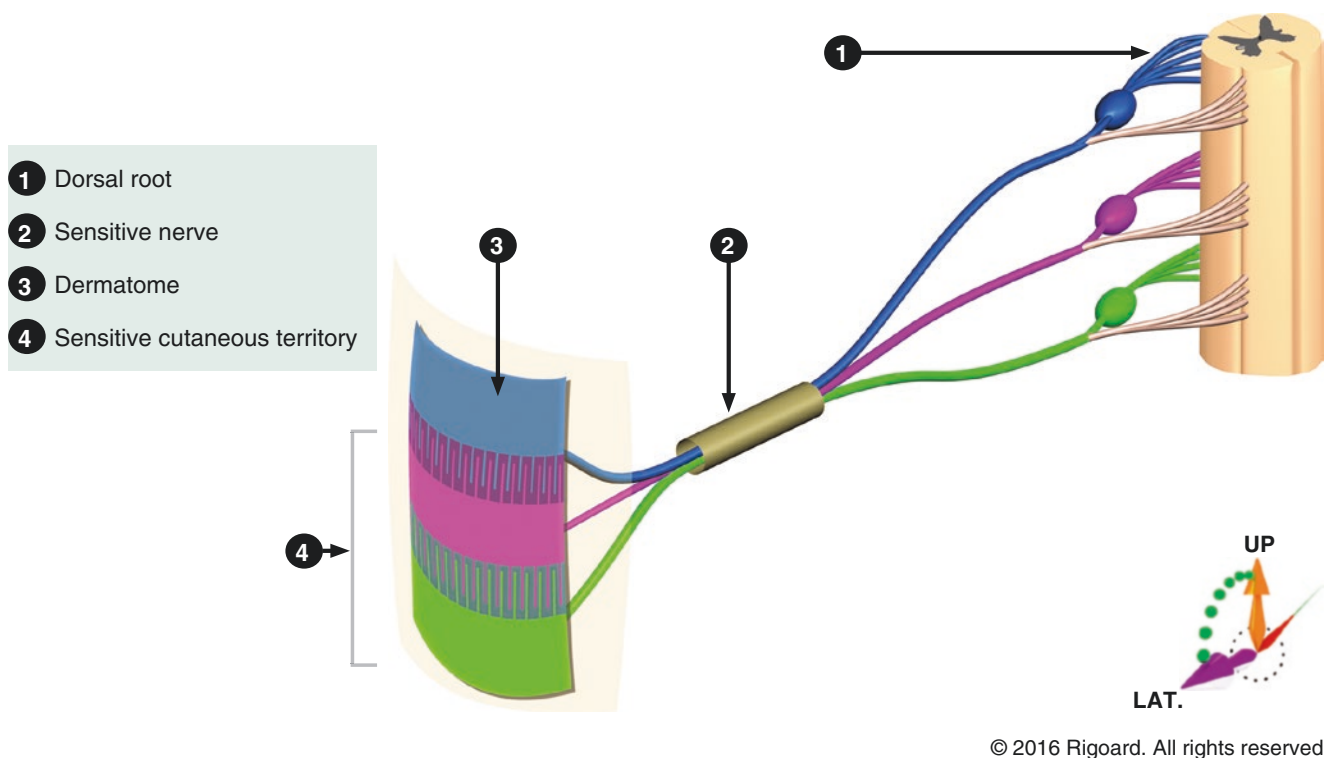


Figure 21. Cutaneous innervation and notion of dermatome

The Plexus

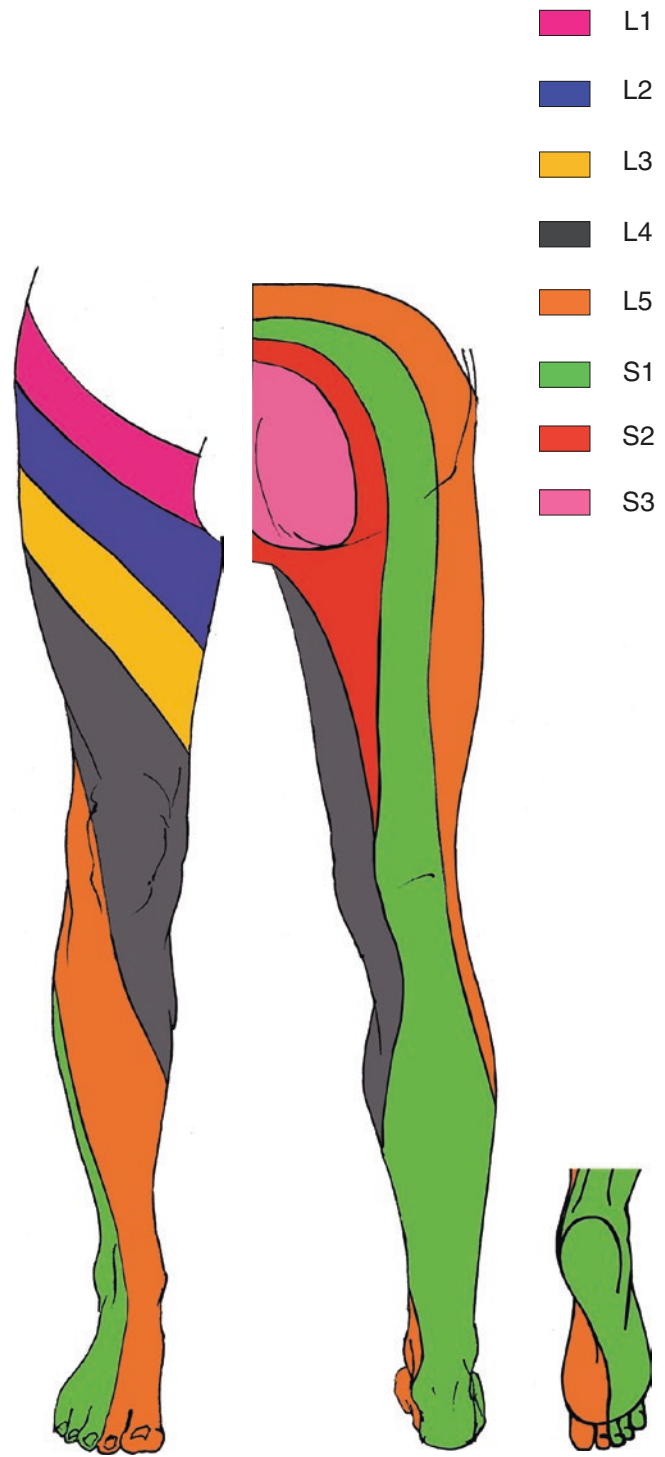
Dermatome representation is paramount in diagnosis of medullary injuries. The sensitive deficit and irritation can generally help locate the injury. However, the dermatomes' bounds overlap, which is why there is not always a full agreement between clinical and anatomical description (Figure 21).

When it comes to the lumbar and sacral dermatomes, the first reported observations date from 1886. An English surgeon named William Thorburn based his research on the sensory disorder of patients affected with spinal cord injury [6]. His first observations were about cervical spinal cord injuries and, in 1888, injuries in roots of cauda equina [7]. The article ensuing from these observations was published in 1893 [8], the same year as Sherrington's article. This article only presented lumbar and sacral dermatomes; some roots were not represented.

In the same period, M.A. Starr [9], an American surgeon, also described his version of lumbar and sacral dermatomes mapping. This version described limits for the anterior face of the lower limb that would evolve in the years that followed, but his posterior face was already a premise of Keegan and Garrett's 1948 study.

Embryological data also get added to these purely anatomical studies in the introduction's extension situated above. These concern the segmental disposition of dermatomes and their overlapping of radicular cutaneous territories (Figures 22 and 23). This disposition in bands corresponds to the development of the dorsal roots of the embryo. They stretch distally from the neuroectoderm. In lower limbs, this development is accompanied by a movement of a medial and inwards torsion and rotation that explains the imperfectly linear disposition of these dermatomes.

Thusly, when a nerve root is injured, the resulting hypoesthesia can be completely or partially concealed by substitution of the adjacent territories. The nerve fibres also undergo a "stretching" of the underlying and overlying roots' territories during their embryonic development. The block of a root only induces an incomplete anaesthesia of the corresponding dermatome.



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure 22. Dermatomes of the lower limb

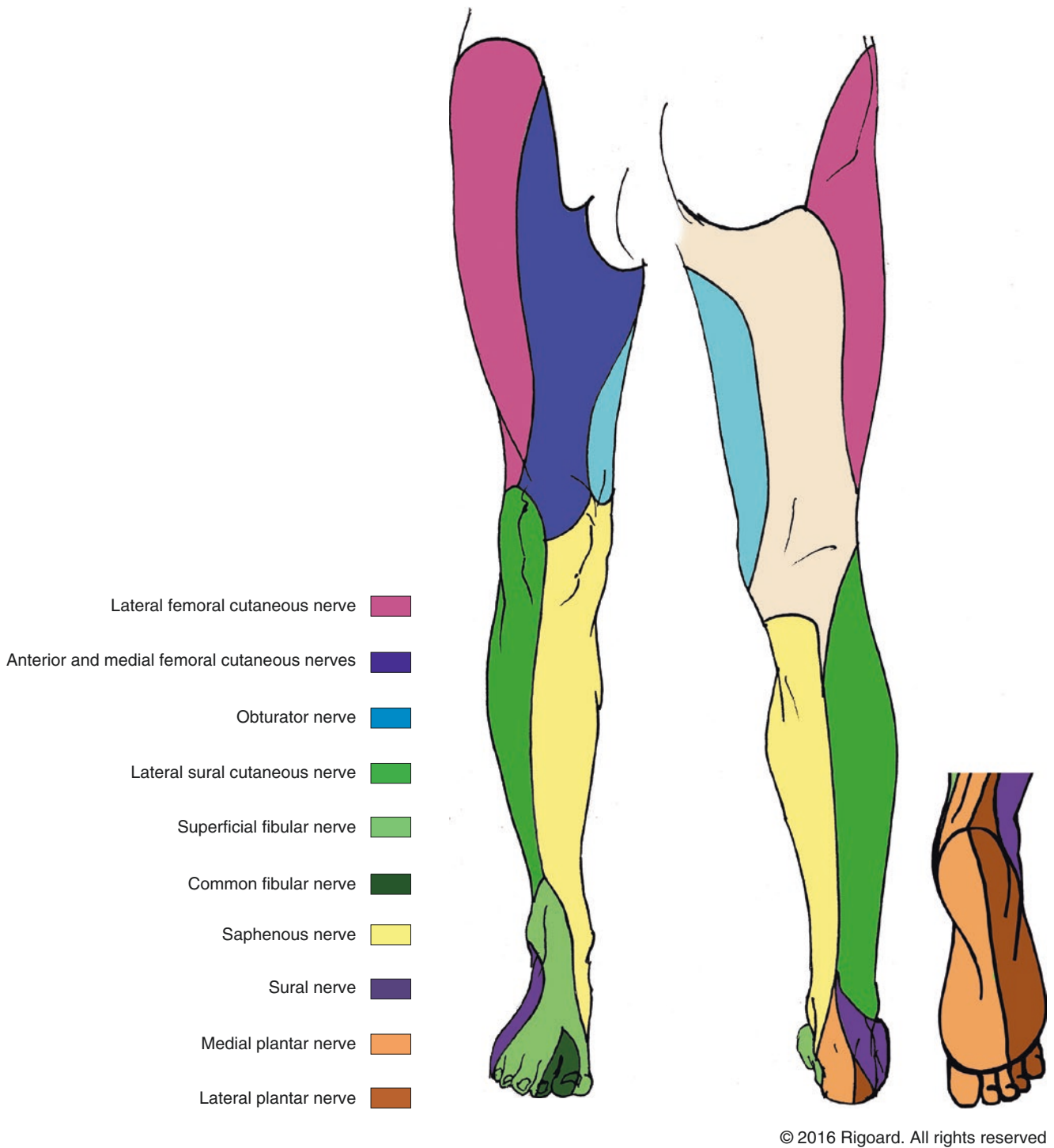


Figure 23. Sensitive innervation territories of the lower limb nerves

The Notion of Plexus

The formation of nerve plexus ensue from the embryological elements mentioned above. The separation of anterior and posterior muscle mass of the limbs during the precocious stages of development defines the predominating flexor or extensor character of a muscle, as well as the adjacent skin to innervate. These muscles are therefore innervated respectively by anterior or posterior divisions of the corresponding muscles.

At the cephalic (preaxial) and caudal (postaxial) limits of the limbs, some muscles can stem at the same time from the anterior and posterior muscle groups. These muscles are therefore innervated by anterior and posterior nerve divisions. A common example is the brachialis muscle that receives branches from both the radial and musculocutaneous nerve.

Thus, from the ventral roots of spinal nerves, the elaborated connections gather together in extensive plexuses, within which a somatotopic projection is precisely defined. Each peripheral nerve coming from these plexuses contains fibres that belong to two, three, four or five ventral rami of spinal nerves (see notion of dermatome). When laid out in tiers along the craniocaudal axis, the cervical plexus, the brachial plexus (Figure 24) and the lumbosacral plexus (Figure 25) are successively found in front and laterally related to the spine. The last two are crucial for limb innervation.

For each plexus, the efferent post-plexus branches more accurately correspond to anterior division branches of the primary trunks that constitute them, from the ventral radicular rami above them. For the brachial plexus, the musculocutaneous nerve, the median nerve and the ulnar nerve are found as post-plexus efferent branches. Nonetheless, the radial and axillary nerves are more likely the result of posterior divisions of the pre-plexus ventral rami coming from C6, C7 and C8 for the brachial plexus. Likewise, in the lower limb, the obturator and tibial nerves begin in the anterior division branches of the ventral rami of the lumbosacral

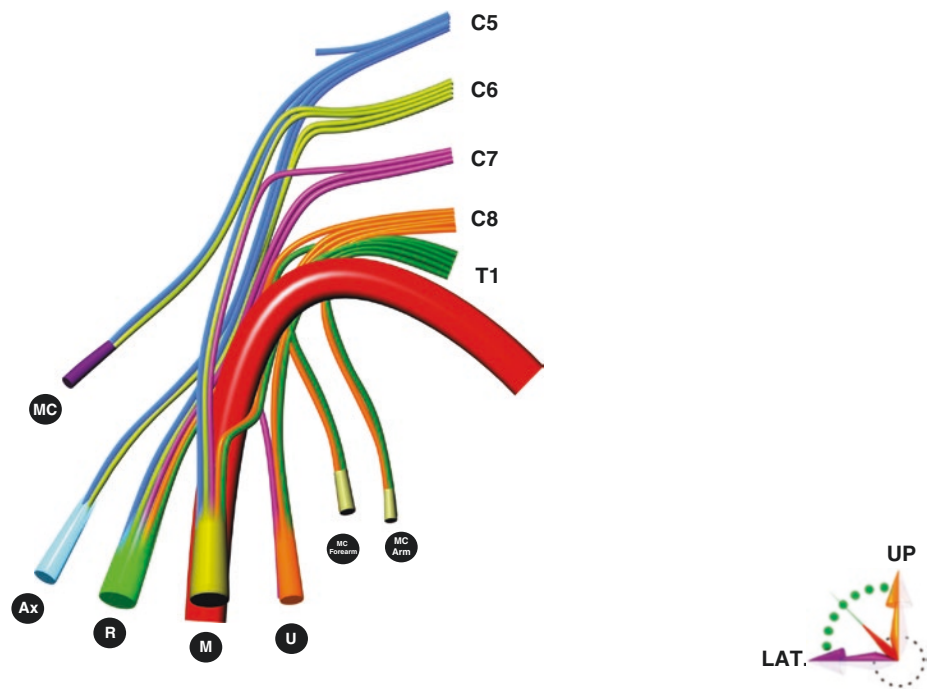
plexus, whilst the fibular nerve is a result of the posterior division branches of the L4, L5, S1 and S2 ventral rami.

A final degree of complexity must be integrated to this notion of plexus. The nerve fibres pertaining to the tibial and fibular nerves, corresponding to anterior and posterior innervation territories, may be found in a common peripheral nerve sheath even though they clearly appear as independent in the post-plexus area, on the back of the pelvis. In this case, they take the trunk of the sciatic nerve until an apparent division at the level of the higher part of the popliteal fossa, although the real division of these fibres is at the level of the buttocks, at the origin of the sciatic trunk.

The knowledge of this muscular and cutaneous distribution resulting from this intertwinement of fibres is paramount for the clinician and the electrophysiologist, in order to accurately determine the level of injury of the affected peripheral nerve (radicular/truncal/distal).

It is interesting to note that this phenomenon is also observed at the level of some cranial nerves, which are the equivalents of spinal nerves in the encephalon. There is, for example, a nerve block, emerging from the laryngeal nucleus of the spinal nerve (XI) at the intracranial level, which then “takes” the sheath of the vagus nerve (X) at the cervical level. A little lower, it finally separates from it to innervate the larynx in a retrograde way, through the recurrent laryngeal nerve, physical branch of the vagus nerve (X) but corresponding to a block of the spinal nerve XI, etc.

This relative complexity associated to the formation of plexus, especially for the brachial and lumbosacral plexuses, unavoidably causes an important variability between individuals. This variability can concern the distribution of ventral rami of the spinal nerves within the peripheral nerves as much as the dorsal rami. In the end, the constitution of the brachial plexus has been described in a highly variable way for decades when it comes to the implication of the C4 to T2 roots.



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure 24. Example of a plexus: the brachial plexus



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure 25. The lumbosacral plexus

Bibliography

1. Erlanger J, Gasser HS (1930) The action potential in fibers of slow conduction in spinal roots and somatic nerves. *Am J Physiol Leg Content* 92:43–82
2. Hunt CC (1954) Relation of function to diameter in afferent fibers of muscle nerves. *J Gen Physiol* 38:117–131
3. Seddon HJ (1943) Three types of nerve injury. *Brain* 66: Part 4, 122–128
4. Sunderland S (1951) A classification of peripheral nerve injuries producing loss of function. *Brain J Neurol* 74:491–516
5. Grimby G, Einarsson G, Hedberg M, Aniansson A (1989) Muscle adaptive changes in post-polio subjects. *Scand J Rehabil Med* 21:19–26
6. Trojan DA, Gendron D, Cashman NR (1991) Electrophysiology and electrodiagnosis of the post-polio motor unit. *Orthopedics* 14:1353–1361
7. Fu SY, Gordon T (1997) The cellular and molecular basis of peripheral nerve regeneration. *Mol Neurobiol* 14:67–116. doi:[10.1007/BF02740621](https://doi.org/10.1007/BF02740621)
8. Brown MC, Ironton R (1978) Sprouting and regression of neuromuscular synapses in partially denervated mammalian muscles. *J Physiol* 278:325–348
9. Fisher TJ, Vrbová G, Wijetunge A (1989) Partial denervation of the rat soleus muscle at two different developmental stages. *Neuroscience* 28:755–763
10. Gordon T, Pattullo MC (1993) Plasticity of muscle fiber and motor unit types. *Exerc Sport Sci Rev* 21:331–362
11. Jansen JK, Fladby T (1990) The perinatal reorganization of the innervation of skeletal muscle in mammals. *Prog Neurobiol* 34:39–90
12. Rafuse VF, Gordon T, Orozco R (1992) Proportional enlargement of motor units after partial denervation of cat triceps surae muscles. *J Neurophysiol* 68:1261–1276
13. Tam SL, Archibald V, Jassar B et al (2001) Increased neuromuscular activity reduces sprouting in partially denervated muscles. *J Neurosci Off J Soc Neurosci* 21: 654–667
14. Thompson W, Jansen JK (1977) The extent of sprouting of remaining motor units in partly denervated immature and adult rat soleus muscle. *Neuroscience* 2:523–535
15. Yang JF, Stein RB, Jhamandas J, Gordon T (1990) Motor unit numbers and contractile properties after spinal cord injury. *Ann Neurol* 28:496–502. doi:[10.1002/ana.410280405](https://doi.org/10.1002/ana.410280405)
16. Luff AR, Hatcher DD, Torkko K (1988) Enlarged motor units resulting from partial denervation of cat hindlimb muscles. *J Neurophysiol* 59:1377–1394
17. Rafuse VF, Gordon T (1996) Self-reinnervated cat medial gastrocnemius muscles. I. Comparisons of the capacity for regenerating nerves to form enlarged motor units after extensive peripheral nerve injuries. *J Neurophysiol* 75:268–281
18. Rafuse VF, Gordon T (1996) Self-reinnervated cat medial gastrocnemius muscles. II. Analysis of the mechanisms and significance of fiber type grouping in reinnervated muscles. *J Neurophysiol* 75:282–297
19. Blechschmidt E, Böttcher G, Jubine J (2011) Comment commence la vie humaine de l'oeuf à l'embryon: observations et conclusions. Sully, Vannes
20. Sherrington C (1893) Experiments in examination of the peripheral distribution of the fibres of the posterior roots spinal nerves. *Philos Trans B* 1:45–186
21. Head H (1900) The pathology of herpes zoster and its bearing in sensory localization. *Brain* 3:353–523
22. Foerster O (1933) The dermatomes in man. *Brain* 56:1–39
23. Keegan JJ, Garrett FD (1948) The segmental distribution of the cutaneous nerves in the limbs of man. *Anat Rec* 102:409–437

References

24. Thorburn W (1888) The distribution of paralysis and anaesthesia in injuries of the cervical region of the spinal cord. *Br Med J* 2:1382–1385
25. Thorburn W (1889) Spinal localisations as indicated by spinal injuries in the lumbosacral region. *Br Med J* 1:993–994
26. Thorburn W (1893) Note on a group of symptoms commonly attributed to dislocation of the neck. *Br Med J* 1:287–288
27. Starr M (1892) Local anesthesia as a guide in the diagnosis of the lower spinal cord. *Am J Med Sci* 5:14–35
- Delmotte A et al (2009) Physiology of the injured peripheral nerve. *Neuro-Chirurgie* 55 Suppl 1:S13–21
- D’Houtaud S, Buffenoir K, et al (2009) Mechanisms controlling axonal sprouting at the neuromuscular junction. *Neuro-Chirurgie* 55 Suppl 1:S63–68
- D’Houtaud S, Sztermer E, et al (2009) Synapse formation and regeneration. *Neuro-Chirurgie* 55 Suppl 1:S49–62
- Keirstead HS et al (1999) Enhanced axonal regeneration following combined demyelination plus schwann cell transplantation therapy in the injured adult spinal cord. *Exp Neurol* 159(1):225–236
- Lloyd DP, Hunt CC, McIntyre AK (1955) Transmission in fractionated monosynaptic spinal reflex systems. *J Gen Physiol* 38(3):307–317
- Raju TN (1999) The Nobel chronicles. 1944: Joseph Erlanger (1874–1965); and Herbert Spencer Gasser (1888–1963). *Lancet* (London, England) 353(9155):851
- Rigoard P, Chaillou M, Fares M et al (2009) Applications énergétiques: Na/K-ATPase et transmission neuromusculaire. *Neurochirurgie* 55:S92–S103
- Rigoard P, Buffenoir K, Wager M et al (2009) Organisation anatomique et physiologique du nerf périphérique. *Neurochirurgie* 55:S3–S12
- Rigoard P, Buffenoir K, Bauche S et al (2009) Organisation structurale, moléculaire, formation et maturation de la jonction neuromusculaire. *Neurochirurgie* 55:S34–S42
- Rigoard P, Lapierre F (2009) Rappels sur le nerf périphérique. *Neurochirurgie* 55(4–5):360–374
- Rigoard S, Wager M, Buffenoir K et al (2009) Principaux mécanismes impliqués dans la transmission synaptique au sein de l’appareil neuromusculaire. *Neurochirurgie* 55:S22–S33

Bibliography

- Sanes JR, Lichtman JW (1999) Development of the vertebrate neuromuscular junction. *Annu Rev Neurosci* 22:389–442
- Valenzuela DM et al (1995) Receptor tyrosine kinase specific for the skeletal muscle lineage: expression in embryonic muscle, at the neuromuscular junction, and after injury. *Neuron* 15(3):573–584
- Zhou H et al (1999) Distinct domains of MuSK mediate its abilities to induce and to associate with postsynaptic specializations. *J Cell Biol* 146(5):1133–1146

Part II

NERVES OF THE UPPER LIMB

THE BRACHIAL PLEXUS



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

The Brachial Plexus

Morphological Data

The brachial plexus is charged of the sensitive and motor innervation of the superior limb group. It is constituted of the union of the anterior branches of the last four cervical nerves (C5, C6, C7 and C8) and of the first thoracic nerve root (T1). Sometimes there is a significant amount of fibres coming from C4 or T2. Brachial plexus injuries are frequent in newborn children because of obstetric traction and in young adults mainly because of lower cervical spinal trauma. The plexus brings the spinal roots together in trunks, themselves splitting into divisions and cords.

There are three trunks: the superior trunk coming from the union of the C5 and C6 anterior rami, the middle trunk coming from the C7 anterior ramus and the lower trunk coming from the union of the C8 and T1 anterior rami.

Each trunk splits in two, an anterior division and a posterior division which then mix their fibres again to constitute cords.

There are three cords: the lateral cord, coming from the anterior division of the superior and middle trunks, the medial cord coming from the anterior division of the lower trunk and the posterior cord coming from the posterior divisions of all three trunks. The lateral cord can contain rami from the anterior division of the lower trunk of the brachial plexus, or from the posterior division of the superior trunk.

Cords are named after their position from their infraclavicular distribution around the axillary artery.

Peripheral nerves of the upper limbs find their origin in the brachial plexus' cords (Figures [PB1](#) and [PB2](#)).

Coming from the lateral cord, there are the musculocutaneous (MC) nerve and the lateral root of the median (M) nerve.

Coming from the medial cord, there are the medial root of the median (M) nerve, the ulnar (U) nerve, the medial cutaneous nerve of the forearm (MC_{forearm}) and the medial cutaneous nerve of the arm (MC_{arm}).

Coming from the posterior cord, there are the radial (R) nerve and axillary (Ax) nerve.

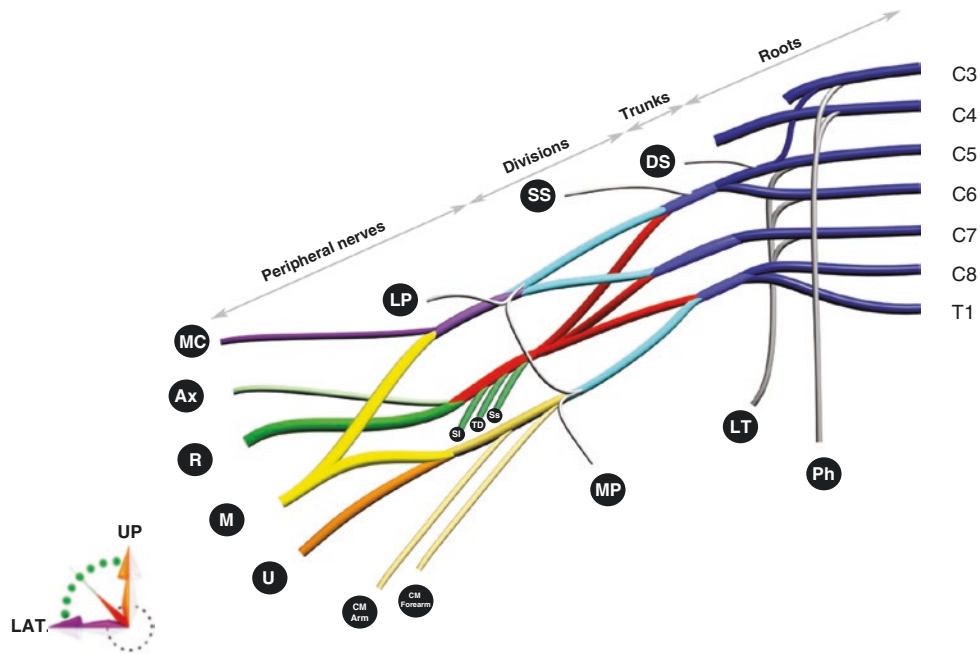
At the cervical level, before going under the clavicle, the brachial plexus has several collateral branches:

- Muscle ramifications for the scalene muscles and longus colli muscle.
- The dorsal scapular (DS) nerve, innervating the levator scapulae and rhomboids.
- The long thoracic (LT) nerve, innervating the serratus anterior muscle.
- The nerve to the subclavius, innervating the subclavius muscle.
- The suprascapular (SS) nerve, innervating the supraspinatus and interspinales muscles as well as the shoulder joints.
- On the axillary and thus subclavicular level, the plexus has other collateral branches:
 - The medial (MP) and lateral pectoral (LP) nerves
 - The upper (US) and lower subscapular (LS) nerves
 - The thoracodorsal (TD) nerve for the latissimus dorsi

The brachial plexus has anastomoses with the cervical plexus by the intermediary of C4, with the phrenic nerve (Ph) by the intermediary of C5 and with the autonomic nervous system.

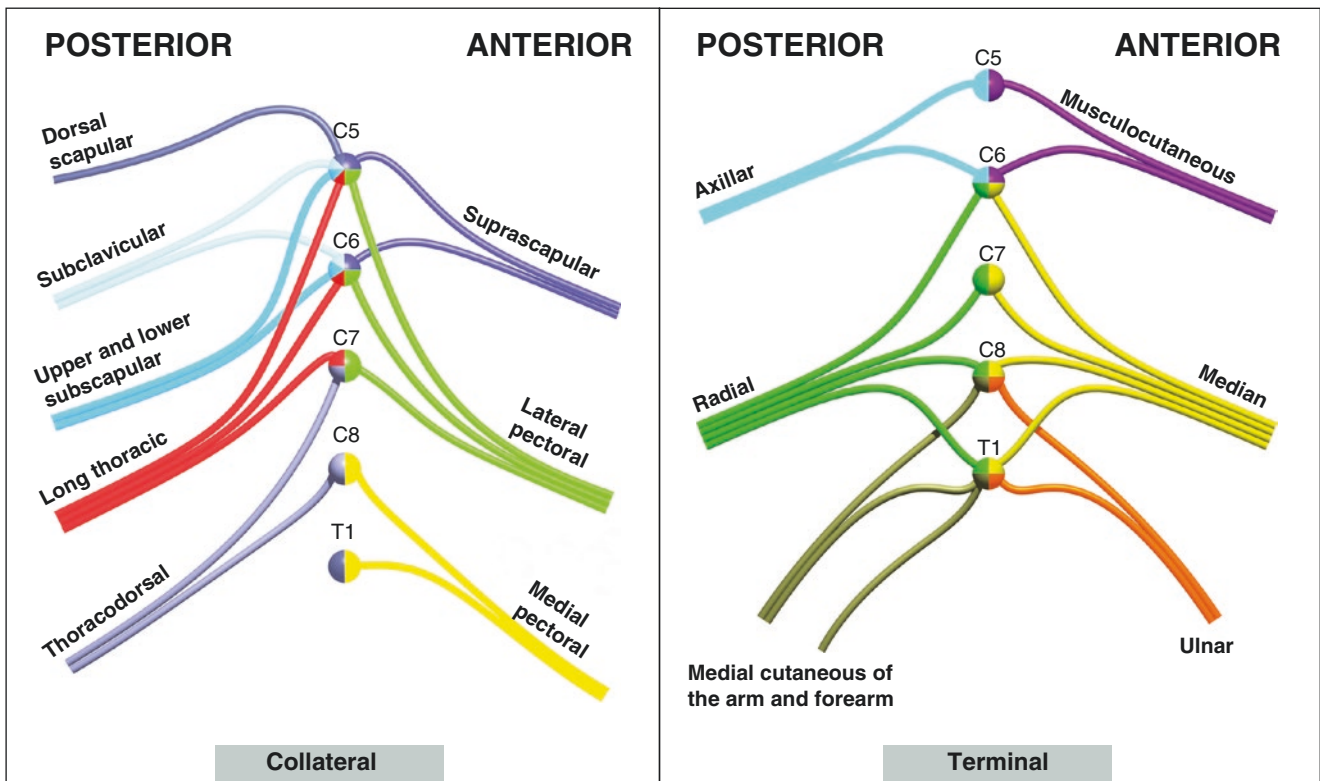
Of note, there are sometimes a significant amount of fibres coming from C4¹ or T2. According to Harris, when the C4 root supplies fibres to the brachial plexus, the fibres are exclusively coming from the phrenic nerve, coming itself from C4. Several years after, Kerr² illustrated several descriptions of brachial plexuses formed with ventral rami of C4 isolated from the phrenic nerve's fibres.

The variety found in the descriptions of the brachial plexus only grew as decades passed, but most of them tend in the end to agree with the distribution to which reference is made nowadays. In order to represent the diversity of these interpretations with a few authors, let's note that according to Billet, there were only two primary trunks in the brachial plexus: a superficial trunk situated above a deep trunk³. In 1958, Fénard suggested three main formation types of the brachial plexus⁴.



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure PB1. The brachial plexus: terminal and collateral branches



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure PB2. Left diagram: origin of the collateral branches. Right diagram: origin of the terminal branches

The Brachial Plexus' Relations

The brachial plexus is shaped like an hourglass. The junction between its trunks and cords is situated next to and below the clavicle, delimitating a supraclavicular, cervical part and an infraclavicular, axillary part.

At the Supraclavicular Level

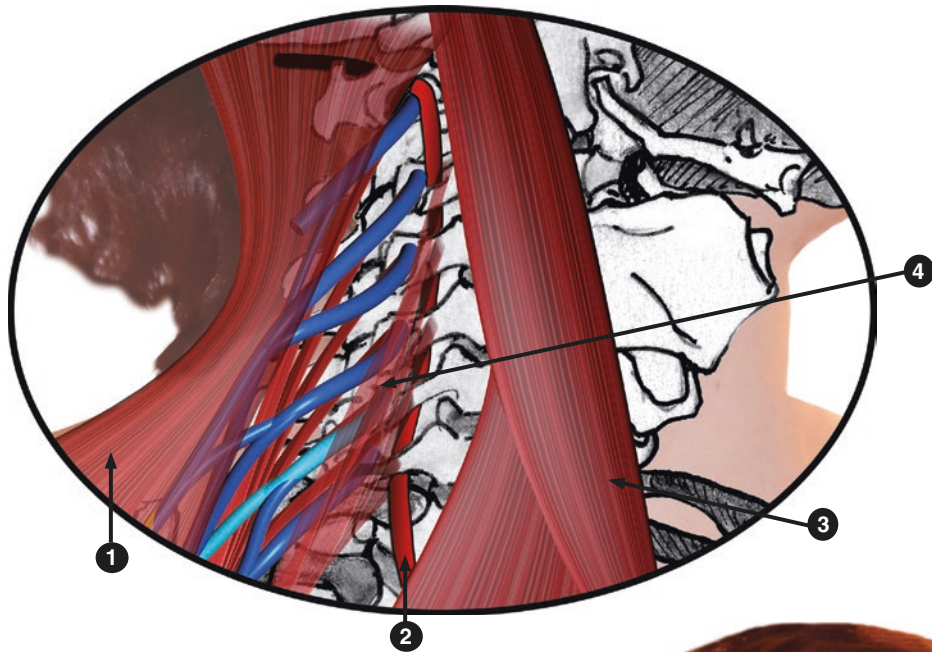
The spinal nerves firstly run through the intervertebral foramina area, as delimited by Testut and Latarjet⁵, with the transverse processes of adjacent vertebrae, the uncovertebral joint underlying ventrally and the superior articular process dorsally. The anterior rami of the spinal nerves then unite in the space between the scalene muscles, delimited in front by the scalenus anterior muscle, and behind by the scalenus medius muscle.

It is important to note that at this level there is a close relationship between the lower trunk (or deep trunk according to Billet) and the first thoracic ganglion. This relation explains why an injury of the lower trunk of the brachial plexus can induce a case of Horner's syndrome.

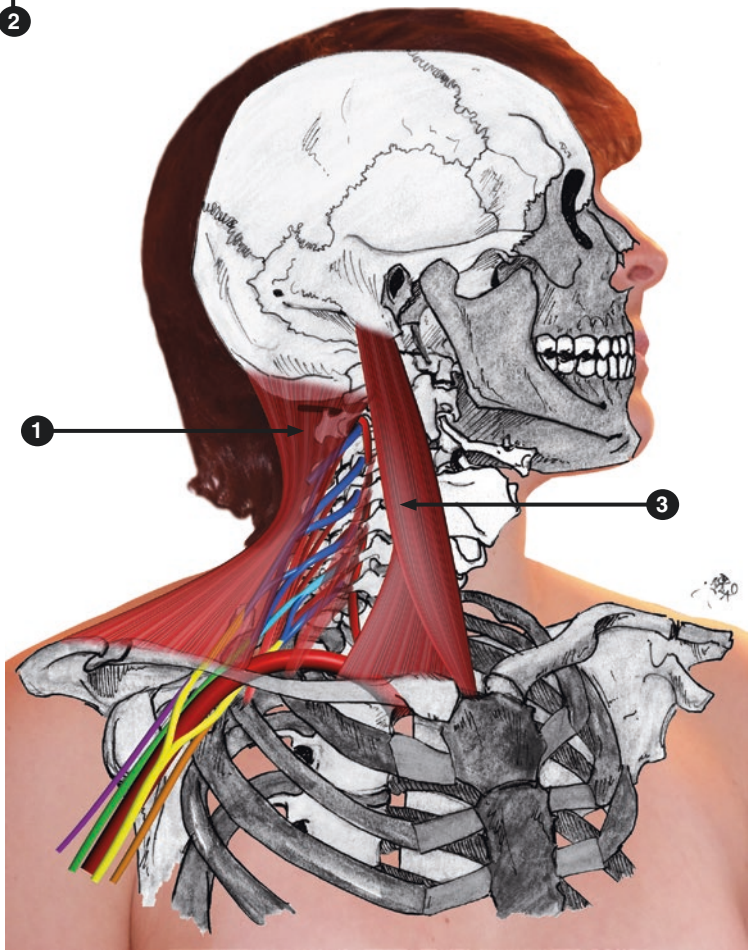
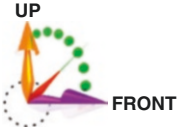
The plexus comes from the interscalene block where the scalene muscles form the shape of a triangle, in which the anterior limit formed by the scalenus anterior muscle is oblique and the posterior limit formed by the scalenus medius muscle is vertical. It finds its way between the scalenus anterior in front and the scalenus medius and posterior in behind. It faces the apex of the lung and the first rib going downwards. In this area, with the intermediary of the scalenus anterior muscle, it faces the subclavian vein, the subclavius muscle and the omohyoid muscle. The phrenic nerve is not in this area but in front of the scalenus anterior muscle, as it is going down vertically towards the higher opening of the thorax (Figure PB3).

There are a high number of anatomical variations of the scalene muscles. The scalenus anterior and medius muscles' insertion on the first rib can for instance be extended into a fascia. The latter is likely to compress the subclavian artery in case of pathology of the scalene muscles.

These relations are important to take into account when executing anaesthesia of the plexus with supraclavicular access.



- 1 Trapezius muscle
- 2 Vertebral artery
- 3 Sternocleidomastoid muscle
- 4 Phrenic nerve



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure PB3. Main relations of the brachial plexus at the cervical level

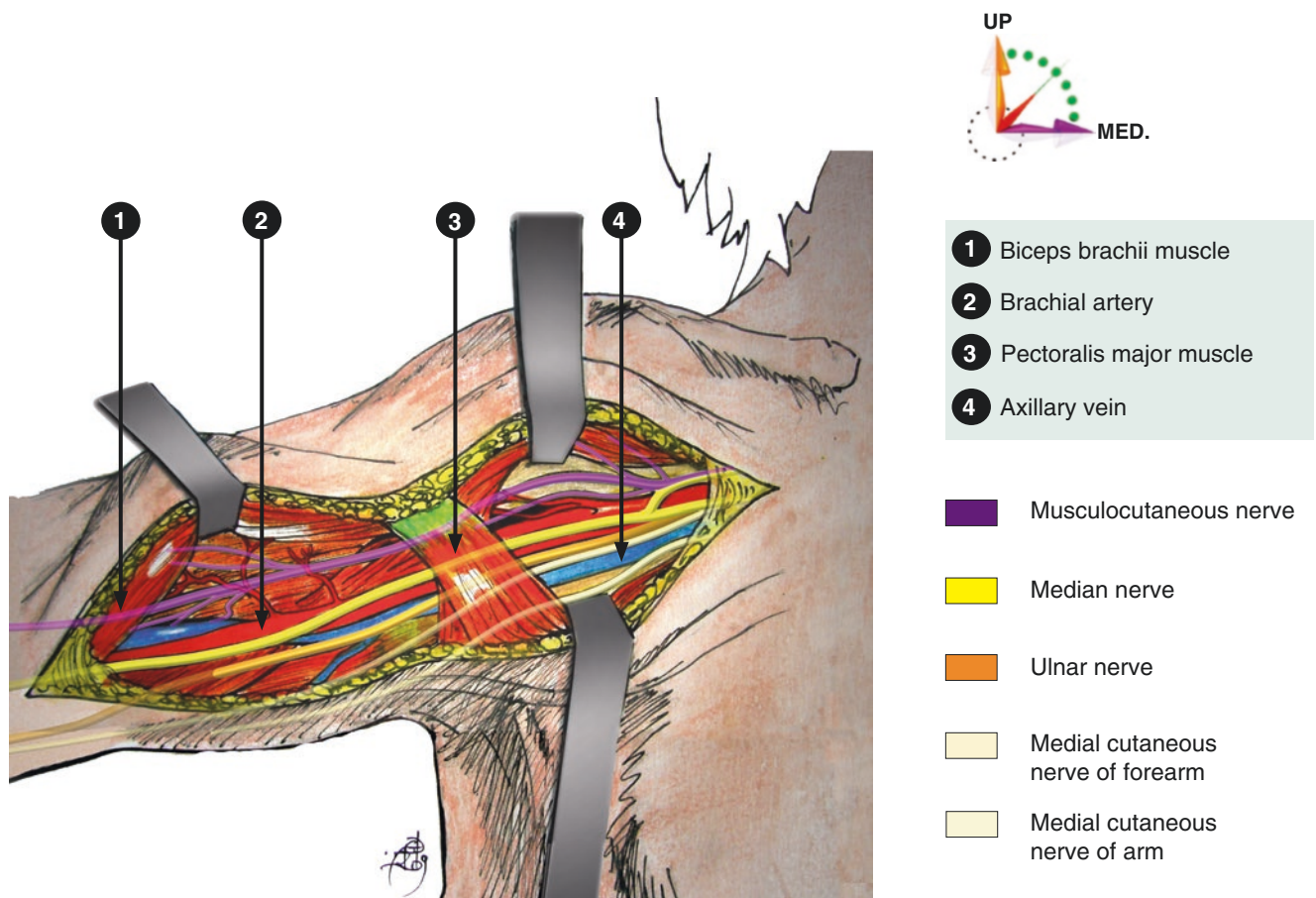
The Brachial Plexus

At the Infraclavicular Level

In the axillary pit's apex, the plexus finds its way between the clavicle and the subclavius muscle in front and the upper edge of the scapula in behind. It is situated inside the coracoid process and outside of the first rib and of the serratus and scapular area.

In this infraclavicular part of the brachial plexus, trunks split into two types of branches: anterior and posterior. Three cords are thus formed from the latter: lateral, medial and posterior.

At the level of the axillary pit, the cords are situated behind the pectoralis muscles, and their relation with the arterial axillary axis is described by their respective denomination. In front of the descending part of the axillary artery, two branches of the lateral and medial cords join in a "V shape" to form the median nerve, which is the largest terminal branch of the brachial plexus. The pectoralis major muscle and the axillary artery logically constitute the main landmarks that guide local or regional axillary block anaesthesia of the plexus (Figures PB4, PB5, PB6 and PB7).



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

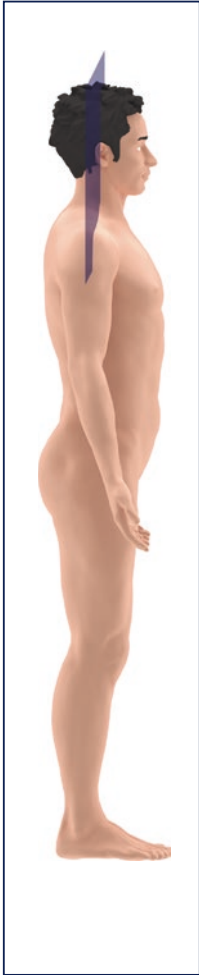
Figure PB4. Dissection of the axillary fossa and arm (According to Dorn, 1992)



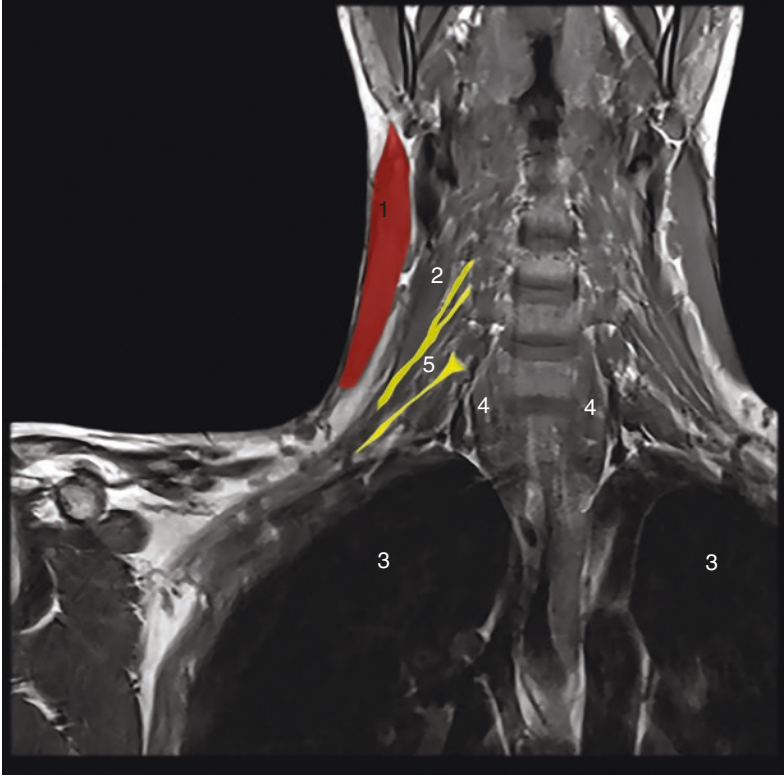
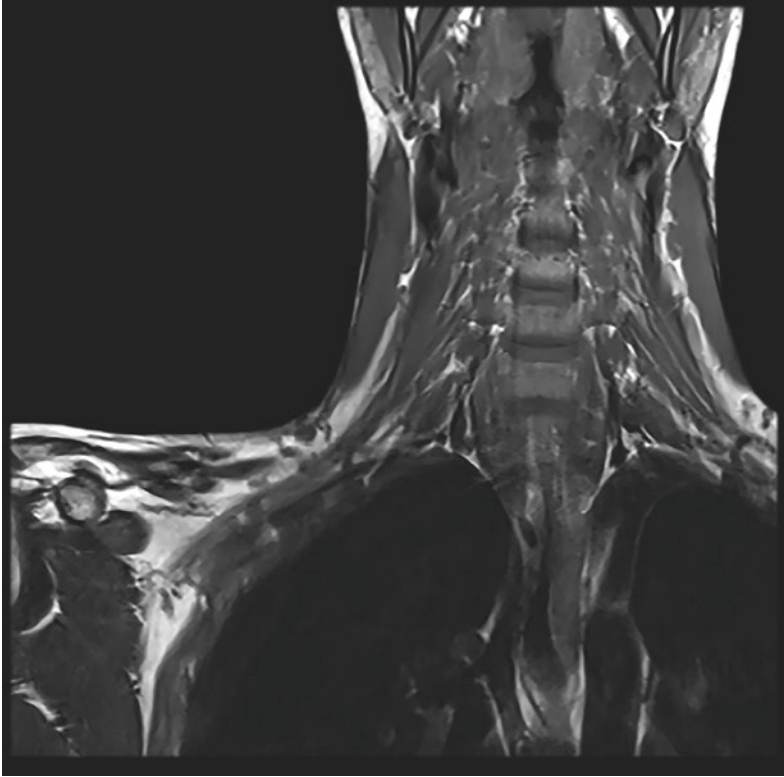
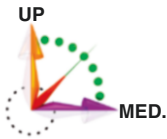
© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure PB5. Relations of the brachial plexus under the clavicle

The Brachial Plexus

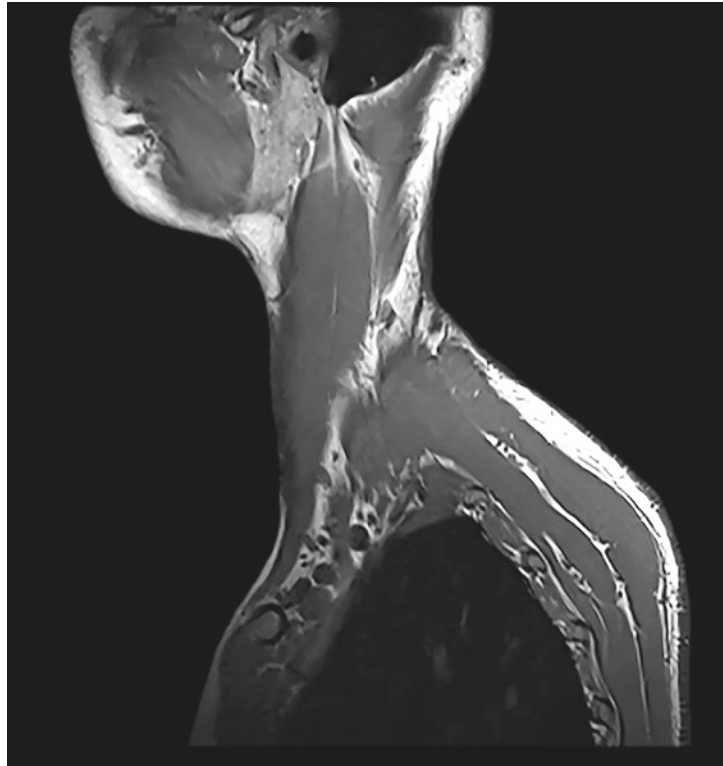
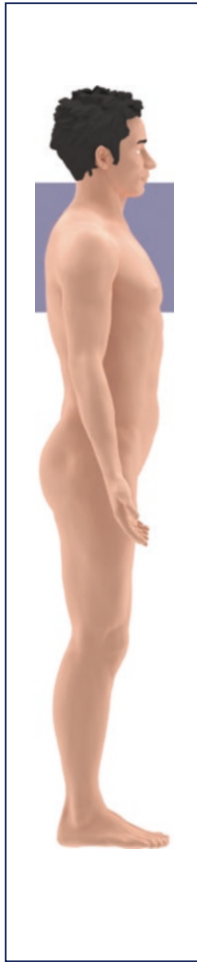


- 1- Sternocleidomastoid muscle
- 2- Scalenus anterior muscle
- 3- Lungs
- 4- Thyroid
- 5- Brachial plexus

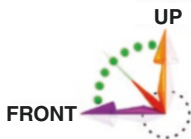


© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure PB6. Coronal MRI scan of the neck and of the axillary fossa, through the brachial plexus



- 1- Sternocleidomastoid muscle
- 2- Scalenus anterior muscle
- 3- Right clavicle
- 4- Right lung
- 5- Subclavian and internal jugular vein
- 6- Right subclavian artery
- 7- Brachial plexus
- 8- Serratus anterior
- 9- Trapezius muscle
- 10- Rhomboid major and minor muscles
- 11- Splenius cervicis muscles
- 12- Rib



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure PB7. Parasagittal MRI scan of the brachial plexus showing the neurovascular relations

References

1. Harris W (1904) The True Form of the Brachial Plexus, and its Motor Distribution. *J Anat Physiol* 38:399–422.5
2. Kerr A (1918) The Brachial Plexus of Nerves in Man, the Variations in its Formation and Branches. *Am J Anat* 285–395
3. Billet H (1933) Les troncs primaires du plexus brachial. 63–71
4. Fenart R (1958) Morphogenesis of the brachial plexus & its relation to the formation of the neck & the arm. *Acta Anat (Basel)* 32:322–360
5. Latarjet A, Testud L (1948) Testut's *Traité d'Anatomie Humaine*. Paris

PERIPHERAL BRANCHES

The Axillary Nerve

Ax

The Musculocutaneous Nerve

MC

The Radial Nerve

R

The Median Nerve

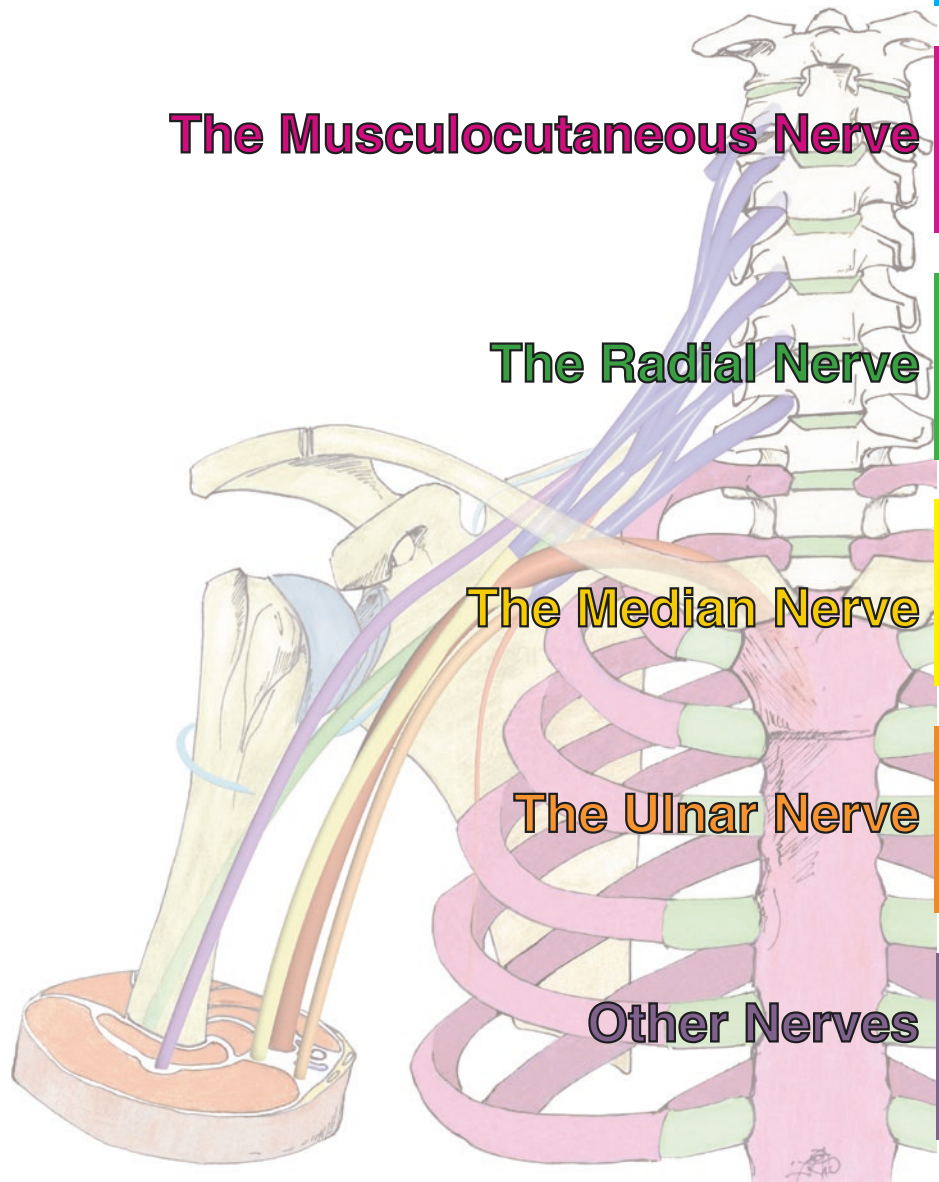
M

The Ulnar Nerve

U

Other Nerves

**SSc
TL**





The Axillary Nerve

Ax

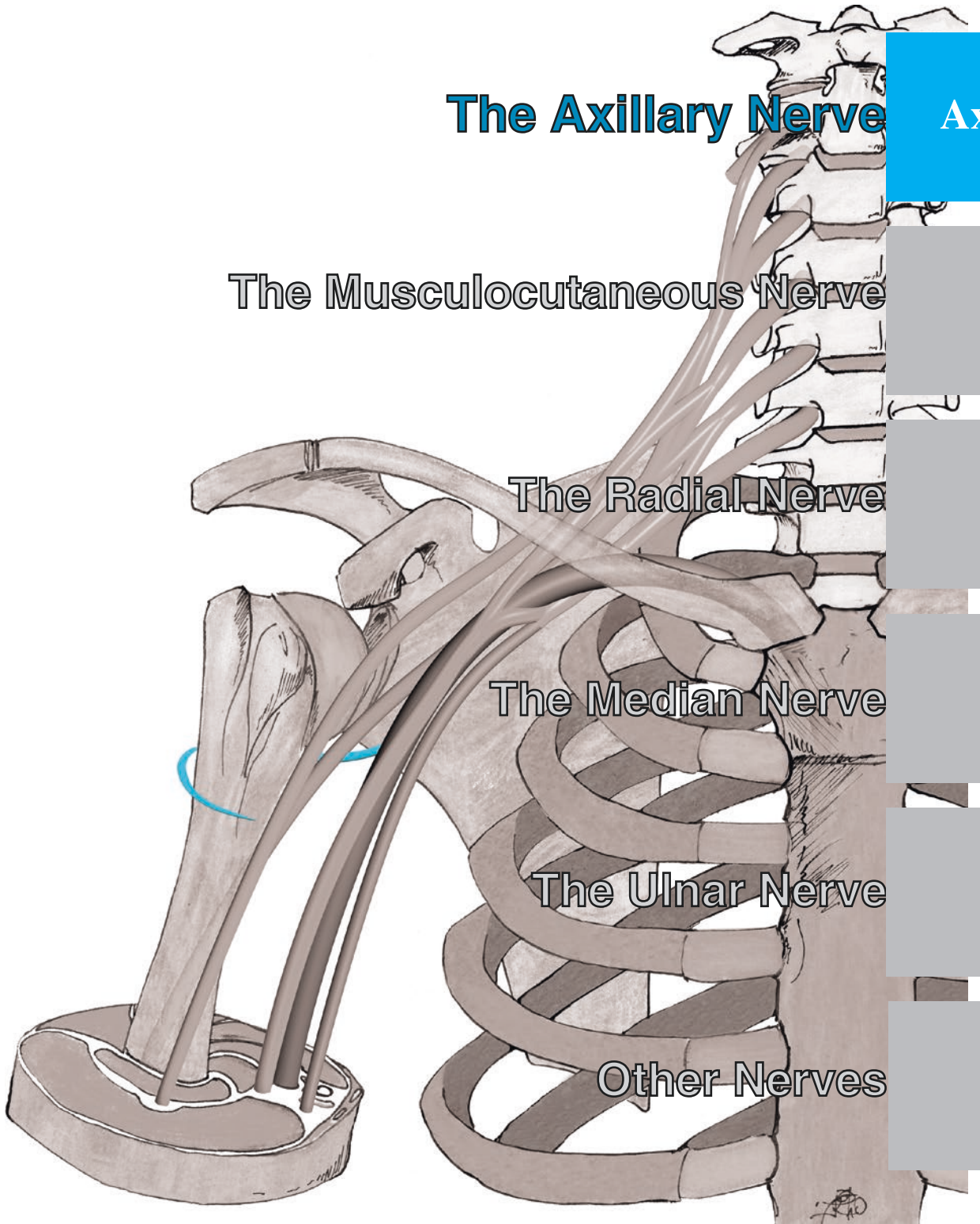
The Musculocutaneous Nerve

The Radial Nerve

The Median Nerve

The Ulnar Nerve

Other Nerves



The Axillary Nerve

Morphological Data

The axillary nerve is a mixed nerve. It represents one of the two terminal branches of the posterior bundle of the brachial plexus and is responsible for the innervation of the scapular area and the shoulder stump.

Origin

It is made of nerve fibres coming from the posterior divisions of the upper trunk of the plexus, itself coming from the upper trunks of C5 and C6 (Figures Ax1 and Ax2).

Path

The axillary nerve originates from the anterior face of the subscapularis muscle, from behind the axillary artery, leaving the radial nerve in a medial position (Figure Ax3). It goes down and laterally and then crosses the lateral axillary space below the capsule of the glenohumeral joint. It then goes around the hind face of the surgical neck of the humerus in a bone groove against the deep face of the deltoid muscle and then expands from it (Figures Ax4 and Ax5).

Neurovascular Relations

In its posterior part, slightly before penetrating the lateral axillary space, the axillary nerve faces the posterior circumflex artery of the humerus below and remotely (Figure Ax4). It joins this artery at the inferior border of the subscapularis muscle until the posterior face of the humerus, whilst it goes around the surgical neck.

In the lateral axillary space, the posterior humeral circumflex artery comes across the axillary nerve from behind (Figure Ax6) and goes up again towards the proximal extremity of the humerus, at the deep face of the deltoid muscle (Figure Ax4).

Collateral Branches

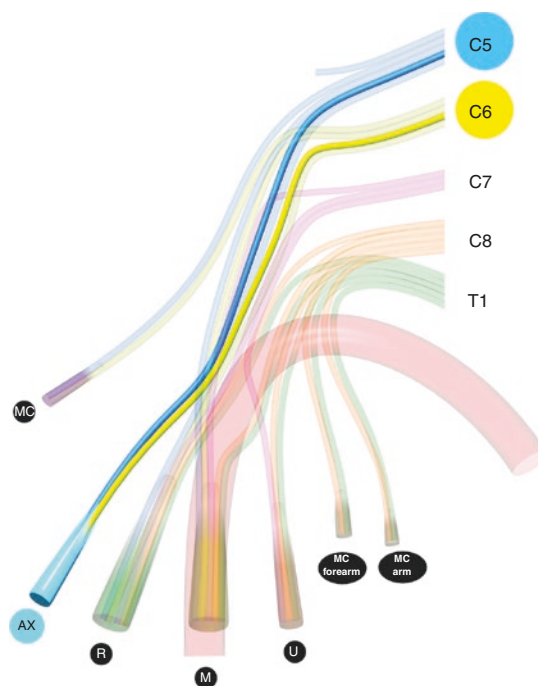
The axillary nerve innervates the following branches in succession (Figures Ax2, Ax4, Ax5 and Ax6):

- Branches for the glenohumeral joint, from its anterior and posterior parts.

- Motor branches for the lower part of the subscapularis muscle, without taking charge of its main motor innervation which depends on the upper and lower subscapular nerves, which are direct collateral branches of the brachial plexus.
- The teres minor nerve: it originates in the lateral axillary space and goes around the inferior edge of the muscle before coming in contact with and going through it from its posterior face.
- Superior lateral cutaneous nerve of the arm: after finding its origin in the lateral axillary space, it goes around the deltoid muscle from its middle part and then runs behind it. It then comes across the aponeurosis of the deltoid muscle and distributes its branches to the adjacent skin. It takes charge of the sensitive function of the nerve (Figures Ax5 and Ax6).

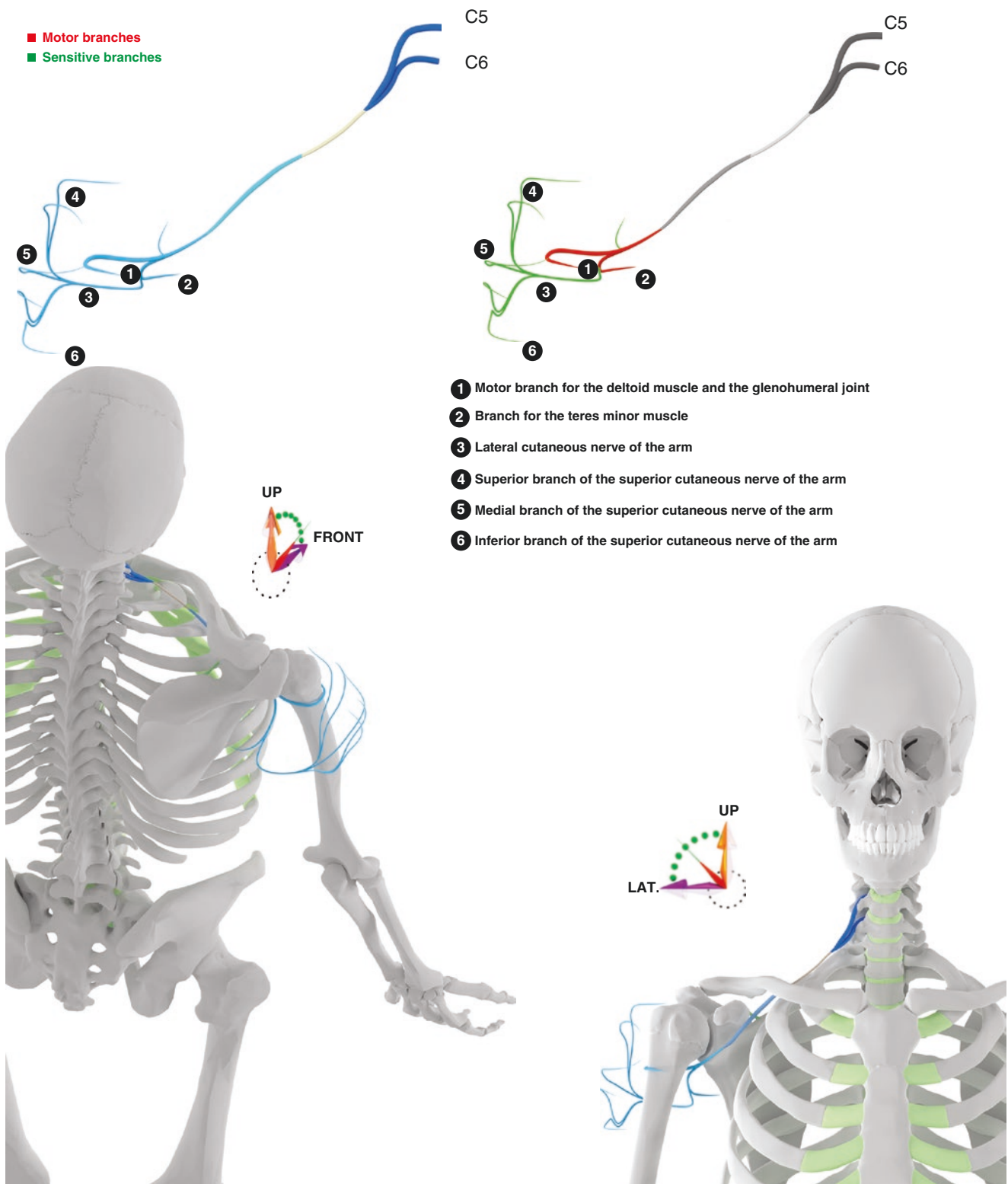
Terminal Branches

The terminal branches of the axillary nerve are constituted by several motor branches for the deep face of the deltoid muscle (Figures Ax7, Ax8, Ax9 and Ax10).



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

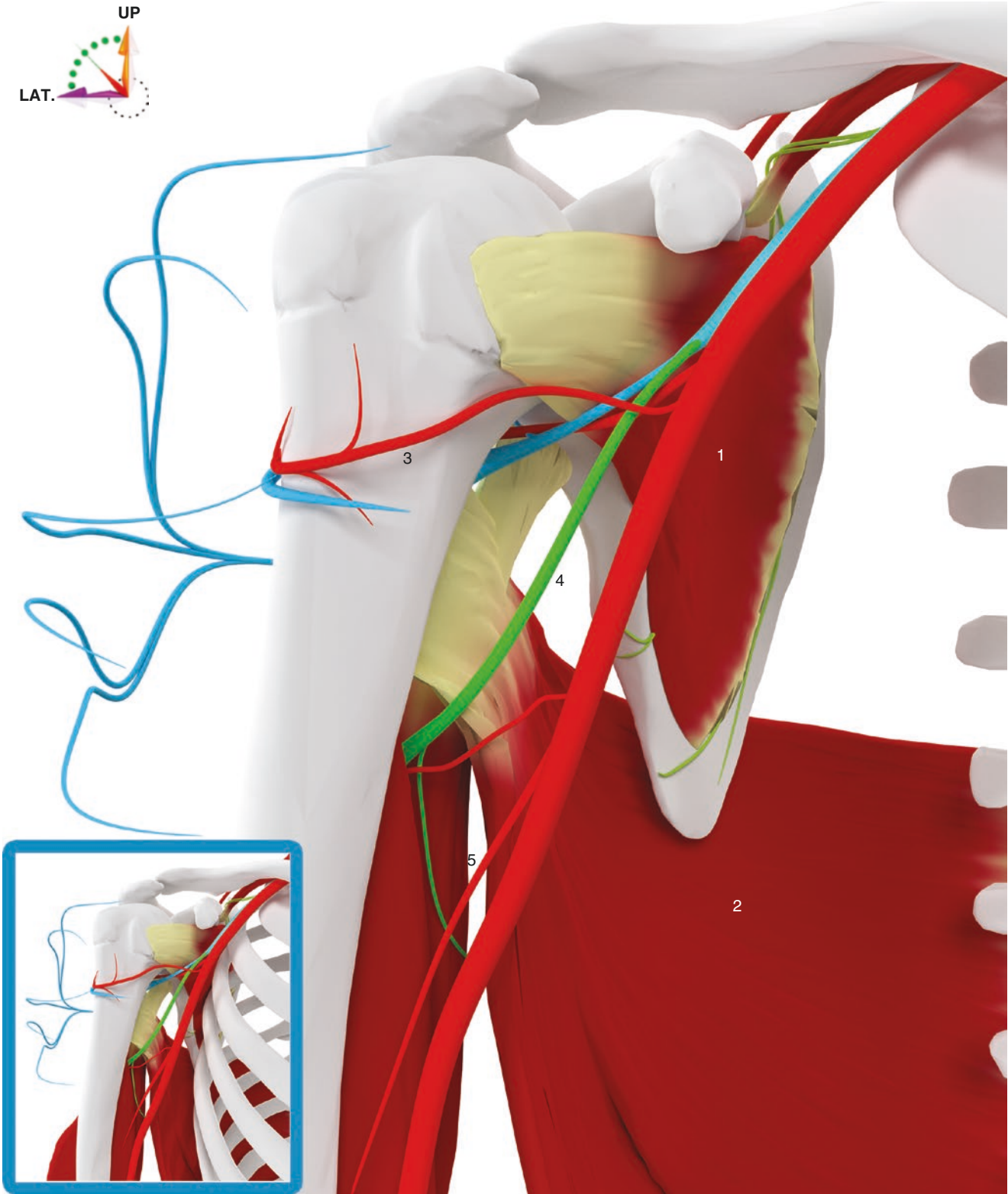
Figure Ax1. Origin of the axillary nerve



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

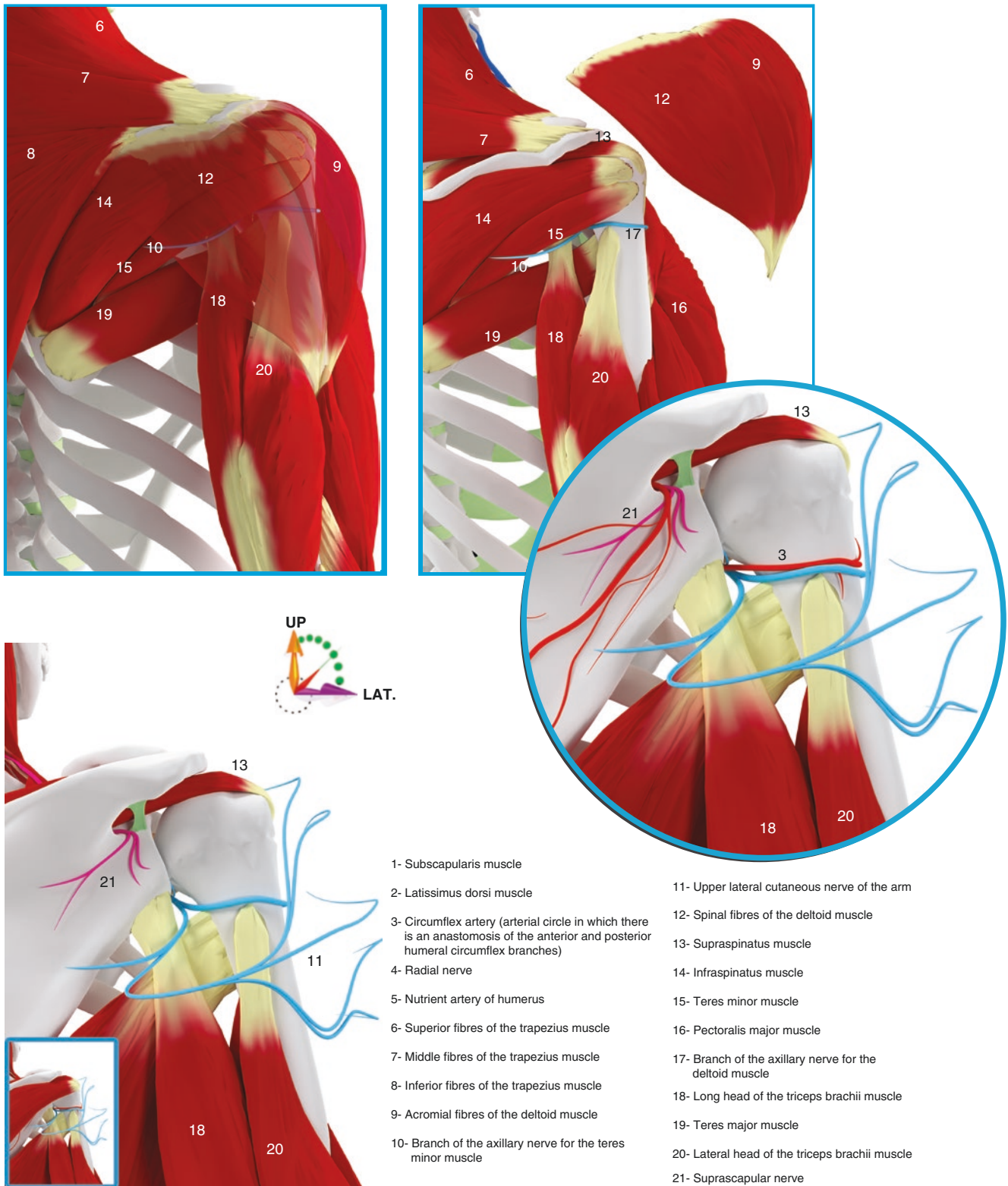
Figure Ax2. Topographical distribution of the axillary nerve and its relations with bones

The Axillary Nerve



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

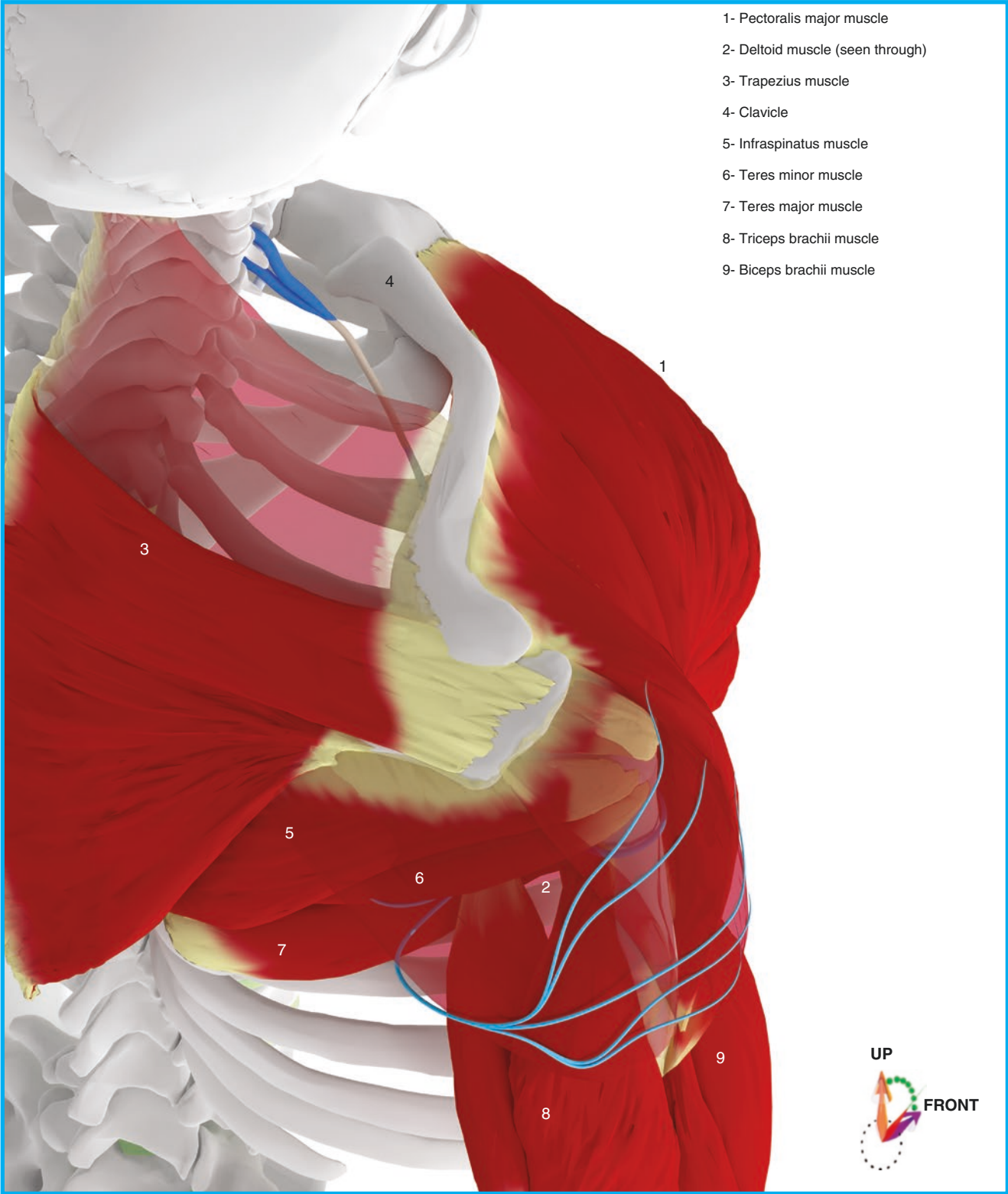
Figure Ax3. Path of the axillary nerve and anterior view of its terminal branches



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

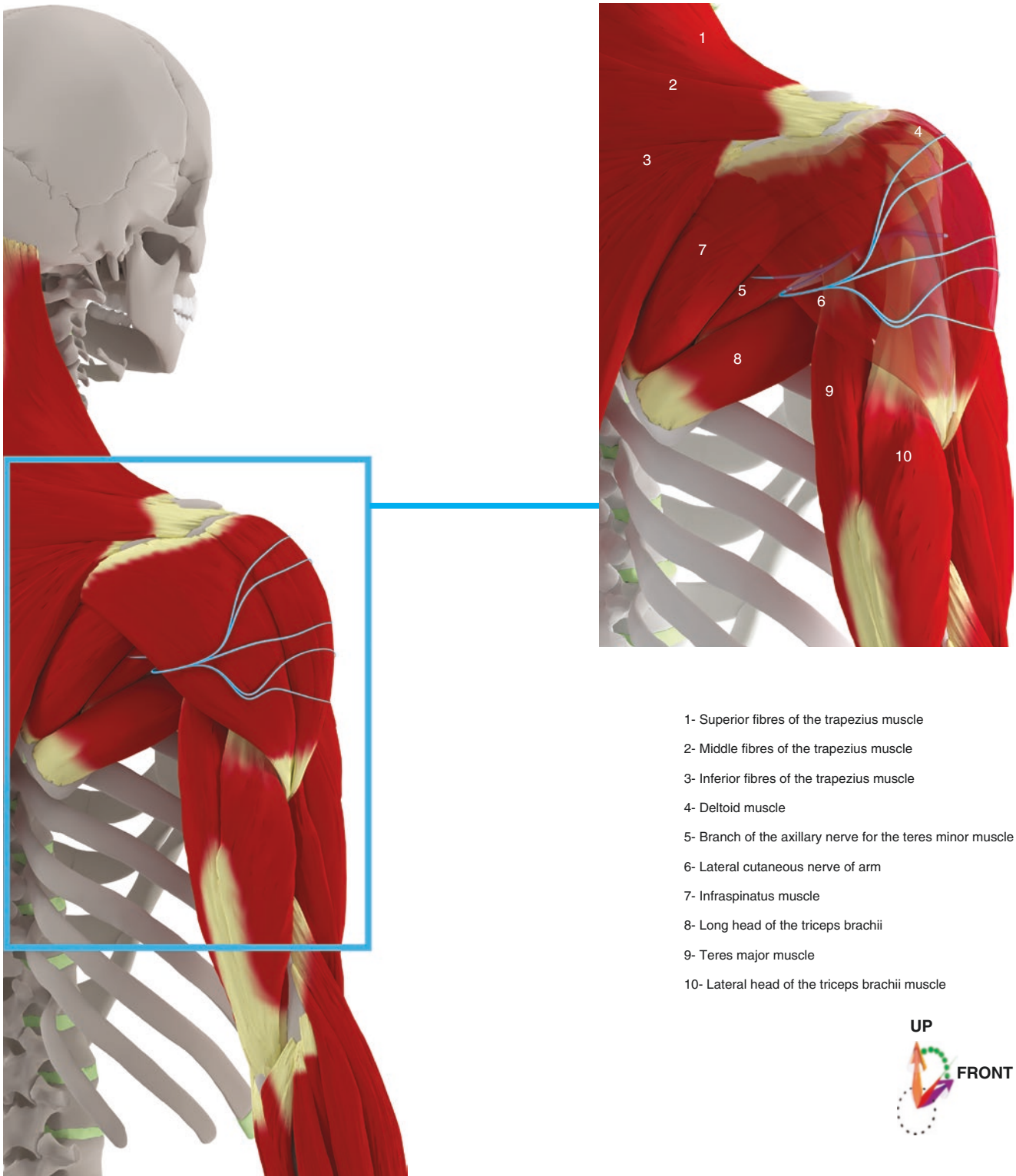
Figure Ax4. Posterior view of the axillary spaces showing the path of the axillary nerve (from superficial to deep)

The Axillary Nerve



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure Ax5. View from above of the lateral cutaneous nerve at the shoulder in contact with the deltoid muscle



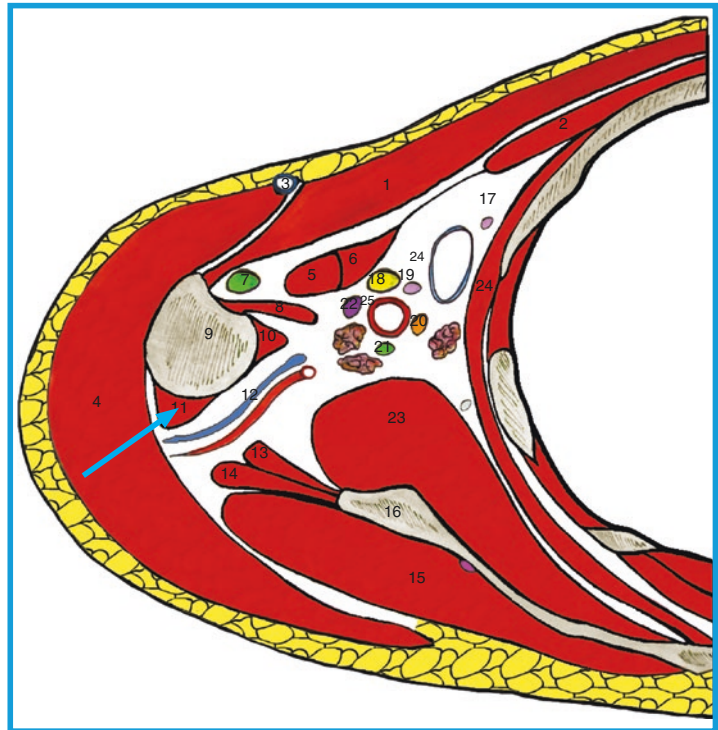
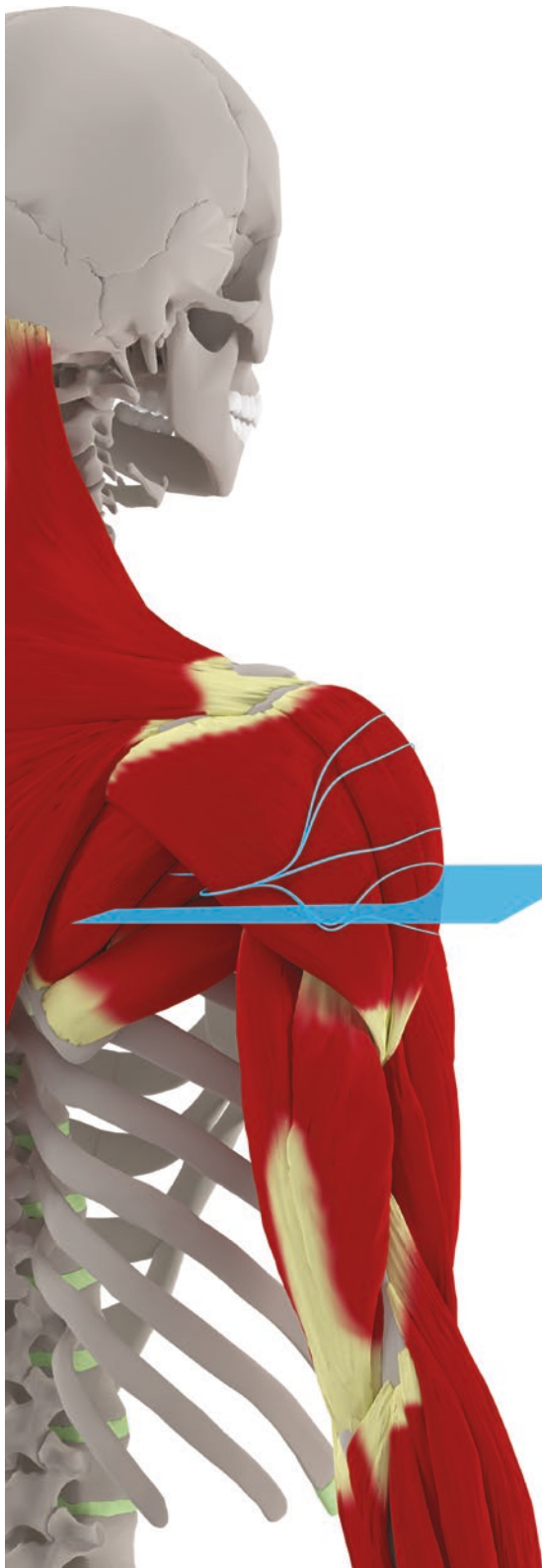
- 1- Superior fibres of the trapezius muscle
- 2- Middle fibres of the trapezius muscle
- 3- Inferior fibres of the trapezius muscle
- 4- Deltoid muscle
- 5- Branch of the axillary nerve for the teres minor muscle
- 6- Lateral cutaneous nerve of arm
- 7- Infraspinatus muscle
- 8- Long head of the triceps brachii
- 9- Teres major muscle
- 10- Lateral head of the triceps brachii muscle









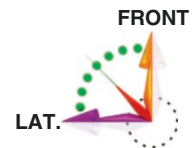
© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure Ax6. Sensitive branches of the axillary nerve in the shoulder (posterior view)

The Axillary Nerve

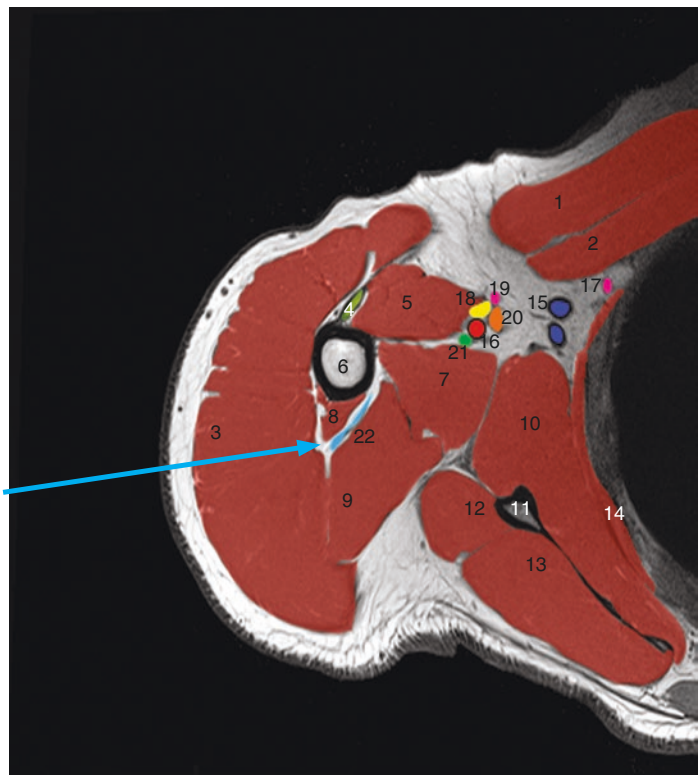
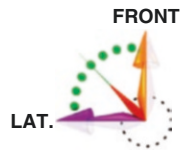


- | | |
|---|------------------------------|
| 1- Pectoralis major muscle | 21- Radial nerve |
| 2- Pectoralis minor muscle | 22- Musculocutaneous nerve |
| 3- Cephalic vein | 23- Subscapular muscle |
| 4- Deltoid muscle | 24- Serratus anterior muscle |
| 5- Short head of the biceps brachii muscle | |
| 6- Coracobrachialis muscle | |
| 7- Tendon of the long head of the biceps brachii muscle | |
| 8- Latissimus dorsi muscle | |
| 9- Humerus | |
| 10- Teres major muscle | |
| 11- Lateral head of the triceps brachii muscle | |
| 12- Circumflex artery and axillary nerve | |
| 13- Long head of the triceps brachii muscle | |
| 14- Teres minor muscle | |
| 15- Infraspinatus muscle | |
| 16- Scapula | |
| 17- Medial cutaneous nerve of arm | |
| 18- Median nerve | |
| 19- Medial cutaneous nerve of forearm | |
| 20- Ulnar nerve | |
-
- | | |
|---|---|
|  | Axillary nerve (12) |
|  | Medial cutaneous nerve of arm (17) and forearm (19) |
|  | Median nerve (18) |
|  | Ulnar nerve (20) |
|  | Radial nerve (21) |
|  | Musculocutaneous nerve (22) |



© 2016 Riguard. All rights reserved

Figure Ax7. Relations of the axillary nerve in the shoulder in axial view



- 1- Pectoralis major muscle
- 2- Pectoralis minor muscle
- 3- Deltoid muscle
- 4- Long head of the biceps brachii muscle
- 5- Latissimus dorsi muscle
- 6- Humerus
- 7- Teres major muscle
- 8- Lateral head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 9- Medial head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 10- Subscapularis muscle
- 11- Scapula
- 12- Teres minor muscle
- 13- Infraspinatus muscle
- 14- Serratus anterior
- 15- Brachial vein
- 16- Brachial artery
- 17- Medial cutaneous nerve of arm
- 18- Median nerve
- 19- Medial cutaneous nerve of forearm
- 20- Ulnar nerve
- 21- Radial nerve
- 22- Axillary nerve

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure Ax8. MRI scans and axillary nerve in the shoulder

The Axillary Nerve

Motor Function

The axillary nerve allows abduction and lateral rotation of the arm by innervation of the deltoid muscle (Figures Ax9 and Ax10).

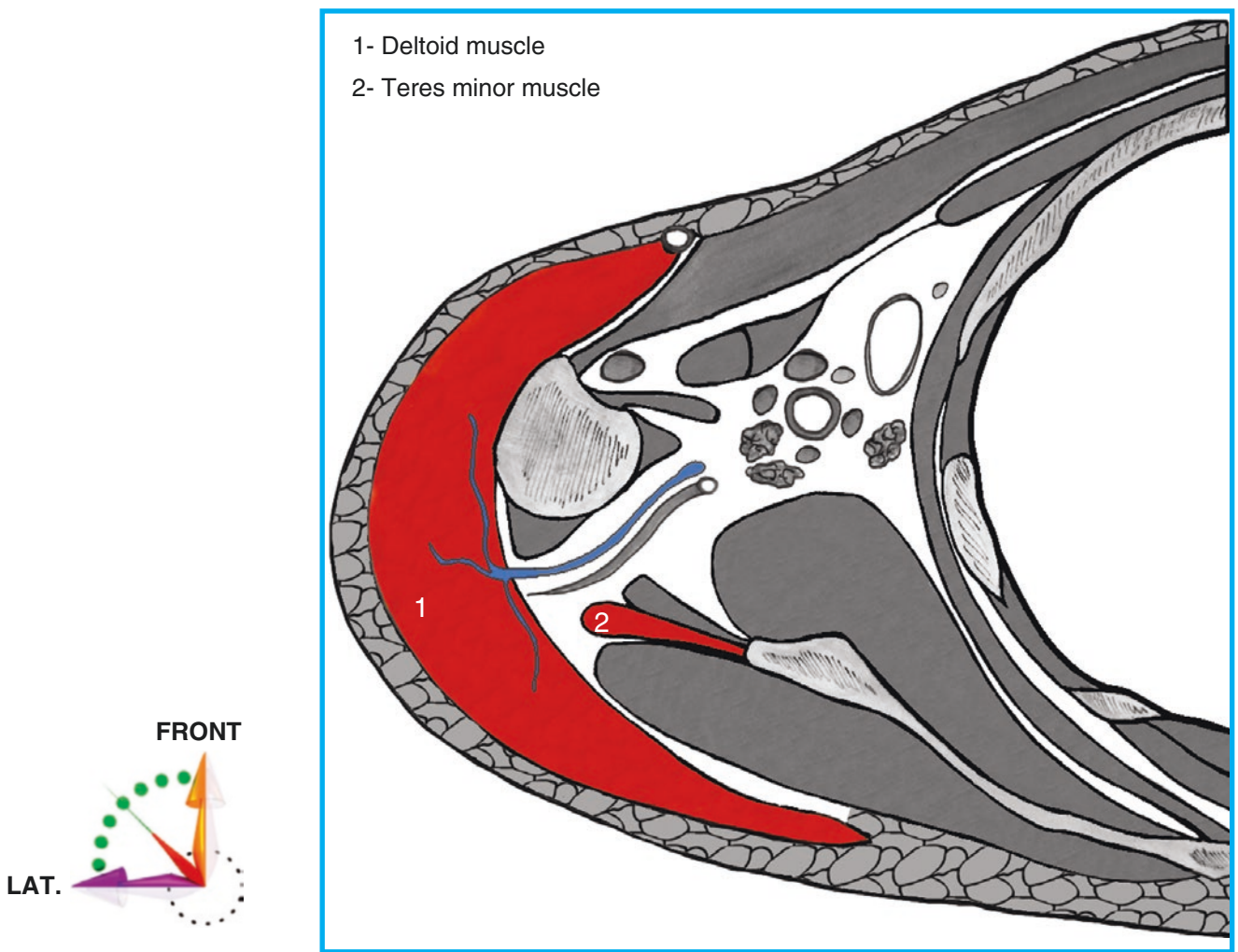
Sensitive Function

The sensitive innervation territory of the axillary nerve corresponds to the shoulder stump (Figure Ax10).

Anastomoses

The axillary nerve frequently makes anastomoses with:

- The radial nerve by way of the lateral cutaneous nerve of the arm (a collateral branch of the axillary nerve) to join the posterior cutaneous nerve of the arm
- The medial cutaneous nerve of the arm, which is a terminal branch of the medial cord of the brachial plexus



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure Ax9. Motor innervation of the axillary nerve (axial view)

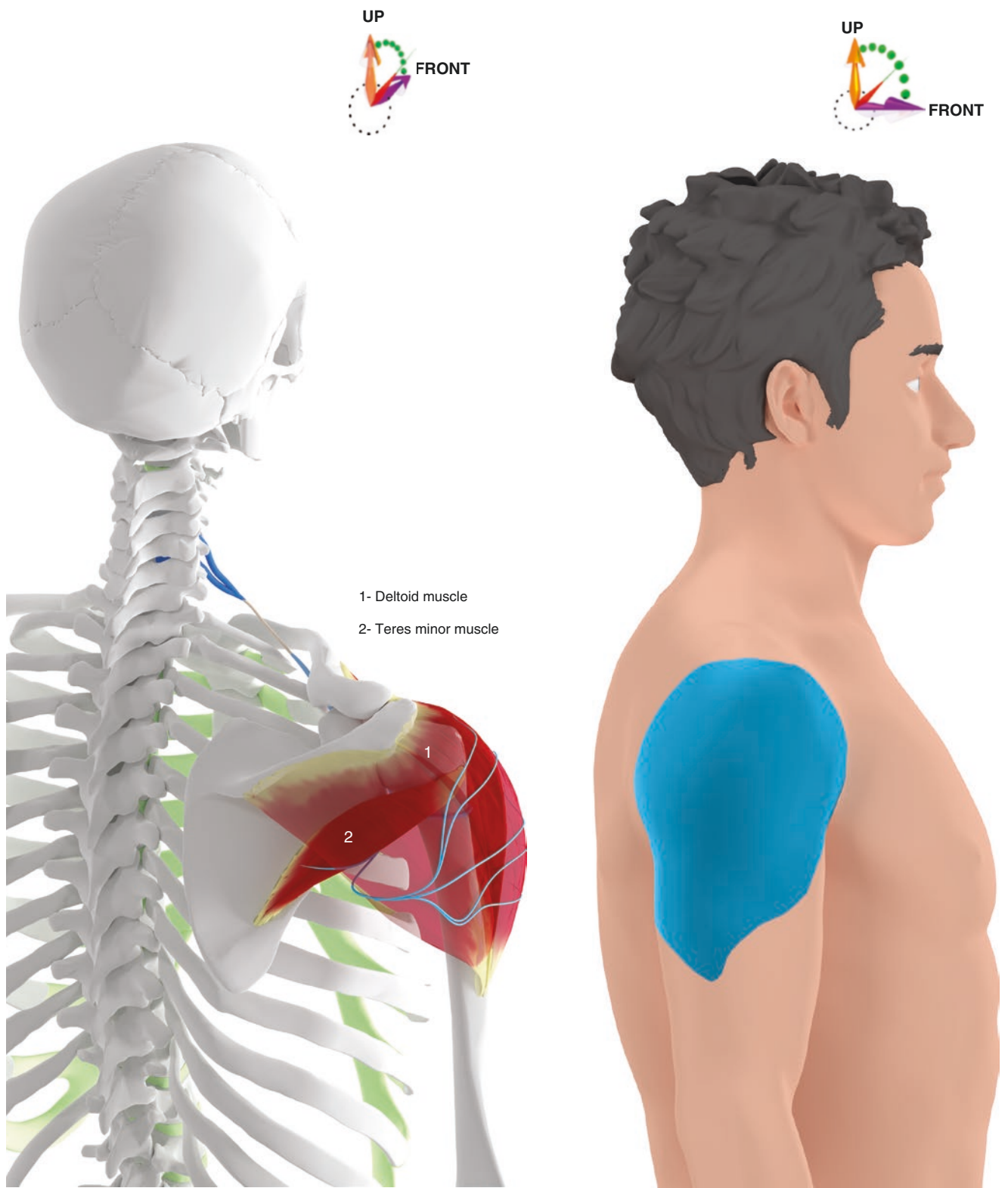


Figure Ax10. Motor and sensitive innervation of the axillary nerve

Pathology

The axillary nerve can be damaged when it crosses the lateral axillary space (formerly known as the quadrilateral space of Velpeau). This space is laterally limited by the humerus, medially by the long head of the triceps brachialis, above it by the teres minor muscle and below it by the teres major muscle (Figure Ax11).

Aetiology

- **Traction:** This is the most frequent mechanism of injury, generally during an anterior inferior scapulohumeral dislocation. A stretching of the arm in abduction also causes traction on the axillary nerve, which may not be isolated. A fracture at the level of the superior extremity of the humerus can, if proximal, affect the axillary nerve along with the radial nerve, or the musculocutaneous and supra-scapular nerves. In most cases, obstetric lesions affect the brachial plexus, not its peripheral terminal branches.
- **Section:** An isolated section of the axillary nerve can occur in posterior injury in the lateral axillary space.
- **Compression:** The use of traditional “crutches” (with sub-axillary support) can compress the axillary nerve in the lateral axillary space. This can be avoided by the use of elbow crutches. Chronic compressions, encountered mostly in people who do large amounts of sport activities, are caused by a muscular compression by repeated movements of abduction and lateral rotation of the arm. It is then considered as a real entrapment neuropathy.

If no mechanical or traumatic cause can be found, it is important not to overlook a nerve compression by a cyst or any other swelling. An MRI examination of the axillary spaces is highly recommended.

Clinical Significance

- **Sensitive signs:** In the event of a chronic entrapment neuropathy, pain in the axillary nerve area is sporadic, with a definite neuropathic character consisting of intense pain with a burn-type feeling, more intense during night-time and on which traditional analgesics have no effect. Aforementioned anastomoses may allow for partial sensitive substitution in the case of a damaged axillary nerve. Pain can become more intense during palpation in the area of the lateral axillary space under the teres minor muscle on the posterior face of the shoulder.

- **Motor signs:** The motor innervation of the deltoid muscle is exclusively dependant on the axillary nerve; an injury of this nerve will cause an amyotrophy in the shoulder. A detailed examination of the shoulder and of the whole upper limb is compulsory. Indeed, the axillary nerve is rarely the only thing damaged in such cases. A neurological and functional examination of the whole limb helps to find injury in other branches of the brachial plexus (generally the radial or suprascapular nerves).

Clinical Forms

A fracture at the superior extremity of the humerus, at the level of its surgical neck, can cause an injury of the axillary nerve and in turn a traction of the radial nerve at the level of the radial nerve’s groove.

Complementary Examinations

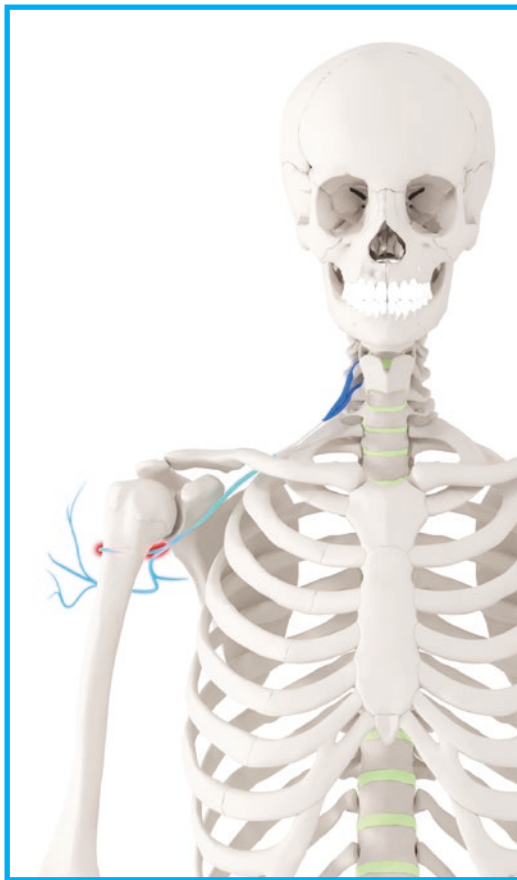
- **Shoulder radiography**
These can be executed in a front view, in a neutral position, in a position of medial and lateral rotation and in the Y view. Radiographies allow the detection of indirect signs of a rotator cuff-related pathology.
- **Electromyography**
Even though its execution is rather difficult, electromyography helps objectify an electrophysiological injury of the axillary nerve, isolated or not.
- **Imaging of the soft parts of the shoulder**

An MRI of the armpit area is the best option. Further examination with an arthrogram can also be very informative.

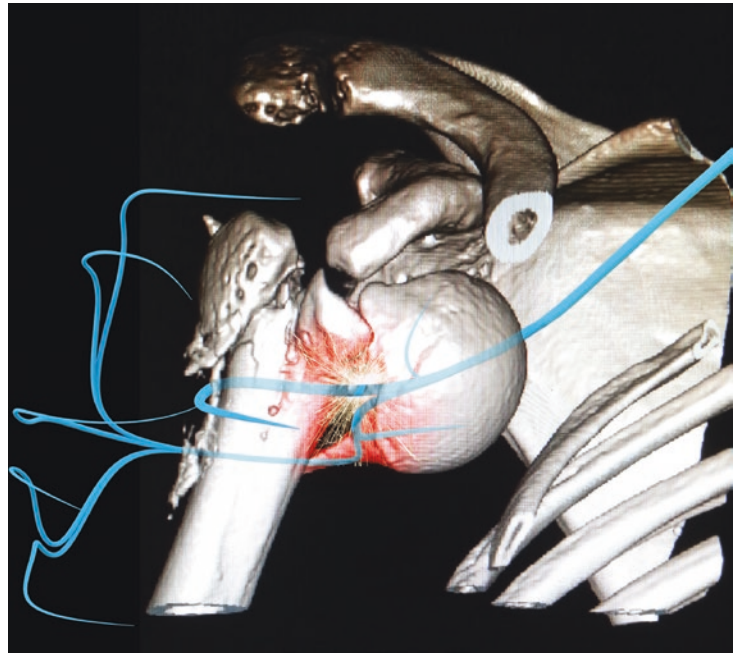
Treatment

In proven cases of entrapment neuropathy, the first treatment consists in putting the glenohumeral joint to rest. An infiltration of corticosteroids in the lateral axillary space allows for temporary relief of pain, especially in the case of pathologies associated with the rotator cuffs.

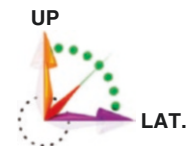
If conservative treatment fails and no orthopaedic cause can be found, a surgical treatment option is decompression. This treatment is only prescribed after 3 months without benefit from rest, physiotherapy and infiltration of the lateral axillary space.



A



B



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure Ax11. Pathologies of the axillary nerve. (a) 3D reconstruction of a complex fracture of the neck of humerus. From a clinical point of view, an anaesthesia of the stump and a deficit of abduction of the shoulder can be observed. (b) Patient showing a disuse atrophy of the left shoulder after a motorcycle accident



The Axillary Nerve

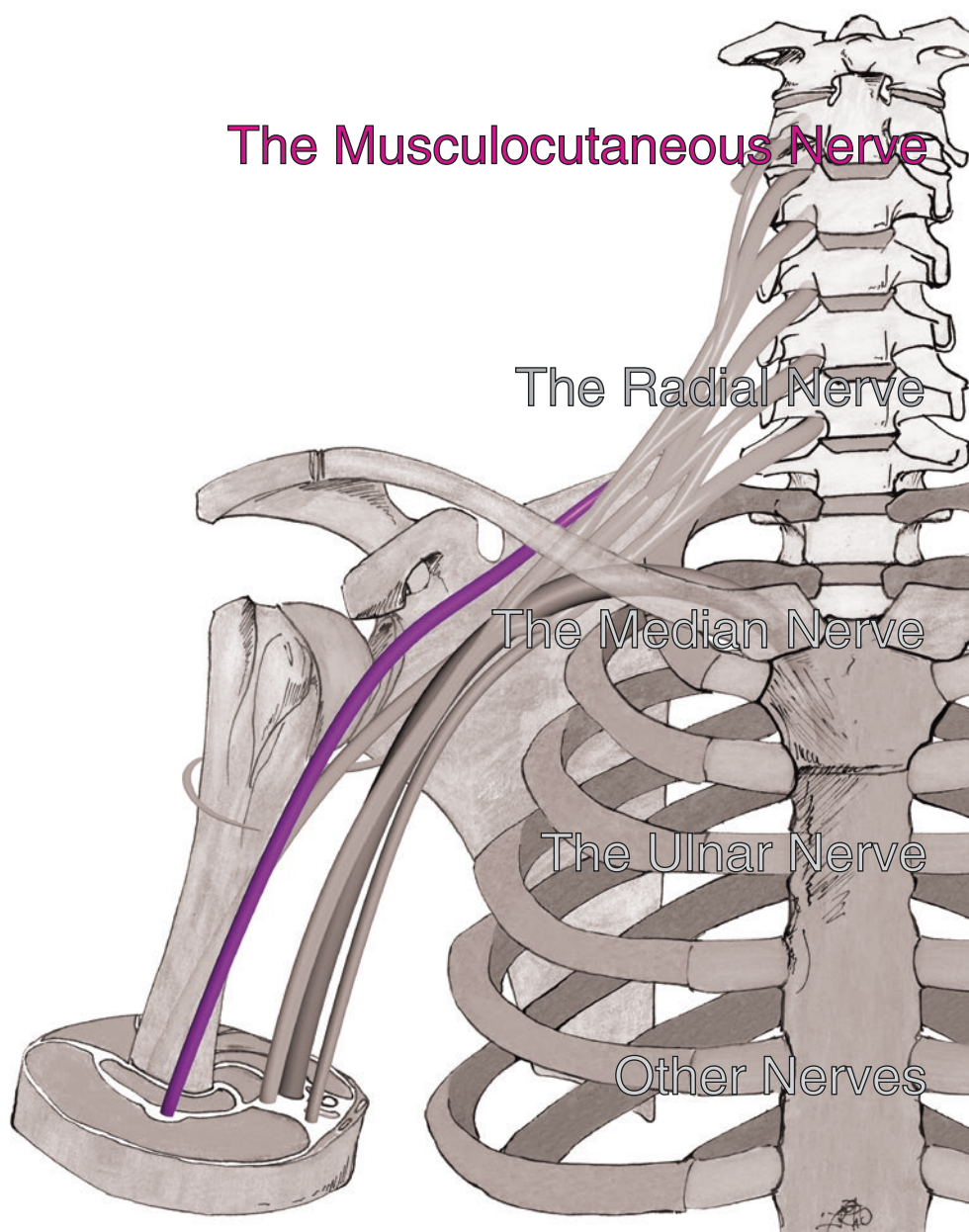
The Musculocutaneous Nerve

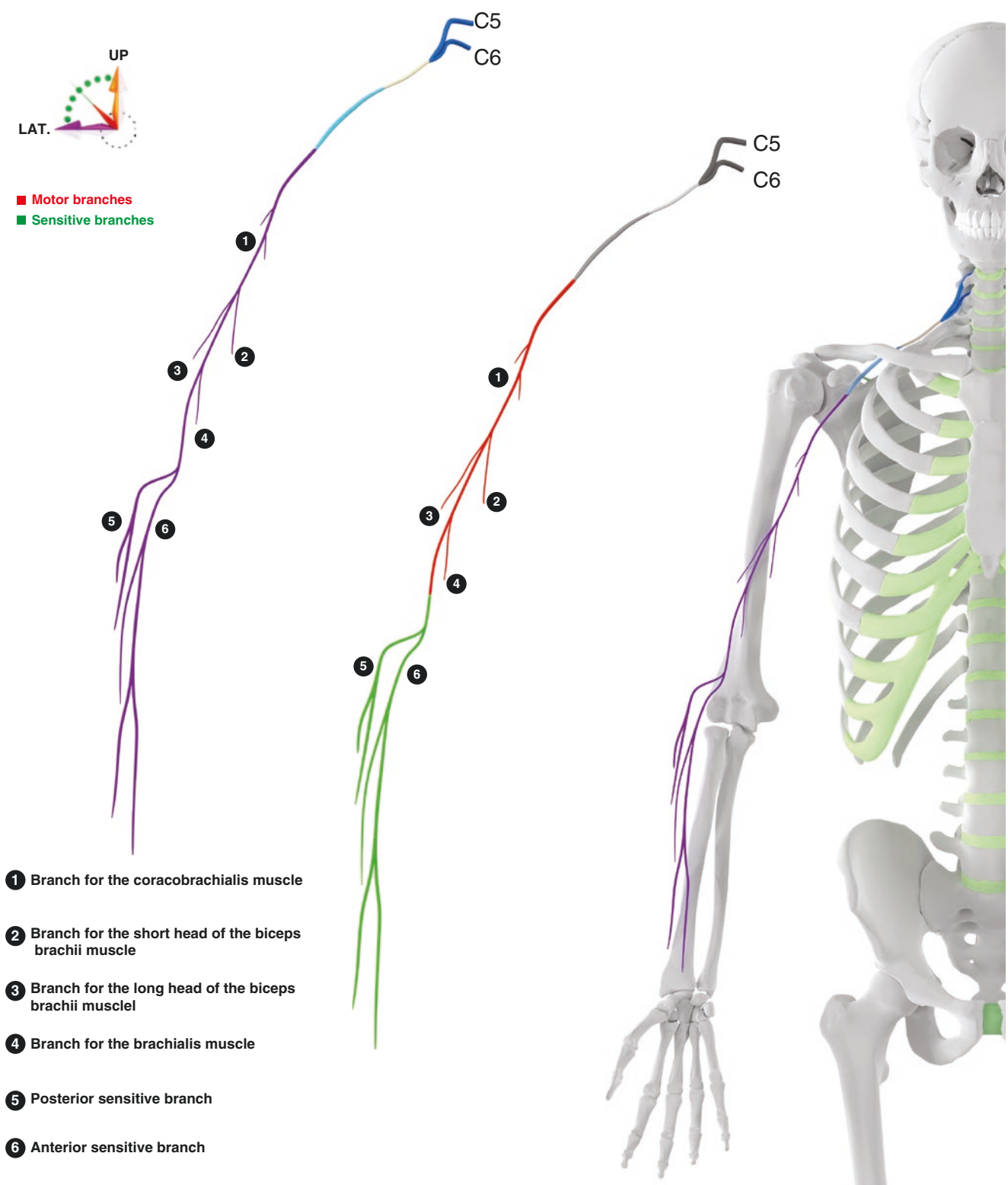
The Radial Nerve

The Median Nerve

The Ulnar Nerve

Other Nerves

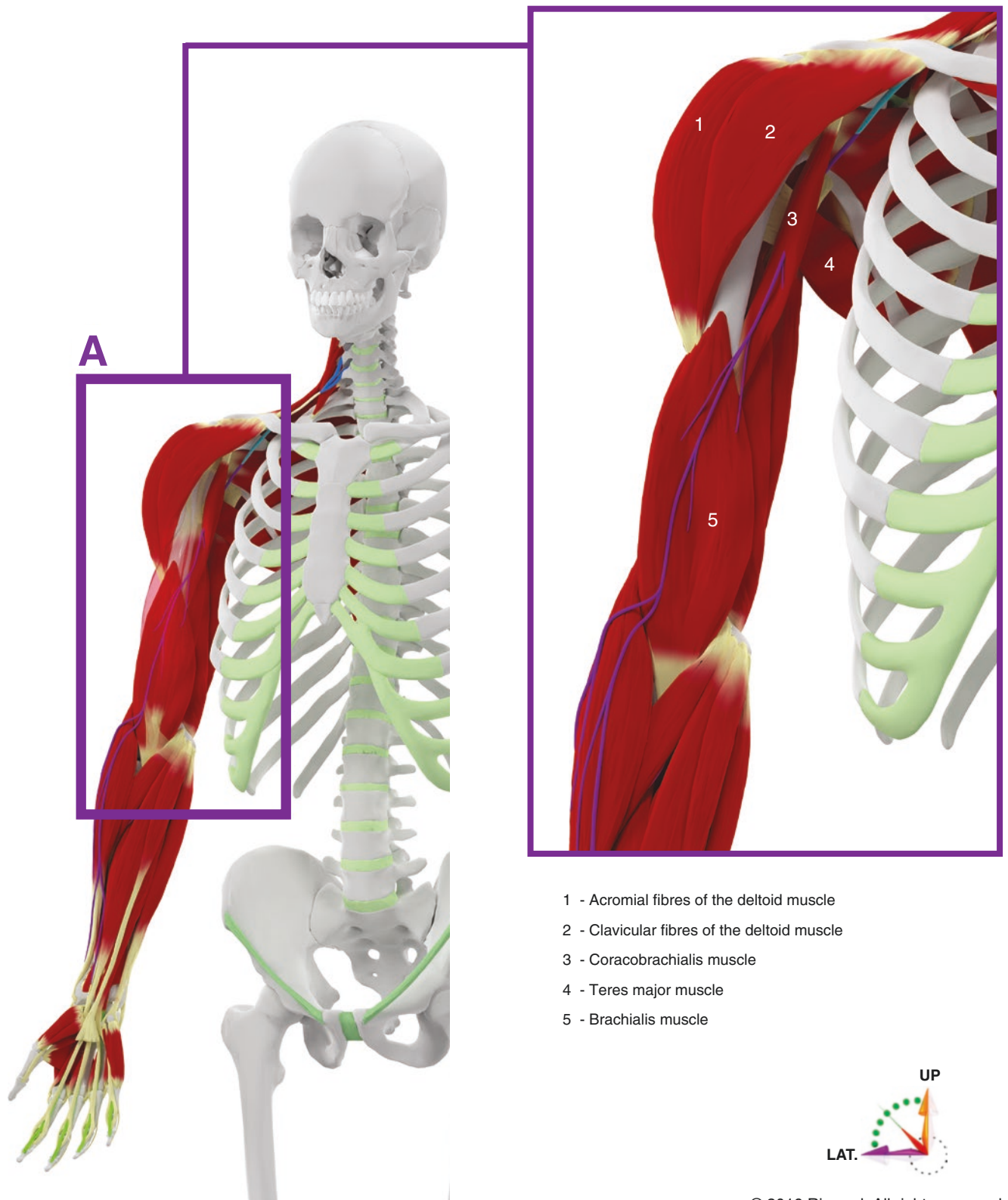




© 2016 Riquard. All rights reserved

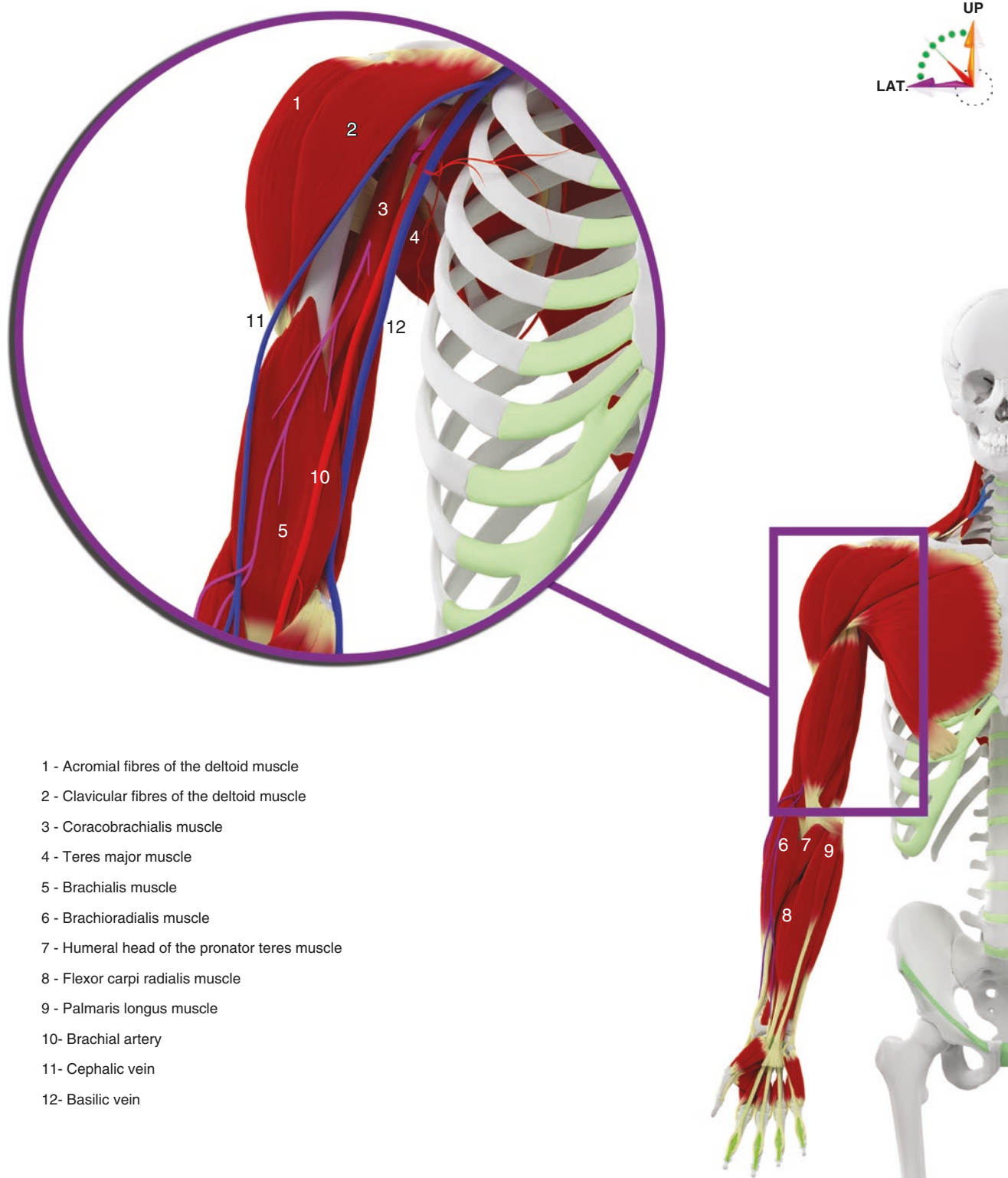
Figure MC2. Distribution of the musculocutaneous nerve and its relations with bones

The Musculocutaneous Nerve



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure MC3. Relations of the musculocutaneous nerve with muscles in the arm

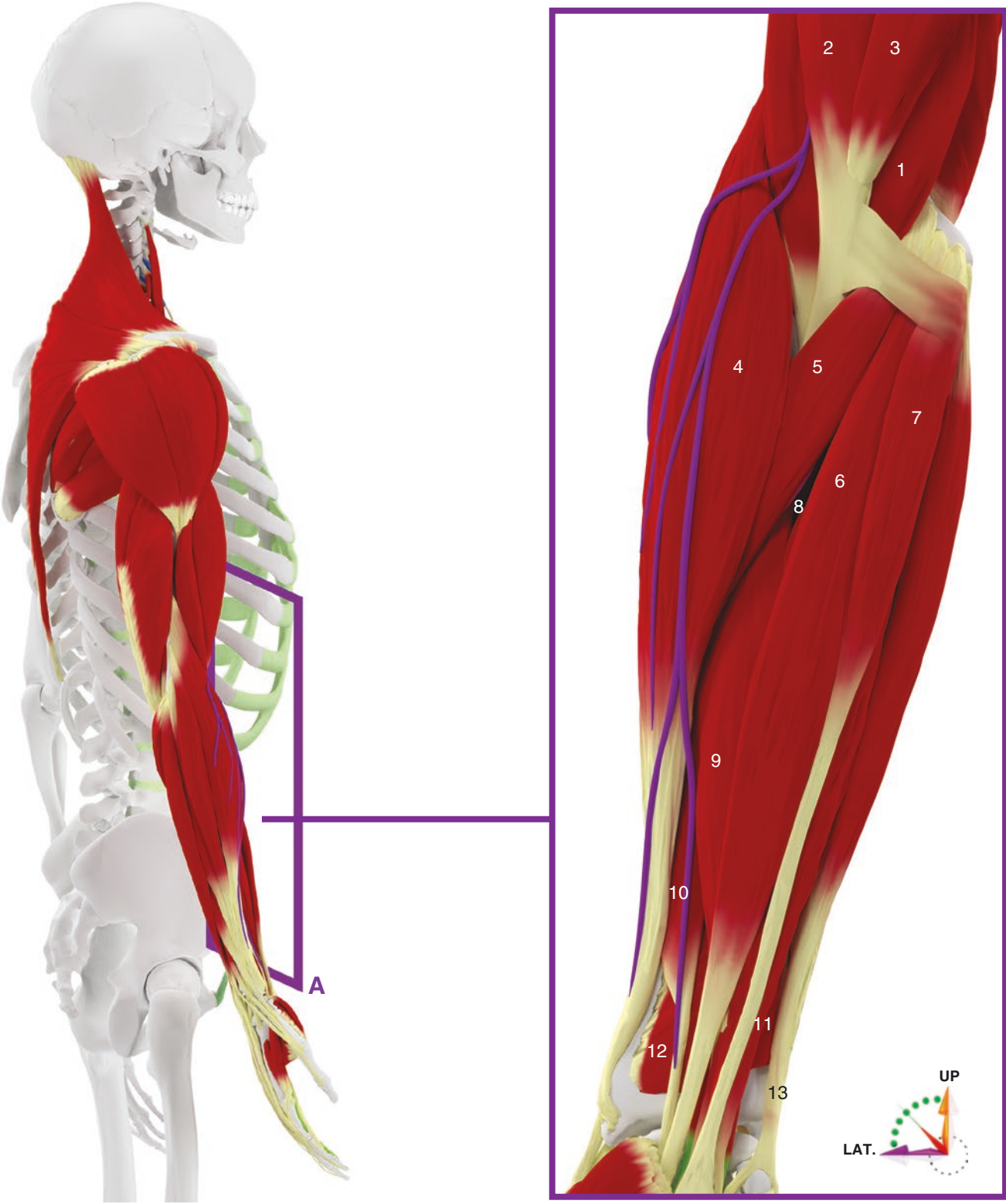


- 1 - Acromial fibres of the deltoid muscle
- 2 - Clavicular fibres of the deltoid muscle
- 3 - Coracobrachialis muscle
- 4 - Teres major muscle
- 5 - Brachialis muscle
- 6 - Brachioradialis muscle
- 7 - Humeral head of the pronator teres muscle
- 8 - Flexor carpi radialis muscle
- 9 - Palmaris longus muscle
- 10- Brachial artery
- 11- Cephalic vein
- 12- Basilic vein

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure MC4. Neurovascular relations as the musculocutaneous nerve goes through the coracobrachialis muscle

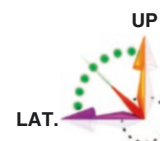
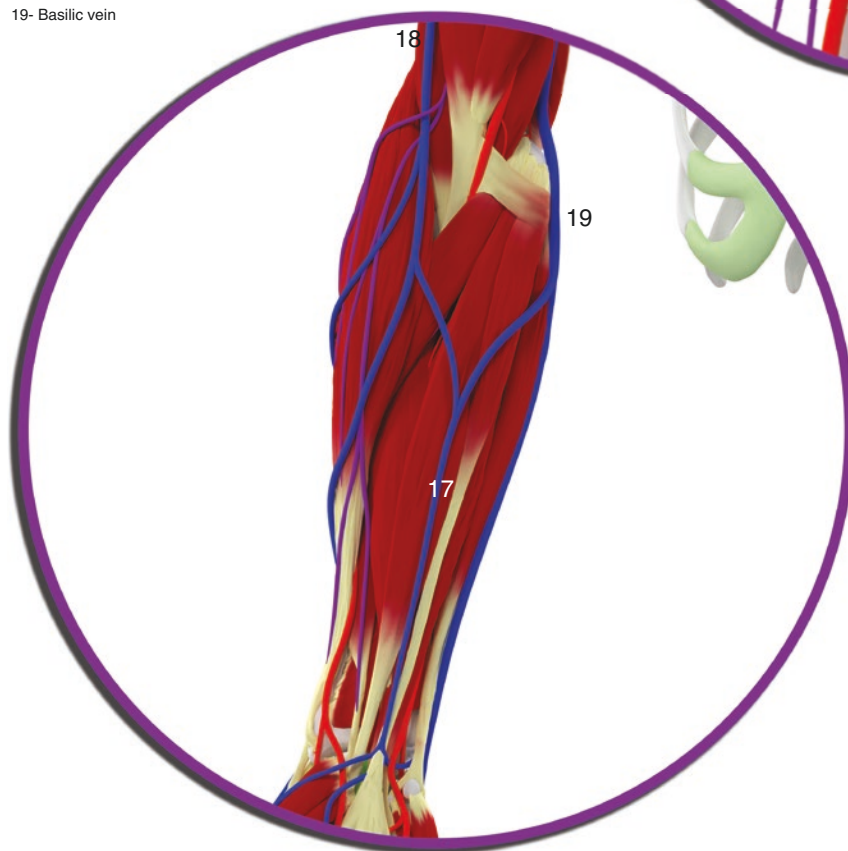
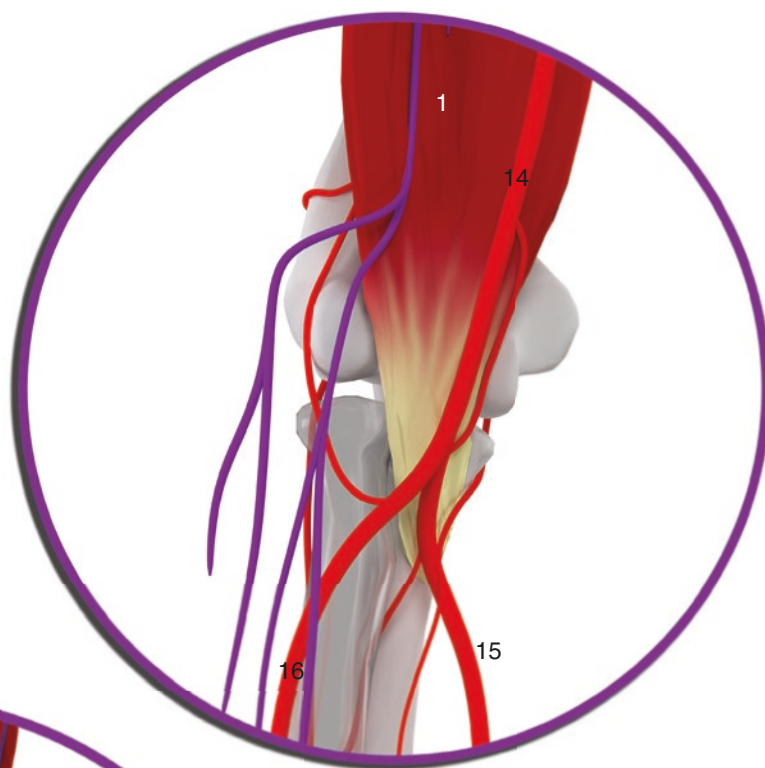
The Musculocutaneous Nerve



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure MC5. Relations of the musculocutaneous nerve in the forearm

- 1 - Brachialis muscle
- 2 - Long head of the biceps brachii muscle
- 3 - Short head of the biceps brachii muscle
- 4 - Brachioradialis muscle
- 5 - Humeral head of the pronator teres muscle
- 6 - Flexor carpi radialis muscle
- 7 - Palmaris longus muscle
- 8 - Humeral head of the flexor digitorum superficialis muscle
- 9 - Radial head of the flexor digitorum superficialis muscle
- 10 - Flexor pollicis longus muscle
- 11 - Flexor digitorum profundus muscle
- 12 - Pronator quadratus muscle
- 13 - Flexor carpi ulnaris muscle
- 14 - Brachial artery
- 15 - Ulnar artery
- 16 - Radial artery
- 17 - Median antebrachial vein
- 18 - Cephalic vein
- 19 - Basilic vein



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure MC6. Sensitive terminal branches of the musculocutaneous nerve and neurovascular relations

The Musculocutaneous Nerve

In the elbow, the musculocutaneous nerve lies against the brachialis muscle at the level of its distal insertions. The radial recurrent artery is located behind these, sticking closely to the lateral epicondyle (Figure MC6).

The division branches of the lateral cutaneous nerve of the forearm, itself being a terminal branch of the musculocutaneous nerve, are situated in the upper layers and part from the main arteries of the arm (Figure MC6).

Collateral Branches

The musculocutaneous nerve innervates the following branches in its path:

- A diaphyseal branch for the humerus.
- Vascular branches, heading towards the axillary artery and the brachial artery.
- Muscle branches linked to the brachial muscle, biceps brachii and coracobrachialis muscle. The latter generally receives two branches, an upper branch that parts from the nerve near its origin point and a lower branch, more remote (Figures MC2 and MC13).

Terminal Branches

The musculocutaneous nerve ends when it goes through the biceps brachii's aponeurosis at the level of the elbow pit and then becomes the lateral cutaneous nerve of the forearm.

The lateral cutaneous nerve of the forearm consists of two branches, one being anterior and the other posterior. They both make their way along the cephalic vein mostly to innervate the lateral face of the forearm (Figures MC6, MC14 and MC15).

Motor Function

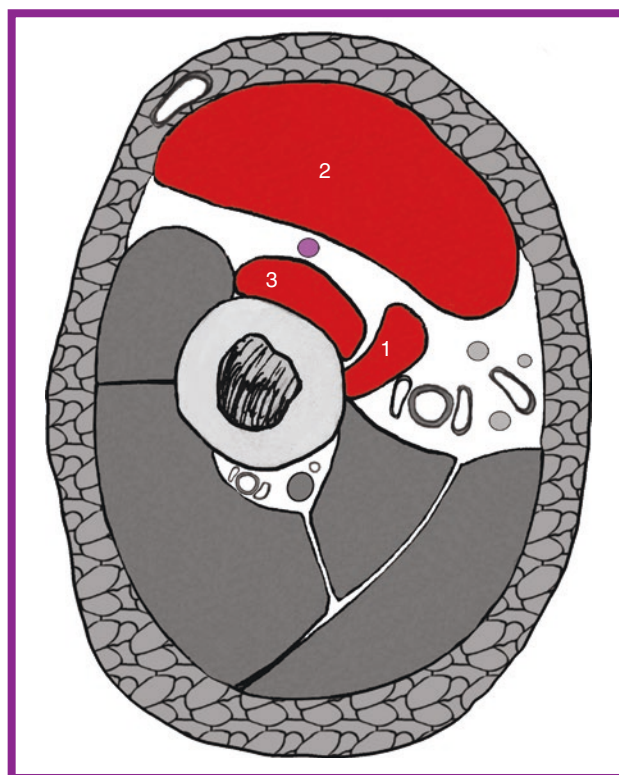
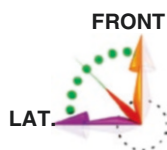
The musculocutaneous nerve innervates the coracobrachialis, biceps brachii and brachial muscles. It is thus meant for the flexion of the forearm on the arm and secondarily for supination thanks to the innervation of the biceps brachii muscle (Figures MC7 and MC8).

Sensitive Function

The sensitive function of the nerve is assured by its terminal branch, the lateral cutaneous nerve of the forearm. Its anterior branch heads towards the thenar eminence but does not take care of its innervation, and its posterior branch to the posterior and lateral face of the forearm (Figure MC8).

Anastomoses

The median nerve receives, in most cases, a branch of the musculocutaneous nerve. This nerve achieves an anastomosis at the level of the forearm with the radial nerve and on the dorsal face of the hand with the ulnar nerve.

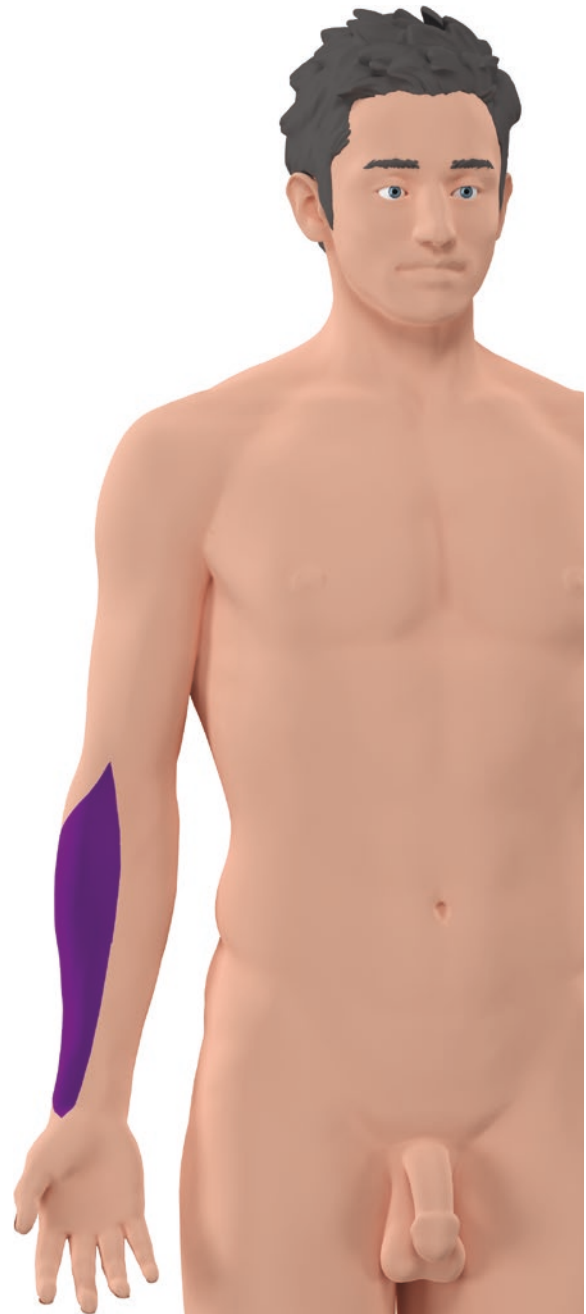
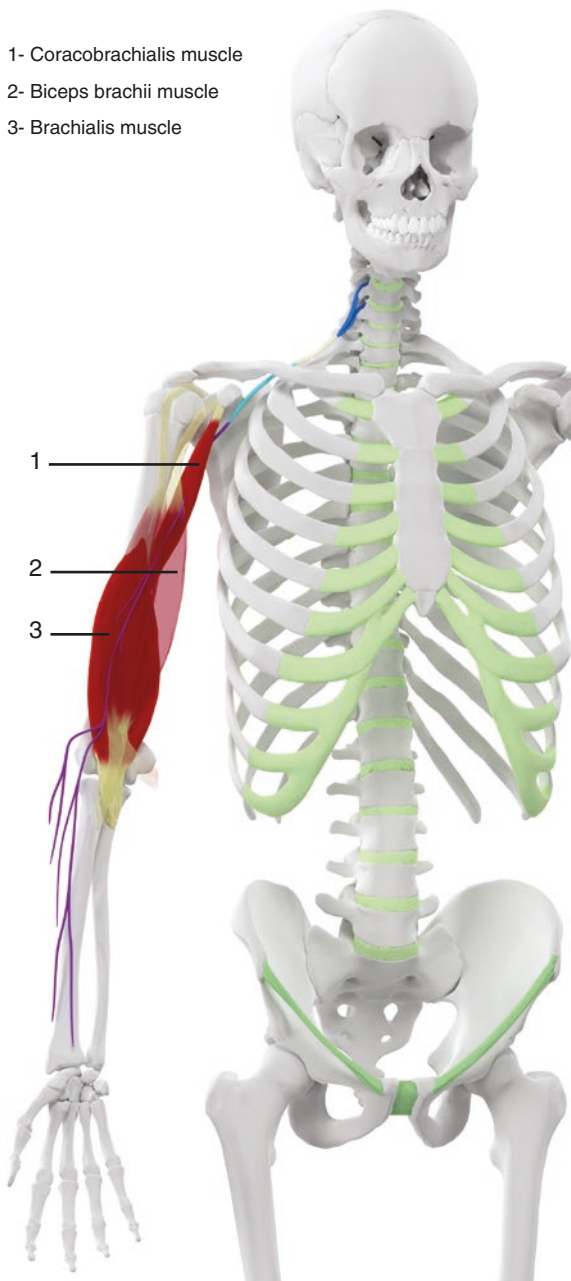


© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure MC7. Motor innervation of the musculocutaneous nerve



- 1- Coracobrachialis muscle
- 2- Biceps brachii muscle
- 3- Brachialis muscle

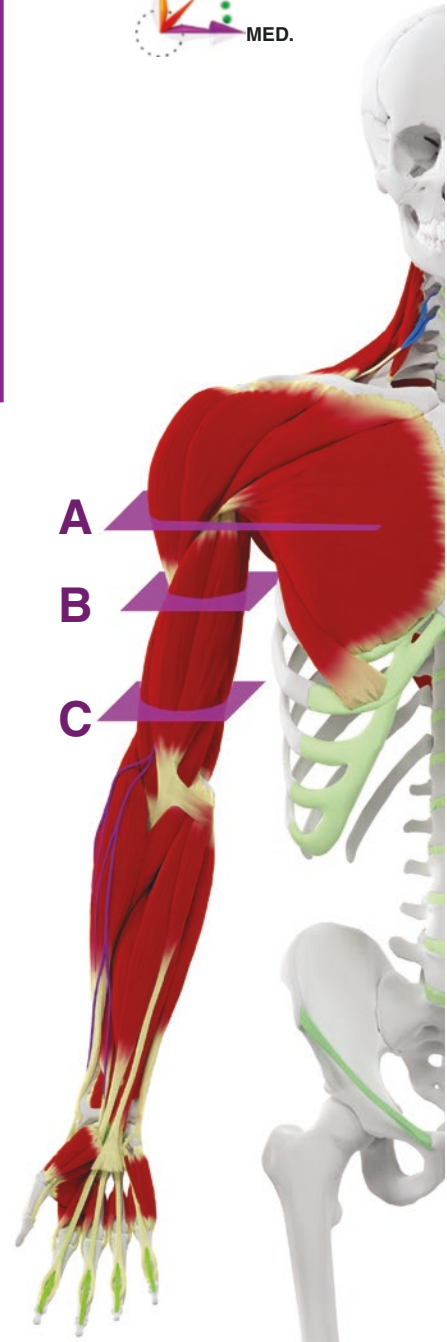
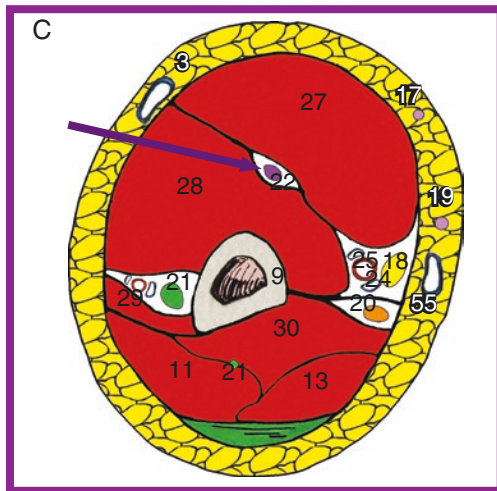
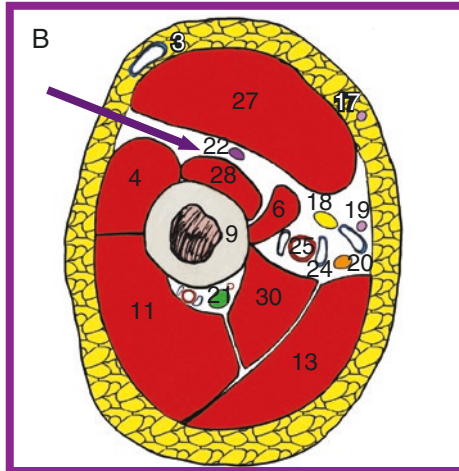
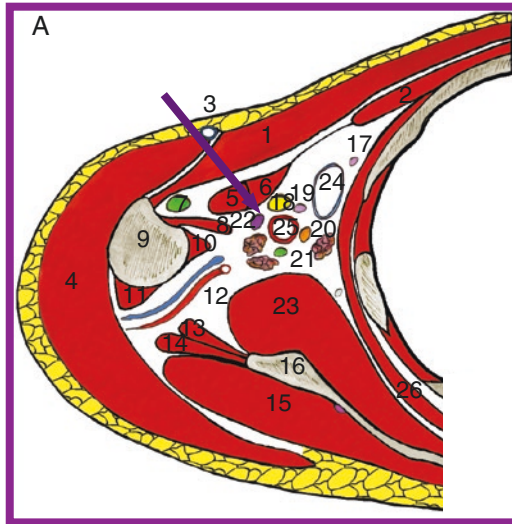


© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure MC8. Motor (a) and sensitive (b) innervation of the musculocutaneous nerve

The Musculocutaneous Nerve

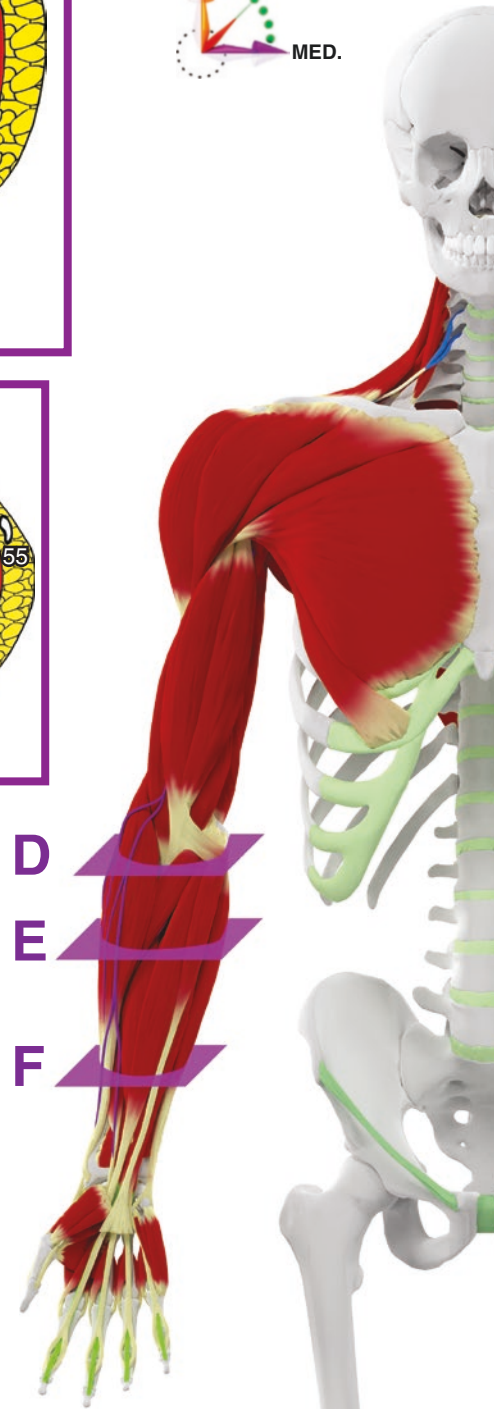
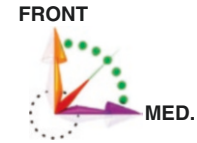
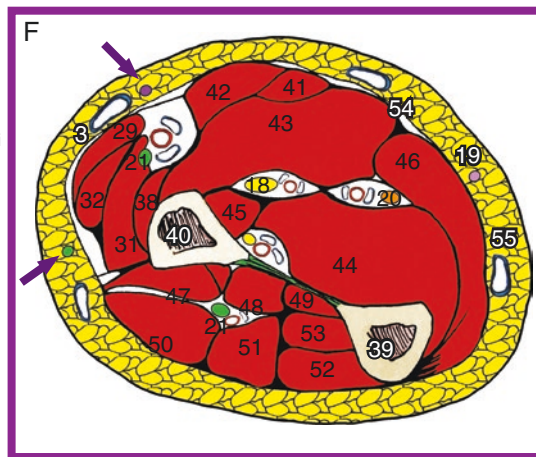
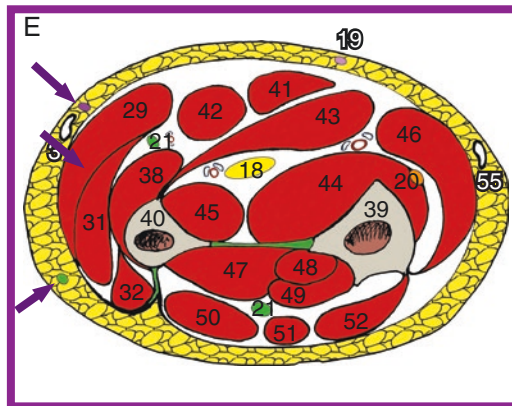
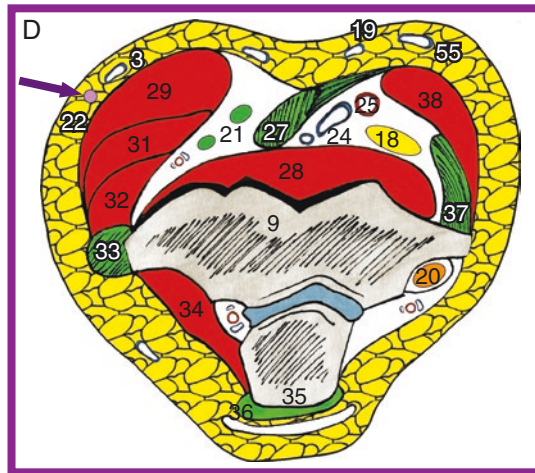
- 1- Pectoralis major muscle
- 2- Pectoralis minor muscle
- 3- Cephalic vein
- 4- Deltoid muscle
- 5- Short head of the biceps brachii muscle
- 6- Coracobrachialis muscle
- 7- Tendon of the long head of the biceps brachii muscle
- 8- Latissimus dorsi muscle
- 9- Humerus
- 10- Teres major muscle
- 11- Lateral head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 12- Circumflex artery and axillary nerve
- 13- Long head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 14- Teres minor muscle
- 15- Infraspinatus muscle
- 16- Scapula
- 17- Medial cutaneous nerve of arm
- 18- Median nerve
- 19- Medial cutaneous nerve of forearm
- 20- Ulnar nerve
- 21- Radial nerve
- 22- Musculocutaneous nerve
- 23- Subscapularis muscle
- 24- Brachial vein
- 25- Brachial artery
- 26- Serratus anterior muscle
- 27- Biceps brachii muscle



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure MC9. Relations of the musculocutaneous nerve in the arm, axial views

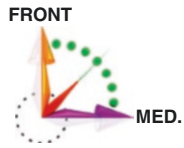
- 28- Brachialis muscle
- 29- Brachioradialis muscle
- 30- Medial head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 31- Extensor carpi radialis longus muscle
- 32- Extensor carpi radialis brevis muscle
- 33- Tendon of epicondyle muscles
- 34- Anconeus muscle
- 35- Olecranon
- 36- Tendon of the triceps brachii muscle
- 37- Tendon of the median epicondylar muscles
- 38- Pronator teres muscle
- 39- Ulna
- 40- Radius
- 41- Palmaris longus muscle
- 42- Flexor carpi radialis muscle
- 43- Flexor digitorum superficialis muscle
- 44- Flexor digitorum profundus muscle
- 45- Flexor pollicis longus muscle
- 46- Flexor carpi ulnaris muscle
- 47- Abductor pollicis longus muscle
- 48- Extensor pollicis brevis muscle
- 49- Extensor pollicis longus muscle
- 50- Extensor digitorum muscle
- 51- Extensor digiti minimi muscle
- 52- Extensor carpi ulnaris muscle
- 53- Extensor indicis muscle
- 54- Median vein of the forearm
- 55- Basilic vein



© 2016 Riguard. All rights reserved

Figure MC10. Relations of the musculocutaneous nerve in the elbow and forearm, axial views

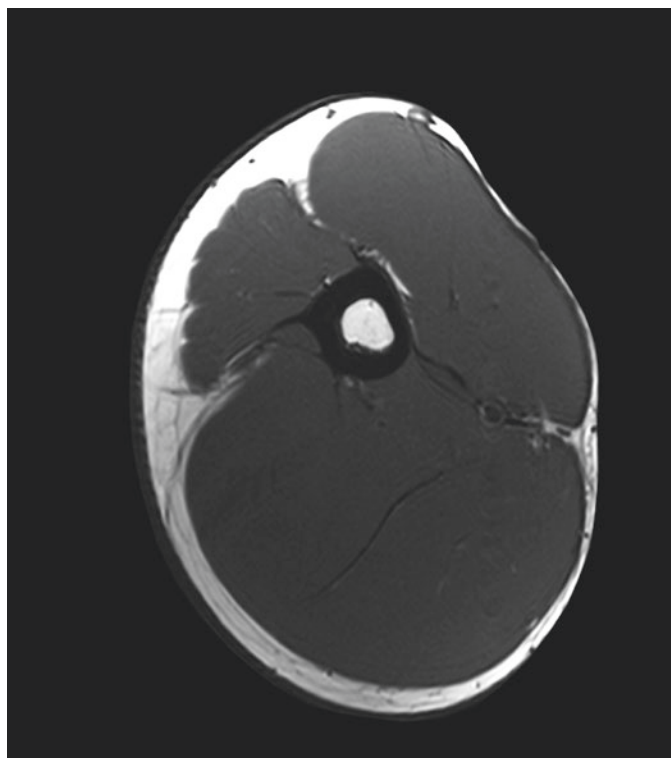
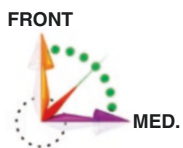
The Musculocutaneous Nerve



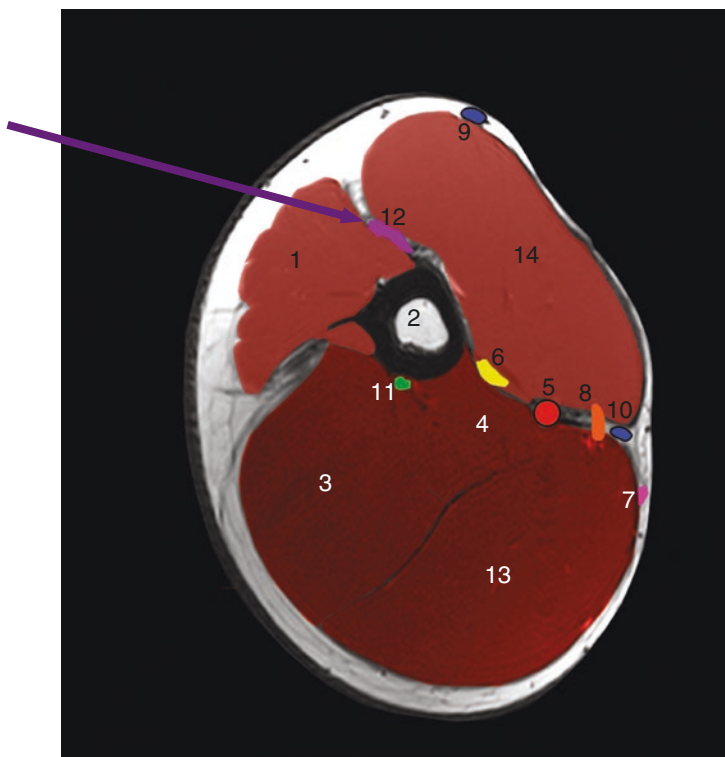
- 1- Pectoralis major muscle
- 2- Pectoralis minor muscle
- 3- Deltoid muscle
- 4- Long head of the biceps brachii muscle
- 5- Latissimus dorsi muscle
- 6- Humerus
- 7- Teres major muscle
- 8- Lateral head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 9- Medial head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 10- Subscapularis muscle
- 11- Scapula
- 12- Teres minor muscle
- 13- Infraspinatus muscle
- 14- Serratus anterior
- 15- Brachial vein
- 16- Brachial artery
- 17- Medial cutaneous nerve of arm
- 18- Median nerve
- 19- Medial cutaneous nerve of forearm
- 20- Ulnar nerve
- 21- Radial nerve
- 22- Axillary nerve

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure MC11. MRI scans in the shoulder through the musculocutaneous nerve



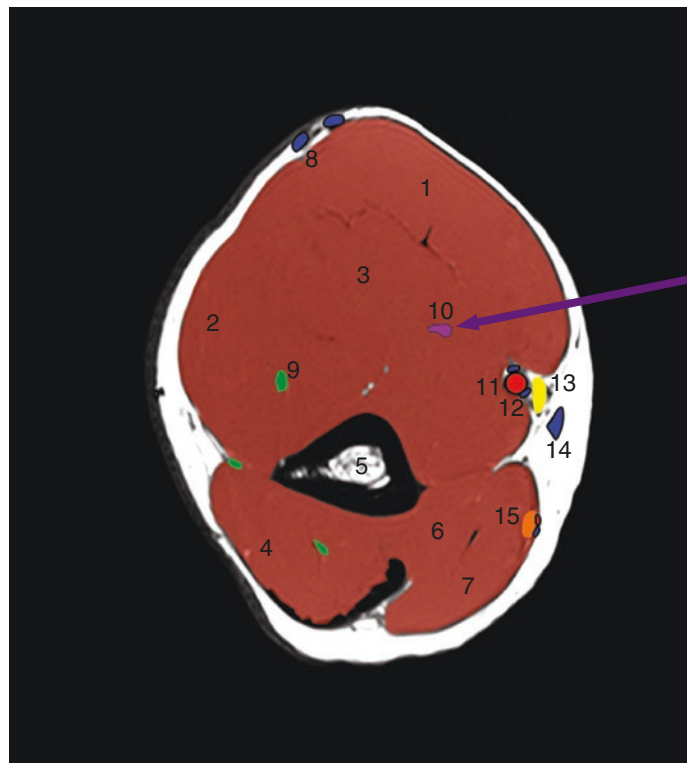
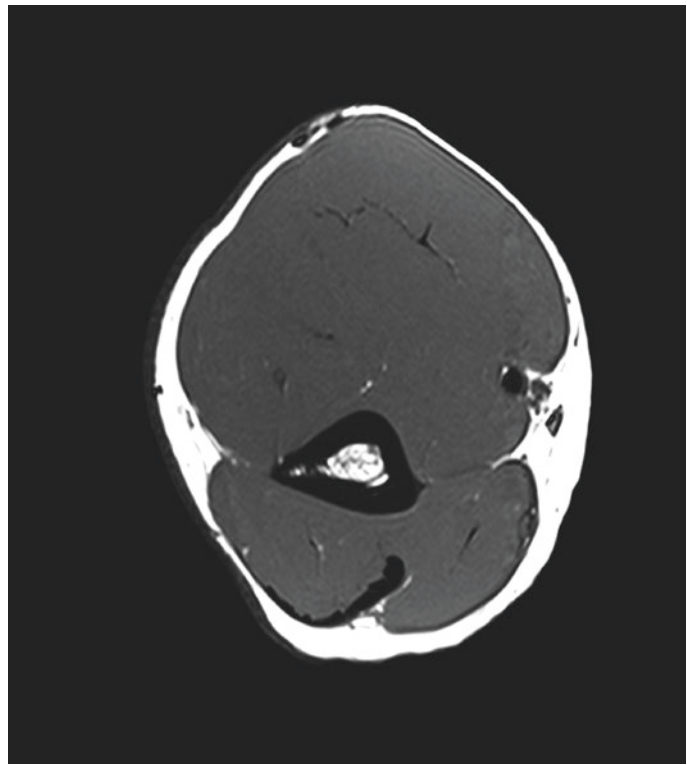
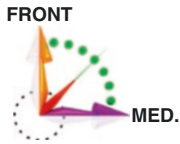
- 1- Deltoid muscle
- 2- Humerus
- 3- Lateral head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 4- Medial head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 5- Brachial artery
- 6- Median nerve
- 7- Medial cutaneous nerve of forearm
- 8- Ulnar nerve
- 9- Cephalic vein
- 10- Basilic vein
- 11- Radial nerve
- 12- Musculocutaneous nerve
- 13- Long head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 14- Biceps brachii muscle



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure MC12. MRI scans at the proximal third of the arm through the musculocutaneous nerve

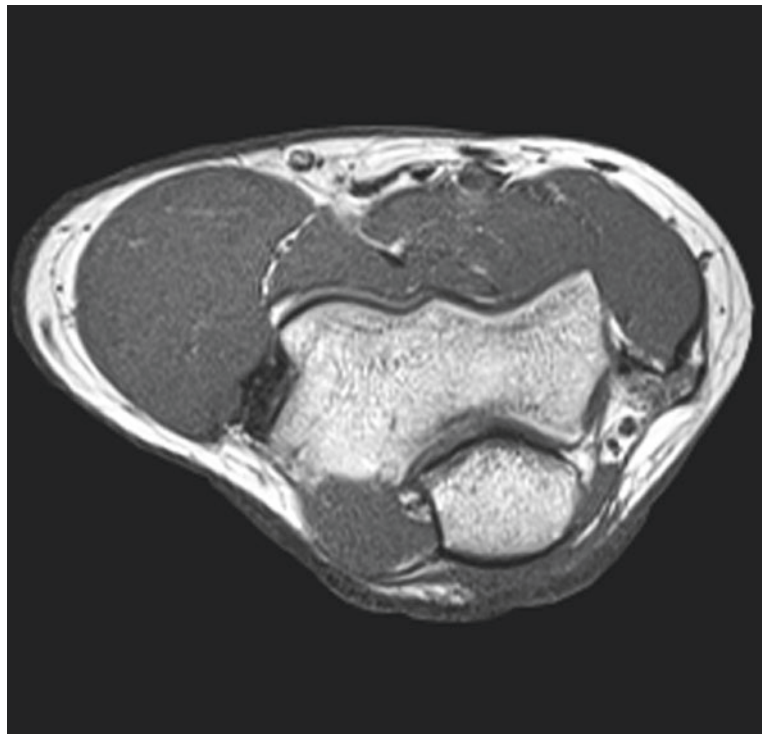
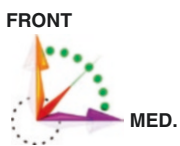
The Musculocutaneous Nerve



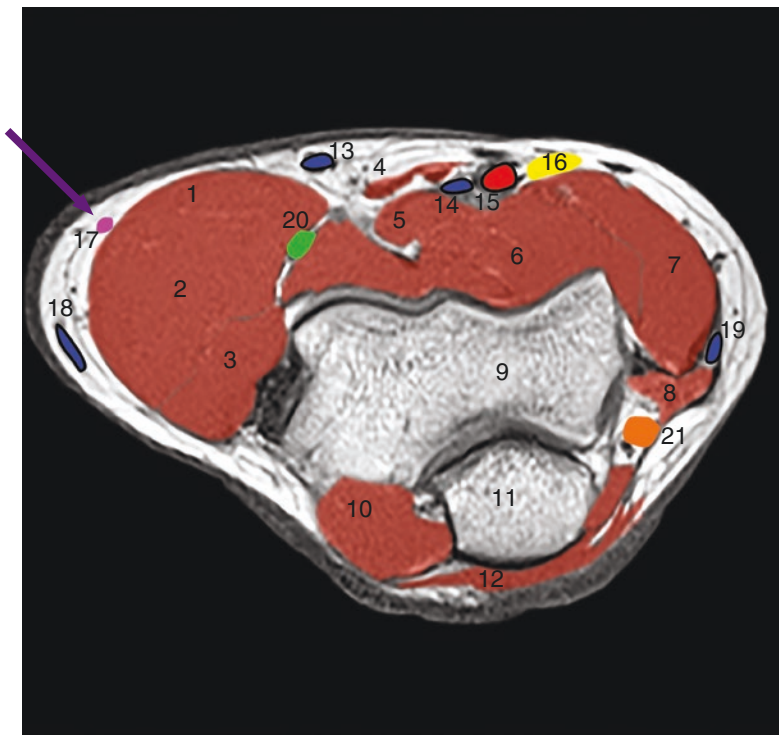
- 1- Biceps brachii muscle
- 2- Brachioradialis muscle
- 3- Brachialis muscle
- 4- Lateral head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 5- Humerus
- 6- Long head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 7- Medial head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 8- Cephalic vein
- 9- Radial nerve
- 10- Musculocutaneous nerve
- 11- Brachial artery
- 12- Brachial vein
- 13- Median nerve
- 14- Basilic vein
- 15- Ulnar nerve

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure MC13. MRI scans at the distal third of the arm through the musculocutaneous nerve



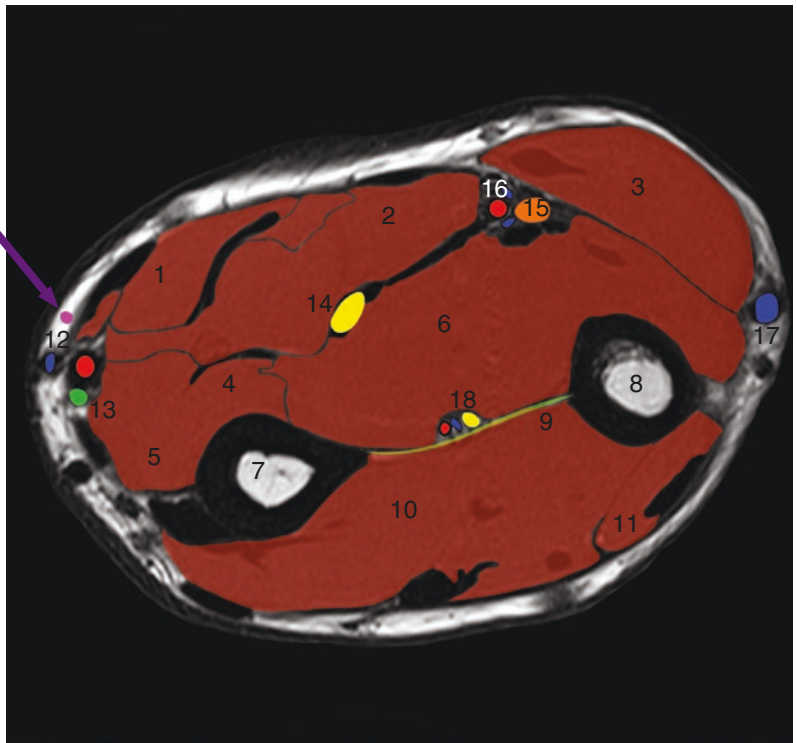
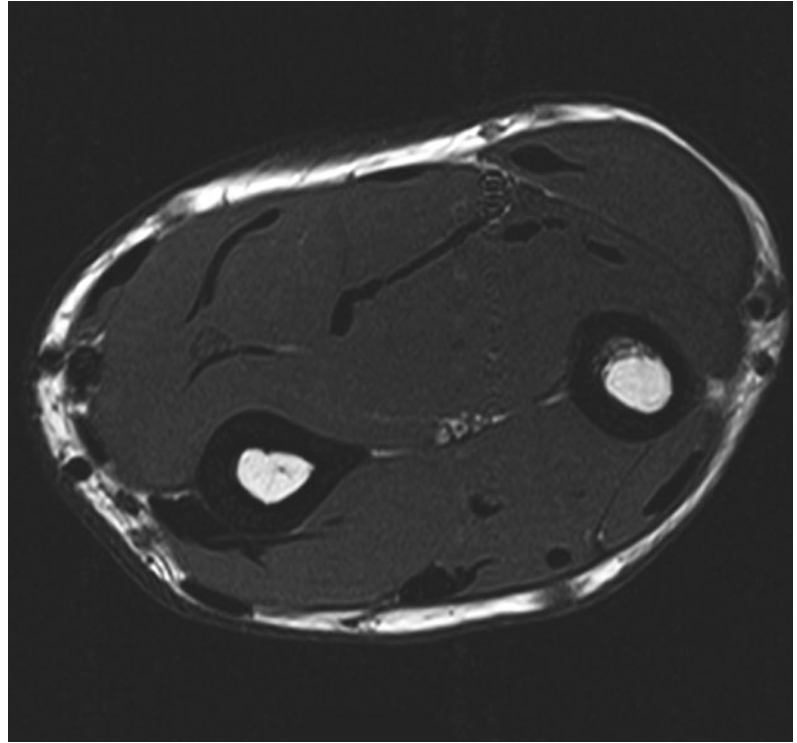
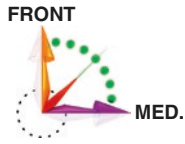
- 1- Brachioradialis muscle
- 2- Extensor carpi radialis longus muscle
- 3- Extensor carpi radialis brevis muscle
- 4- Biceps brachii muscle
- 5- Tendon of the long head of biceps
- 6- Brachialis muscle
- 7- Pronator teres muscle
- 8- Tendon of the median epycondylar muscles
- 9- Humerus
- 10- Anconeus muscle
- 11- Ulna
- 12- Triceps brachii muscle
- 13- Medial vein at the elbow
- 14- Brachial vein
- 15- Brachial artery
- 16- Median nerve
- 17- Musculocutaneous nerve
- 18- Cephalic vein
- 19- Basilic vein
- 20- Radial nerve
- 21- Ulnar nerve



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure MC14. MRI scans in the elbow through the musculocutaneous nerve

The Musculocutaneous Nerve



- 1- Flexor carpi radialis muscle
- 2- Flexor digitorum superficialis muscle
- 3- Flexor carpi ulnaris muscle
- 4- Flexor pollicis longus muscle
- 5- Extensor carpi radialis brevis muscle
- 6- Flexor digitorum profundus muscle
- 7- Radius
- 8- Ulna
- 9- Interosseous membrane of the forearm
- 10- Posterior compartment of the extensor digitorum muscles
- 11- Extensor carpi muscle
- 12- Radial artery and vein
- 13- Radial nerve
- 14- Median nerve
- 15- Ulnar nerve
- 16- Ulnar artery and vein
- 17- Basilic vein
- 18- Anterior interosseous artery, vein and nerve

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure MC15. MRI scans in the forearm through the musculocutaneous nerve

Pathology

Isolated injuries of the musculocutaneous nerve are less frequent than those of other mixed nerves of the upper limb (Figure MC16).

Aetiology

- **Traction:** this can happen when one makes a brutal abduction movement and a lateral rotation of the arm, but it is not the main injury mechanism of the musculocutaneous nerve. If the injury is not brutal, the incriminated mechanism is more likely a disruption of the nerve's vascularisation rather than a direct injury.
- **Division:** this is generally postsurgical, or spontaneous in very rare cases.
- **Compression:** the musculocutaneous nerve can mainly be compressed at the level of two potential spots: the crossing point of the coracobrachialis muscle, at a distance equivalent to four times the width of a finger under the tip of the coracoid process, during a movement of brutal retro-pulsion of the scapula, and at the level of the elbow pit by the aponeurosis and the tendon of the biceps against the biceps brachii's fascia. This compression can also happen in the case of repeated and/or unusual efforts causing an abnormally intense contraction of the muscles in the upper part of the limb (mainly the biceps brachii, brachialis and coracobrachialis). If the injury is remote enough, it only affects the sensitive function of the nerve, the lateral cutaneous nerve of the forearm (as a reminder, the musculocutaneous nerve becomes the lateral cutaneous nerve of the forearm at the level of the lateral epicondyle of the humerus).

Clinical Signs

- **Sensitive signs:** hypoesthesia, neuropathic pain and/or paraesthesia concern the sensitive territory of the musculocutaneous nerve – the forearm's lateral face up to the thumb.
- **Motor signs:** the problem felt by the patient generally relates to a hypotonia of the biceps brachii. The motor dysfunction concerns the flexion of the forearm on the arm, especially when the arm is placed in a position of supination. When the injury is chronic, we can observe a global disuse atrophy of the muscles of the upper part of the limb. The bicipital reflex is not triggered anymore (C5), except in the case of an isolated injury of the lateral cutaneous nerve of the forearm.

Complementary Examinations

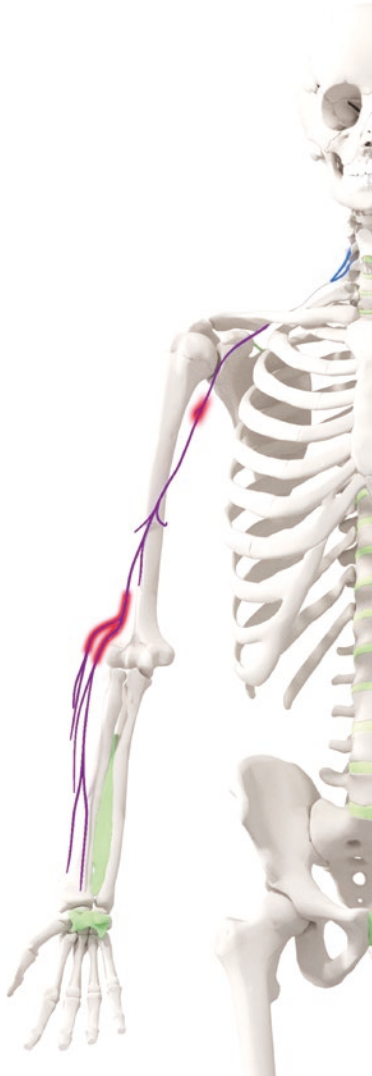
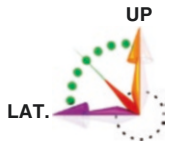
- An electroneuromyography allows the isolation of an axonal and/or demyelinating of the musculocutaneous nerve. First and foremost, it assesses the innervation of the biceps brachii muscle.

No other complementary examination is necessary in the case of clear clinical context.

Treatment

First-line treatment is analgesic and conservative. A surgical decompression will only be necessary if the conservative treatment remained unsuccessful after more than three months of follow-up.

The Musculocutaneous Nerve



a. Most common injury area of the musculocutaneous nerve.



b. Injury of the anterior branch of the musculocutaneous nerve after a fracture of the forearm's bone. From a clinical point of view, a hypoesthesia on the anterolateral face of the forearm can be observed.



c. Injury of the sensitive branches of the musculocutaneous nerve after a complex fracture of the distal extremity of the humerus

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure MC16. Pathology of the musculocutaneous nerve.



The Axillary Nerve

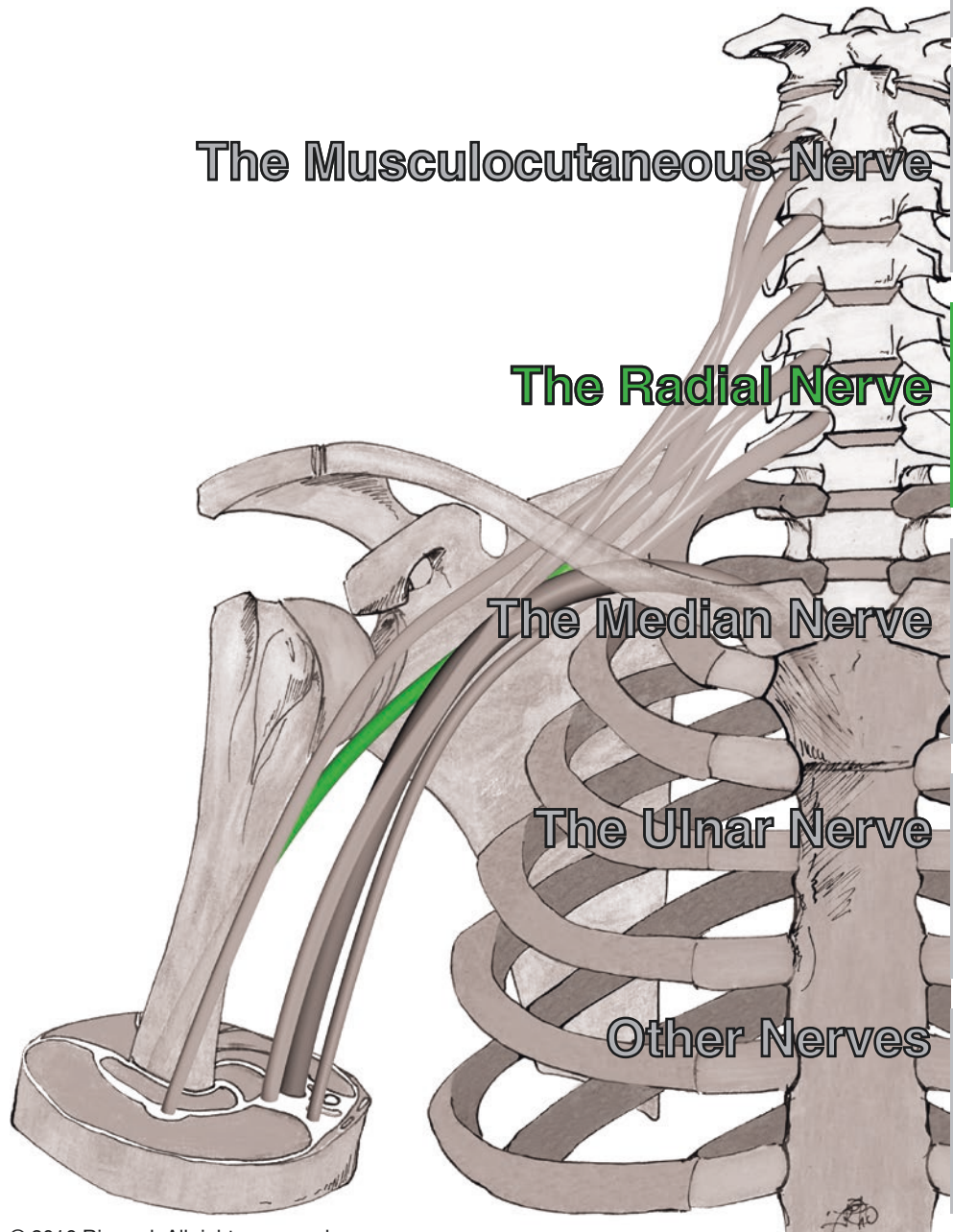
The Musculocutaneous Nerve

The Radial Nerve

The Median Nerve

The Ulnar Nerve

Other Nerves



R

The Radial Nerve

Morphological Data

The radial nerve corresponds to the most voluminous terminal branch of the brachial plexus. It receives branches from all three of the brachial plexus trunks (Figure R1).

Origin

The radial nerve constitutes of nerve fibres coming from the C5, C6, C7, C8 and T1 roots (Figures R1 and R2). It forms the main terminal branch of the posterior bundle, which gave rise to the axillary nerve slightly above. It is situated at the level of the posterior bundle's origin, behind the axillary artery. At this point, the median nerve is found in front of the artery, and the musculocutaneous nerve is situated laterally. The radial nerve leans against the subscapularis muscle (Figure Ax3) then crosses, in order from top to bottom, the tendons of the latissimus dorsi and the teres major (Figures R3, R4 and R10).

Path

The radial nerve enters the posterior compartment of the arm going through the lower axillary space, accompanied by the brachial artery, between the long head of the triceps brachii and its lateral head. It obliquely crosses the posterior aspect of the humerus in a specific groove (Figures R2 and R11) whilst being under the lateral head of the triceps brachii (Figure R3). The insertions of the lateral and medial heads of the triceps brachii are above and below the humeral groove of the radial nerve, respectively.

This particularly sensitive area of the nerve corresponds to the most common nerve injury that occurs in diaphyseal fractures of the humerus (Figures R12 and R13).

At the end of this groove, it goes through the lateral intermuscular septum in order to penetrate the anterior compartment of the arm, between the brachioradialis muscle laterally and the brachialis medially (Figures R3, R8 and R12).

At the lateral epicondyle, the radial nerve is situated at the level of the lateral bicipital groove, in relation with the biceps brachialis and brachialis muscle medially and the brachioradialis muscle and the extensor carpi radialis longus laterally. At that level or several centimetres below, it divides into two terminal branches (Figures R3, R5 and R13).

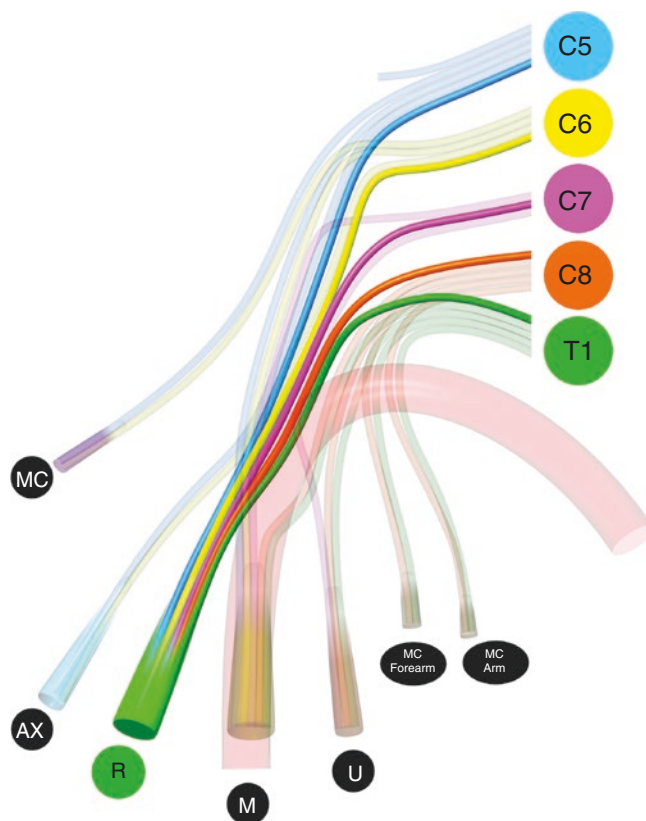
Neurovascular Relations

At its origin, the radial nerve faces the axillary artery in front.

In the arm, it initially follows the path of the deep brachial artery and faces it laterally. At the midsection of the arm, it is crossed behind by the medial collateral artery, which is a branch of the profunda brachii artery. Then, the radial nerve follows the path of the radial collateral artery, which is a prolongation of the profunda brachii artery (Figure R4).

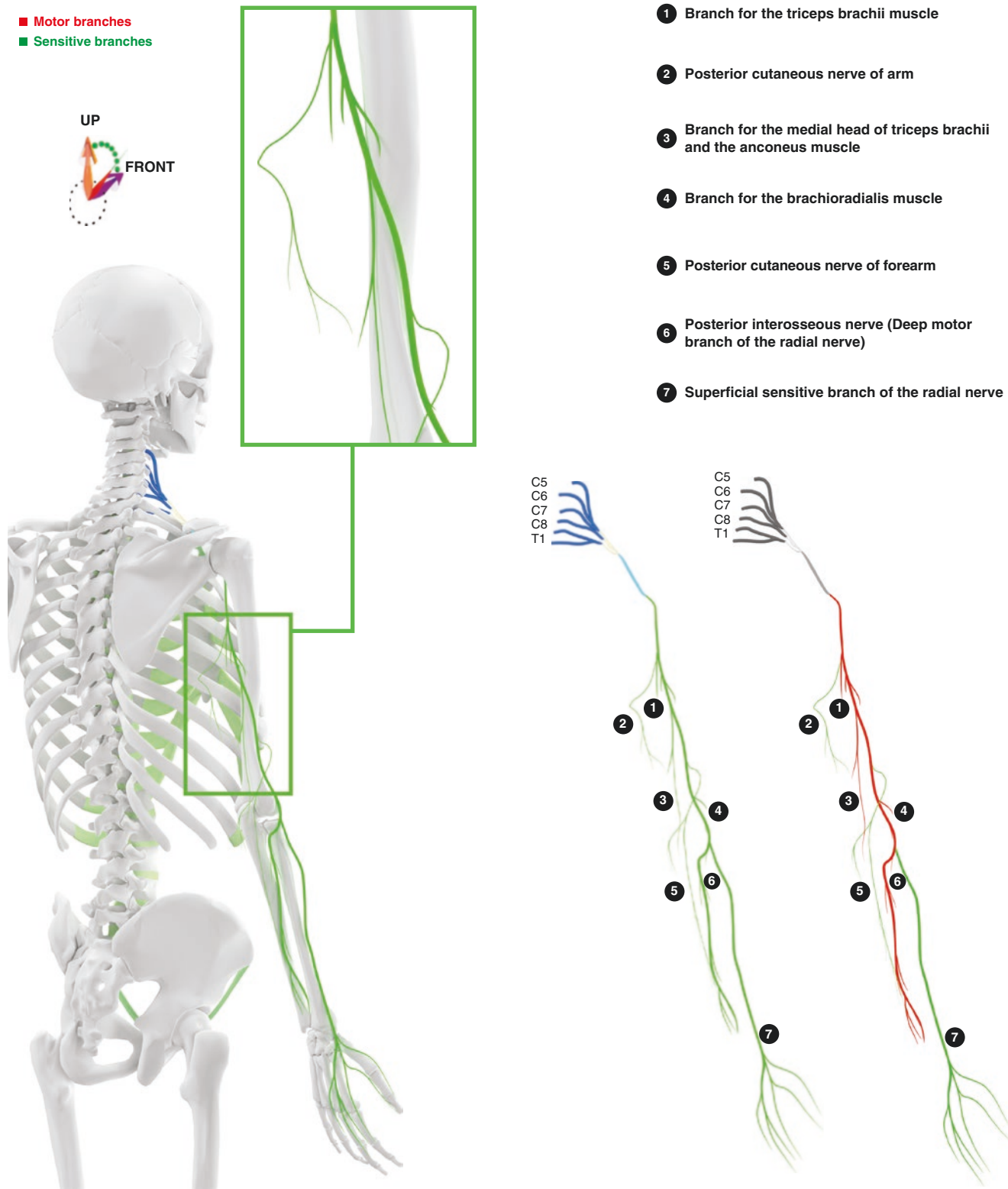
In the elbow, it faces the lateral epicondyle and the radial recurrent artery medially (Figure R6).

In the middle of the forearm, the superficial branch of the radial nerve joins the path of the radial artery that it faces



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

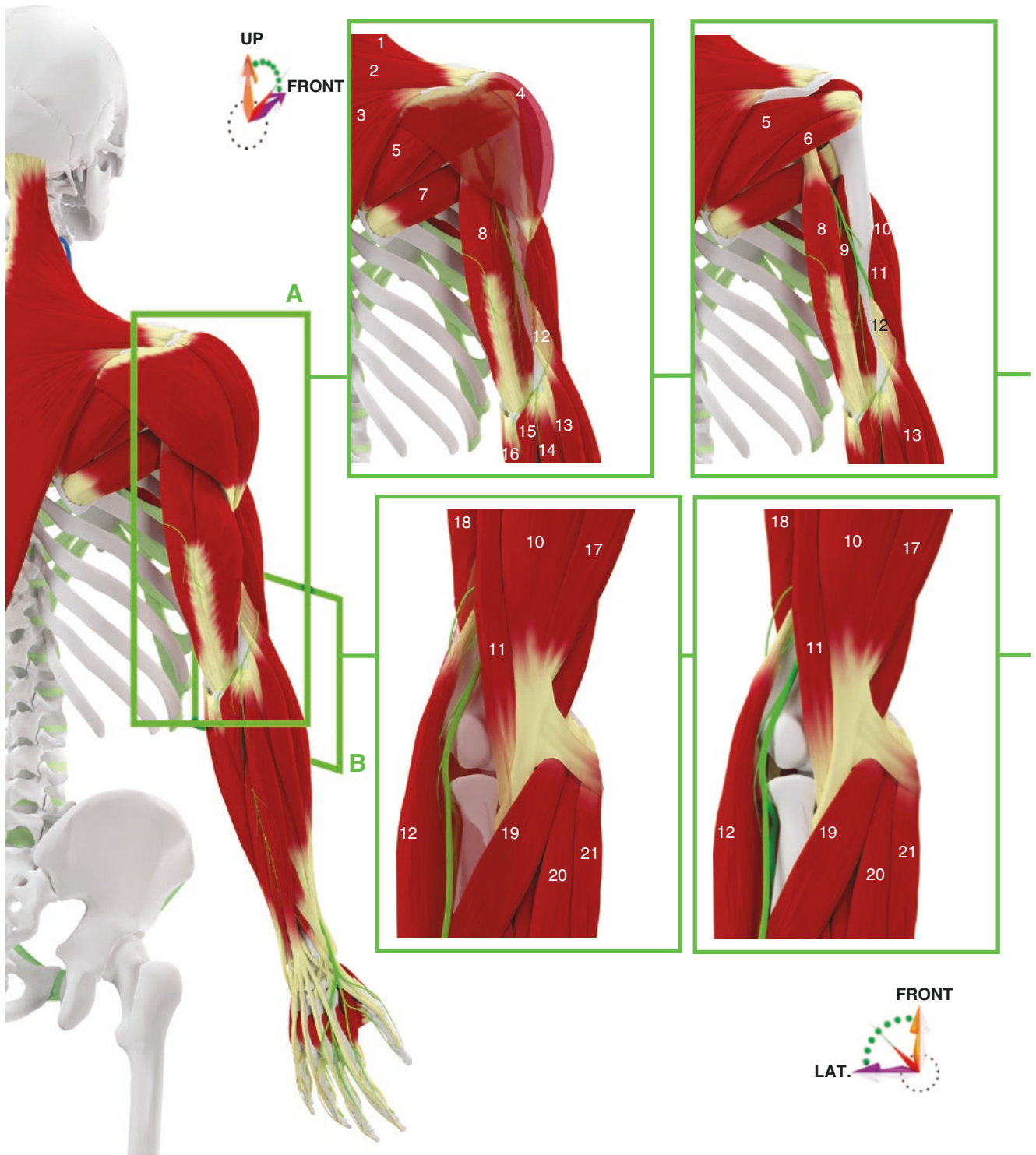
Figure R1. Origin of the radial nerve



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

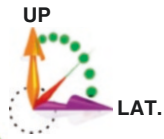
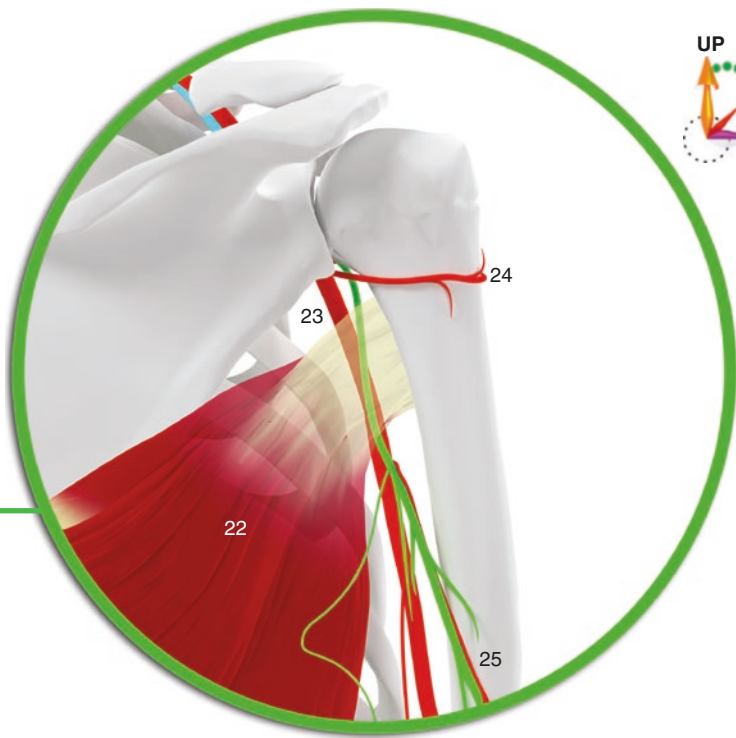
Figure R2. Topographical distribution of the radial nerve and its relations with bones

The Radial Nerve

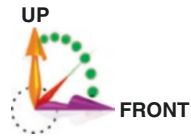
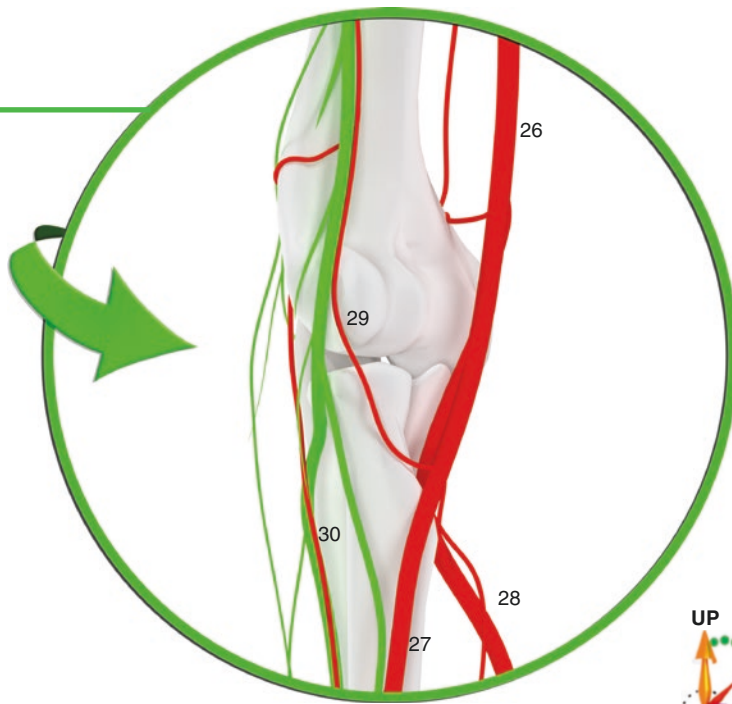


© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure R3. Path and relations of the radial nerve in the arm and elbow



- 1- Superior fibres of the trapezius muscle
- 2- Middle fibres of the trapezius muscle
- 3- Inferior fibres of the trapezius muscle
- 4- Deltoid muscle
- 5- Infraspinatus muscle
- 6- Teres minor muscle
- 7- Teres major muscle
- 8- Long head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 9- Medial head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 10- Lateral head of the biceps brachii muscle
- 11- Brachialis muscle
- 12- Brachioradialis muscle
- 13- Extensor carpi radialis longus muscle
- 14- Extensor digitorum muscle
- 15- Anconeus muscle
- 16- Flexor carpi ulnaris muscle
- 17- Medial head of the biceps brachii muscle
- 18- Lateral head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 19- Pronator teres muscle
- 20- Flexor carpi radialis muscle
- 21- Palmaris longus muscle
- 22- Latissimus dorsi muscle
- 23- Axillary artery
- 24- Posterior humeral circumflex artery
- 25- Deep brachial artery
- 26- Brachial artery
- 27- Radial artery
- 28- Ulnar artery
- 29- Radial recurrent artery
- 30- Posterior interosseous artery



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure R4. Vascular relations of the radial nerve in the arm and elbow

The Radial Nerve

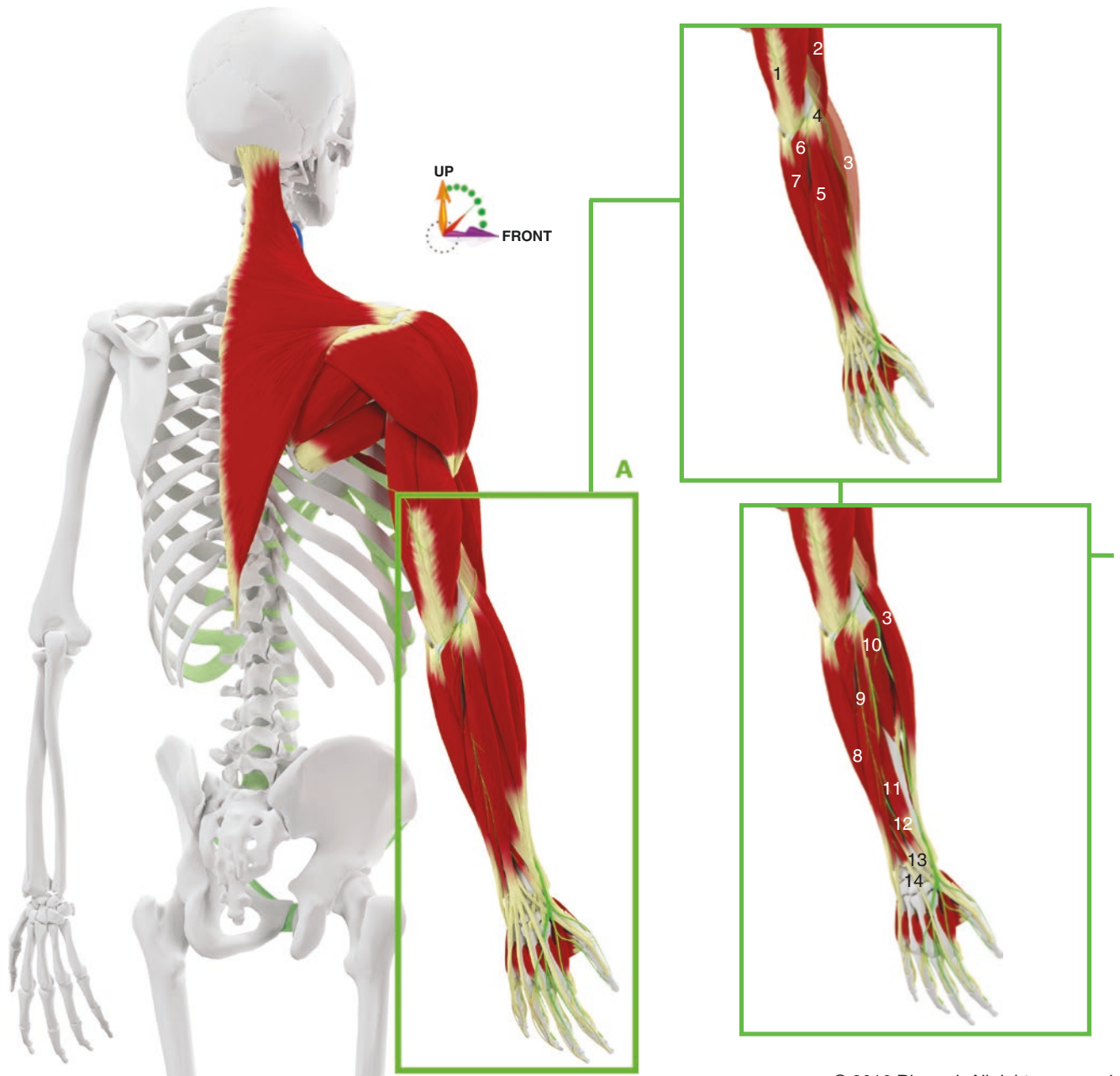
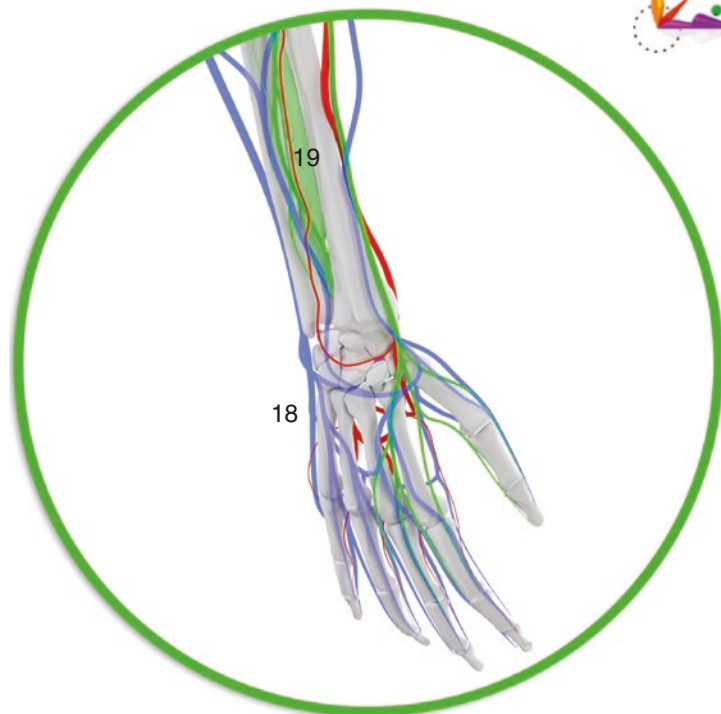
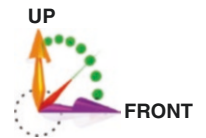
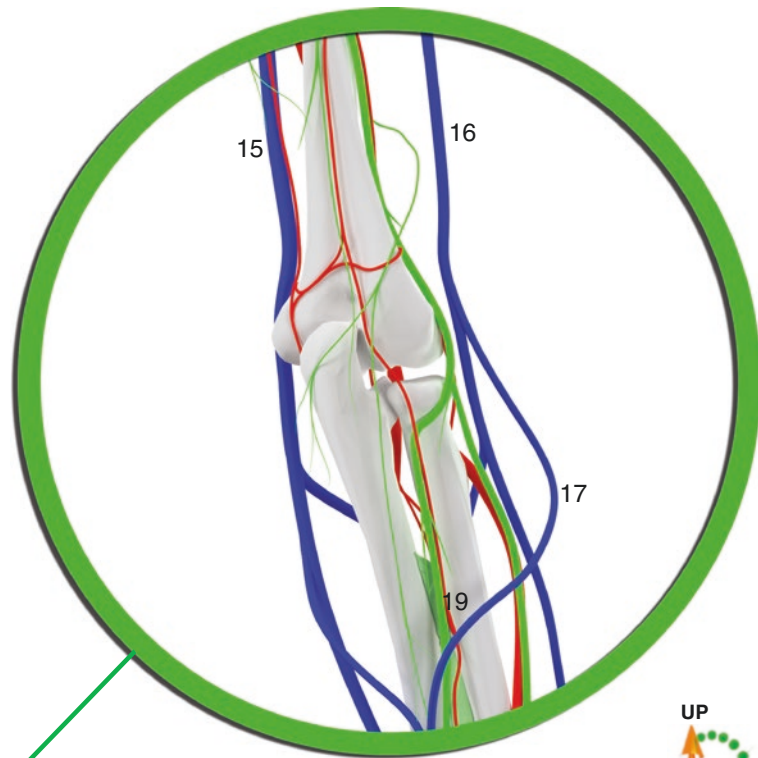


Figure R5. Path and relations of the radial nerve and its terminal branches in the forearm

- 1- Triceps brachii muscle
- 2- Brachialis muscle
- 3- Brachioradialis muscle
- 4- Extensor carpi radialis brevis muscle
- 5- Extensor digitorum muscle
- 6- Anconeus muscle
- 7- Flexor carpi ulnaris muscle
- 8- Extensor carpi ulnaris muscle
- 9- Extensor digiti minimi muscle
- 10- Supinator muscle
- 11- Abductor pollicis longus muscle
- 12- Extensor pollicis brevis muscle
- 13- Extensor pollicis longus muscle
- 14- Extensor indicis muscle
- 15- Basilic vein
- 16- Cephalic vein
- 17- Accessory cephalic vein
- 18- Dorsal venous network of the hand
- 19- Posterior interosseous artery



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure R6. Vascular relations of the radial nerve in the forearm

The Radial Nerve

medially before moving away from it at the distal third of the forearm.

In the posterior face of the forearm, the deep branch of the radial nerve faces the posterior interosseous nerve of the forearm medially (Figure R6).

Collateral Branches

The radial nerve gives rise to cutaneous and muscular collateral branches (Figure R2):

- Muscular branches: superior and inferior nerves of the medial head of the triceps brachii, nerves of the anconeus muscle, long head of the triceps brachii, lateral head of the triceps brachii, brachioradialis and extensor radialis carpi longus (Figures R3 and R5)
- Cutaneous branches: posterior cutaneous nerve of the arm, heading towards the upper third of the posterior face of the arm; inferior lateral cutaneous nerve of the arm, heading towards the lower third of the posterior lateral face of the arm; and posterior cutaneous nerves of the forearm (Figures R3 and R5)

These cutaneous ramifications innervate the posterior face of the arm between the territory of the axillary nerve laterally and the medial cutaneous nerve of the arm and forearm medially.

Terminal Branches

A few centimetres above the elbow pit, the radial nerve divides itself into two branches: anterior and posterior (Figure R2).

The anterior branch is sensitive. It goes under the brachioradialis muscle in its sheath along the forearm. It faces the radial artery medially in the two superior thirds of the forearm. Behind, it successively faces the supinator muscle, pronator teres and flexor digitorum superficialis. At the lower third of the forearm, it separates from the radial artery and goes towards the forearm's posterior area (Figures R3 and R6).

It divides itself at the same level as or above the distal epiphysis of the radius into three branches: lateral, intermediate and medial. The lateral ramus is headed towards the lateral part of the thenar eminence and the intermediate ramus towards its medial part as well as the lateral part of the index finger at the level of its first phalange. The medial ramus is

headed towards the second interosseous space, at the dorsal faces of the first phalanges of the index and middle fingers (Figures R5, R9 and R11).

The posterior branch, which is a motor branch, is also called posterior interosseous nerve. It goes through the fibrous arch of the superficial bundle of the supinator muscle, also known as arcade of Frohse, in order to join the posterior compartment of the forearm. It goes down behind and laterally, between the two heads of the supinator muscle, which is innervated by this posterior branch. This spot is an anatomical landmark, situated two centimetres under the elbow's pit (Figure R3).

Near its origin, the nerve is crossed by the lateral branches of the radial recurrent artery and vein. The posterior interosseous nerve goes down before the radiohumeral joint, and under the superficial fibres of the supinator muscle, of which the proximal part of the aponeurosis represents the arcade of Frohse. After crossing it, the nerve goes in the posterior compartment of the forearm then around the external border of the radius and goes out between the fibres of the supinator muscle before continuing towards the distal part of the forearm.

The posterior branch is then situated between the two posterior muscular planes of the forearm. It faces successively the abductor pollicis longus and extensor pollicis brevis in front and then faces the interosseous membrane. In behind, it faces the extensor pollicis longus and the extensor indicis (Figure R5).

The terminal posterior branch of the radial nerve gives rise to muscular branches heading towards the posterior compartment of the forearm. After going 4 cm under and along the supinator muscle, the nerve gives off seven branches for the extensor carpi ulnaris, extensor digitorum brevis, extensor digitorum, extensor pollicis longus and brevis, extensor digiti minimi and extensor indicis. It sometimes gives off branches for both extensor radialis carpi muscles (Figures R5, R9 and R14).

Motor Function

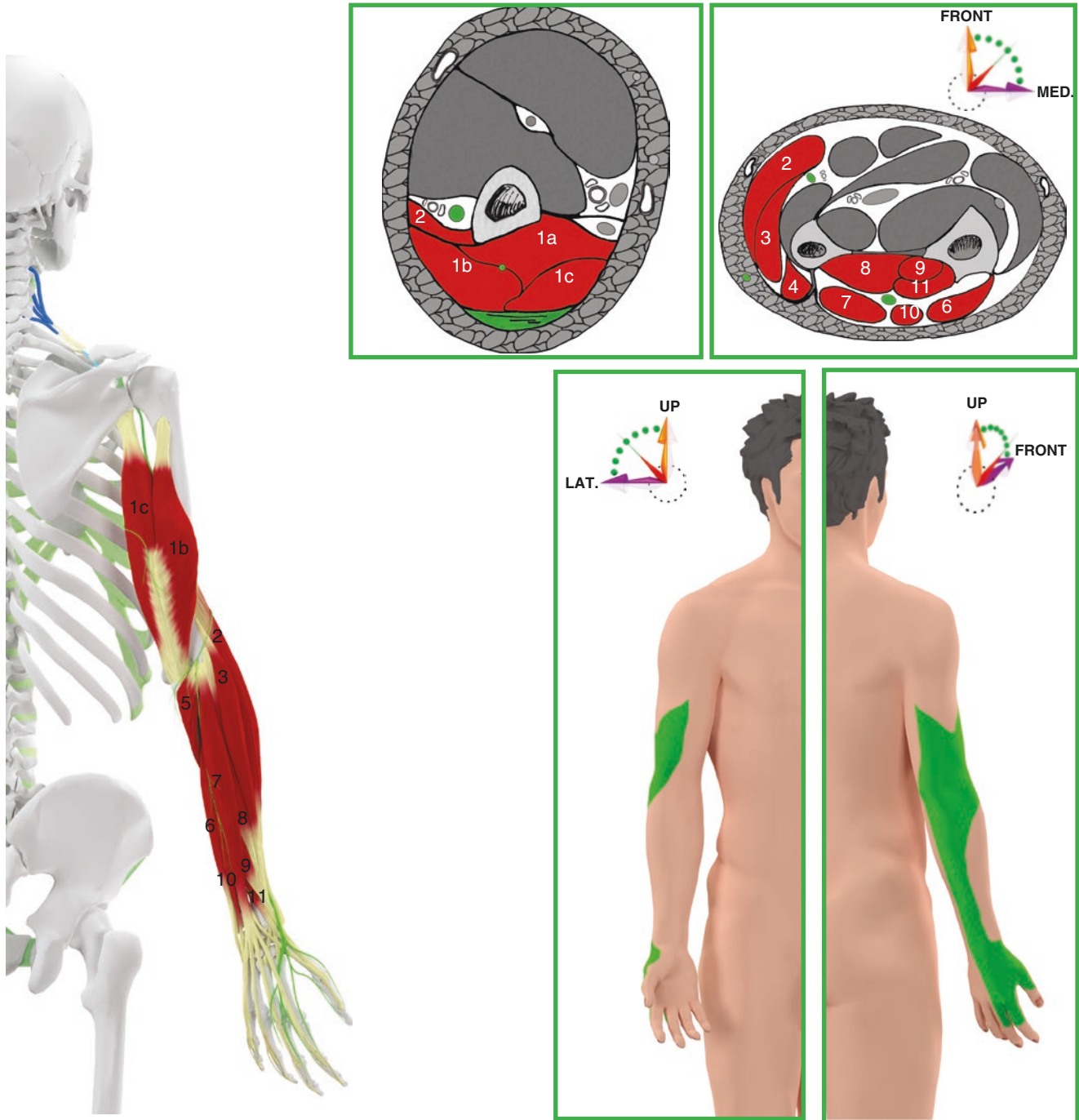
The posterior branch innervates all of the extensor muscles in the wrist and fingers except the extensor radialis carpi longus, which is innervated by the radial nerve's trunk itself.

- 1- Triceps brachii muscle
 - 1a- Medial head
 - 1b- Lateral head
 - 1c- Long head

- 2- Brachioradialis muscle
- 3- Extensor carpi radialis longus muscle
- 4- Extensor carpi radialis brevis muscle
- 5- Anconeus muscle

- 6- Extensor carpi ulnaris muscle
- 7- Extensor digitorum muscle
- 8- Abductor pollicis longus muscle
- 9- Extensor pollicis brevis muscle

- 10- Extensor digiti minimi muscle
- 11- Extensor pollicis longus muscle



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure R7. Motor and sensitive innervation of the radial nerve

The Radial Nerve

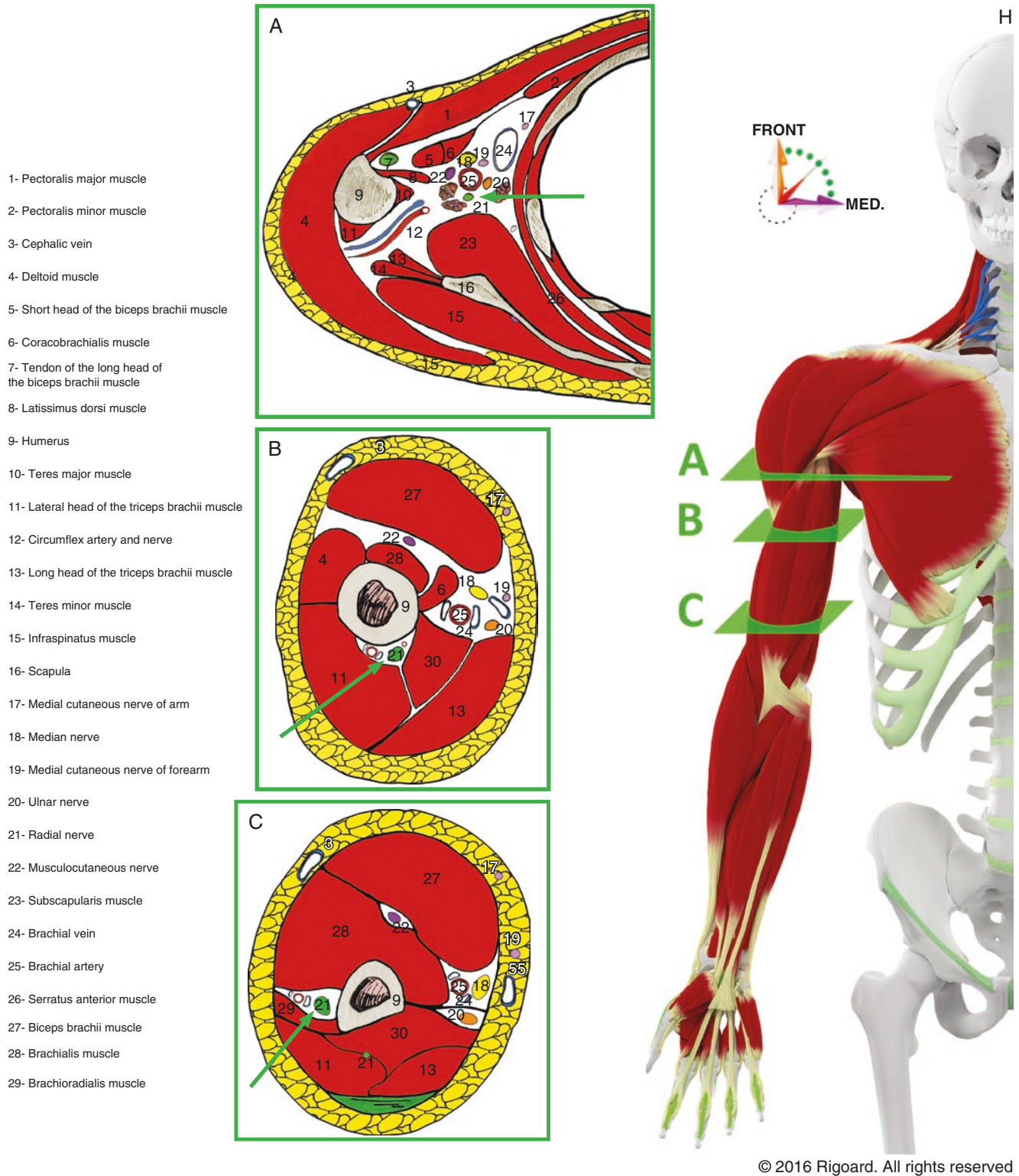
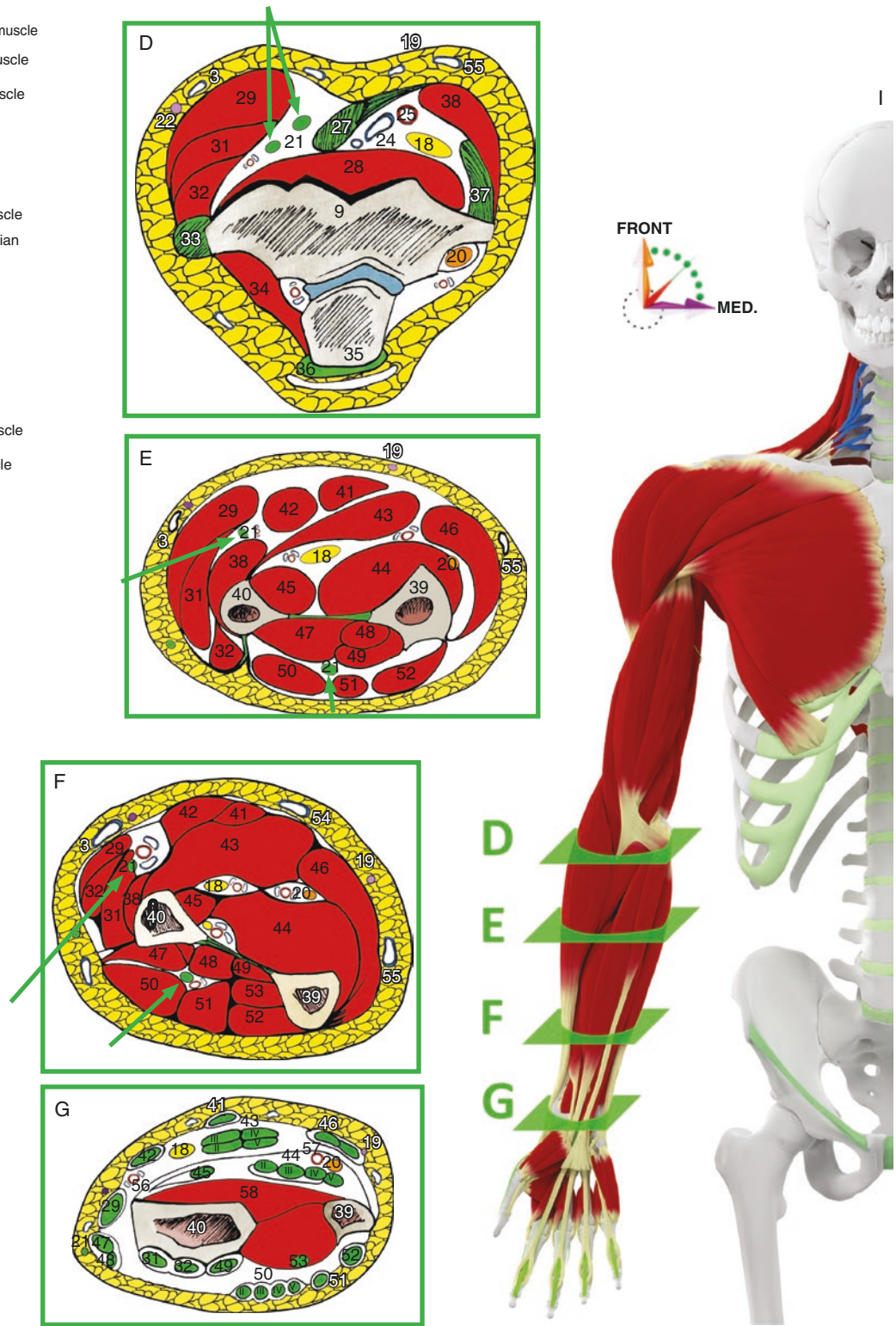


Figure R8. Relations of the radial nerve in the arm, axial sections

- 30- Medial head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 31- Extensor carpi radialis longus muscle
- 32- Extensor carpi radialis brevis muscle
- 33- Tendon of epicondyle muscles
- 34- Anconeus muscle
- 35- Olecranon
- 36- Tendon of the triceps brachii muscle
- 37- Tendon of the median epicondylar muscles
- 38- Pronator teres muscle
- 39- Ulna
- 40- Radius
- 41- Palmaris longus muscle
- 42- Flexor carpi radialis muscle
- 43- Flexor digitorum superficialis muscle
- 44- Flexor digitorum profundus muscle
- 45- Flexor pollicis longus muscle
- 46- Flexor carpi ulnaris muscle
- 47- Abductor pollicis longus muscle
- 48- Extensor pollicis brevis muscle
- 49- Extensor pollicis longus muscle
- 50- Extensor digitorum muscle
- 51- Extensor digiti minimi muscle
- 52- Extensor carpi ulnaris muscle
- 53- Extensor indicis muscle
- 54- Median vein of the forearm
- 55- Basilic vein
- 56- Radial artery and vein
- 57- Ulnar artery and vein
- 58- Pronator quadratus muscle



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure R9. Relations of the radial nerve in the elbow and forearm, axial sections

The Radial Nerve

The deficit caused by a compression of the posterior branch of the nerve leaves the wrist in a persisting extension, making it appear laterally inclined.

In the end, the radial nerve is responsible for the extension of the forearm on the arm, of the wrist on the forearm and of the fingers (Figure R7).

Sensitive Function

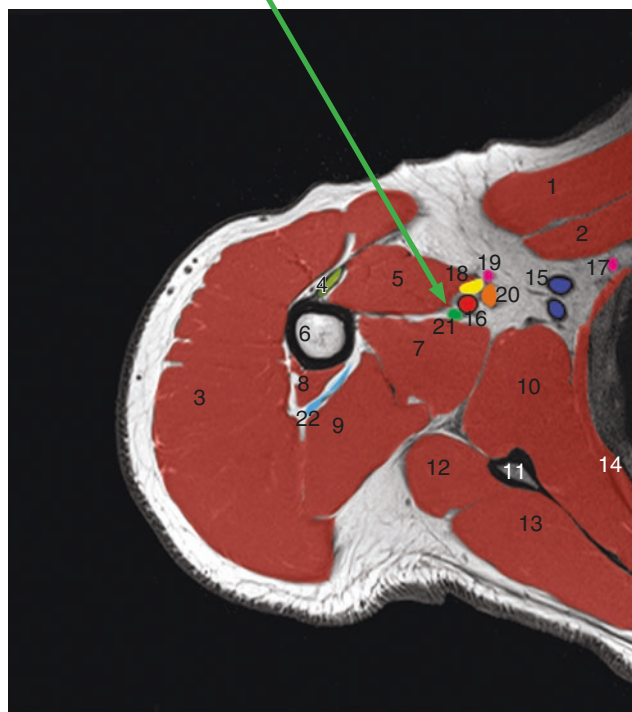
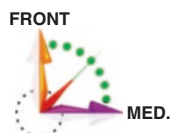
The sensitive function is situated at the level of the superficial branch. It innervates the dorsal face of the first com-

missure at the level of the hand, the dorsal face of the thumb and the dorsal faces of the index and middle fingers until the junction between the second and third phalanges (Figure R7).

Anastomoses

With:

- The musculocutaneous nerve
- The median nerve at the level of the thumb
- The ulnar nerve in the dorsal face of the hand
- The medial cutaneous nerves of the forearm and arm

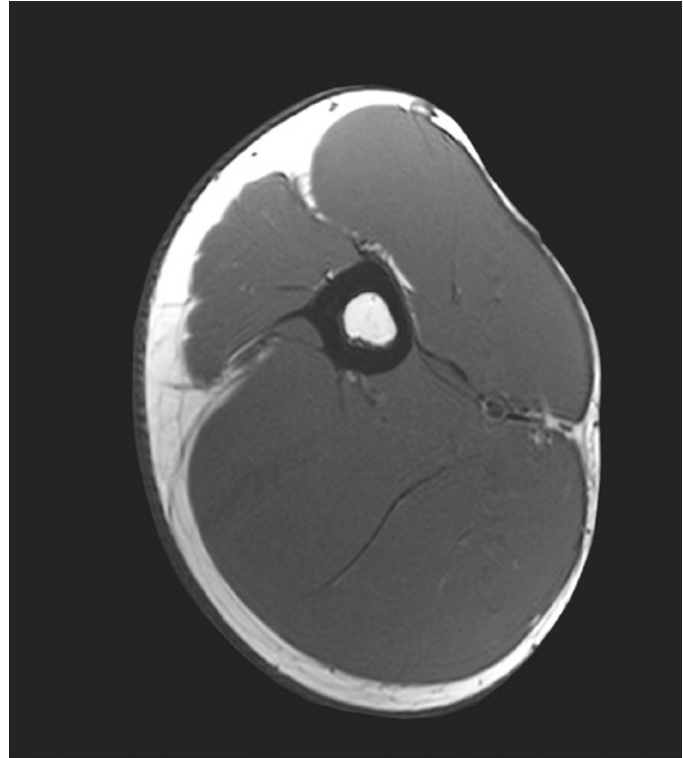
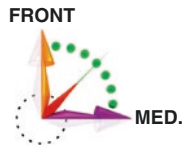
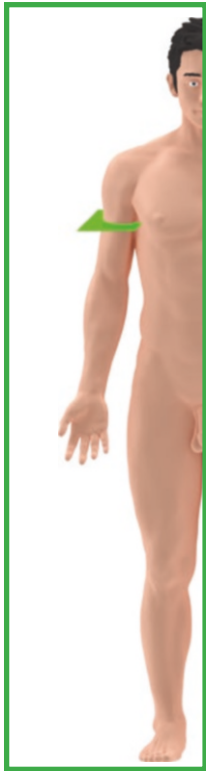


- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1- Pectoralis major muscle | 12- Teres minor muscle |
| 2- Pectoralis minor muscle | 13- Infraspinatus muscle |
| 3- Deltoid muscle | 14- Serratus anterior |
| 4- Long head of the biceps brachii muscle | 15- Brachial vein |
| 5- Latissimus dorsi muscle | 16- Brachial artery |
| 6- Humerus | 17- Medial cutaneous nerve of arm |
| 7- Teres major muscle | 18- Median nerve |
| 8- Lateral head of the triceps brachii muscle | 19- Medial cutaneous nerve of forearm |
| 9- Medial head of the triceps brachii muscle | 20- Ulnar nerve |
| 10- Subscapularis muscle | 21- Radial nerve |
| 11- Scapula | 22- Axillary nerve |

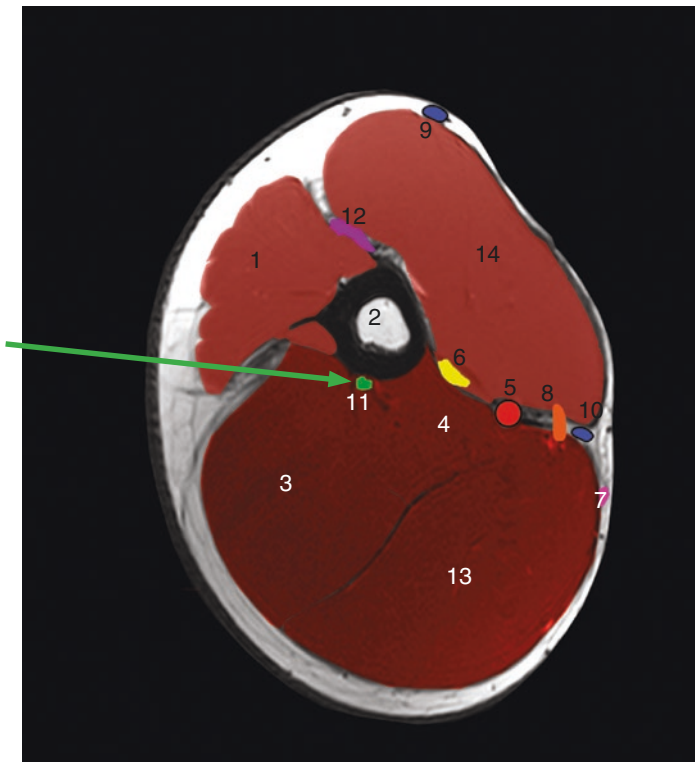
© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure R10. MRI scans in the shoulder through the radial nerve

The Radial Nerve

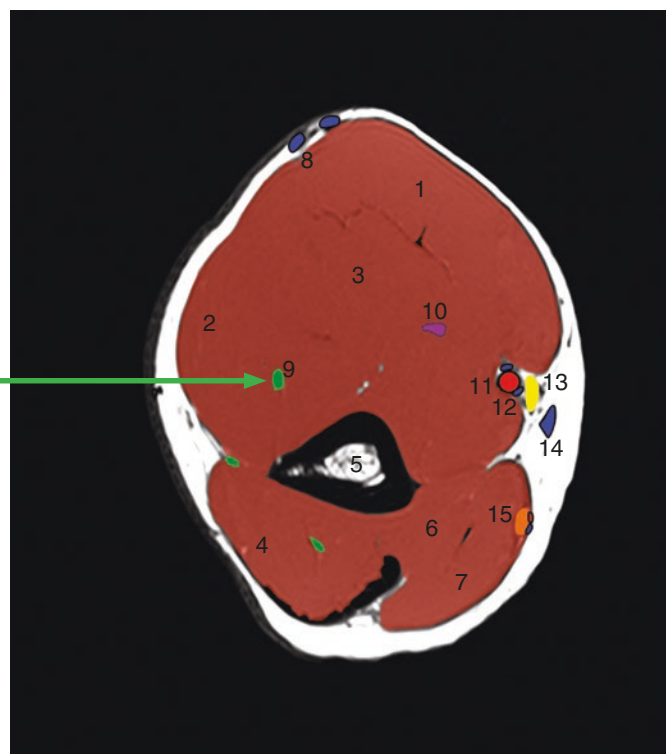
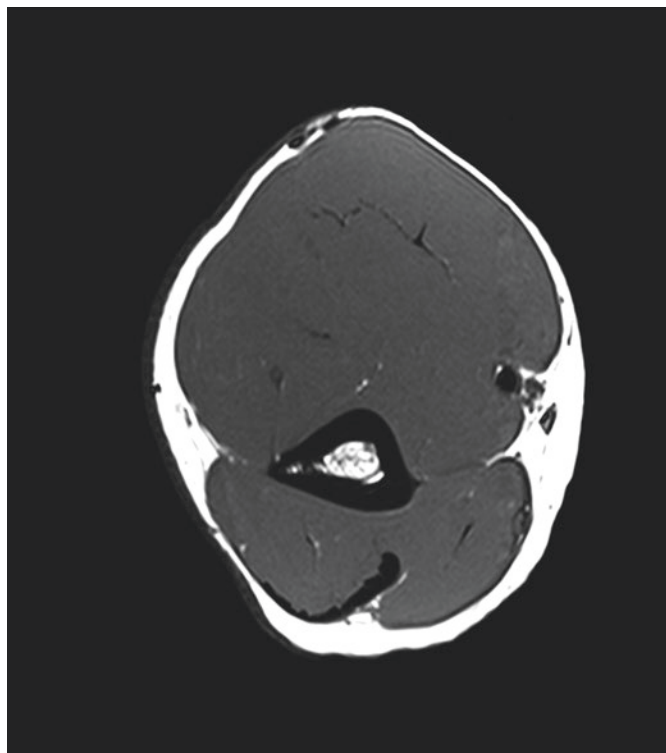
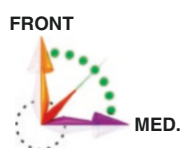
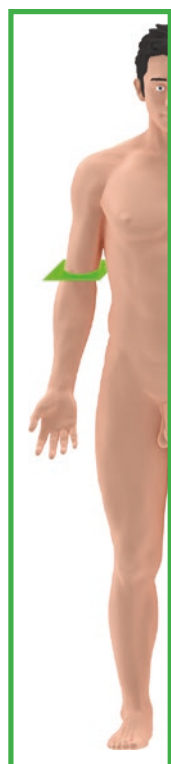


- 1- Deltoid muscle
- 2- Humerus
- 3- Lateral head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 4- Medial head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 5- Brachial artery
- 6- Median nerve
- 7- Medial cutaneous nerve of forearm
- 8- Ulnar nerve
- 9- Cephalic vein
- 10- Basilic vein
- 11- Radial nerve
- 12- Musculocutaneous nerve
- 13- Long head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 14- Biceps brachii muscle



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure R11. MRI scans at the proximal third of the arm through the radial nerve

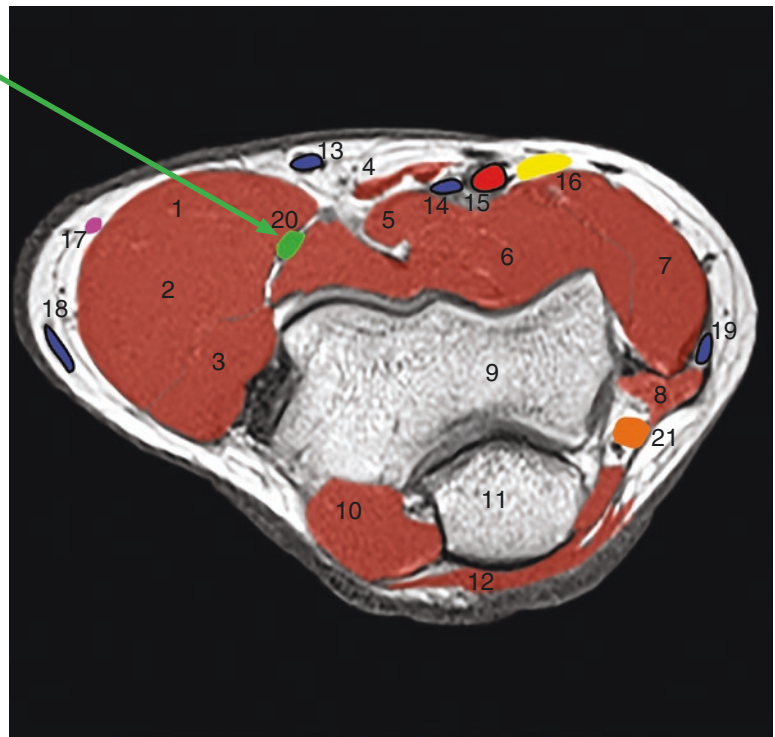
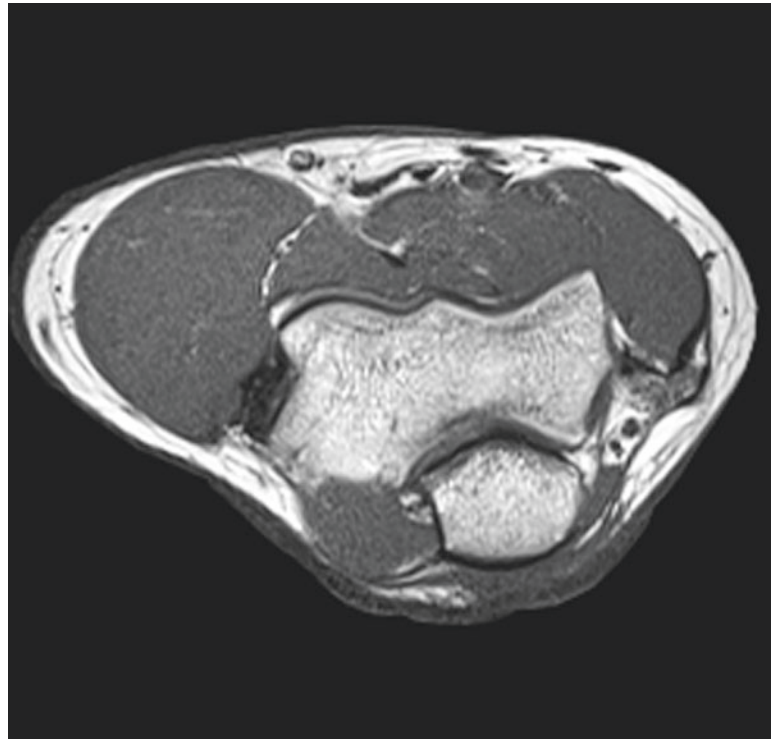
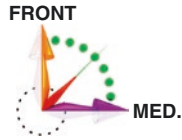


- 1- Biceps brachii muscle
- 2- Brachioradialis muscle
- 3- Brachialis muscle
- 4- Lateral head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 5- Humerus
- 6- Long head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 7- Medial head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 8- Cephalic vein
- 9- Radial nerve
- 10- Musculocutaneous nerve
- 11- Brachial artery
- 12- Brachial vein
- 13- Median nerve
- 14- Basilic vein
- 15- Ulnar nerve

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure R12. MRI scans at the distal third of the arm through the radial nerve

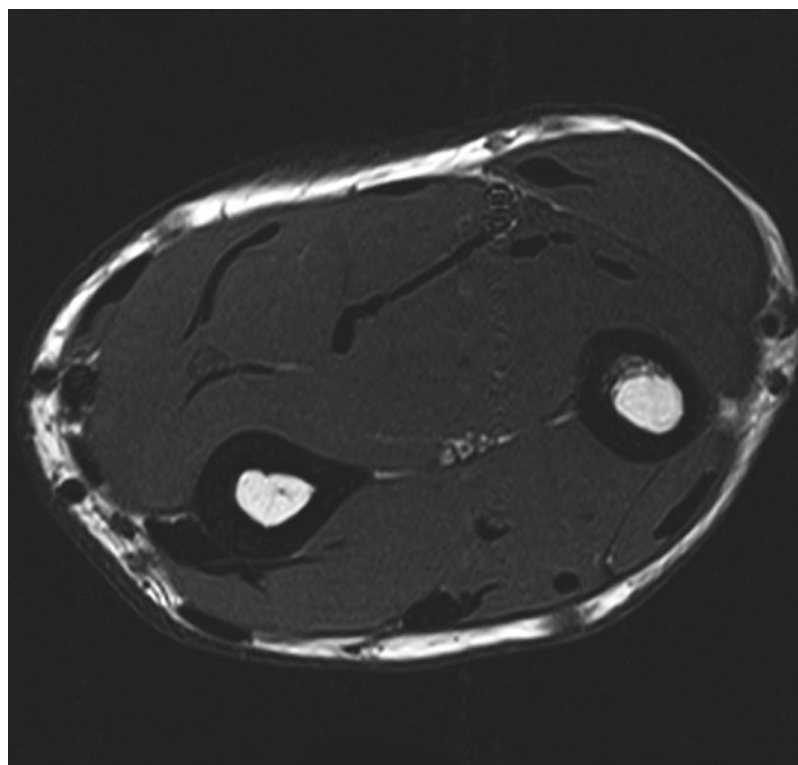
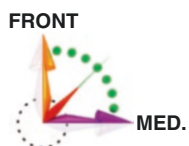
The Radial Nerve



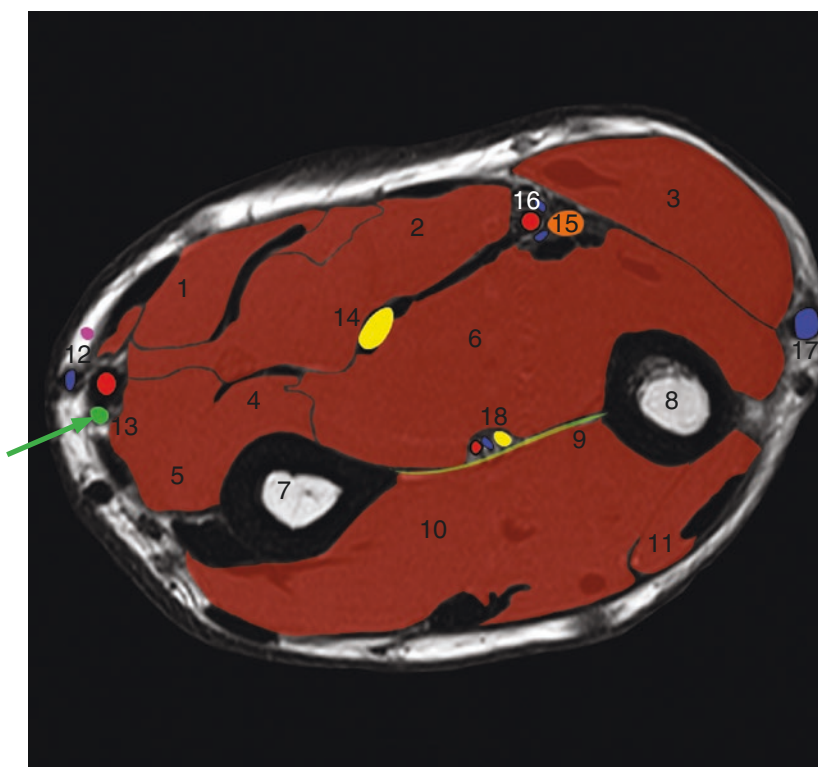
- 1- Brachioradialis muscle
- 2- Extensor carpi radialis longus muscle
- 3- Extensor carpi radialis brevis muscle
- 4- Biceps brachii muscle
- 5- Tendon of the long head of biceps
- 6- Brachialis muscle
- 7- Pronator teres muscle
- 8- Tendon of the median epicondylar muscles
- 9- Humerus
- 10- Anconeus muscle
- 11- Ulna
- 12- Triceps brachii muscle
- 13- Medial vein at the elbow
- 14- Brachial vein
- 15- Brachial artery
- 16- Median nerve
- 17- Musculocutaneous nerve
- 18- Cephalic vein
- 19- Basilic vein
- 20- Radial nerve
- 21- Ulnar nerve

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure R13. MRI scans in the elbow through the radial nerve



- 1- Flexor carpi radialis muscle
- 2- Flexor digitorum superficialis muscle
- 3- Flexor carpi ulnaris muscle
- 4- Flexor pollicis longus muscle
- 5- Extensor carpi radialis brevis muscle
- 6- Flexor digitorum profundus muscle
- 7- Radius
- 8- Ulna
- 9- Interosseous membrane of the forearm
- 10- Posterior compartment of the extensor digitorum muscles
- 11- Extensor carpi muscle
- 12- Radial artery and vein
- 13- Radial nerve
- 14- Median nerve
- 15- Ulnar nerve
- 16- Ulnar artery and vein
- 17- Basilic vein
- 18- Anterior interosseous artery, vein and nerve



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure R14. MRI scans in the forearm through the radial nerve

Pathology

Pathology concerns:

- Direct injuries of the nerve's trunk, at the level of its osteofibrous tunnel in the arm, when a mid-shaft humeral fracture occurs (see above)
- The posterior interosseous nerve syndrome (see below)

Posterior Interosseous Nerve Syndrome

The posterior interosseous nerve, which is the posterior terminal branch of the radial nerve, takes its origin a few centimetres below the elbow pit. Just after its origin, it penetrates between the two planes of fibres of the supinator muscle. At this level, the proximal border of the superficial fibres constitutes the arcade of Frohse. As a reminder, this branch has a motor function for the extensor muscles in the wrist aside from the extensor carpi radialis longus (Figure R15).

Aetiology

- Compression: this is an entrapment neuropathy that happens in most cases when the muscles that surround the origin of the posterior interosseous nerve are overused. These circumstances can be found in repetitive movements of pronation and supination. The compression's most common point is situated at the level of the arcade of Frohse, at the entry point of the nerve in the supinator muscle. This entrapment neuropathy is particularly frequent amongst tennis players.
- Traction: the gestures implicated in this syndrome are also factors of traction on the nerve at this level.

Clinical Signs

Sensitive signs: pain sensation can happen without warning signs. It is dull and generally located at the proximal and lateral part of the forearm. It can appear after a variable

amount of time when performing repeated gestures of the distal extremity whilst pronating the forearm, such as repeated mouse clicks whilst working on a computer.

Motor signs: the patient can show a loss of extension of the fingers, especially in the metacarpus and phalanges. Wrist extension is preserved by action of the extensor carpi radialis longus. However, since the extensor carpi ulnaris is innervated by the posterior interosseous nerve, extension of the wrist is accompanied by a lateral deviation.

Clinical Forms

When this syndrome evolves over a large duration of time, an amyotrophy of the posterior compartment of the forearm can develop. It does not impact the brachioradialis or the extensor carpi radialis longus muscles.

An incomplete motor injury can affect only the extension of the fourth and fifth fingers, appearing like an ulnar injury.

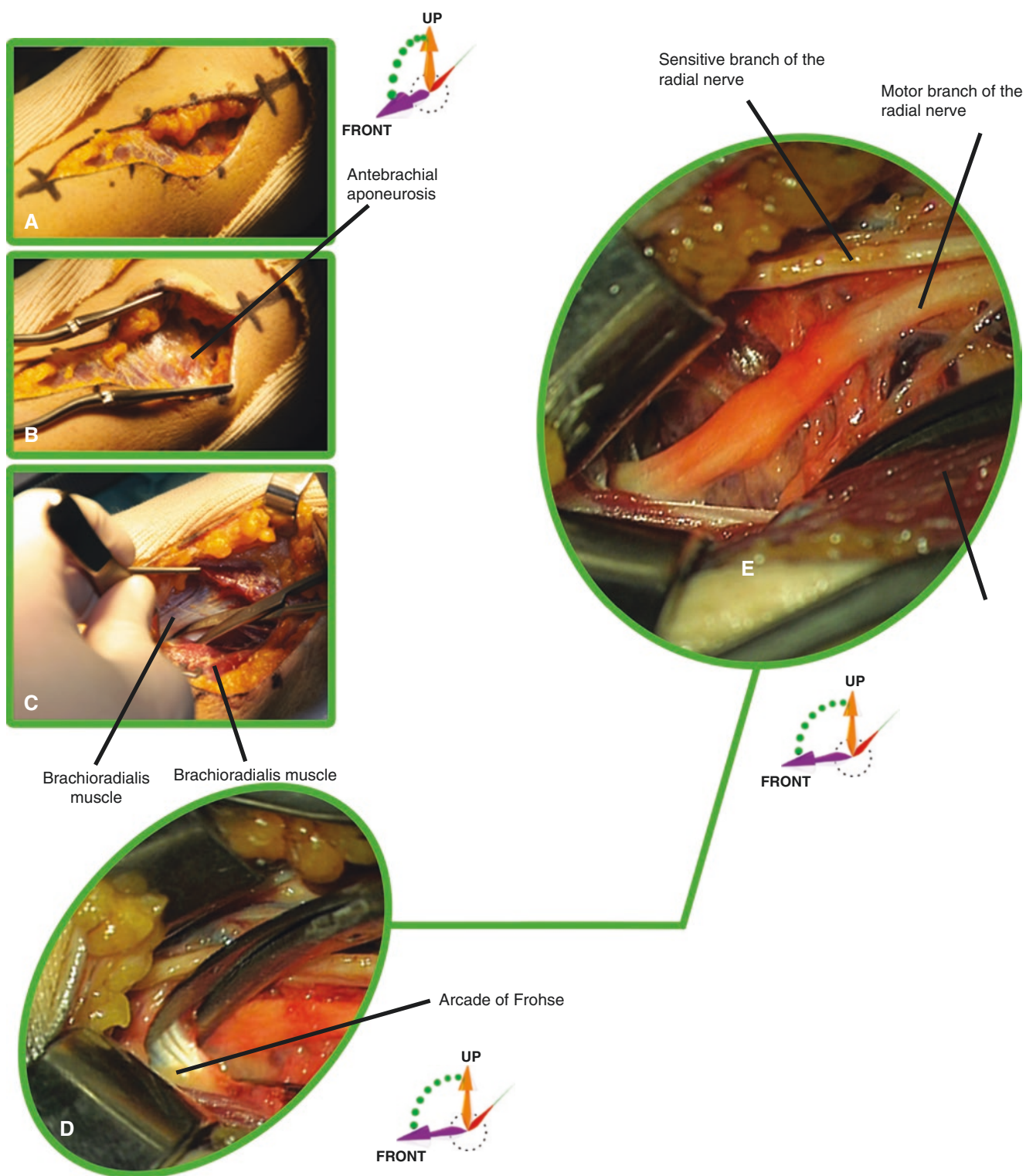
Complementary Examinations

Elbow radiographies must be systematically executed:

- An electrophysiological study confirms the injured area.
- An MRI scan also allows for the elimination of differential diagnoses.

Treatment

It is surgical and indicated after 3 months of conservative treatment with no improvement or a worsening of symptomatology. If the cause is an expansive process, then resection is indicated in the first instance in order to limit the potentially irreversible injury of the posterior interosseous nerve. Postsurgical results are positive in a majority of publications.



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure R15. Pathology of the radial nerve - Decompression surgery of the posterior interosseous branch at the level of the arcade of Frohse (A: cutaneous incision; B: insertion of the retractor; C: approach to the radial nerve; D: Section of the arcade of Frohse; E: decompression of the nerve's motor branch)

The Axillary Nerve

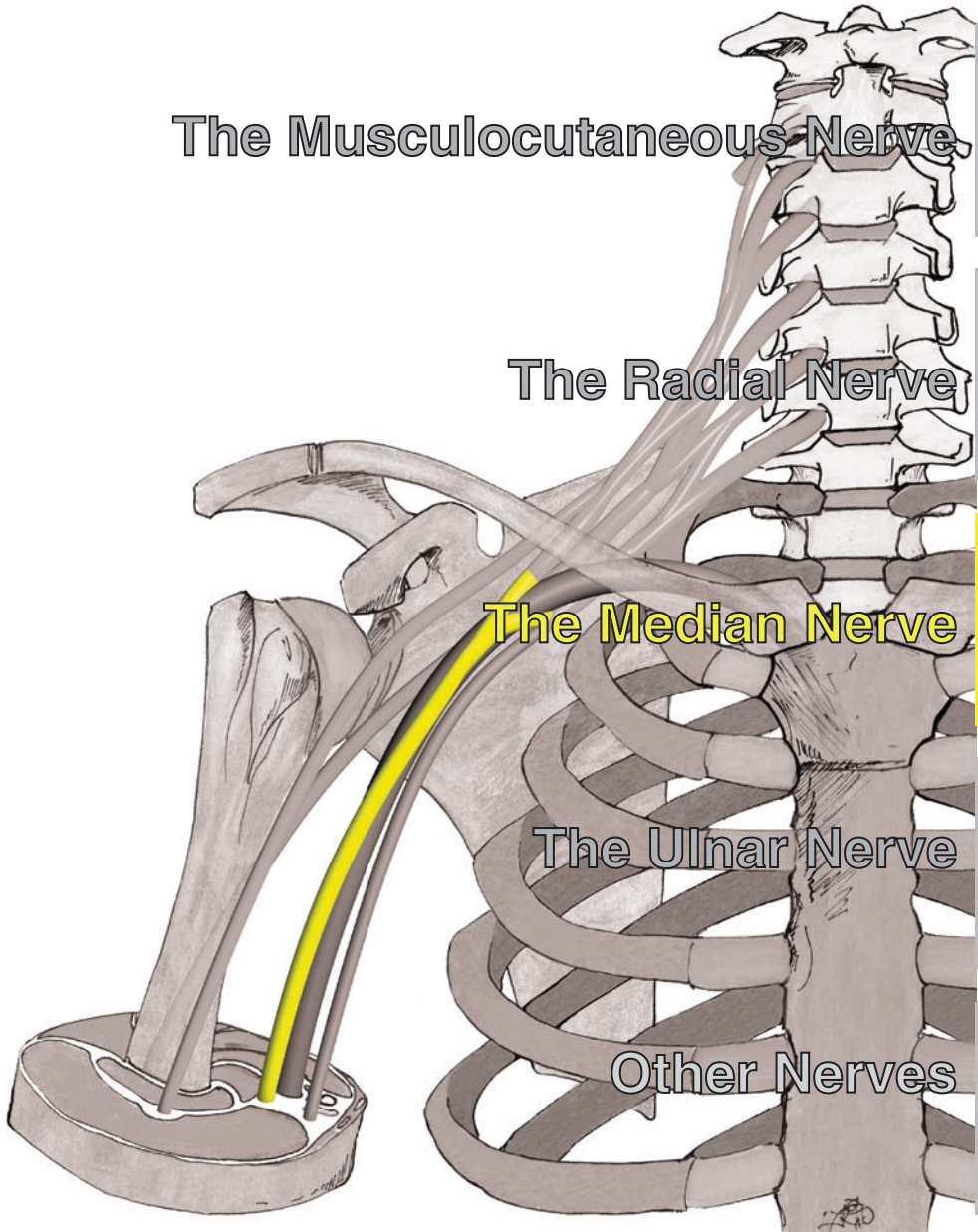
The Musculocutaneous Nerve

The Radial Nerve

The Median Nerve

The Ulnar Nerve

Other Nerves



M

The Median Nerve

Morphological Data

The median nerve is a mixed nerve coming from two main branches, themselves coming from the lateral and medial cords of the brachial plexus.

Origin

The median nerve is constituted of nerve fibres coming from the C6, C7, C8 and T1 roots. Sometimes, nerve fibres coming from C5 are also found (Figures M1 and M2).

The lateral cord of the brachial plexus, after giving off the musculocutaneous nerve, ends at the lateral root of the median nerve. Similarly, the medial cord, after producing the ulnar nerve and medial cutaneous nerve of the arm, ends at the medial root of the median nerve.

These two roots surround the vascular axis of the arm and then reunite at the level of its anterior and lateral face, forming a “V shape” which is situated above and outside of the musculocutaneous nerve and in front of the radial nerve (Figure M3). The terminal branches of the brachial plexus form a sheath around the axillary artery and are in close relationship with the axillary vein. The axillary artery is therefore an important landmark when performing an anaesthesia block of these nerves.

The median nerve lies in front of this artery, the ulnar and radial nerves medially and below and the musculocutaneous nerve laterally and above.

At this level, the median nerve faces the coracobrachialis muscle laterally, the pectoralis major and minor muscles in front and the subscapularis muscle in behind (Figure M3).

Path

The median nerve then goes down along the arm, lying against the brachial artery in the brachial tunnel (Figures M3 and M4). The brachial tunnel is situated in the sulcus bicipitalis medialis and is delimited by the aponeurotic expansions of the adjacent muscles: biceps brachii and coracobrachialis muscles in front and brachialis muscle behind. At this level, the median nerve is in relation with the musculocutaneous nerve laterally and the ulnar nerve and medial cutaneous nerve of the arm and of the forearm medially (Figures M12 and M14).

After crossing the brachial artery at the lower third of the arm, it places itself medially. It then goes behind the bicipital aponeurosis, lying against the brachialis muscle (Figure M5).

At the elbow, it penetrates the anterior antebrachial region by going between the two heads of the pronator teres muscle (Figure M6). When travelling through the medial axis of the forearm, it passes deeper than the flexor digitorum superficialis (Figures M7, M13, M15, M17, M18 and M19).

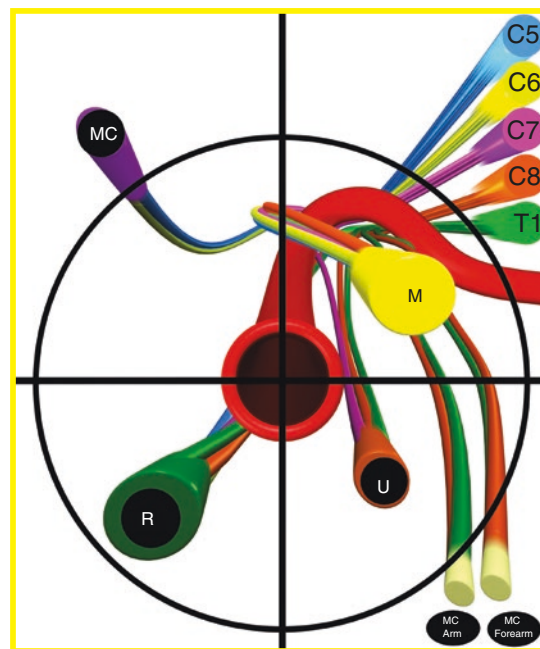
Three times the width of a finger above the flexor retinaculum of the hand, it emerges at the lateral edge of the flexor digitorum superficialis muscle and then penetrates into the hand through the carpal tunnel (Figures M8 and M9).

Neurovascular Relations

The median nerve faces the axillary artery behind its origin.

In the arm, the median nerve laterally faces the brachial artery onto which it lies closely (Figure M3).

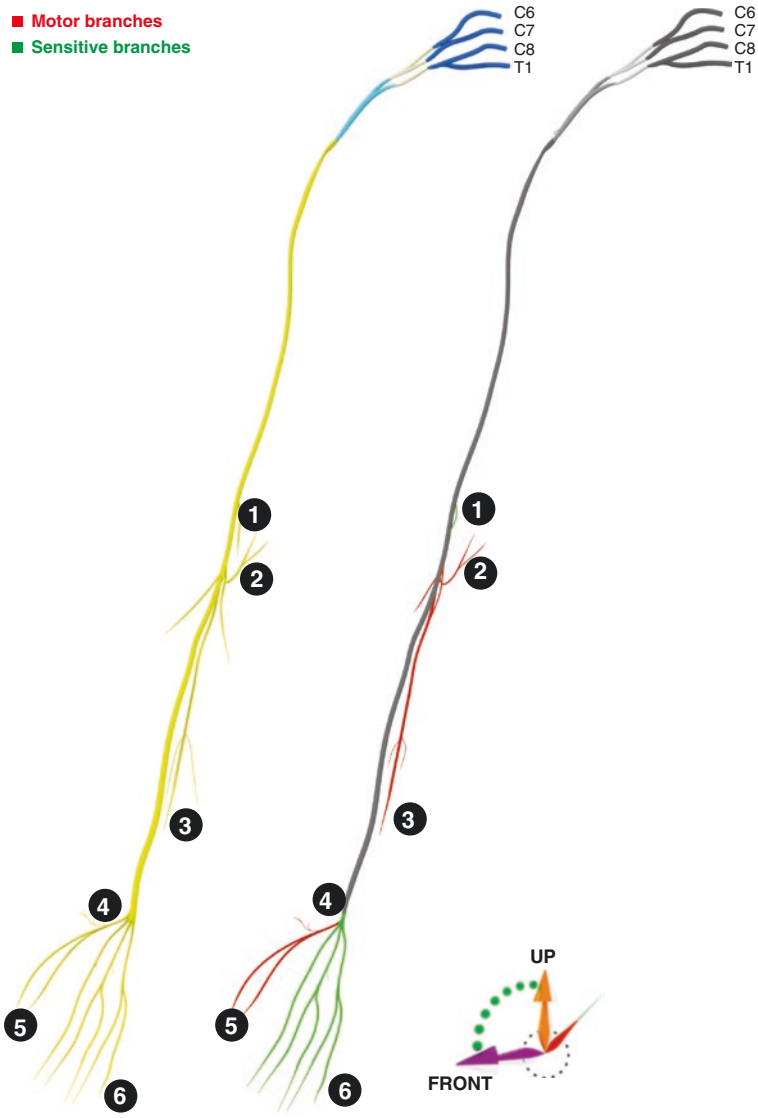
In the elbow, it crosses the ulnar artery from the front before entering the anterior compartment of the forearm (Figure M5). It faces the radial artery laterally and, from a distance, behind the flexor digitorum profundus and flexor pollicis longus and also from a distance the anterior interosseous artery (Figure M7).



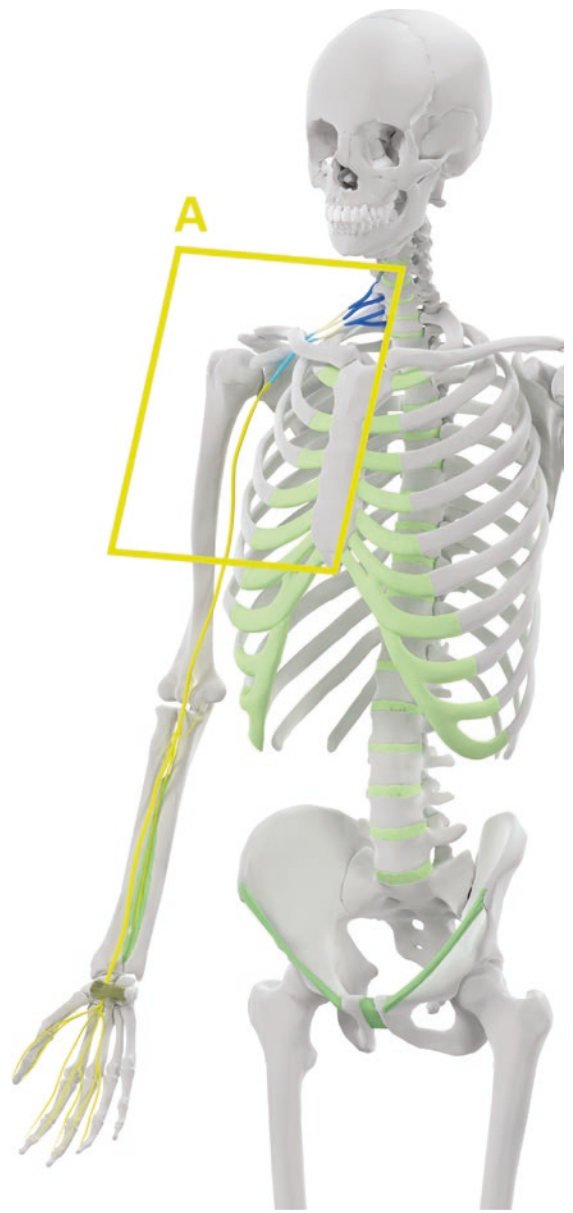
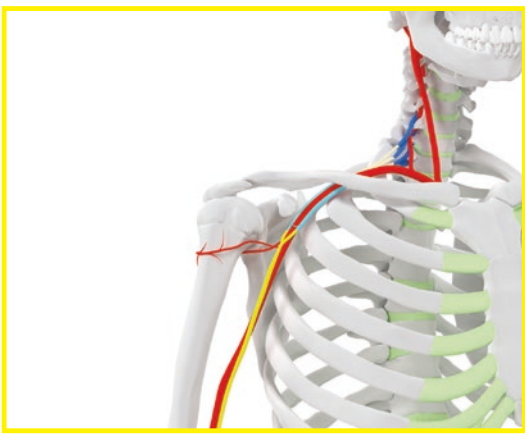
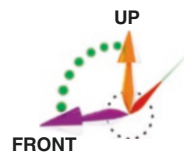
© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure M1. Origin of the median nerve

■ Motor branches
 ■ Sensitive branches



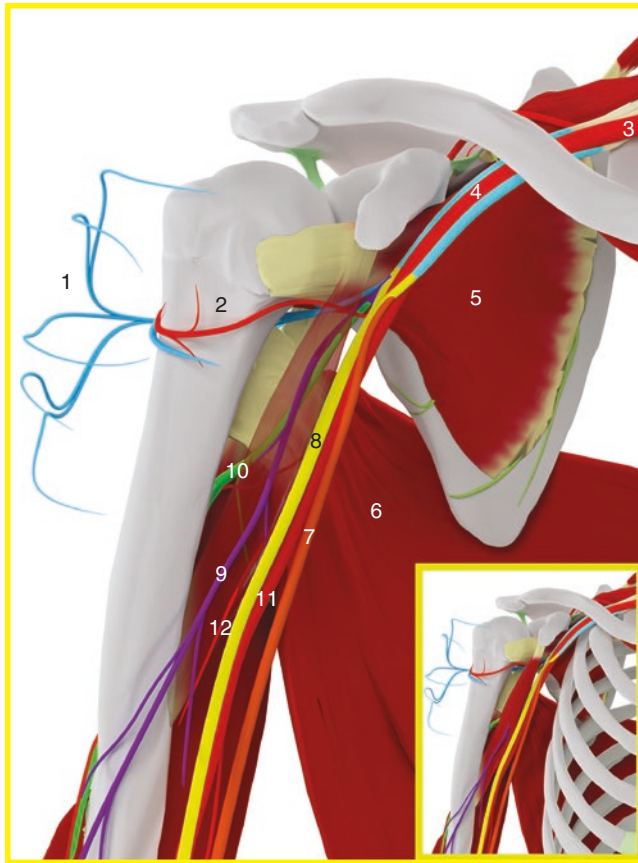
- 1 Articular branch for the elbow
- 2 Branch for the pronator teres muscle and for the muscles attached to the medial epicondyle
- 3 Anterior interosseous nerve
- 4 Motor branch for the thenar muscles
- 5 Lateral palmar collateral nerve to the thumb
- 6 Sensitive branches



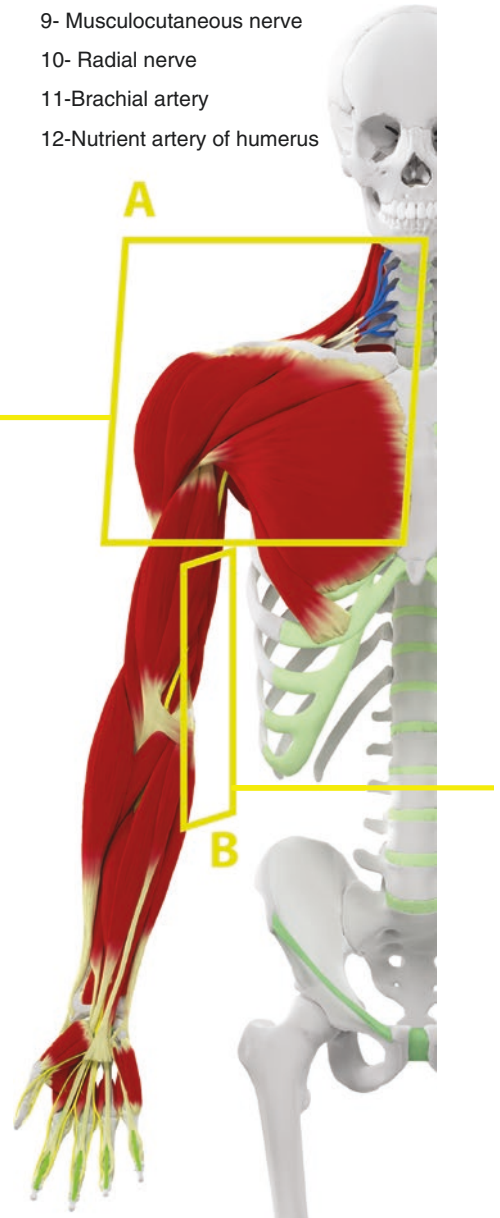
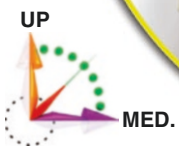
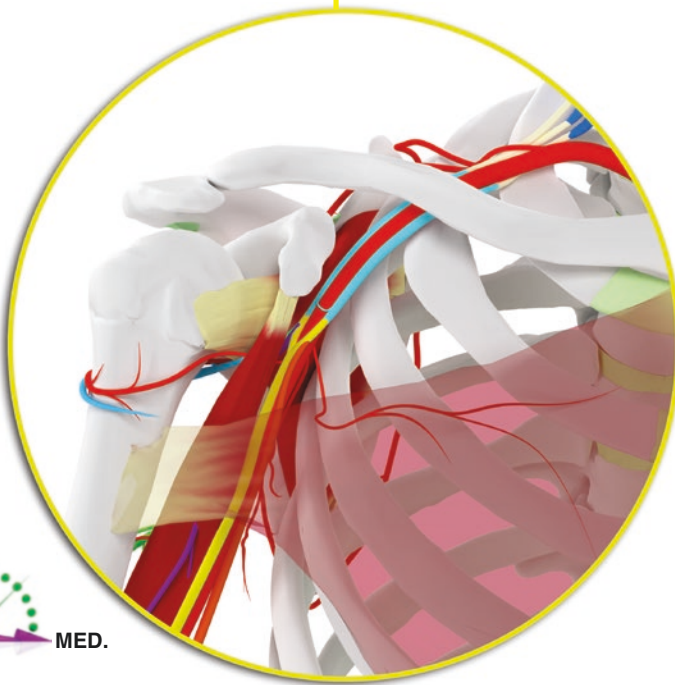
© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure M2. Topographical distribution of the median nerve and its relations with bones

The Median Nerve



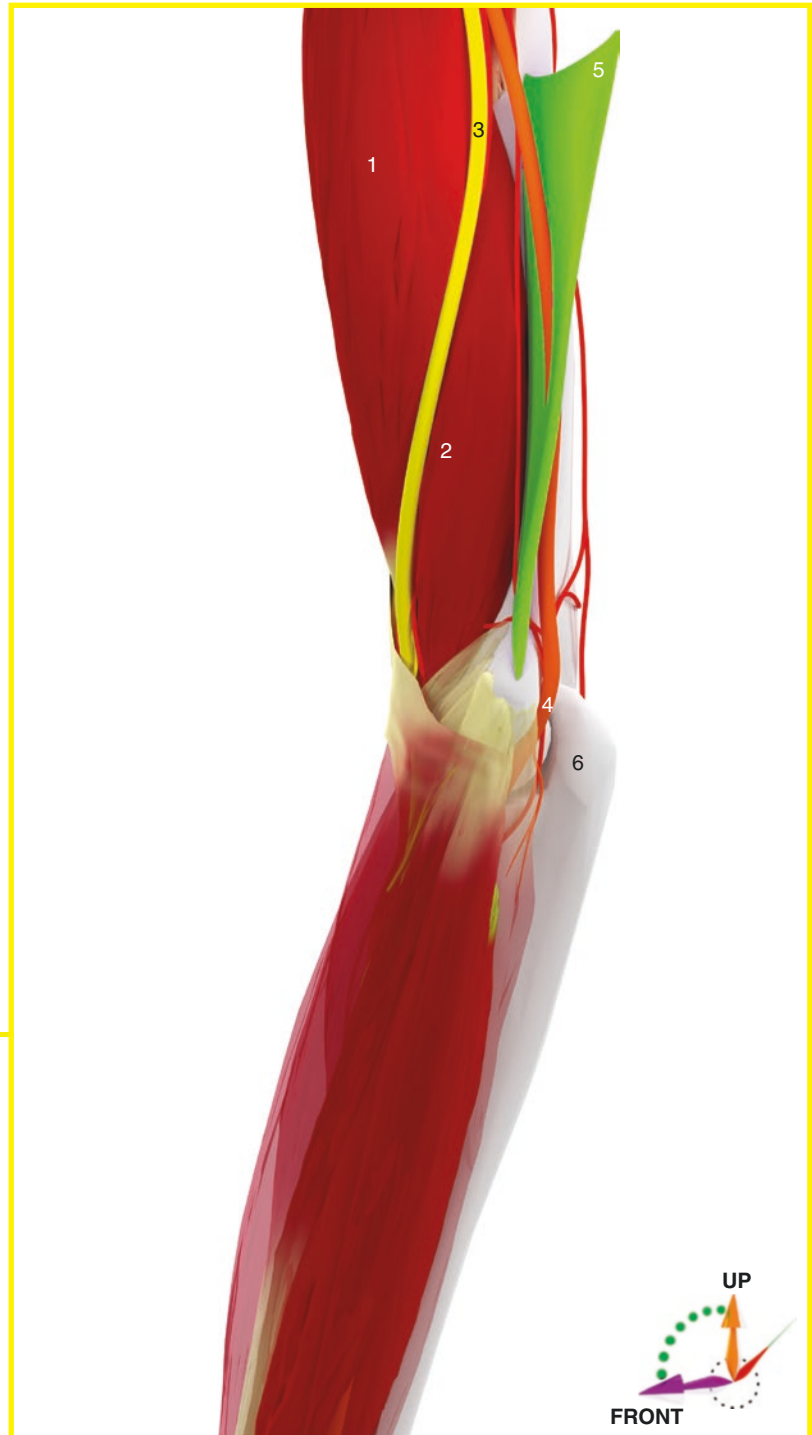
- 1- Axillary nerve
- 2- Anterior humeral circumflex artery
- 3- Subclavian artery
- 4- Axillary artery
- 5- Subscapularis muscle
- 6- Latissimus dorsi muscle
- 7- Ulnar nerve
- 8- Median nerve
- 9- Musculocutaneous nerve
- 10- Radial nerve
- 11- Brachial artery
- 12- Nutrient artery of humerus



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure M3. Path and neurovascular relations of the median nerve in the arm

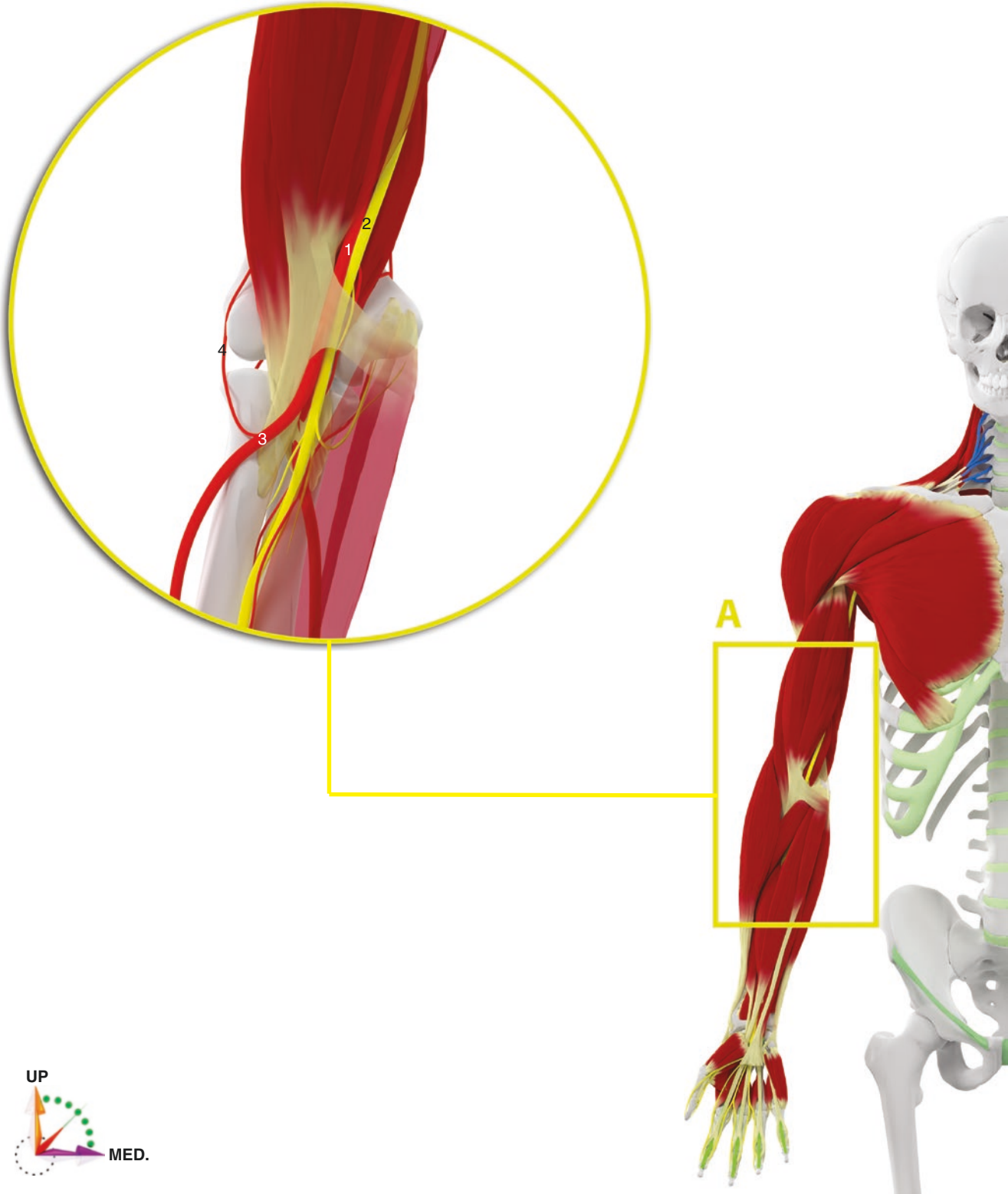
- 1- Biceps brachii muscle
- 2- Brachialis muscle
- 3- Median nerve
- 4- Ulnar nerve
- 5- Medial intermuscular septum
- 6- Olecranon



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure M4. Path and muscular relations of the median nerve in the elbow

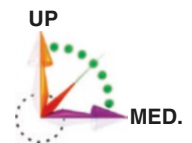
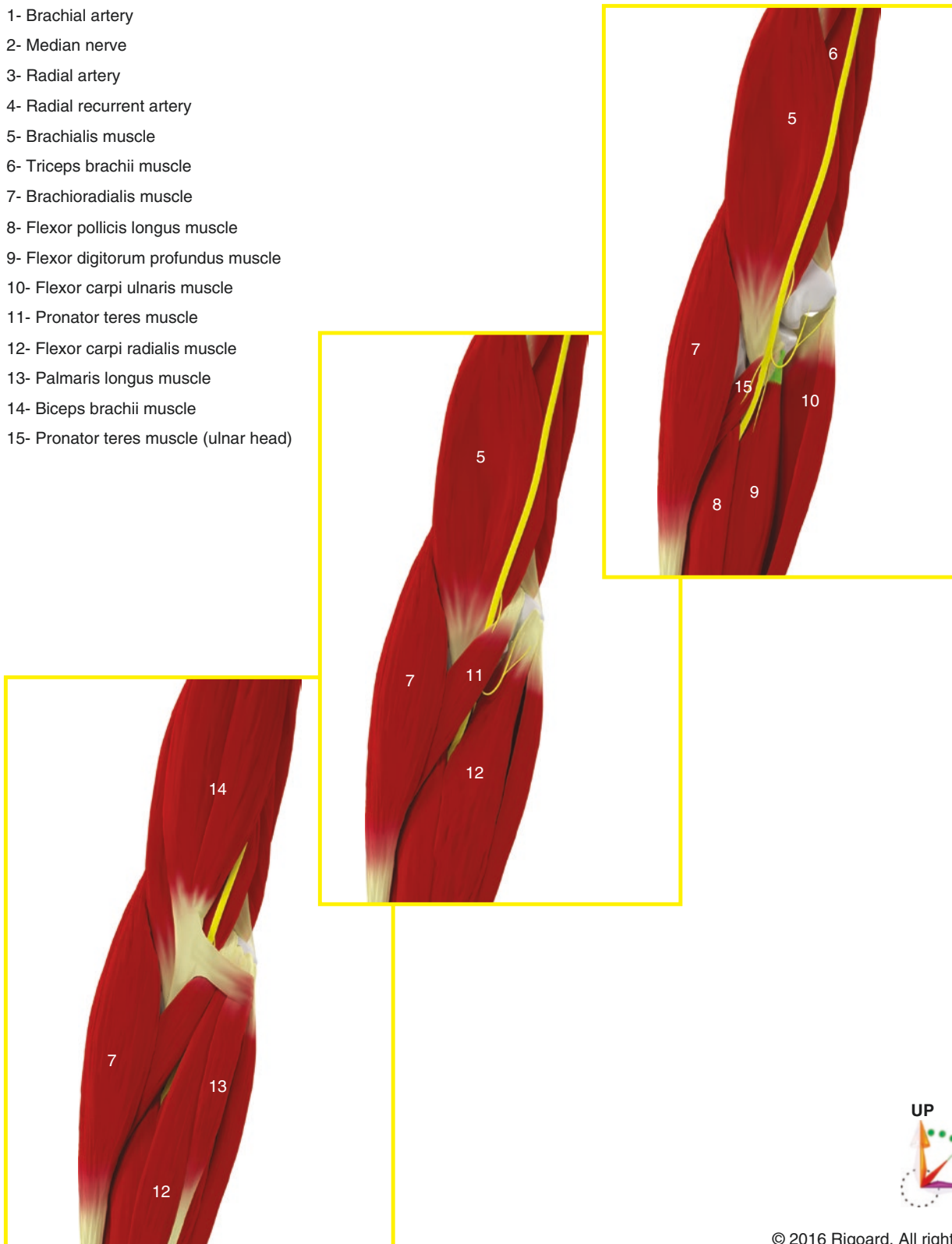
The Median Nerve



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure M5. Neurovascular relations of the median nerve in the elbow

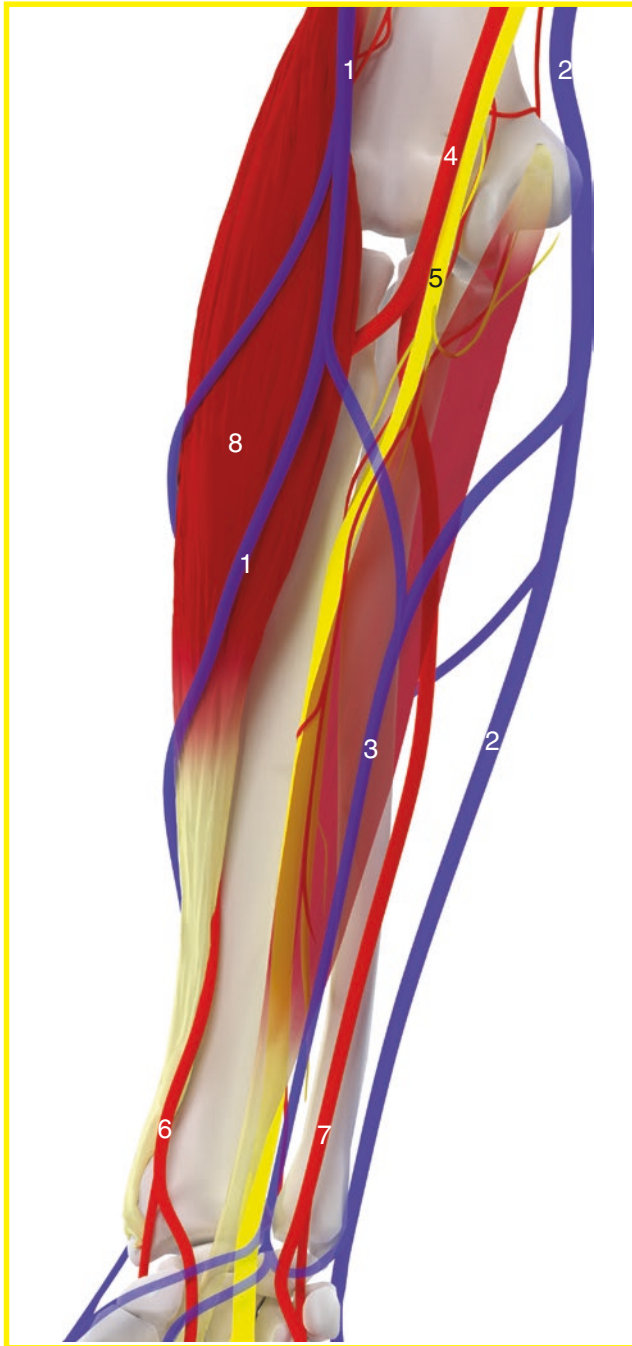
- 1- Brachial artery
- 2- Median nerve
- 3- Radial artery
- 4- Radial recurrent artery
- 5- Brachialis muscle
- 6- Triceps brachii muscle
- 7- Brachioradialis muscle
- 8- Flexor pollicis longus muscle
- 9- Flexor digitorum profundus muscle
- 10- Flexor carpi ulnaris muscle
- 11- Pronator teres muscle
- 12- Flexor carpi radialis muscle
- 13- Palmaris longus muscle
- 14- Biceps brachii muscle
- 15- Pronator teres muscle (ulnar head)



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

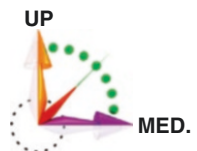
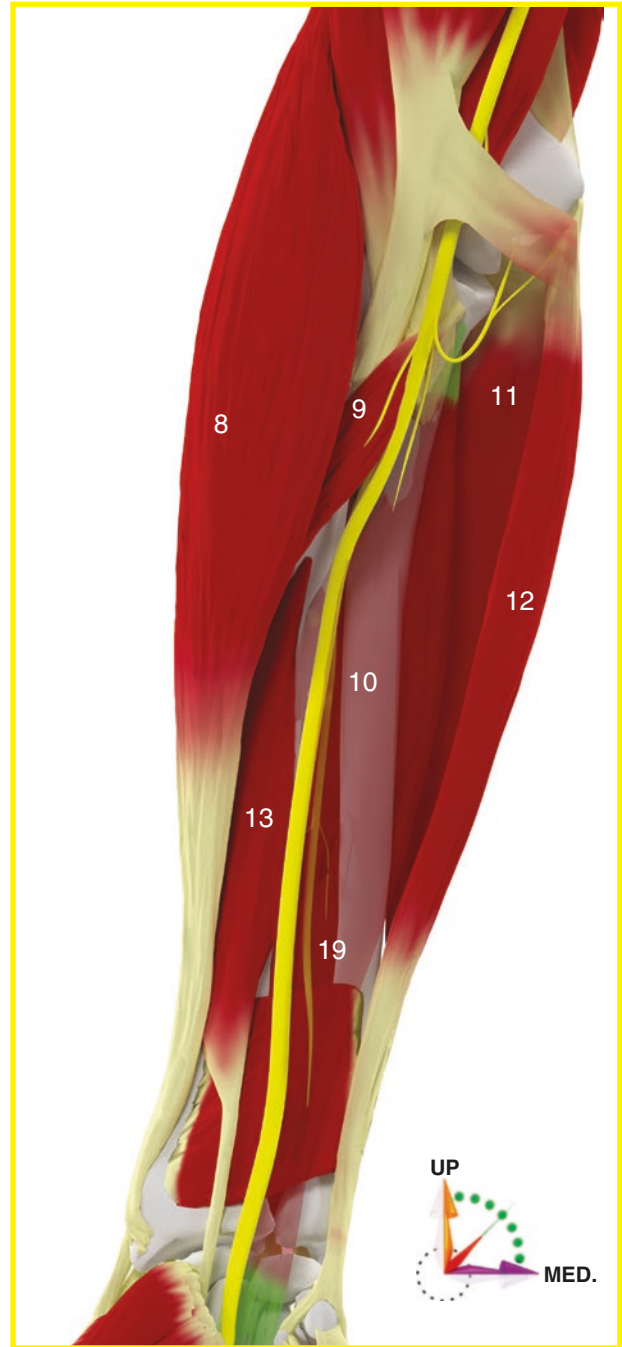
Figure M6. Muscular relations of the median nerve in the elbow

The Median Nerve



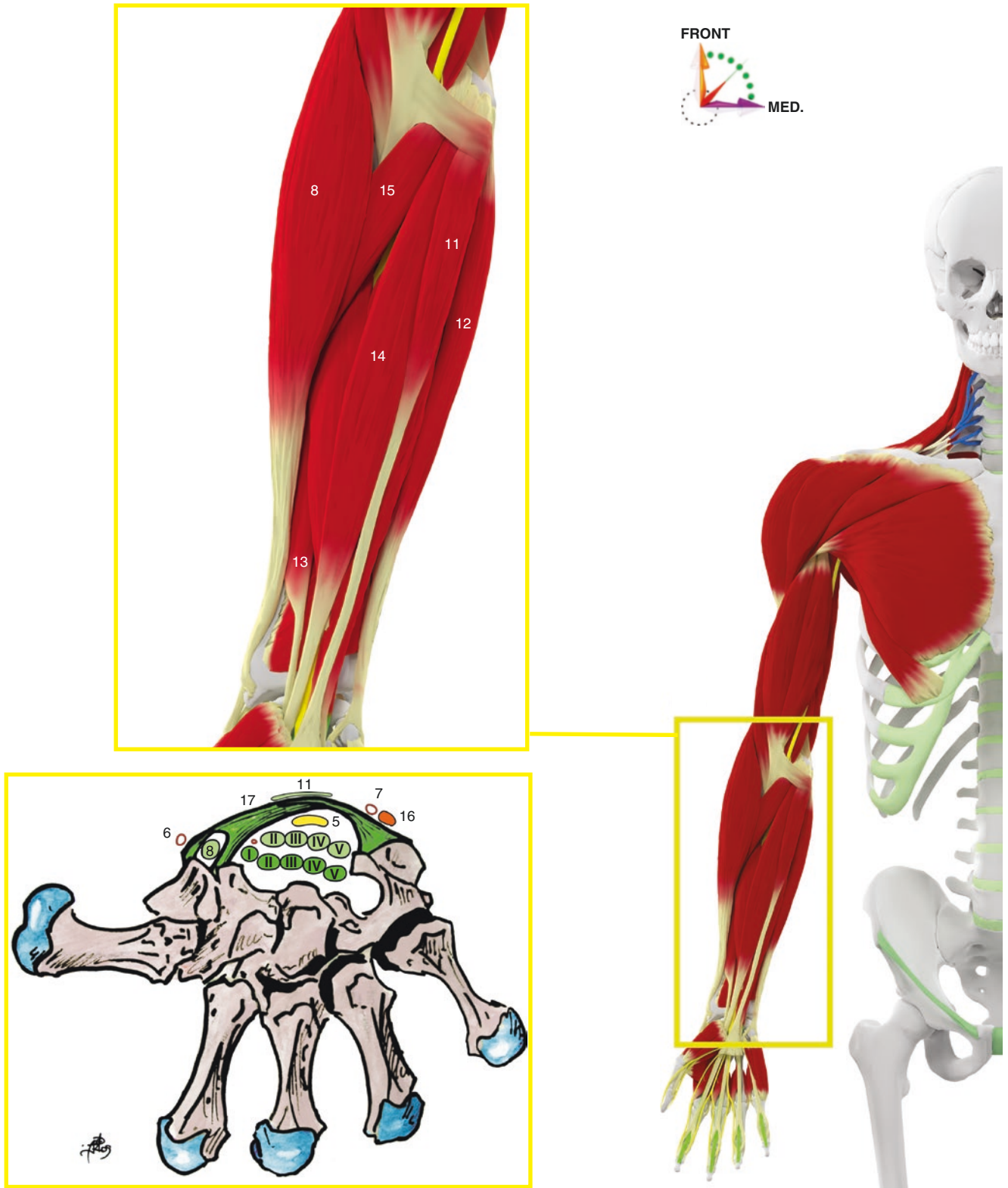
- | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1- Cephalic vein | 7- Ulnar artery |
| 2- Basilic vein | 8- Brachioradialis muscle |
| 3- Median antebrachial vein | 9- Pronator teres muscle (deep head) |
| 4- Brachial artery | 10- Flexor digitorum profundus muscle |
| 5- Median nerve | 11- Palmaris longus muscle |
| 6- Radial artery | |

- | | |
|--|--|
| 12- Flexor carpi ulnaris muscle | 16- Ulnar nerve |
| 13- Flexor pollicis longus muscle | 17- Flexor retinaculum |
| 14- Flexor carpi radialis muscle | 18- Flexor carpi radialis muscle |
| 15- Pronator teres muscle (superficial head) | 19- Anterior interosseous nerve (transparent view) |



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure M7. Neurovascular relations of the median nerve in the forearm

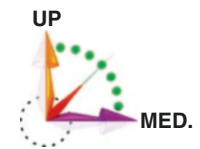


© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure M8. Muscular relations of the median nerve in the forearm and when entering the carpal tunnel

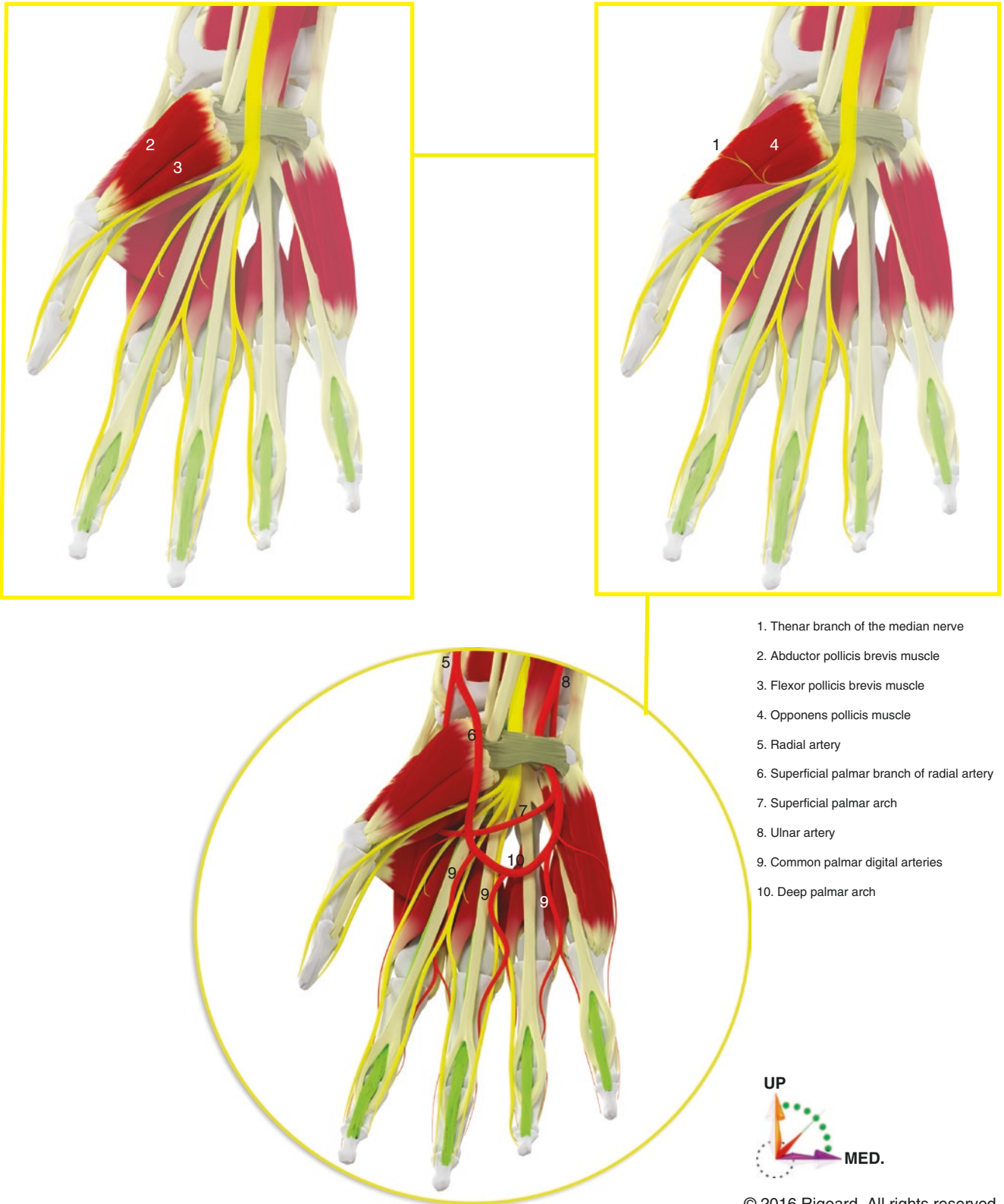
The Median Nerve

- 1- Median nerve
- 2- Flexor digitorum superficialis muscle
- 3- Abductor pollicis brevis muscle
- 4- Flexor pollicis brevis muscle
- 5- Adductor pollicis muscle
- 6- Lumbricals
- 7- Opponens digiti minimi muscle
- 8- Flexor digiti minimi brevis muscle
- 9- Abductor digiti minimi muscle
- 10- Flexor retinaculum
- 11- Common palmar digital nerve of the thumb
- 12- Lateral proper palmar digital nerve of the index
- 13- Common palmar digital nerve of the index
- 14- Common palmar digital nerve of the middle finger
- 15- Medial palmar digital nerve of the index
- 16- Lateral palmar digital nerve of the middle finger
- 17- Medial palmar digital nerve of the middle finger
- 18- Lateral palmar digital nerve of the ring finger

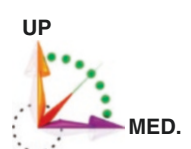


© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure M9. Relations of the median nerve in the hand



- 1. Thenar branch of the median nerve
- 2. Abductor pollicis brevis muscle
- 3. Flexor pollicis brevis muscle
- 4. Opponens pollicis muscle
- 5. Radial artery
- 6. Superficial palmar branch of radial artery
- 7. Superficial palmar arch
- 8. Ulnar artery
- 9. Common palmar digital arteries
- 10. Deep palmar arch



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure M10. Neurovascular relations of the median nerve in the hand

The Median Nerve

In the hand, the median nerve goes into the carpal tunnel where it medially faces the ulnar artery from a distance and the radial artery laterally. It then goes behind the superficial palmar arch and divides into terminal branches (Figure M10).

Collateral Branches

In the arm, the median nerve gives rise to (Figure M2):

- A vascular ramus for the brachial artery
- A diaphyseal branch for the humerus
- Articular branches for the elbow
- Motor branches for the muscles in the anterior compartment of the forearm, especially the muscles related to the medial epicondyle: flexor carpi radialis, palmaris longus and flexor digitorum superficialis
- A palmar sensitive branch for the skin of the thenar eminence and the palm of the hand

A few centimetres (5–8 cm) below the axillary pit, it goes between the two heads of the pronator teres muscle and gives rise to the anterior interosseous nerve (Figure M7).

The anterior interosseous nerve goes along the interosseous membrane of the two bones in the forearm, accompanied by the similarly named artery, and innervates the flexor pollicis longus, the lateral part of the flexor digitorum profundus and the pronator quadratus muscles. It also gives off proprioceptive fibres for the carpus, the radiocarpal and radioulnar joints, and ends at the level of the wrist.

Terminal Branches

The median nerve travels into the carpal tunnel, constituted in front by the carpal bones, shaped like a groove, itself closed in front by the flexor retinaculum of the wrist and covered by the prolongation of the tendon of the palmaris brevis muscle. The median nerve is, in that area, accompanied in behind by the tendons of the flexor digitorum, surrounded by their synovial sheath. It is at this level that the nerve divides itself into its five terminal branches (Figure M9):

- The recurrent thenar branch: the nerve leaves the motor branch for the thenar muscles at a height that can vary. This branch can sometimes detach itself from the ventral side of the nerve (in 6% of the population), and in that case, it is particularly exposed. This branch is headed to the opponens pollicis and abductor brevis muscles, as well as the superficial bundle of the flexor pollicis brevis (Figure M10).
- The lateral palmar collateral nerve of the thumb, meant for the sensitive innervation of the lateral face of its palmar side.
- Three sensitive cutaneous branches, called common digital nerves of the first, second and third interdigital spaces. These three branches each divide into two cords that

innervate the edges of the corresponding palmar faces of the fingers. Each of these nerves ends by creating ramifications in the pulp of the last phalange of each corresponding digit.

Motor Function

The median nerve's muscle innervation area includes the pronator teres muscle and all the muscles of the anterior compartment of the forearm, except for the flexor carpi ulnaris muscle and the medial part of the flexor digitorum profundus.

In the hand, the median nerve is charged of the innervation of the muscles of the thenar eminence and the lumbricals of the index and middle fingers. It is therefore involved in the pronation of the hand on the forearm, the flexion of the fingers on the hand, the pollicis-digital pinch and the flexion of the hand on the forearm (Figure M11).

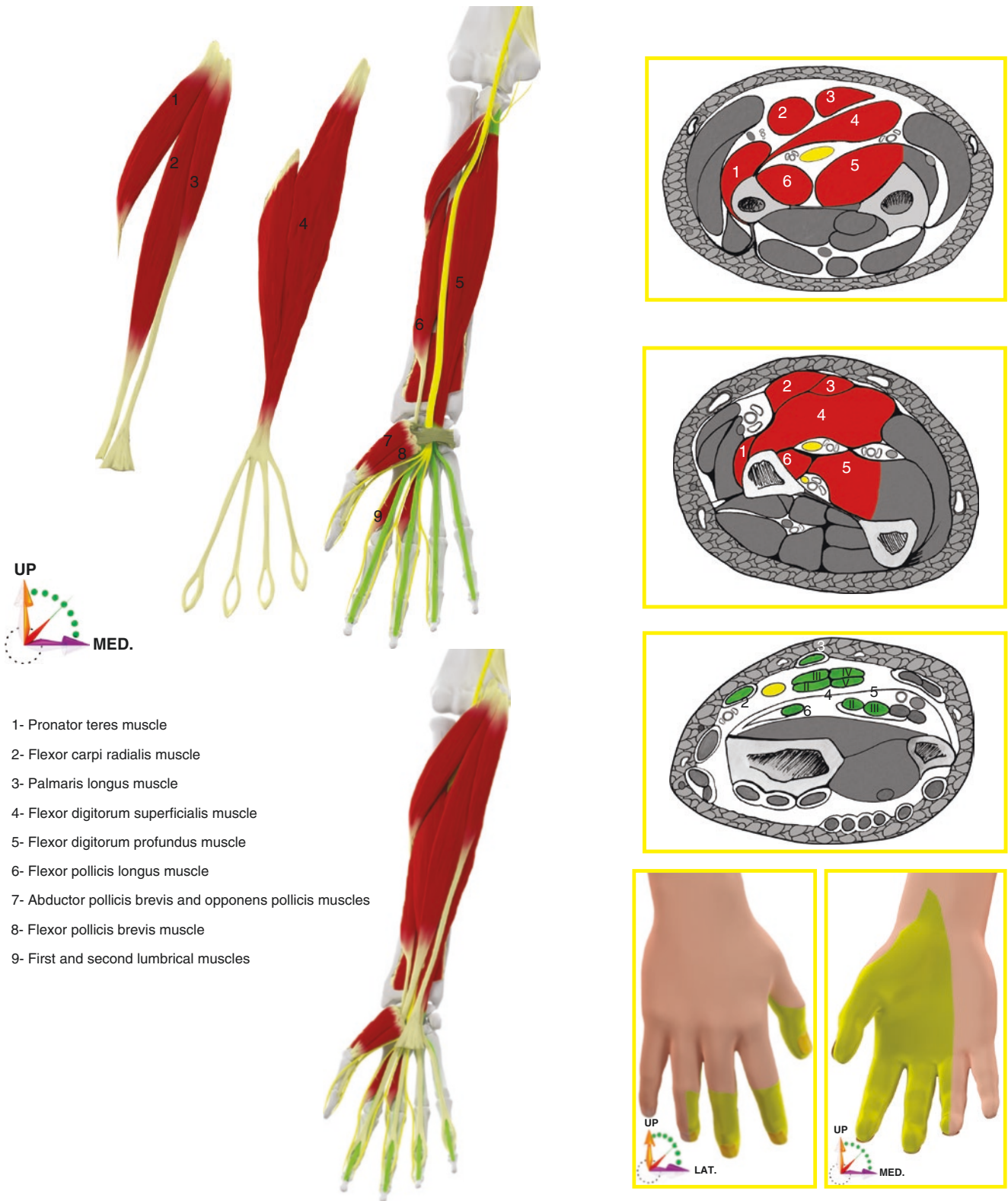
Sensitive Function

The sensitive territory of this nerve includes the whole lateral half of the palm and of the anterior face of the fingers, except for the axis going through the ring finger, in other words, the palmar faces of the first, second and third fingers and the radial half of the palmar face of the fourth finger. The posterior face corresponds to the distal and intermediate phalanges of the same fingers: first, second, third and radial half of the fourth finger (Figure M11).

Anastomoses

The median nerve produces anastomoses at different levels:

- In the arm, with the musculocutaneous nerve, described as standard by some authors of the previous century (Debierre, C.M., 1888). Likewise, anastomoses between the median nerve and the ulnar nerve seem frequent in the arm (E. Lecrosnier and Babé). This type of anastomoses can represent two or three branches between the two nerves at this level.
- In the forearm, in its superior part, with the ulnar nerve (Martin-Gruber anastomosis), between the flexor digitorum superficialis and flexor digitorum profundus. This one is often found and explains the potential substitution of the ulnar nerve for the innervation of the flexor muscles in case of a median nerve injury.
- In the hand, with the ulnar nerve (Riche-Cannieu anastomosis), at the level of the innervation of the two bundles of the flexor pollicis brevis muscle and with the radial nerve on the thenar eminence by their cutaneous ramifications.
- In the fingers, with the terminal branches of the superficial branch of the radial nerve. The anastomosis is therefore established between the collateral palmar and dorsal digital nerves.

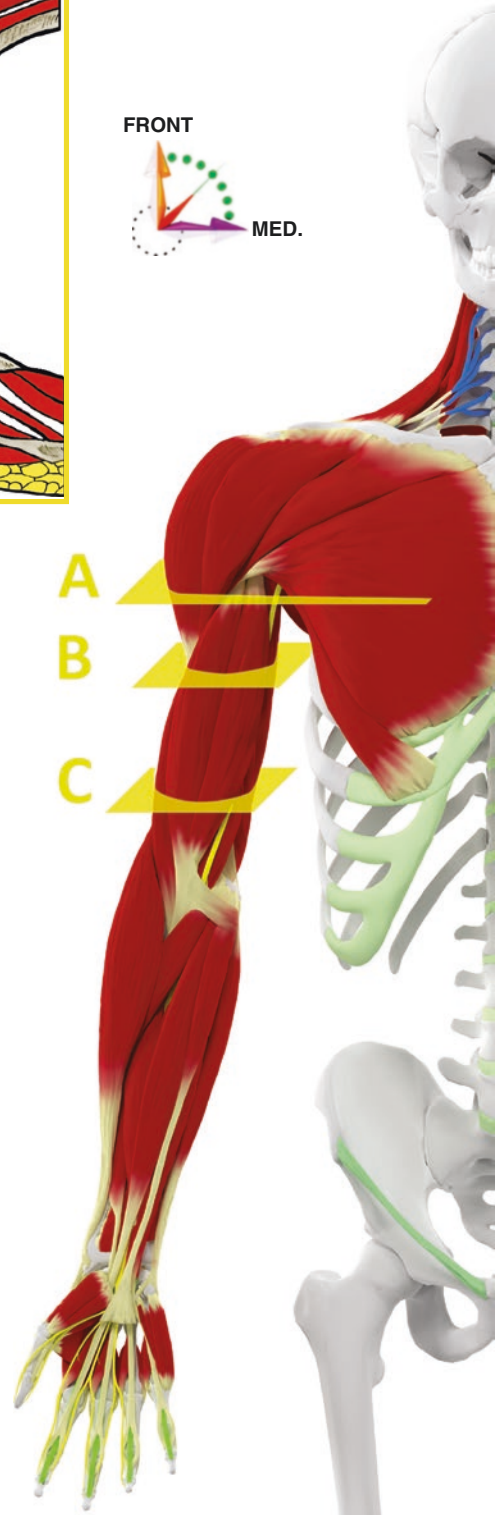
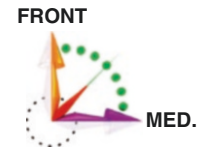
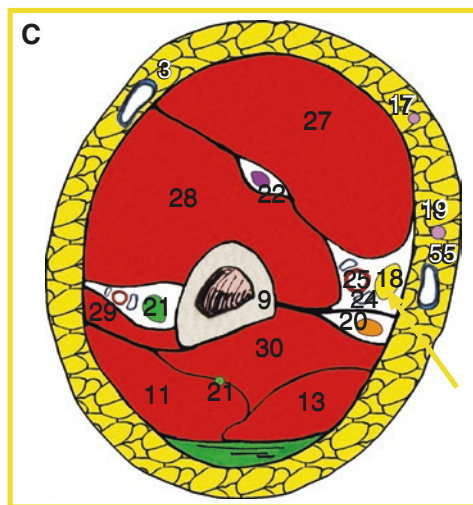
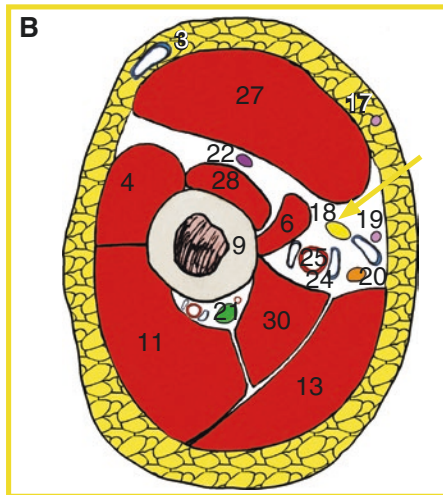
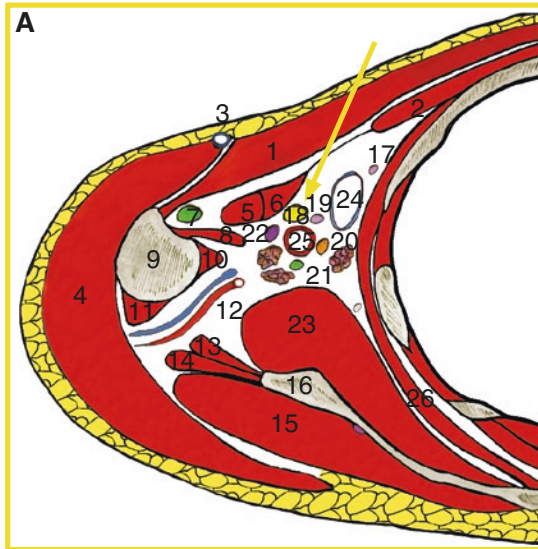


© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure M11. Motor and sensitive innervation of the median nerve

The Median Nerve

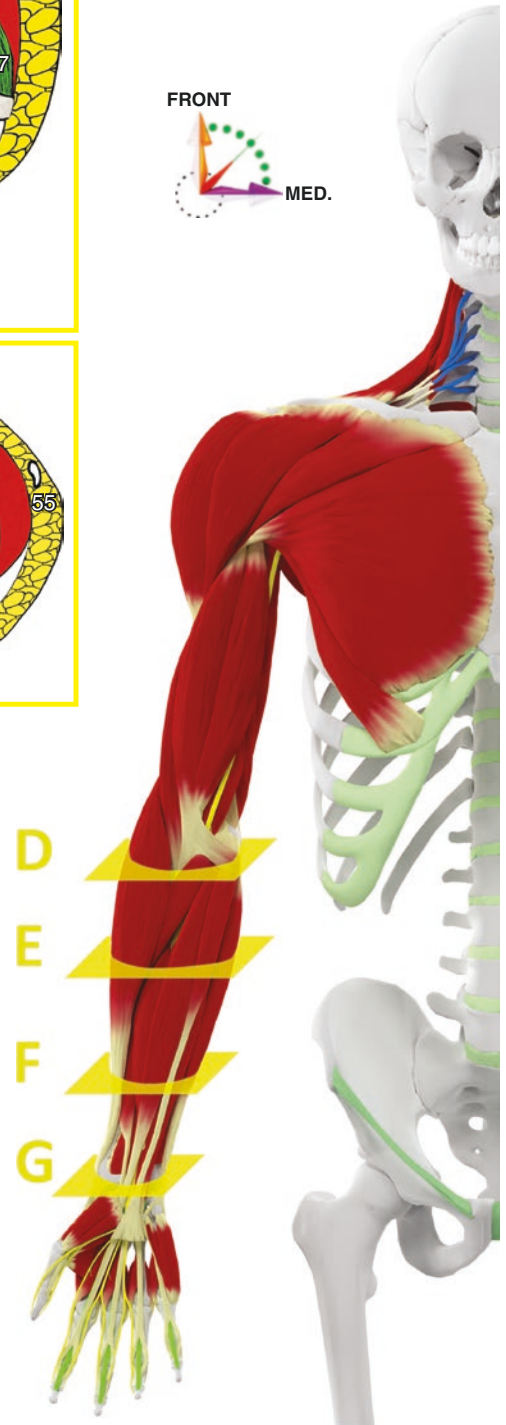
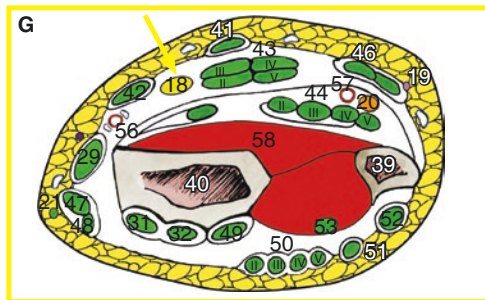
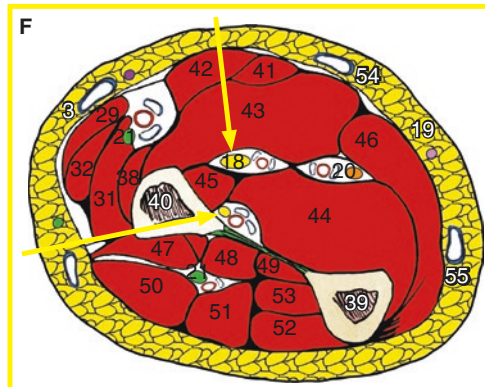
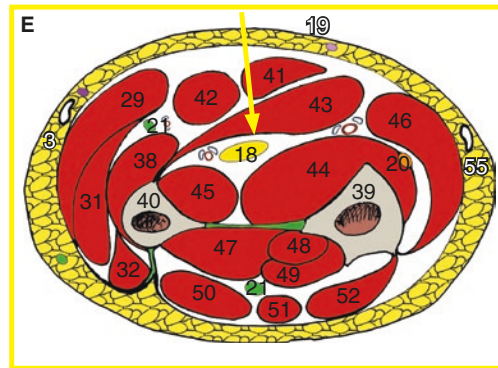
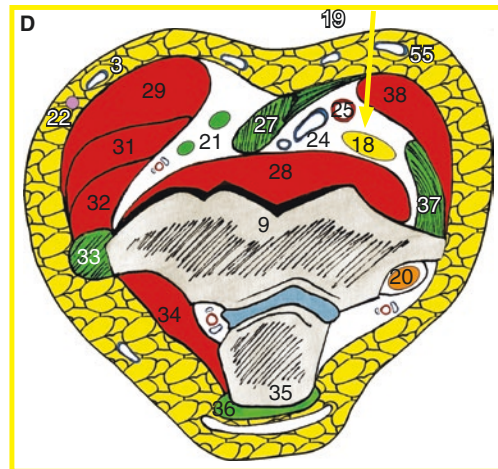
- 1- Pectoralis major muscle
- 2- Pectoralis minor muscle
- 3- Cephalic vein
- 4- Deltoid muscle
- 5- Short head of the biceps brachii muscle
- 6- Coracobrachialis muscle
- 7- Tendon of the long head of the biceps brachii muscle
- 8- Latissimus dorsi muscle
- 9- Humerus
- 10- Teres major muscle
- 11- Lateral head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 12- Circumflex artery and nerve
- 13- Long head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 14- Teres minor muscle
- 15- Infraspinatus muscle
- 16- Scapula
- 17- Medial cutaneous nerve of arm
- 18- Median nerve
- 19- Medial cutaneous nerve of forearm
- 20- Ulnar nerve
- 21- Radial nerve
- 22- Musculocutaneous nerve
- 23- Subscapularis muscle
- 24- Brachial vein
- 25- Brachial artery
- 26- Serratus anterior muscle
- 27- Biceps brachii muscle
- 28- Brachialis muscle
- 29- Brachioradialis muscle



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure M12. Relations of the median nerve in the arm, axial sections

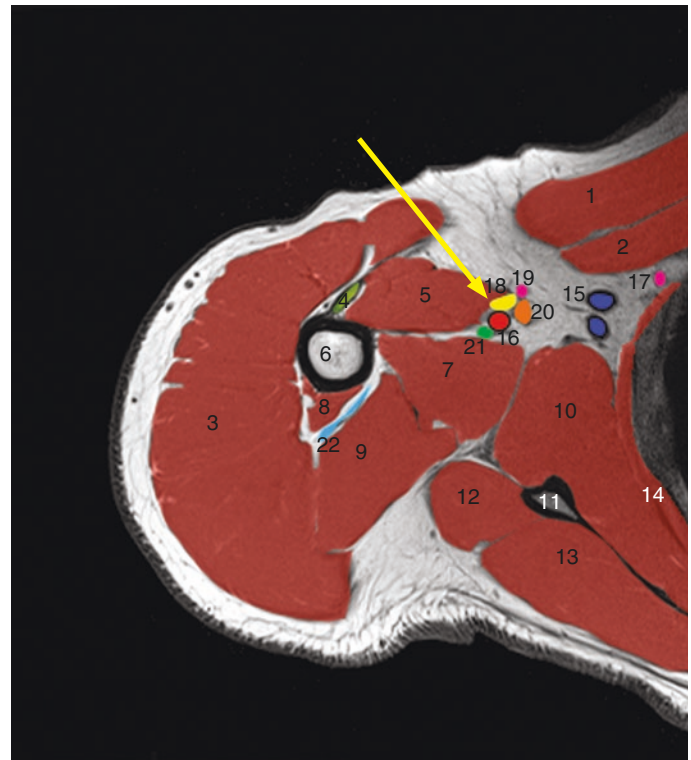
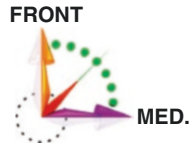
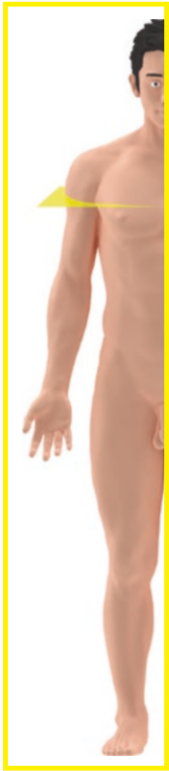
- 30- Medial head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 31- Extensor carpi radialis longus muscle
- 32- Extensor carpi radialis brevis muscle
- 33- Tendon of epicondyle muscles
- 34- Anconeus muscle
- 35- Olecranon
- 36- Tendon of the triceps brachii muscle
- 37- Tendon of the median epicondylar muscles
- 38- Pronator teres muscle
- 39- Ulna
- 40- Radius
- 41- Palmaris longus muscle
- 42- Flexor carpi radialis muscle
- 43- Flexor digitorum superficialis muscle
- 44- Flexor digitorum profundus muscle
- 45- Flexor pollicis longus muscle
- 46- Flexor carpi ulnaris muscle
- 47- Abductor pollicis longus muscle
- 48- Extensor pollicis brevis muscle
- 49- Extensor pollicis longus muscle
- 50- Extensor digitorum muscle
- 51- Extensor digiti minimi muscle
- 52- Extensor carpi ulnaris muscle
- 53- Extensor indicis muscle
- 54- Median vein of the forearm
- 55- Basilic vein
- 56- Radial artery and vein
- 57- Ulnar artery and vein
- 58- Pronator quadratus muscle



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure M13. Relations of the median nerve in the elbow and forearm, axial sections

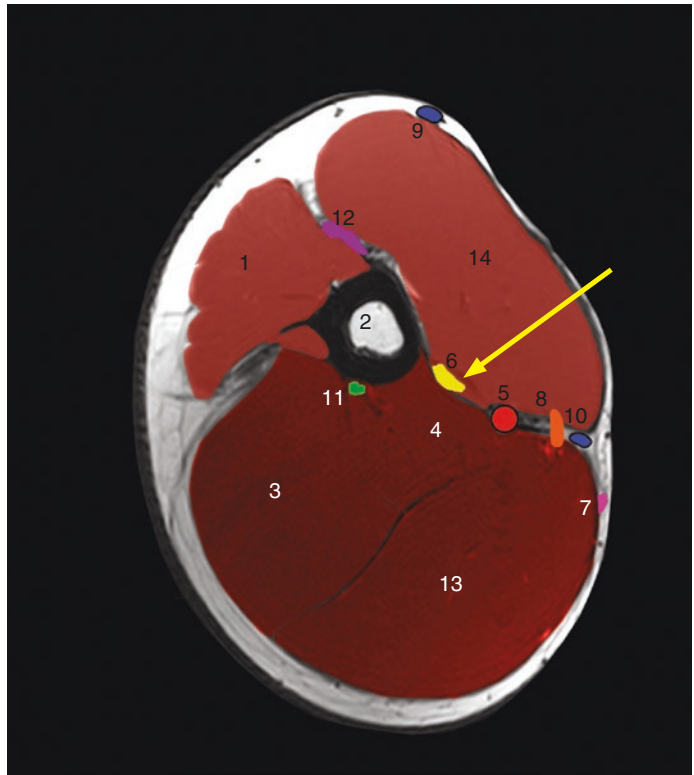
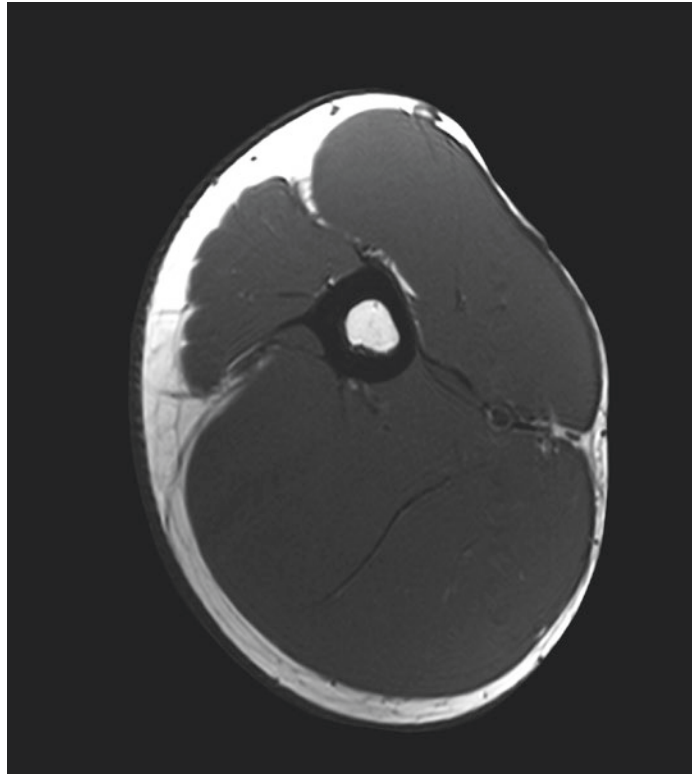
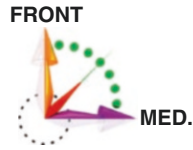
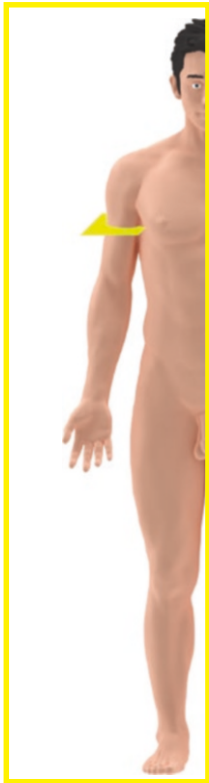
The Median Nerve



- 1- Pectoralis major muscle
- 2- Pectoralis minor muscle
- 3- Deltoid muscle
- 4- Long head of the biceps brachii muscle
- 5- Latissimus dorsi muscle
- 6- Humerus
- 7- Teres major muscle
- 8- Lateral head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 9- Medial head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 10- Subscapularis muscle
- 11- Scapula
- 12- Teres minor muscle
- 13- Infraspinatus muscle
- 14- Serratus anterior
- 15- Brachial vein
- 16- Brachial artery
- 17- Medial cutaneous nerve of arm
- 18- Median nerve
- 19- Medial cutaneous nerve of forearm
- 20- Ulnar nerve
- 21- Radial nerve
- 22- Axillary nerve

© 2016 Riguard. All rights reserved

Figure M14. MRI scans in the shoulder through the median nerve

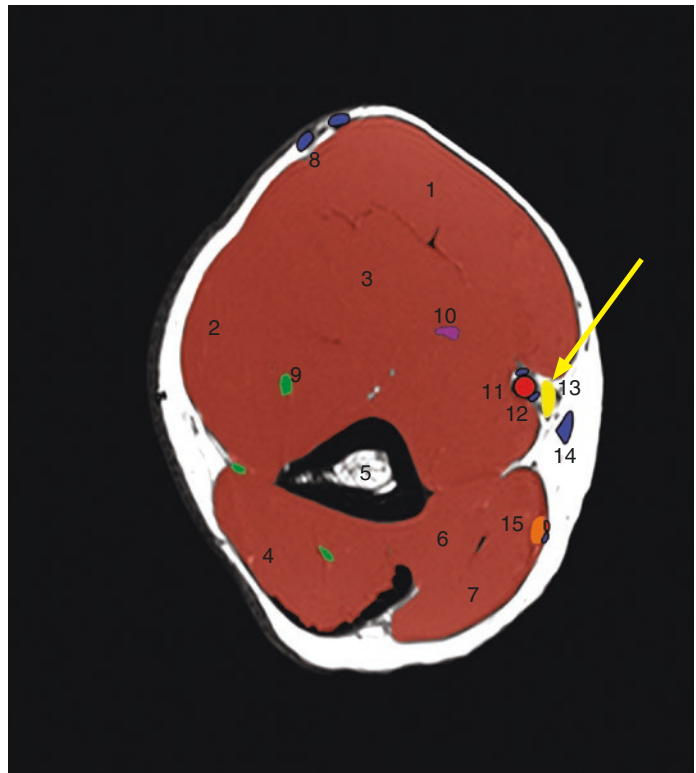
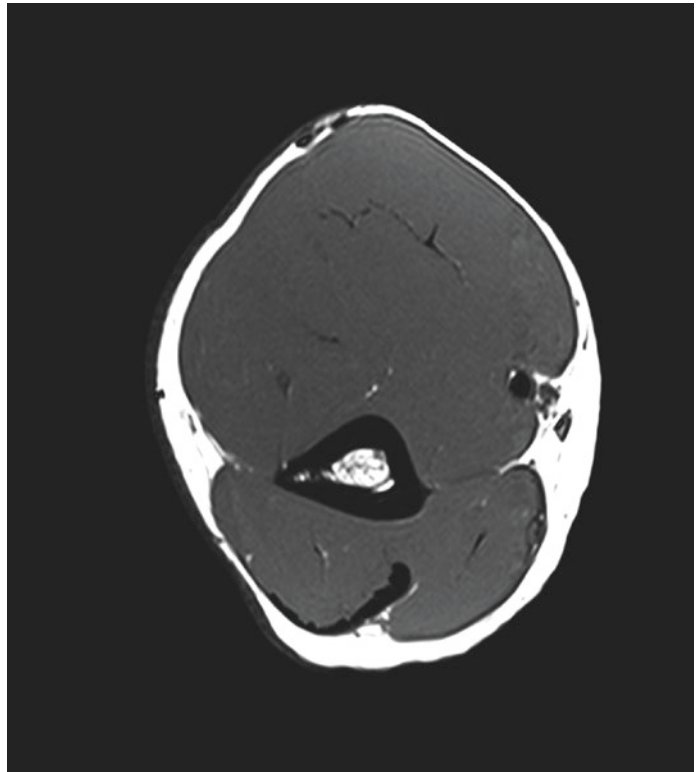
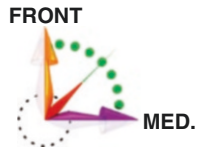
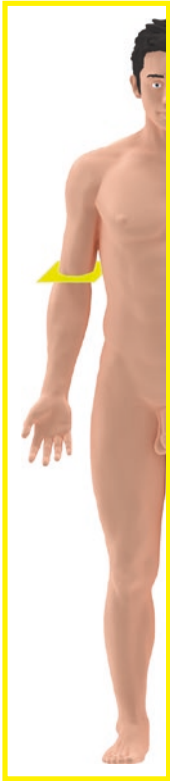


- 1- Deltoid muscle
- 2- Humerus
- 3- Lateral head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 4- Medial head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 5- Brachial artery
- 6- Median nerve
- 7- Medial cutaneous nerve of forearm
- 8- Ulnar nerve
- 9- Cephalic vein
- 10- Basilic vein
- 11- Radial nerve
- 12- Musculocutaneous nerve
- 13- Long head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 14- Biceps brachii muscle

© 2016 Riguard. All rights reserved

Figure M15. MRI scans at the proximal third of the arm through the median nerve

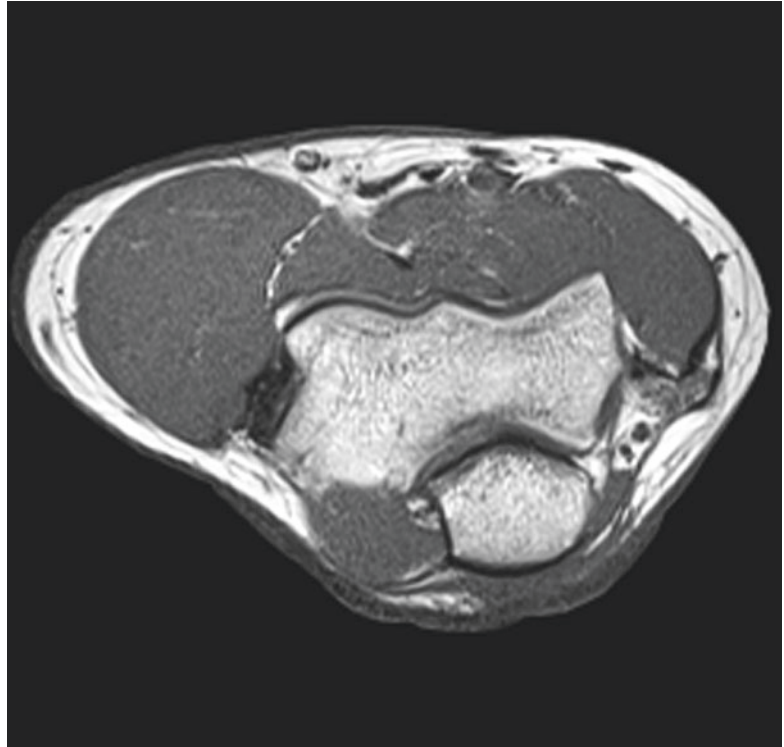
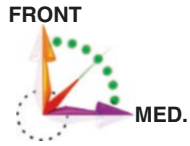
The Median Nerve



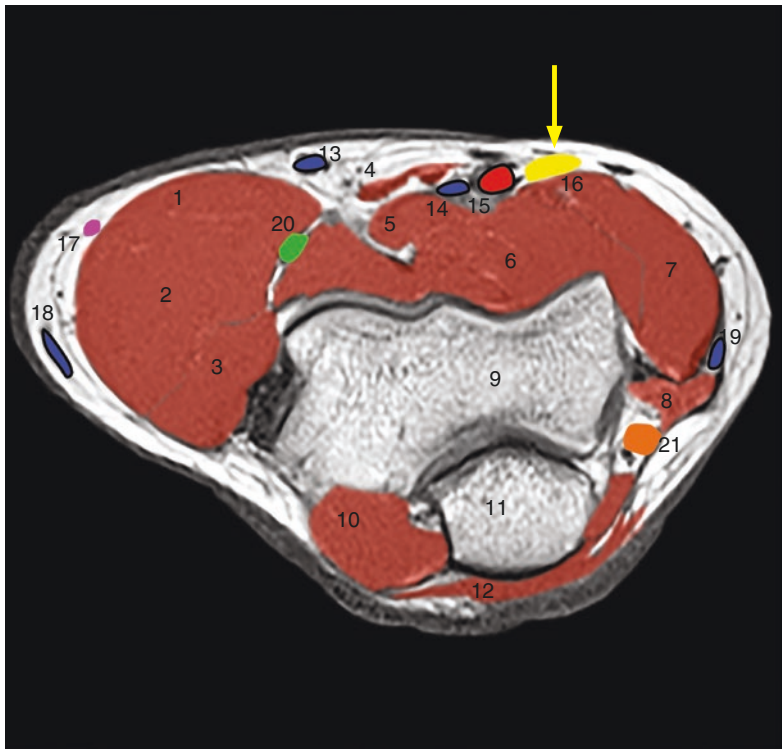
- 1- Biceps brachii muscle
- 2- Brachioradialis muscle
- 3- Brachialis muscle
- 4- Lateral head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 5- Humerus
- 6- Long head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 7- Medial head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 8- Cephalic vein
- 9- Radial nerve
- 10- Musculocutaneous nerve
- 11- Brachial artery
- 12- Brachial vein
- 13- Median nerve
- 14- Basilic vein
- 15- Ulnar nerve

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure M16. MRI scans at the distal third of the arm through the median nerve



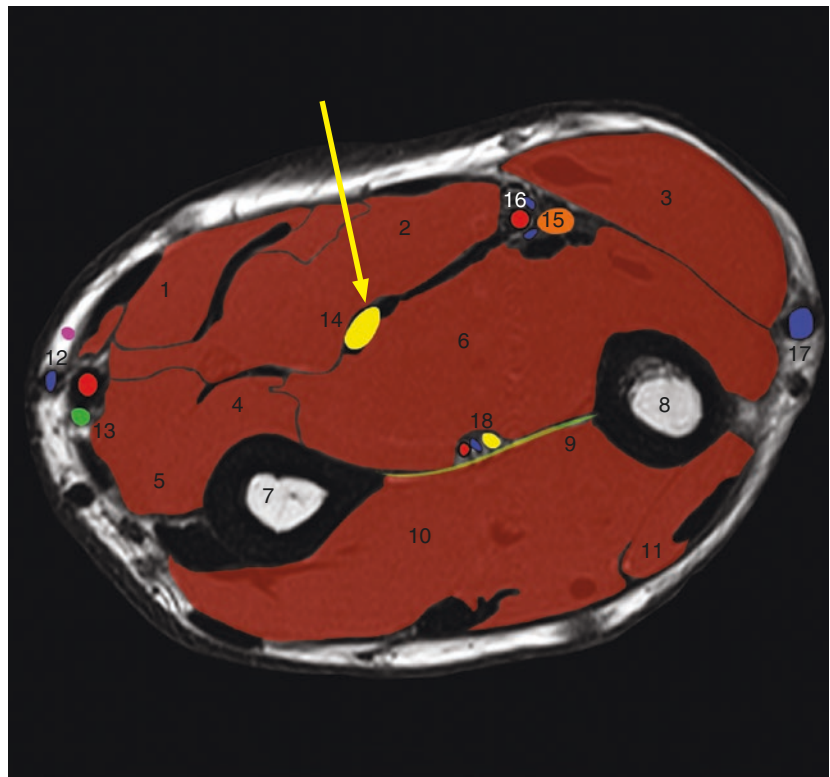
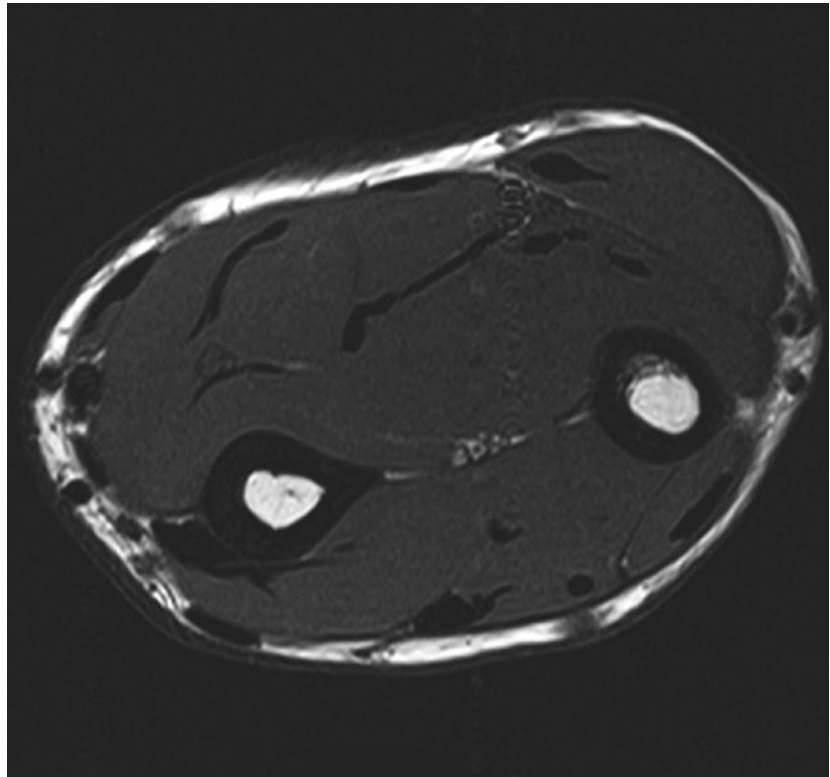
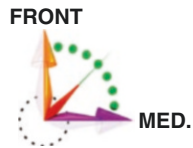
- 1- Brachioradialis muscle
- 2- Extensor carpi radialis longus muscle
- 3- Extensor carpi radialis brevis muscle
- 4- Biceps brachii muscle
- 5- Tendon of the long head of biceps
- 6- Brachialis muscle
- 7- Pronator teres muscle
- 8- Tendon of the medial epicondylar muscles
- 9- Humerus
- 10- Anconeus muscle
- 11- Ulna
- 12- Triceps brachii muscle
- 13- Medial vein at the elbow
- 14- Brachial vein
- 15- Brachial artery
- 16- Median nerve
- 17- Musculocutaneous nerve
- 18- Cephalic vein
- 19- Basilic vein
- 20- Radial nerve
- 21- Ulnar nerve



© 2016 Riguard. All rights reserved

Figure M17. MRI scans in the elbow through the median nerve

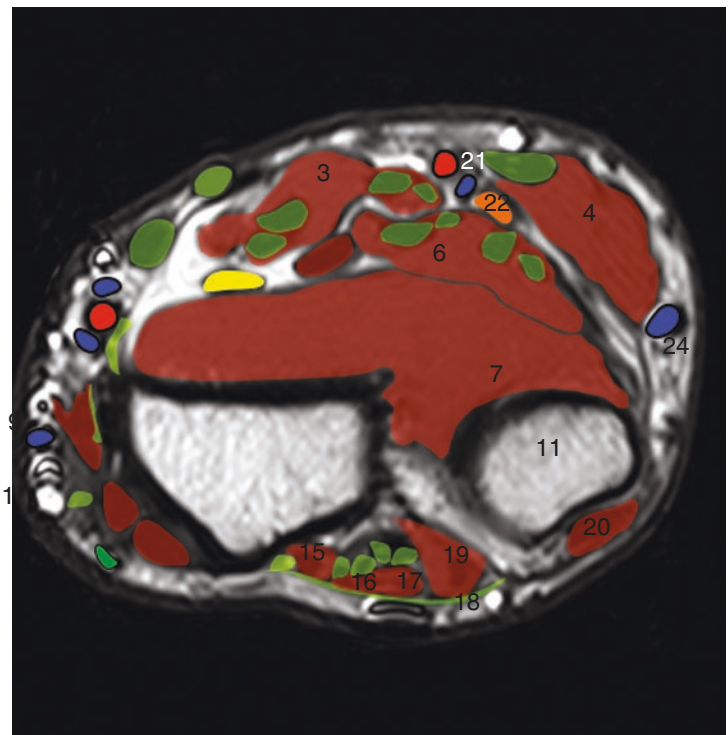
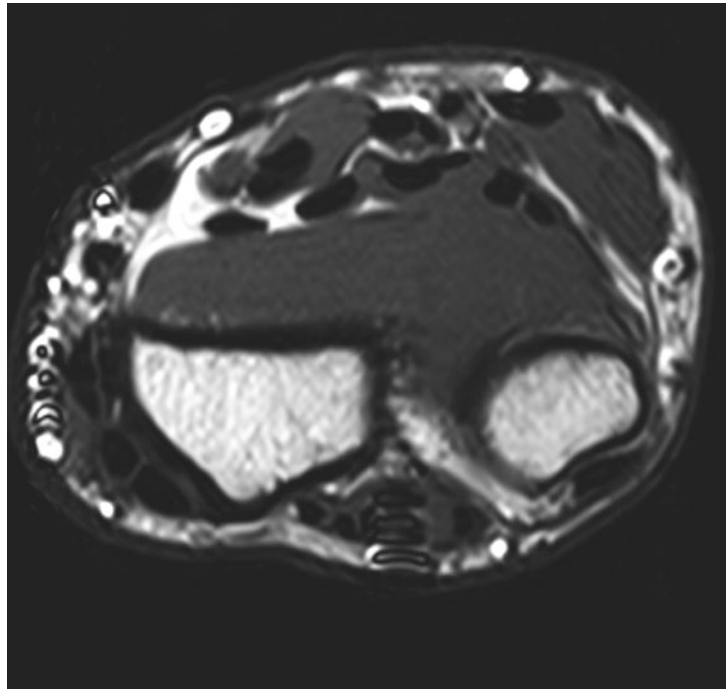
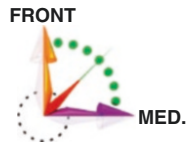
The Median Nerve



- 1- Flexor carpi radialis muscle
- 2- Flexor digitorum superficialis muscle
- 3- Flexor carpi ulnaris muscle
- 4- Flexor pollicis longus muscle
- 5- Extensor carpi radialis brevis muscle
- 6- Flexor digitorum profundus muscle
- 7- Radius
- 8- Ulna
- 9- Interosseous membrane of the forearm
- 10- Posterior compartment of the extensor digitorum muscles
- 11- Extensor carpi muscle
- 12- Radial artery and vein
- 13- Radial nerve
- 14- Median nerve
- 15- Ulnar nerve
- 16- Ulnar artery and vein
- 17- Basilic vein
- 18- Anterior interosseous artery, vein and nerve

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure M18. MRI scans in the forearm through the median nerve



- 1- Flexor carpi radialis muscle
- 2- Palmaris longus muscle
- 3- Flexor digitorum superficialis muscle
- 4- Flexor carpi ulnaris muscle
- 5- Flexor pollicis longus muscle
- 6- Flexor digitorum profundus muscle
- 7- Pronator quadratus muscle
- 8- Brachioradialis muscle
- 9- Abductor pollicis longus muscle
- 10- Radius
- 11- Ulna
- 12- Extensor pollicis brevis muscle
- 13- Extensor carpi radialis longus muscle
- 14- Extensor carpi radialis brevis muscle
- 15- Extensor pollicis longus muscle
- 16- Extensor digitorum muscle
- 17- Extensor digiti minimi muscle
- 18- Extensor retinaculum
- 19- Extensor indicis muscle
- 20- Extensor carpi muscle
- 21- Ulnar artery and vein
- 22- Ulnar nerve
- 23- Radial artery and vein
- 24- Basilic vein
- 25- Median nerve
- 26- Cephalic vein

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure M19. MRI scans in the wrist through median nerve

The Median Nerve

Pathology

We decided to insist on two characteristic syndromes of the median nerve (Figure M16):

- Carpal tunnel syndrome, important because of its frequency
- Anterior interosseous nerve syndrome (please refer to the next section)

Anterior Interosseous Nerve Syndrome

As a reminder, the median nerve gives rise to the anterior interosseous nerve between the two heads of the pronator teres muscle. This motor branch innervates the flexor pollicis longus and brevis, the lateral part of the flexor digitorum profundus and the pronator quadratus in an autonomous way.

Its compression occurs under the arch of the flexor digitorum superficialis muscle. It is responsible for anterior interosseous nerve syndrome, also called Kiloh-Nevin syndrome. This rare syndrome only represents 1% of cases of entrapment neuropathy in the upper limb.

Aetiology

- Compression: this is the main injury mechanism of the anterior interosseous nerve. The injury is situated slightly ahead of the point where the nerve emerges, between five and eight centimetres below the medial epicondyle of the humerus, under the arch of the flexor digitorum superficialis. This syndrome can occur by a prolonged local compression – sleep, restraint with a plaster cast, excessive physical exercise, repetitive lifting of heavy loads, etc.

Clinical Significance

- Sensitive signs: pain in the upper third of the forearm is frequent, often by exacerbations lasting several hours, deep, but there is no objective trouble of sensitivity, which is what differentiates it from the other types of median nerve injuries. Pain is of mechanical type in 85% of cases.
- Motor signs: This syndrome includes a decrease in strength of flexion of the second phalanx of the thumb, index and middle fingers by injury of the flexor digitorum

profundus and flexor pollicis longus muscles. The pinch test proves this since the patient uses the phalange's pulp instead of the extremity of the thumb and index – the pinch forms a triangle-like shape. The patient cannot make an O shape because of a deficit of the distal phalanges flexion (Figure M20). The deficit of pronation is more complex to show. A partial injury can only affect the flexor digitorum profundus.

Some ulnar fibres can be satellites of the interosseous nerve; in this case the syndrome is accompanied by an injury of the intrinsic muscles in the hand.

Complementary Examinations

- Elbow radiography (bilateral and comparative) in order to search for a bone intumescence, especially at the level of the medial epicondyle.
- An electroneuromyography documents the nerve's injury and gives the ability to set aside a differential diagnosis.

Treatment

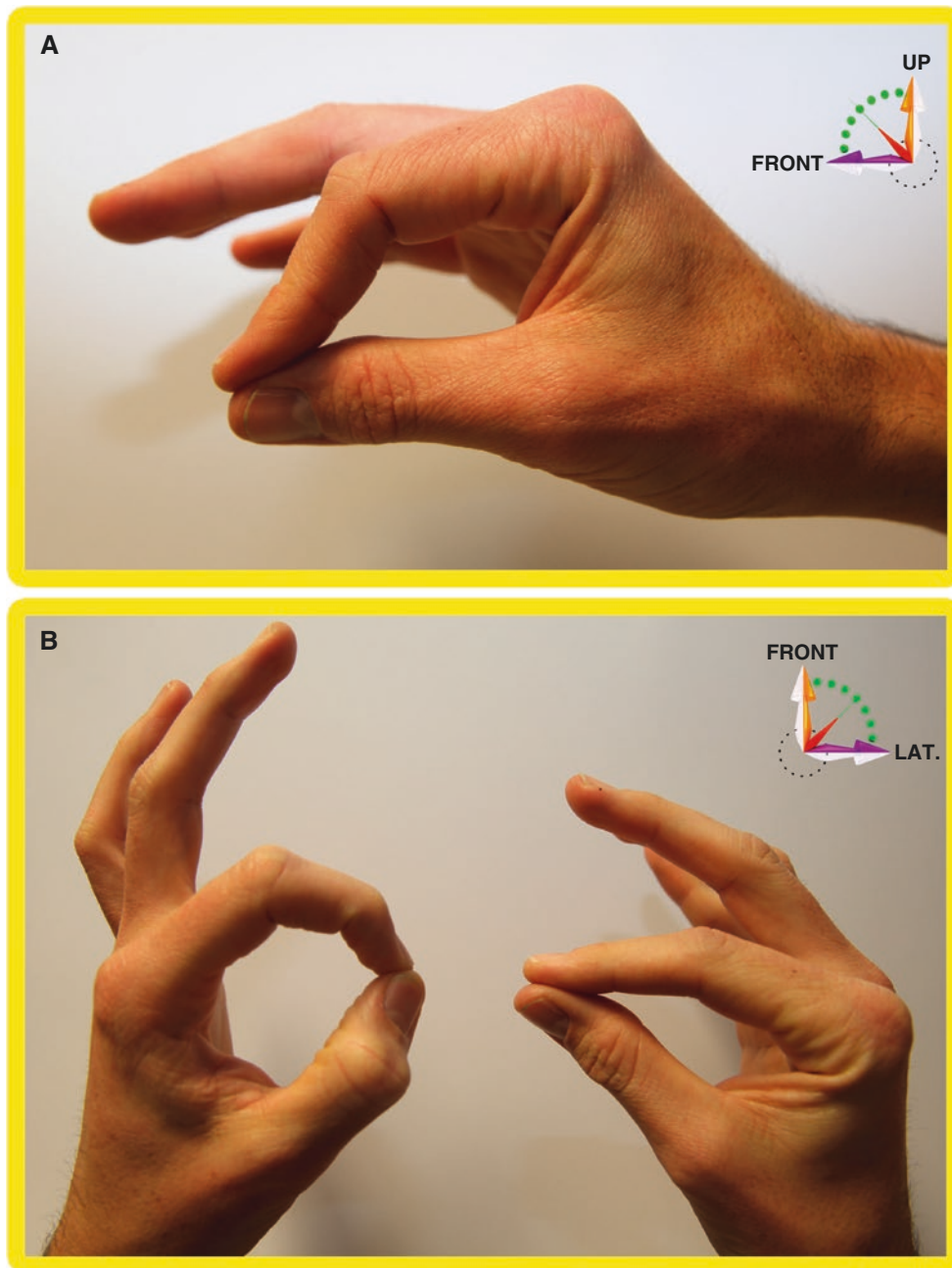
The first treatment is the immobilisation of the elbow. A surgical treatment is only required for a documented evolving compression, after 4 months of unsuccessful although well-run medical treatment.

Functional results are generally satisfying.

Carpal Tunnel Syndrome

The carpal tunnel syndrome is a compression of the median nerve in the wrist under the flexor retinaculum in the carpal tunnel. This syndrome can happen after repeated solicitations, generally in a professional context. General potential causes must not be ignored:

- Pregnancy
- Endocrinological causes: diabetes, hypothyroidism, acromegaly, hypercorticism
- Overload diseases: amyloidosis



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure M20. Paralysis of the left anterior interosseous nerve. Clinical significance: injury of the extensor indicis profundus and flexor pollicis longus muscles in the hand. The patient cannot make an O shape using the right thumb and index since pinch-type grips became impossible (injury of the flexor muscles)

The Median Nerve

Clinical Signs

Initially, the patient complains of paraesthesiae, especially at night-time, in the sensitive territory of the median nerve.

When the injury is more evolved, a disuse atrophy of the thenar muscles can develop. In this case, a surgical decompression treatment is recommended.

It is important to note that an epicondylitis can be associated in 20% of cases.

The two classical clinical tests include:

- Tinel's sign, which reproduces the distal paraesthesia when hitting the retinaculum
- Phalen's sign, during a forced and extensive flexion of the hand on the forearm

Another test exists, which reproduces paraesthesiae by inflating an armband on the forearm. This test is less often described.

As a final remark, please note that an infiltration of the carpal tunnel can be interesting for a diagnosis.

Anatomical Atypias

When numerous, they cause atypias in the clinical syndrome.

Mainly represented are:

- An abnormal palmaris longus muscle, with the extremity of the fleshy body inside the carpal tunnel
- A higher division of the nerve with persistency of a median artery
- An abnormal path of the motor thenar branch that can start on the ulnar side and go through the retinaculum or its dorsal emergence
- An anastomosis between the median and ulnar nerves

Clinical Atypias

- The sensation of pain can extend to the forearm, directly ascending, and can reach the arm and even the neck, resembling cervicobrachial neuralgia.
- Clinical examination signs may not appear at all.
- A precocious disuse atrophy of the thenar muscles can dominate the clinical picture.
- The signs can affect the ulnar area and even predominate in this area.

- Trophic disorders can be in the foreground, especially in the form of oedema or sweating disorders.
- A curved finger is associated in 20% of cases.
- A metacarpal arthritis can partially tamper with the pain signs, much like a tenosynovitis.

Pregnancy can make a carpal tunnel syndrome more likely to appear, but will often disappear a few days after childbirth. In most cases, infiltration is a good solution that allows waiting for these signs to cease during the postnatal period.

Differential Diagnosis

It is in particular the diversity in the locations of clinical signs that can bring us to discuss:

- A radiculargia of whichever origin, a cervicobrachial neuralgia being proof of a radicular injury
- A congenital agenesis of the thenar muscles

The responsibility of a neighbouring pathology: cyclist's palsy, bowler's thumb, tenosynovitis – sometimes associated with a thoracic outlet syndrome – and other entrapment neuropathies, Guyon's canal syndrome and semilunar injury

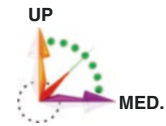
Attacks of gout and leprosy are also rarely evoked.

Treatment

Setting aside the interest towards diagnosis mentioned above, infiltration can have a therapeutic interest, either when the trigger injury seems to have a limited duration such as pregnancy or following a contralateral surgery in order to improve the patient's comfort in bilateral forms.

A surgical treatment is recommended in case of an electro-clinical concordance and failure of infiltration for very moderate forms; it remains the treatment of choice for more severe forms (Figure M21).

Post-operative complications may happen, mainly during the first 6 months: adherent scar, occasionally acute pain during grips that require strength, local oedema, pain felt when pushing on the base of the hand, etc. The most formidable post-operative complication is rare, fortunately. It is a perioperative injury of the motor thenar branch, especially in the case of an anatomical variation, which is responsible for a deficit in the flexion of the thumb-index pinch grip.



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure M21. Carpal tunnel syndrome – open decompression surgery with division of the flexor retinaculum, allowing for the exposition and release of the median nerve (*)



The Axillary Nerve

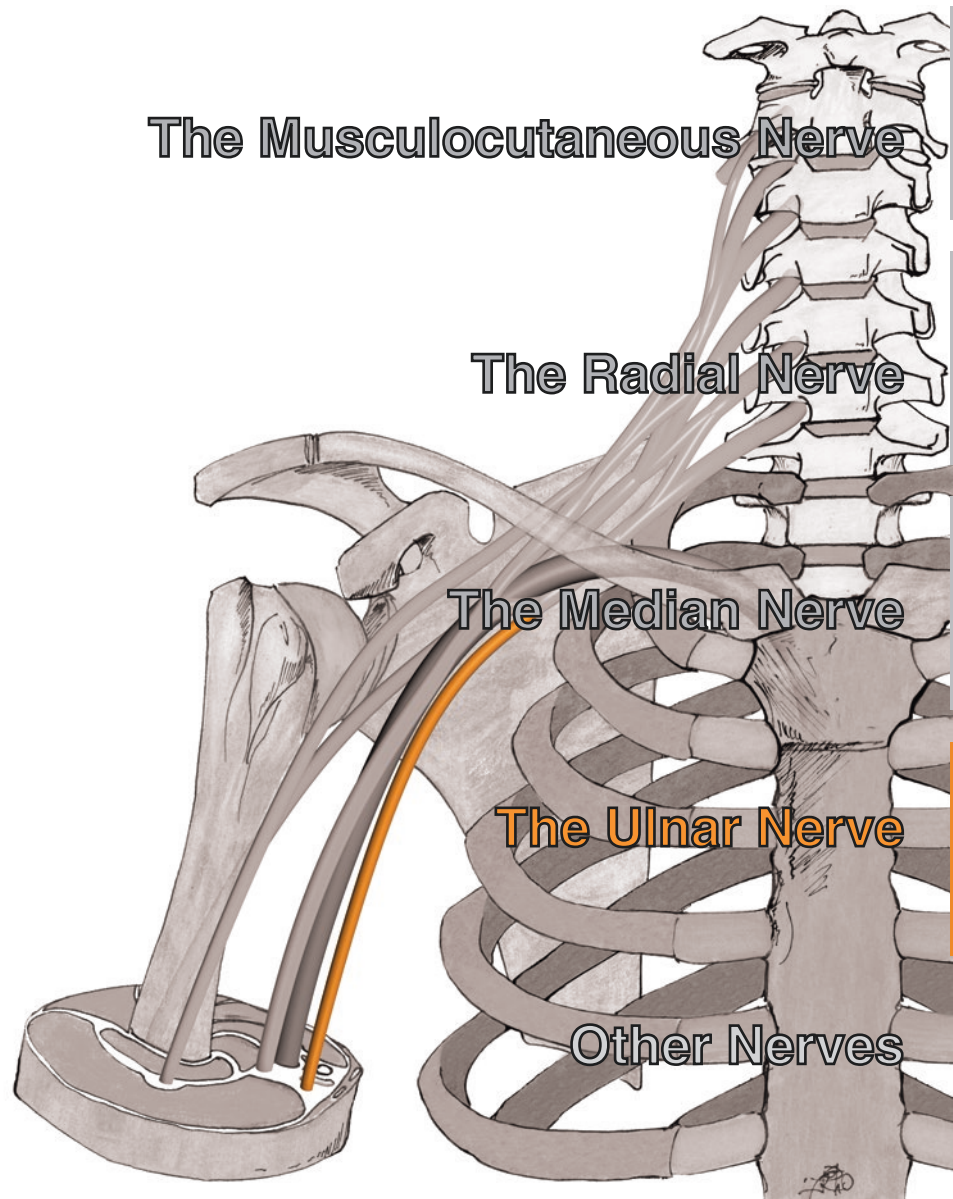
The Musculocutaneous Nerve

The Radial Nerve

The Median Nerve

The Ulnar Nerve

Other Nerves



U

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Morphological Data

The ulnar nerve is a mixed nerve coming from the lower trunk of the brachial plexus.

Origin

It is constituted of the C8, T1 and sometimes C7 roots (Figures U1 and U2). They unite in order to form the lower trunk of the brachial plexus. The medial cord comes from the anterior division of this trunk. The ulnar nerve is a terminal branch of the medial cord that also gives off the medial root of the median nerve and the medial cutaneous nerves of the arm and forearm. The medial cord of the brachial plexus splits medially to the axillary artery to give off the medial root of the median nerve and the ulnar nerve. The ulnar nerve then faces the median nerve laterally and above, the latter's roots join again a few centimetres below (Figure U3).

The axillary vein is situated medially beside the ulnar nerve, which is initially situated between the axillary artery and nerve.

Path

In the arm, the ulnar nerve is situated medially beside the axillary artery and then beside the brachial artery and initially faces the radial and median nerve laterally, the medial cutaneous nerve of the arm medially and the axillary vein. It then rests in behind on the long head of the triceps brachii and faces the coracobrachialis muscle laterally (Figure U3).

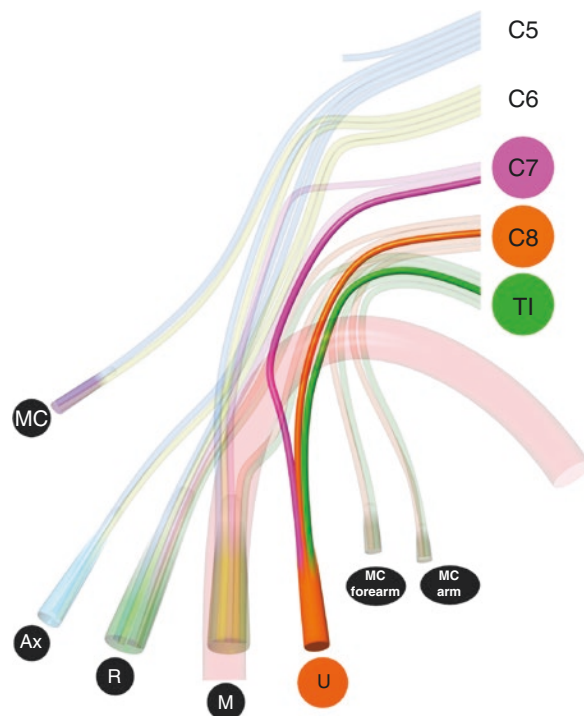
The ulnar nerve stays in contact with the brachial artery until the middle third of the arm in the medial brachial canal; it then separates from it by going through the medial intermuscular septum. It is then situated in the posterior compartment of the arm and lies against the medial head of the triceps brachii (Figure U4).

In the elbow, it goes towards the medial epicondyle, accompanied by the superior ulnar collateral artery, and then into the epitrochlear-olecranon groove. After this groove, it goes between the two heads of the flexor carpi ulnaris muscle, which is often the point where it gets compressed in the elbow (Figures U5, U6 and U16).

At the level of the superior half of the forearm, it is situated between the flexor carpi ulnaris and the flexor digitorum profundus. It then becomes more superficial and travels

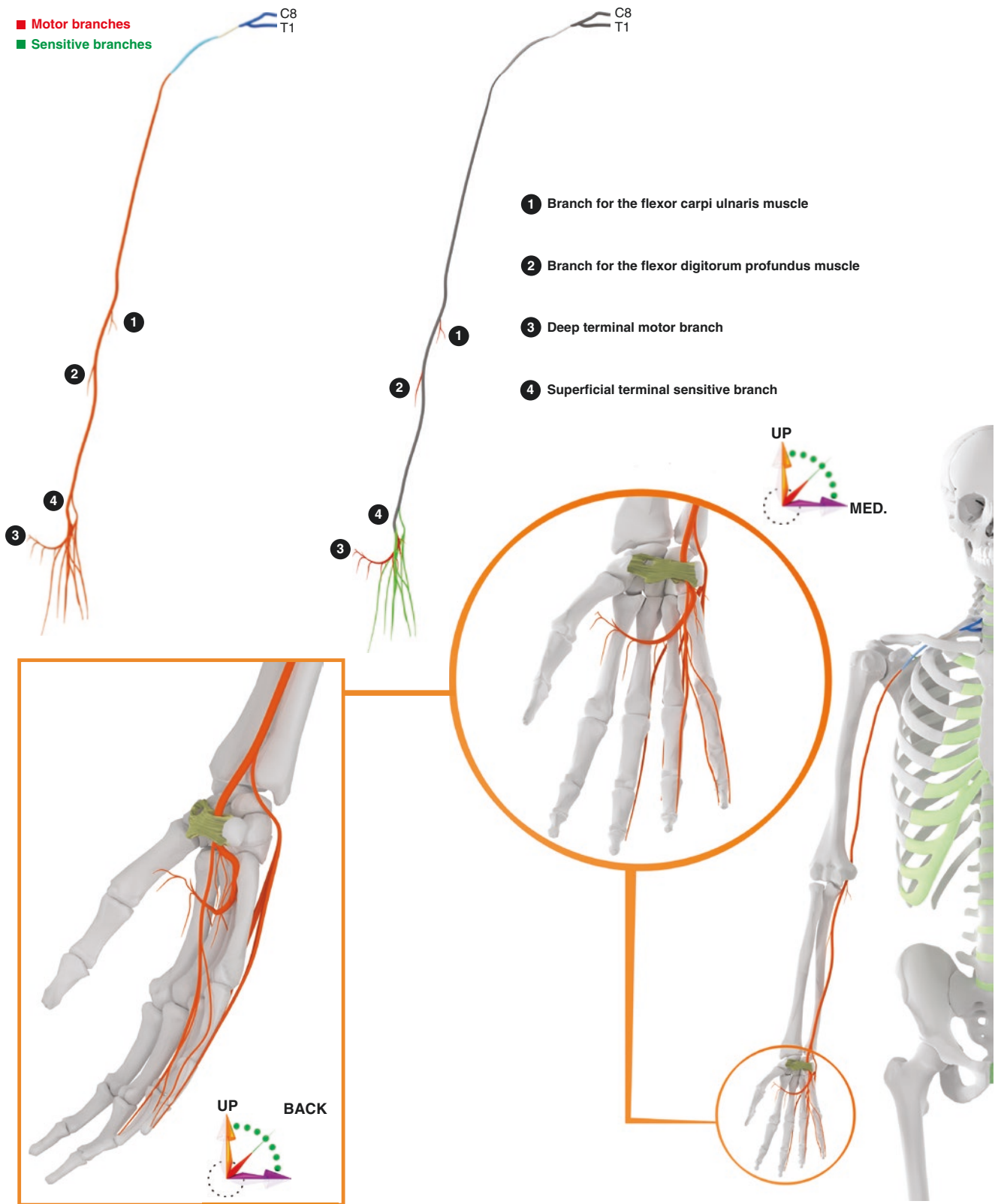
along the medial edge of the ulnar artery until the wrist (Figures U8, U18 and U19). It gives rise to the dorsal cutaneous branch in the hand, a few centimetres above the wrist, and then penetrates into the hand in front of the flexor retinaculum and outside of the pisiform bone (Figure U9).

This tunnel is referred to as Guyon's canal or ulnar canal in the *Nomina Anatomica*. The limits of the ulnar canal are mainly constituted by an expansion of the flexor retinaculum. The latter splits in two; on one hand, it fuses with the tendon of the flexor carpi ulnaris before joining onto the pisiform bone and then forms the canal's arch. On the other hand, it widens deeper and constitutes a deep expansion of the retinaculum which covers the carpus's bones and inserts itself on the pisiform, hamulus and hamate bones. This is a resistant quadrilateral plate made of transversal fibres, higher on the outside than on the inside; this part composes the base of the canal. Its medial limit is successively comprised of the insertion tendon of the flexor carpi ulnaris on the pisiform bone and then of the proximal part of the insertion tendon of the abductor digiti minimi (Figure U9).



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

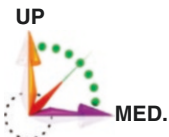
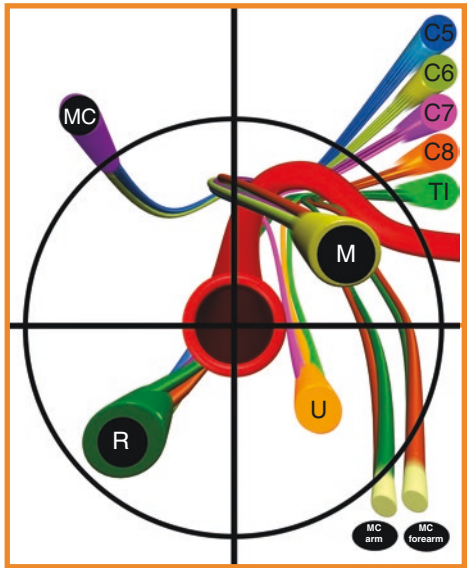
Figure U1. Origin of the ulnar nerve



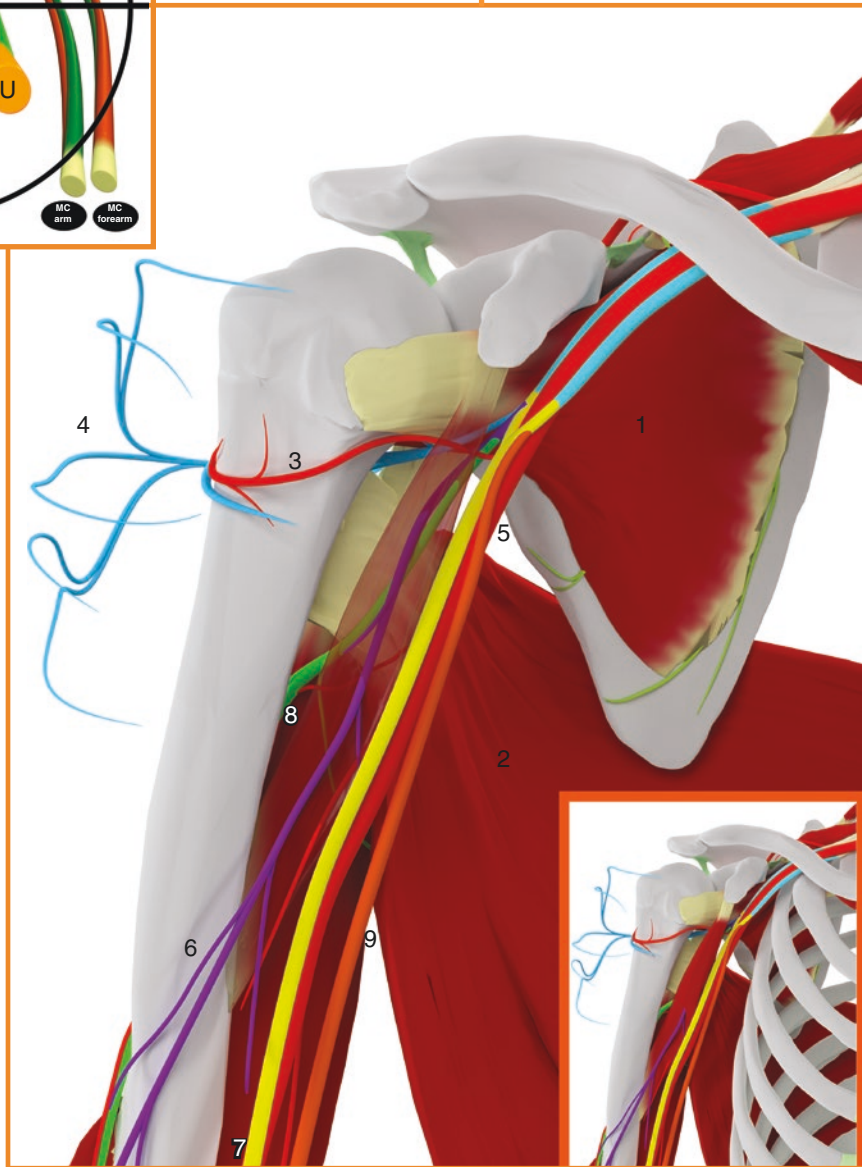
© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure U2. Distribution of the ulnar nerve and its relations with bones

The Ulnar Nerve



- 1- Subscapularis muscle
- 2- Latissimus dorsi muscle
- 3- Anterior humeral circumflex artery
- 4- Axillary nerve
- 5- Brachial artery
- 6- Musculocutaneous nerve
- 7- Median nerve
- 8- Radial nerve
- 9- Ulnar nerve



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure U3. Neurovascular relations of the ulnar nerve in the arm

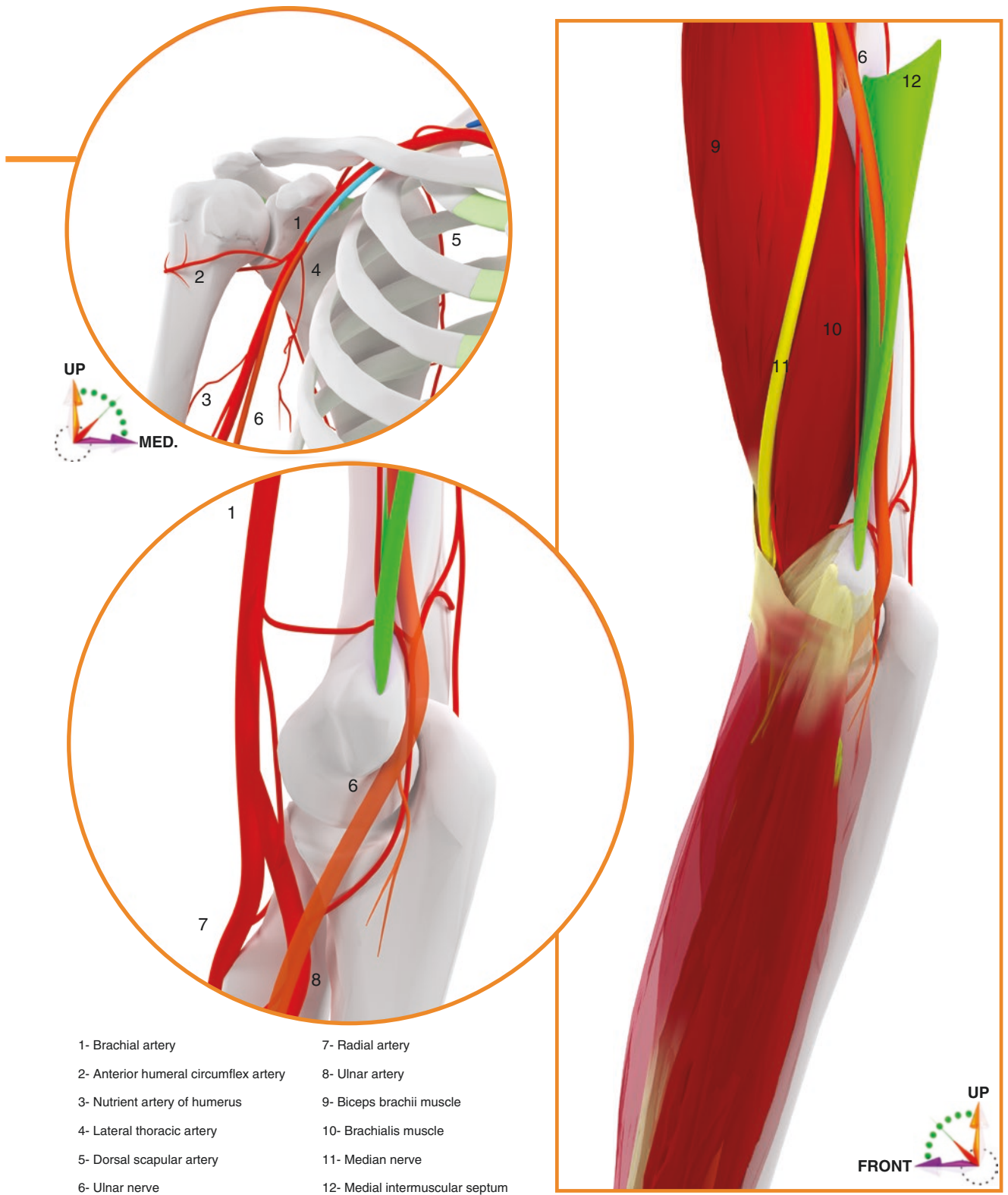


Figure U4. Neurovascular relations of the ulnar nerve in the elbow

The Ulnar Nerve

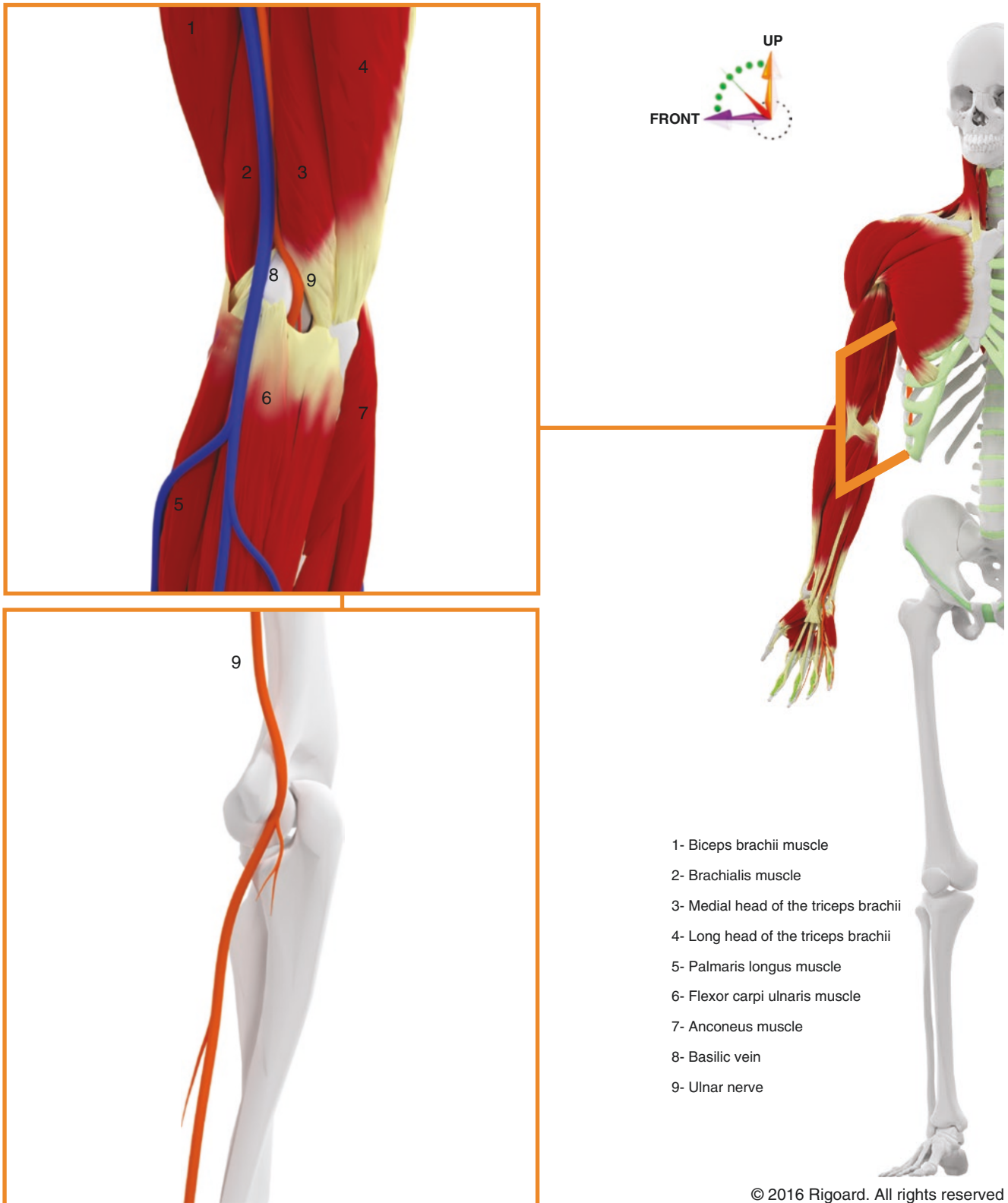
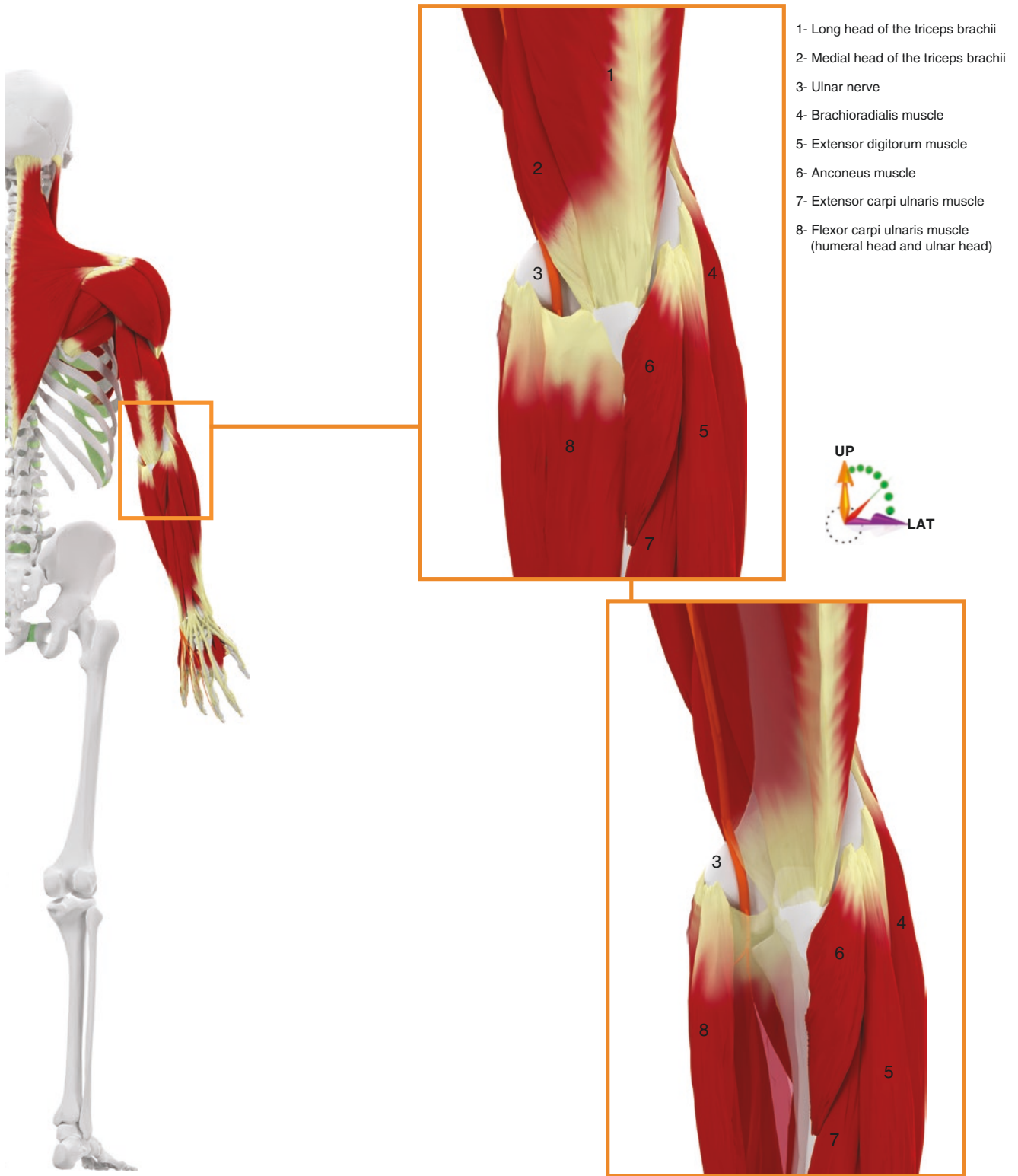


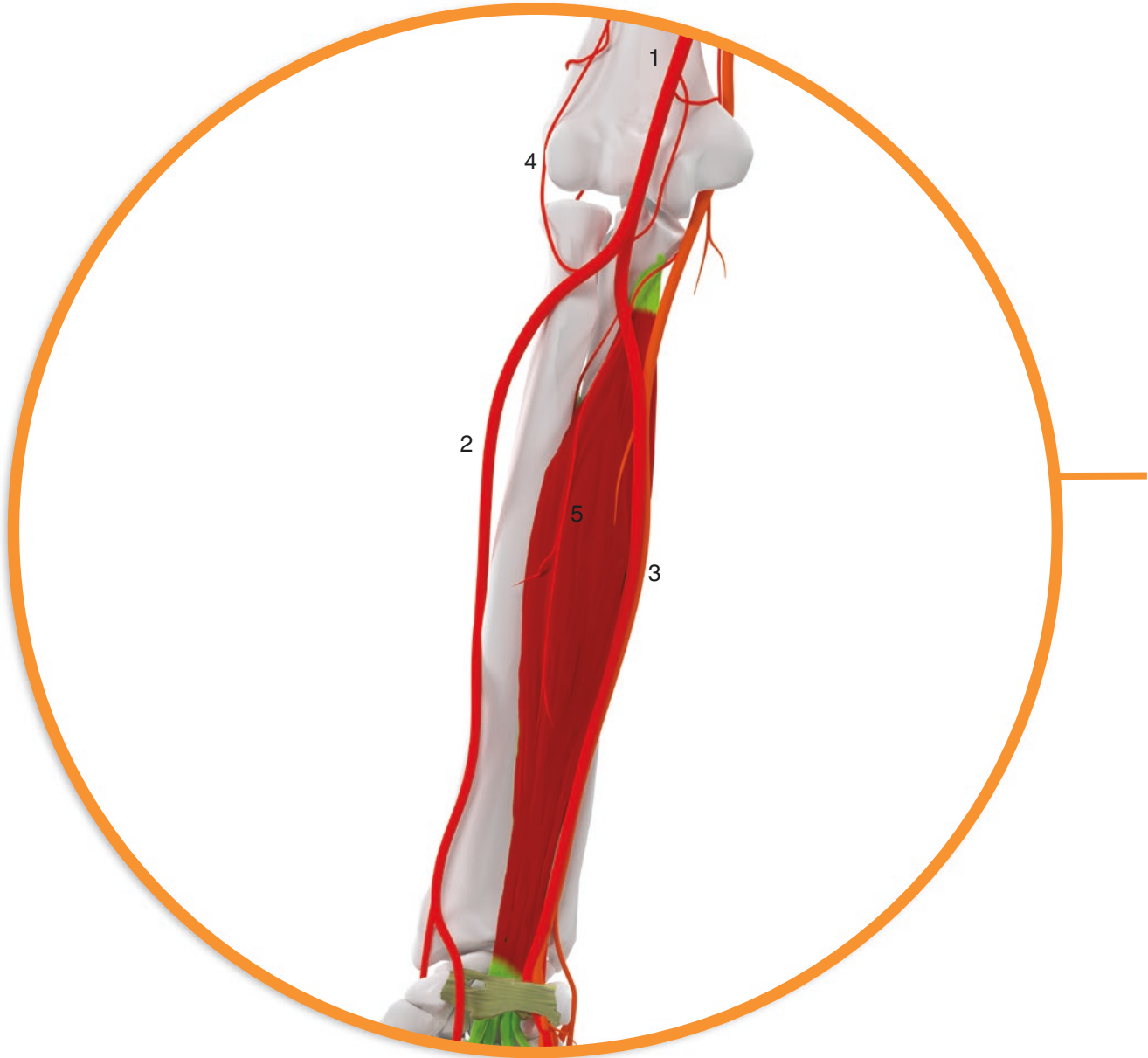
Figure U5. Muscular relations of the ulnar nerve in the elbow (medial view)



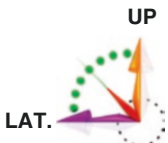
© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure U6. Muscular relations of the ulnar nerve in the elbow (posterior view)

The Ulnar Nerve

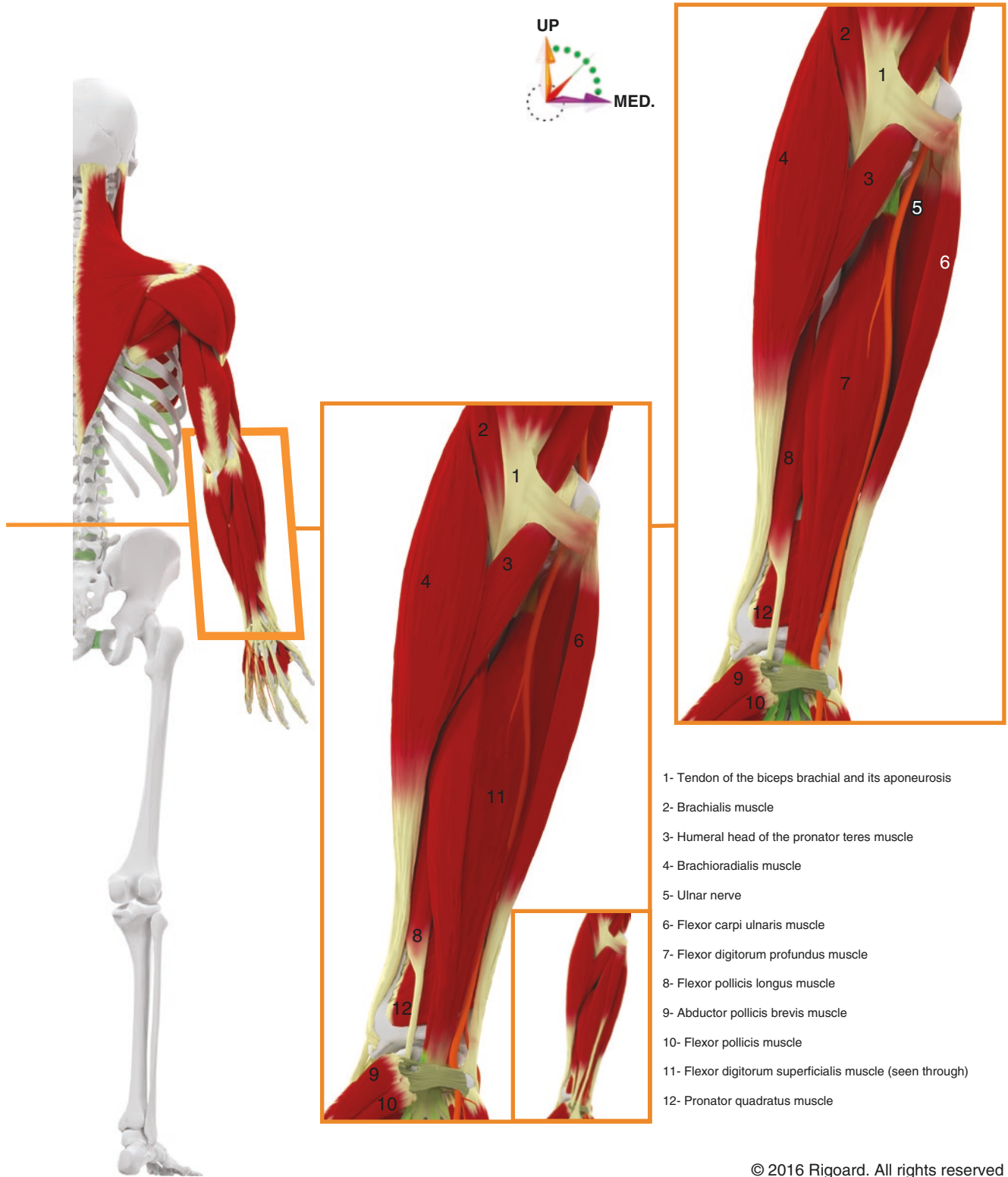


- 1- Brachial artery
- 2- Radial artery
- 3- Ulnar artery and nerve
- 4- Radial recurrent artery
- 5- Anterior interosseous artery



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure U7. Neurovascular relations of the ulnar nerve in the forearm

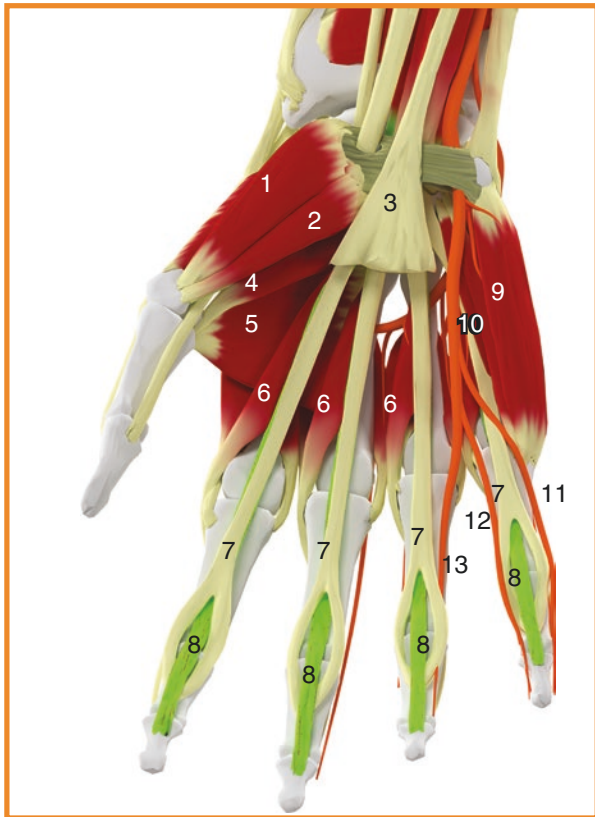


- 1- Tendon of the biceps brachial and its aponeurosis
- 2- Brachialis muscle
- 3- Humeral head of the pronator teres muscle
- 4- Brachioradialis muscle
- 5- Ulnar nerve
- 6- Flexor carpi ulnaris muscle
- 7- Flexor digitorum profundus muscle
- 8- Flexor pollicis longus muscle
- 9- Abductor pollicis brevis muscle
- 10- Flexor pollicis muscle
- 11- Flexor digitorum superficialis muscle (seen through)
- 12- Pronator quadratus muscle

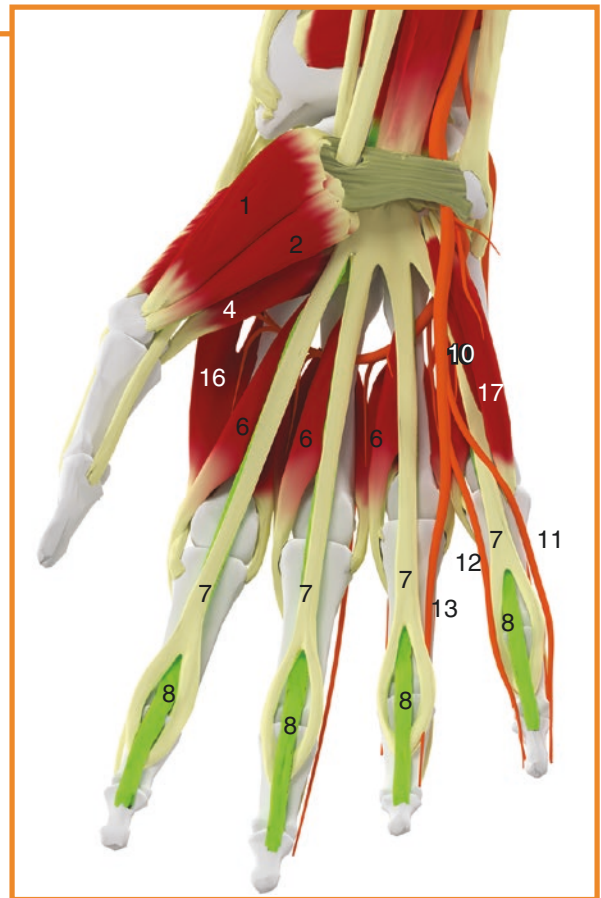
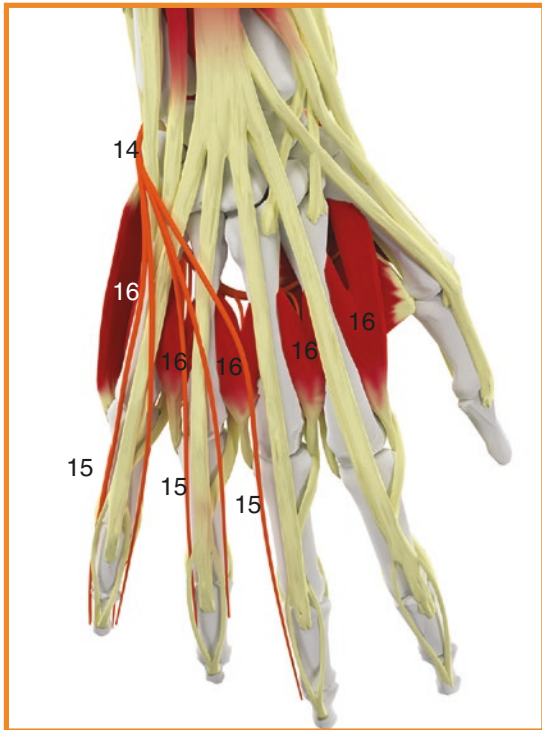
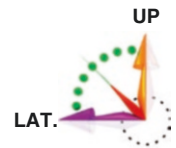
© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure U8. Muscular relations of the ulnar nerve in the forearm (anterior view)

The Ulnar Nerve

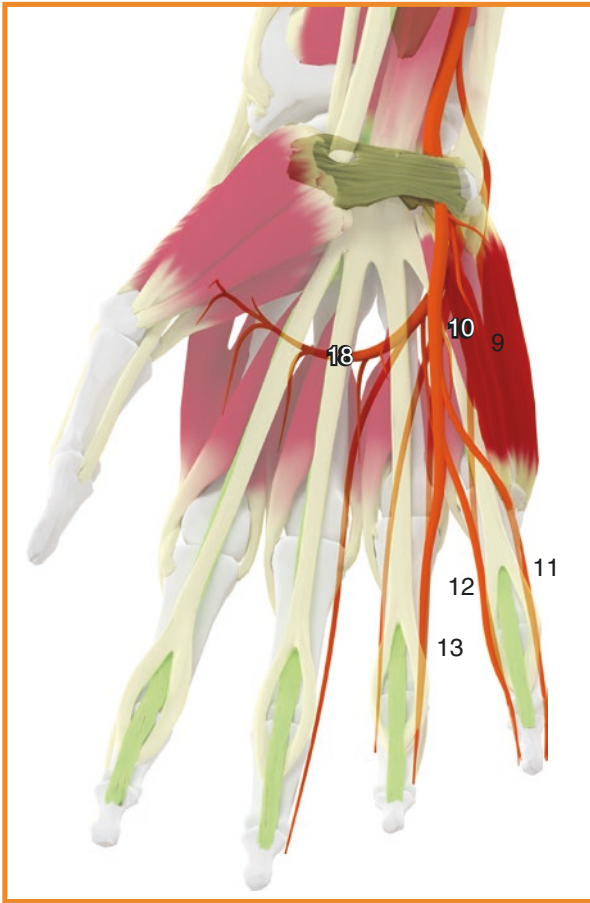


- 1- Abductor pollicis brevis muscle
- 2- Flexor pollicis brevis muscle
- 3- Palmaris longus muscle
- 4- Adductor pollicis muscle (oblique head)
- 5- Adductor pollicis muscle (transverse head)
- 6- Lumbricals
- 7- Tendons of the flexor digitorum superficialis muscle
- 8- Tendons of the flexor digitorum profundus muscle
- 9- Abductor digiti minimi muscle

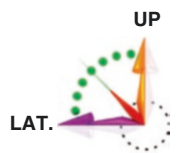


© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure U9. Muscular relations and distribution of the ulnar nerve in the hand (sensitive branches) caption



- 10- Superficial branch of the ulnar nerve
- 11- Medial proper palmar digital nerve of the little finger
- 12- Lateral palmar digital nerve of the little finger
- 13- Medial proper palmar digital nerve of the ring finger
- 14- Dorsal branch of the ulnar nerve
- 15- Dorsal digital nerves
- 16- Dorsal interossei muscles
- 17- Opponens digiti minimi muscle
- 18- Deep branch of the ulnar nerve



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure U10. Muscular relations and distribution of the ulnar nerve in the hand (motor branches)

The Ulnar Nerve

Neurovascular Relations

At its origin, the ulnar nerve faces the axillary artery laterally and the axillary vein medially. At the level of the axillary fossa, the subscapular artery crosses in front of the ulnar nerve. The ulnar nerve is then placed medially related to the brachial artery in the arm (Figures U3, U12 and U14). In the inferior part of the arm, the ulnar nerve parts with the brachial artery and goes through the medial intermuscular septum before following the path of the superior ulnar collateral artery (Figure U4). At the level of the elbow, it goes away from this artery and places itself behind the basilic vein. In the forearm, the ulnar nerve is placed on the medial face of the ulnar artery until the ulnar canal (Figures U7, U13 and U15).

Collateral Branches

Of note, unlike the musculocutaneous, median and radial nerves, the ulnar nerve does not give off any collateral branch in the arm.

Its collateral branches start from the level of the elbow, with (Figure U2):

- Articular branches
- One branch for the ulnar artery
- Muscular branches in the forearm for the flexor carpi ulnaris and flexor digitorum profundus muscles for its medial part
- Sensitive branches for the dorsal face of the hand, from a main branch that splits off at the inferior third of the forearm, as well as a palmar branch for the hypothenar eminence

Terminal Branches

The ulnar nerve splits into two terminal branches, a superficial branch and a deep branch, at the level of the wrist.

The superficial branch is sensitive and gives off the medial and lateral palmar collateral cutaneous nerve of the fifth finger and medial palmar collateral cutaneous nerve of the fourth finger. The last two form the digital nerves of the fourth interdigital spaces.

The deep branch is a motor branch that heads towards the dorsal and palmar interossei muscles of the hand and for the third and fourth lumbricals. It also innervates the abductor, opponens and flexor digiti minimi brevis, the adductor pollicis and the deep head of the flexor pollicis brevis as well as the deep palmar arch. This branch sinks directly from its origin into the arch formed by the pisiform and hamulus bones. It goes between the abductor digiti minimi and opponens digiti minimi and then adopts a path transversal to the deep face of the tendons of the flexor digitorum muscles, under

the lumbricals, but on the dorsal face of the interossei muscles (Figures U9 and U10).

Motor Function

Its motor innervation includes the flexor carpi ulnaris and the ulnar half of the flexor digitorum profundus. It also innervates all of the intrinsic muscles of the hand except for the first and second lumbricals, the abductor pollicis brevis and the opponens pollicis. Finally, the flexor pollicis brevis is innervated in a mixed way by the median and the ulnar nerves in variable proportion.

Therefore, the ulnar nerve takes care of the function of adduction of the hand as well as the flexion of the fingers on the hand in a partial way. It also allows prehensibility and the spreading apart of the fingers (Figure U11).

Sensitive Function

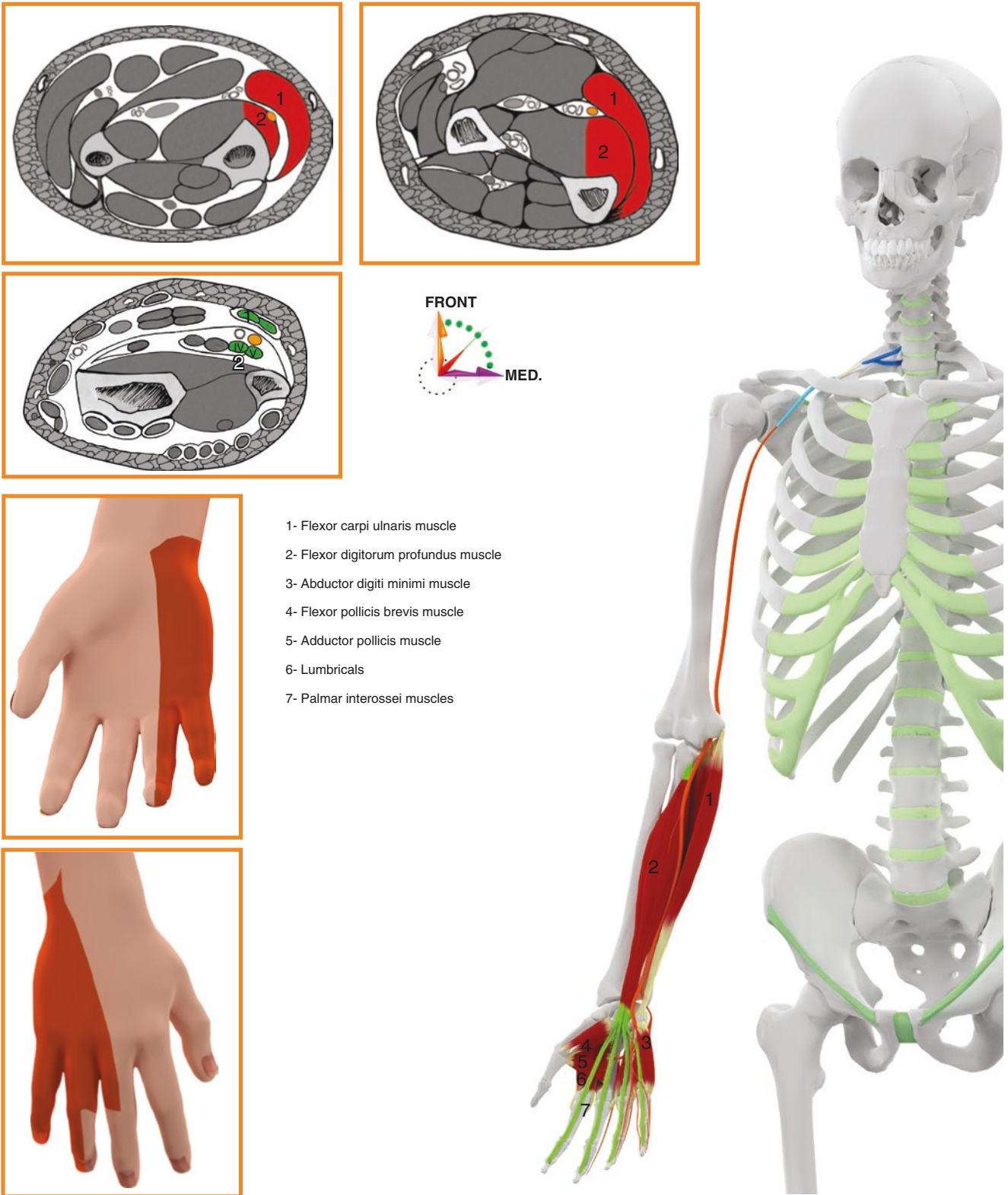
The cutaneous sensitive area of the ulnar nerve corresponds to the ulnar part of the palm of the hand, except for the little finger's axis. This distribution of the innervations of the palmar face between the median and the ulnar nerves can vary according to the four main types described in 1988 by G.P. Ferrari. The dorsal face of the hand includes the whole little finger, the proximal phalanx, the medial halves of the intermediate and distal phalanx of the ring finger and the medial half of the proximal phalanx of the middle finger according to a line separating the dorsal face of the hand in two halves (Figure U11).

Anastomoses

The median nerve makes anastomoses with:

- The medial cutaneous nerve of the arm.
- The radial nerve on the dorsal face of the hand.
- And the median nerve several times: a superficial branch between the third and fourth common palmar digital nerves (going either above or below the superficial palmar arch) and a deep branch going through the flexor pollicis brevis called the Riche-Cannieu anastomosis. Another anastomotic branch with the median nerve is frequently described but only sometimes found: the Martin-Grüber anastomosis. It is generally identified in the forearm or shortly after the ulnar canal.

These anastomoses are important to know, especially for their subsequent implications in reconstruction surgeries of this nerve.



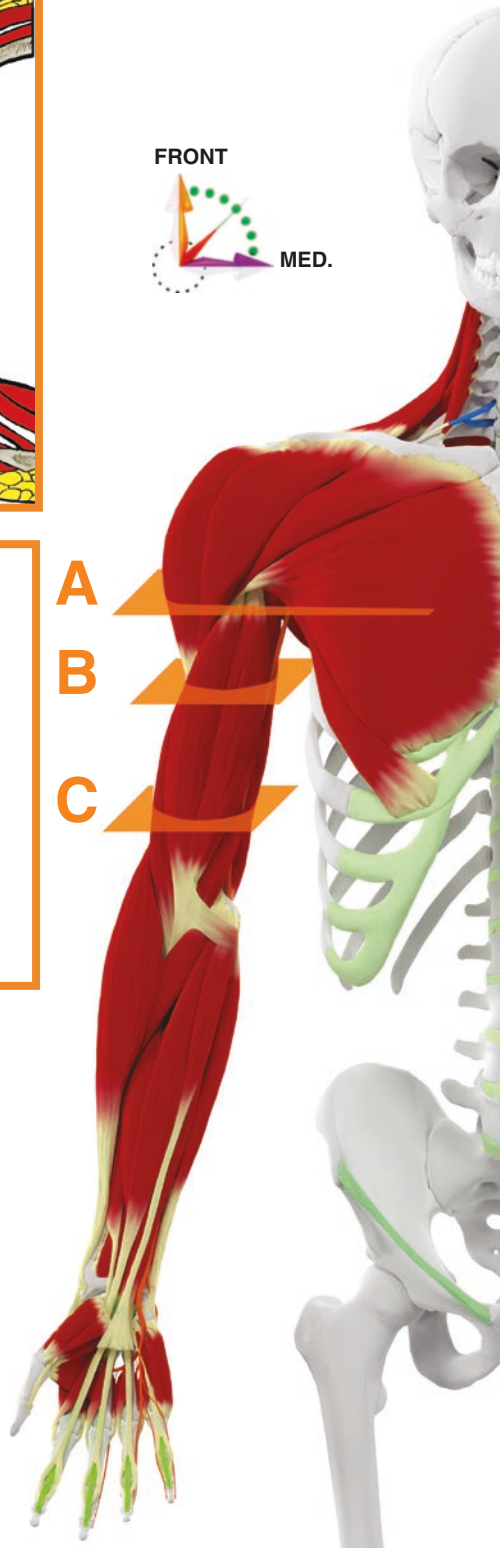
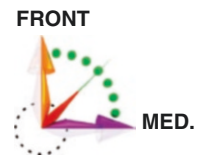
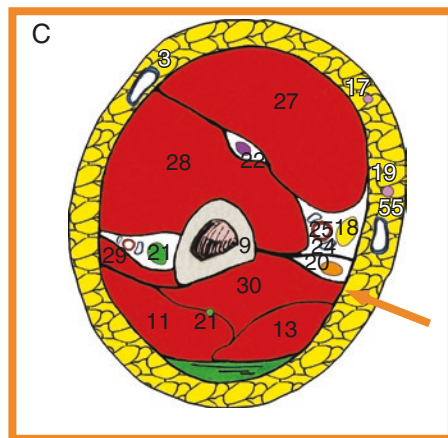
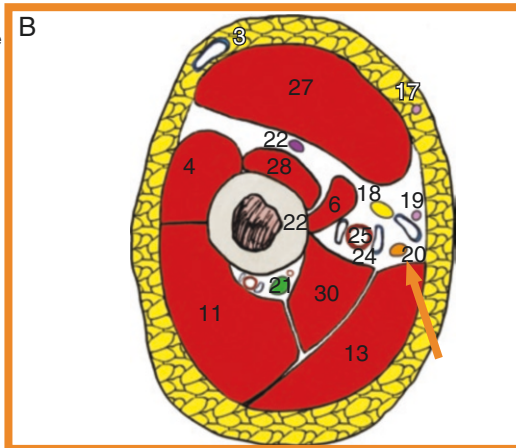
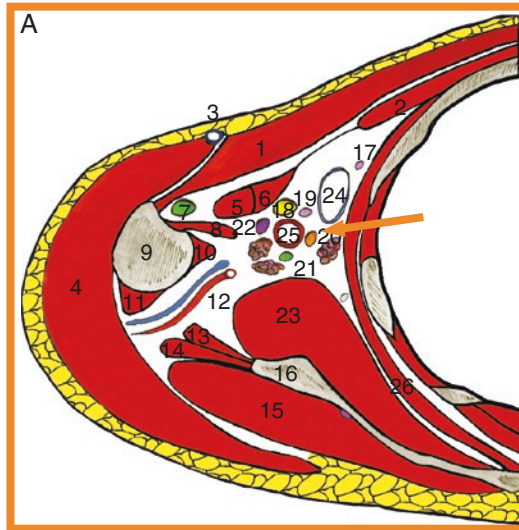
- 1- Flexor carpi ulnaris muscle
- 2- Flexor digitorum profundus muscle
- 3- Abductor digiti minimi muscle
- 4- Flexor pollicis brevis muscle
- 5- Adductor pollicis muscle
- 6- Lumbricals
- 7- Palmar interossei muscles

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure U11. Motor and sensitive innervation of the ulnar nerve

The Ulnar Nerve

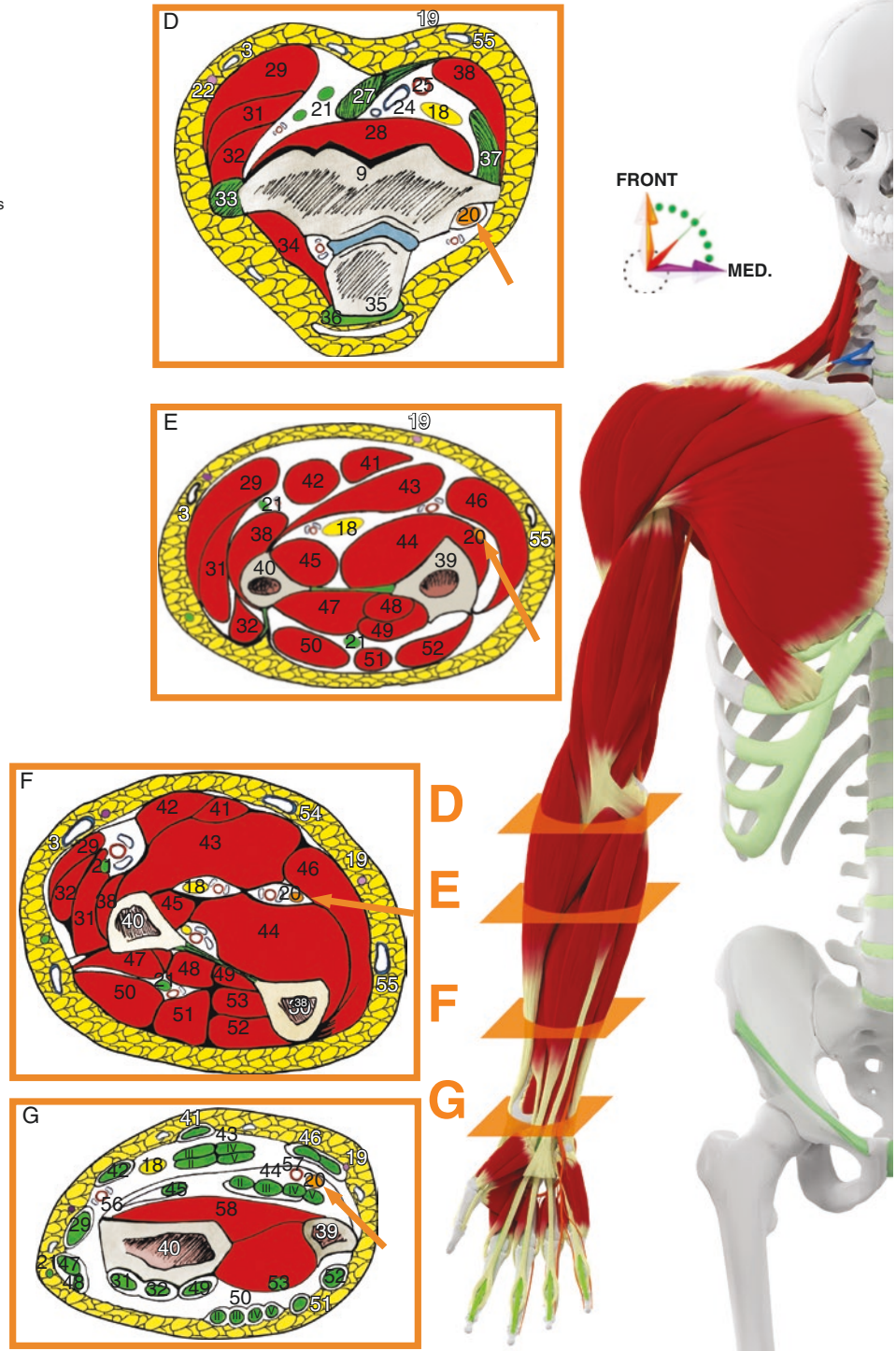
- 1- Pectoralis major muscle
- 2- Pectoralis minor muscle
- 3- Cephalic vein
- 4- Deltoid muscle
- 5- Short head of the biceps brachii muscle
- 6- Coracobrachialis muscle
- 7- Tendon of the long head of the biceps brachii muscle
- 8- Latissimus dorsi muscle
- 9- Humerus
- 10- Teres major muscle
- 11- Lateral head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 12- Circumflex artery and nerve
- 13- Long head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 14- Teres minor muscle
- 15- Infraspinatus muscle
- 16- Scapula
- 17- Medial cutaneous nerve of arm
- 18- Median nerve
- 19- Medial cutaneous nerve of forearm
- 20- Ulnar nerve
- 21- Radial nerve
- 22- Musculocutaneous nerve
- 23- Subscapularis muscle
- 24- Brachial vein
- 25- Brachial artery
- 26- Serratus anterior
- 27- Biceps brachii muscle
- 28- Brachialis muscle
- 29- Brachioradialis muscle



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure U12. Relations of the ulnar nerve in the arm, axial sections

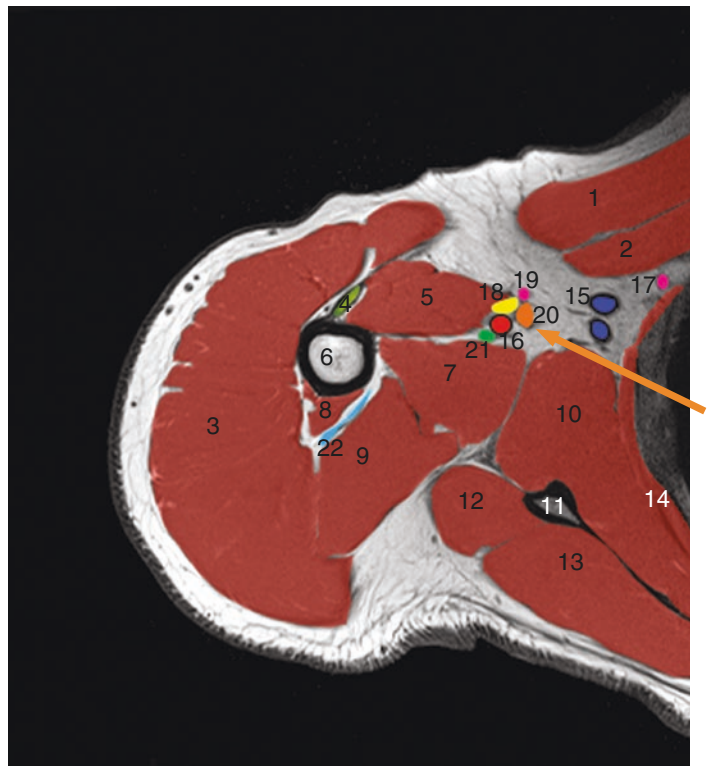
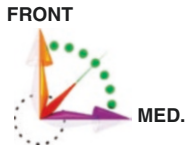
- 30- Medial head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 31- Extensor carpi radialis longus muscle
- 32- Extensor carpi radialis brevis muscle
- 33- Tendon of epicondyle muscles
- 34- Anconeus muscle
- 35- Olecranon
- 36- Tendon of the triceps brachii muscle
- 37- Tendon of the median epicondylar muscles
- 38- Pronator teres muscle
- 39- Ulna
- 40- Radius
- 41- Palmaris longus muscle
- 42- Flexor carpi radialis muscle
- 43- Flexor digitorum superficialis muscle
- 44- Flexor digitorum profundus muscle
- 45- Flexor pollicis longus muscle
- 46- Flexor carpi ulnaris muscle
- 47- Abductor pollicis longus muscle
- 48- Extensor pollicis brevis muscle
- 49- Extensor pollicis longus muscle
- 50- Extensor digitorum muscle
- 51- Extensor digiti minimi muscle
- 52- Extensor carpi ulnaris muscle
- 53- Extensor indicis muscle
- 54- Median vein of the forearm
- 55- Basilic vein
- 56- Radial artery and vein
- 57- Ulnar artery and vein
- 58- Pronator quadratus muscle



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure U13. Relations of the ulnar nerve in the elbow and forearm, axial sections

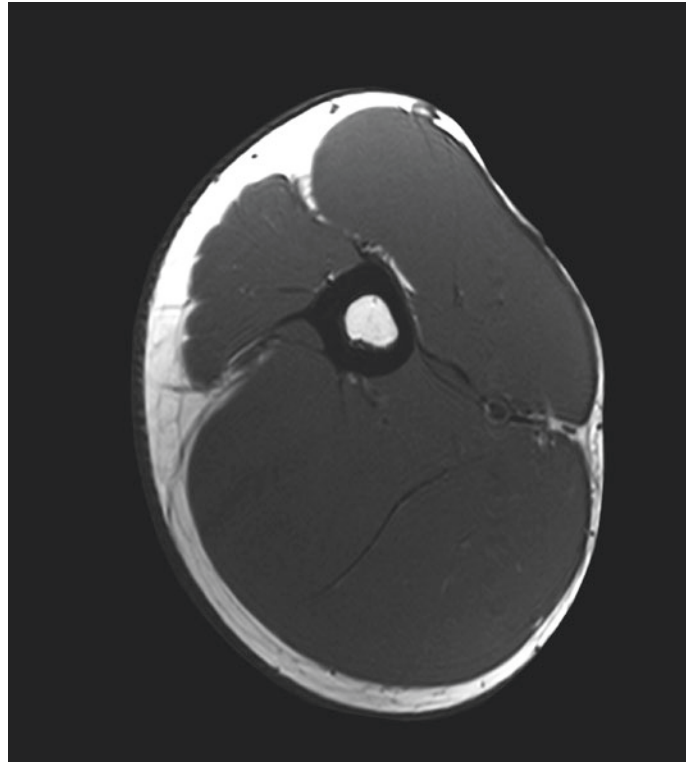
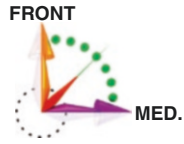
The Ulnar Nerve



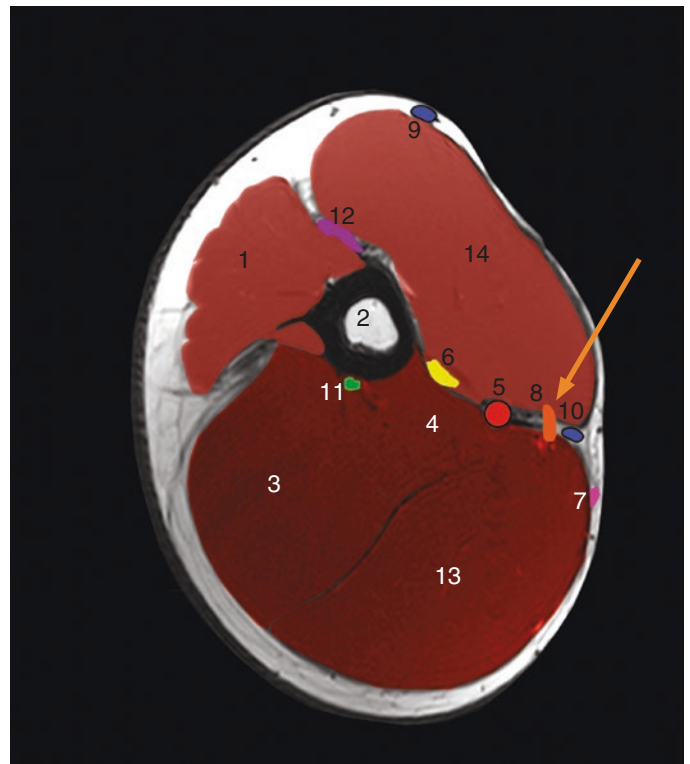
- 1- Pectoralis major muscle
- 2- Pectoralis minor muscle
- 3- Deltoid muscle
- 4- Long head of the Biceps brachii muscle
- 5- Latissimus dorsi muscle
- 6- Humerus
- 7- Teres major muscle
- 8- Lateral head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 9- Medial head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 10- Subscapularis muscle
- 11- Scapula
- 12- Teres minor muscle
- 13- Infraspinatus muscle
- 14- Serratus anterior
- 15- Brachial vein
- 16- Brachial artery
- 17- Medial cutaneous nerve of arm
- 18- Median nerve
- 19- Medial cutaneous nerve of forearm
- 20- Ulnar nerve
- 21- Radial nerve
- 22- Axillary nerve

© 2016 Riguard. All rights reserved

Figure U14. MRI scans in the shoulder through the ulnar nerve



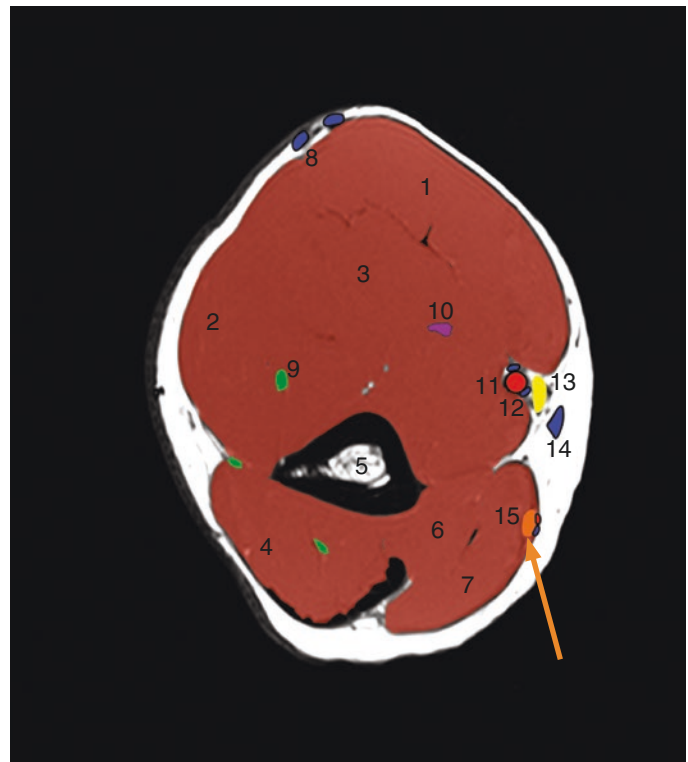
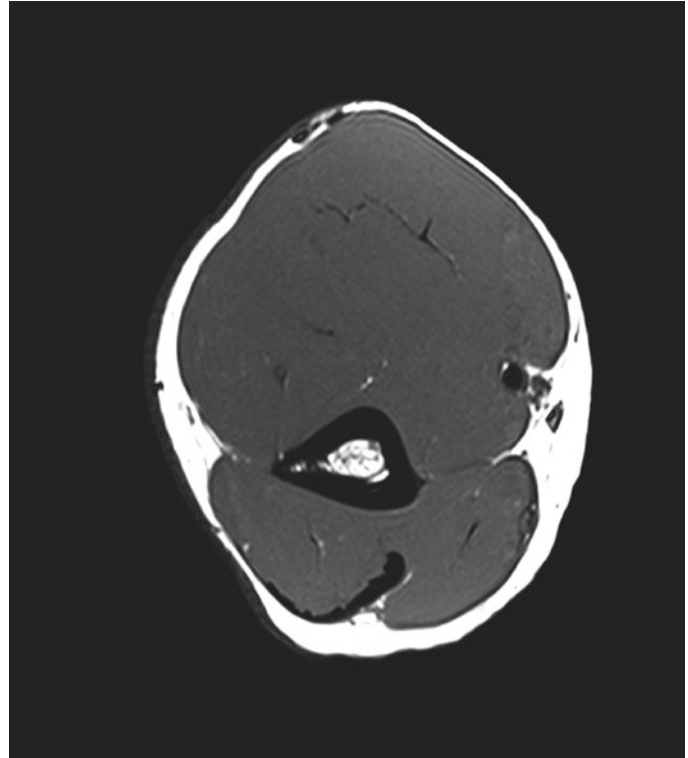
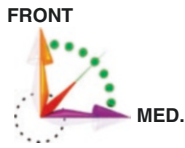
- 1- Deltoid muscle
- 2- Humerus
- 3- Lateral head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 4- Medial head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 5- Brachial artery
- 6- Median nerve
- 7- Medial cutaneous nerve of forearm
- 8- Ulnar nerve
- 9- Cephalic vein
- 10- Basilic vein
- 11- Radial nerve
- 12- Musculocutaneous nerve
- 13- Long head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 14- Biceps brachii muscle



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure U15. MRI scans at the proximal third of the arm through the ulnar nerve

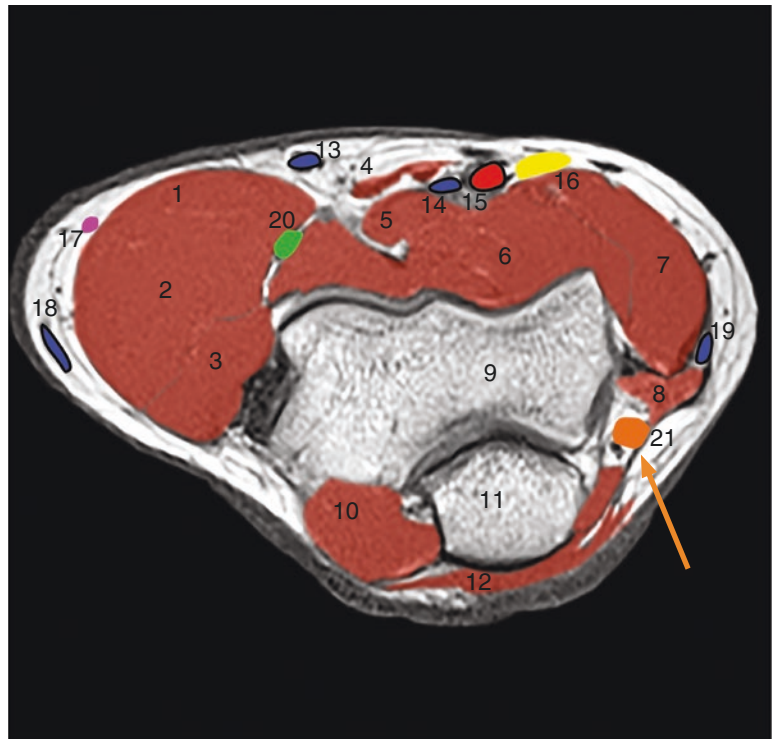
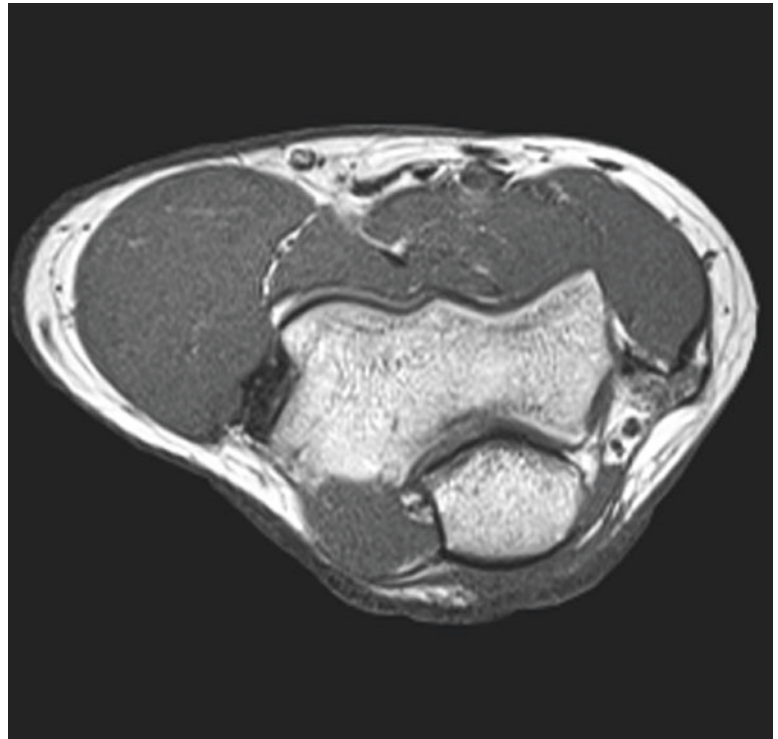
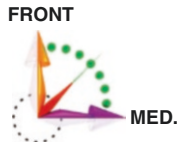
The Ulnar Nerve



- 1- Biceps brachii muscle
- 2- Brachioradialis muscle
- 3- Brachialis muscle
- 4- Lateral head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 5- Humerus
- 6- Long head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 7- Medial head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 8- Cephalic vein
- 9- Radial nerve
- 10- Musculocutaneous nerve
- 11- Brachial artery
- 12- Brachial vein
- 13- Median nerve
- 14- Basilic vein
- 15- Ulnar nerve

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure U16. MRI scans at the distal third of the arm through the ulnar nerve

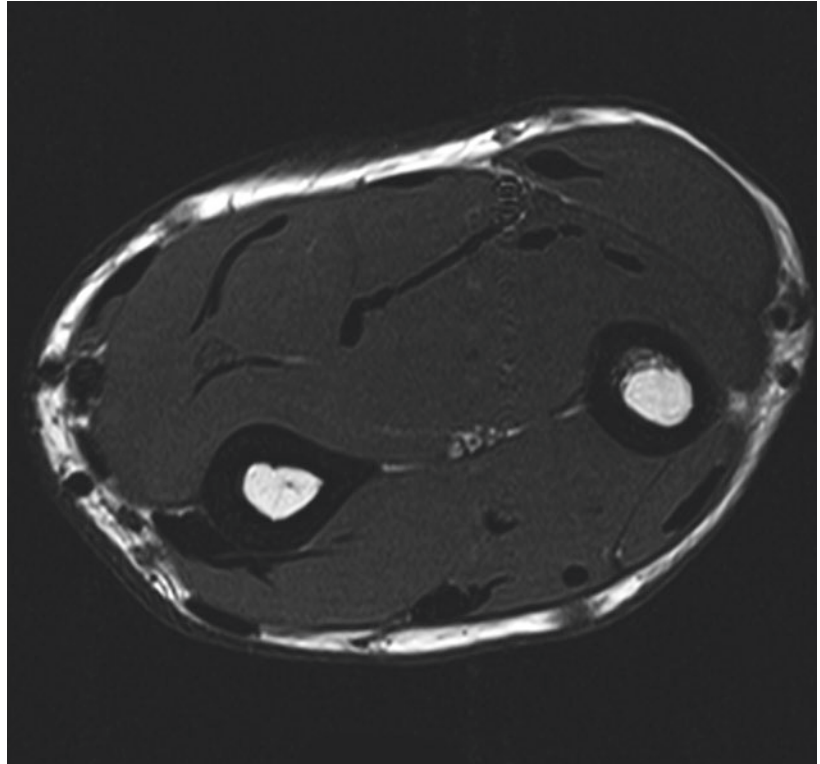
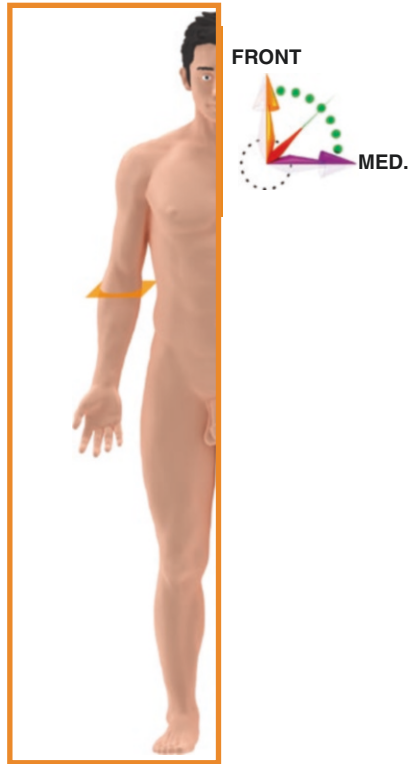


- 1- Brachioradialis muscle
- 2- Extensor carpi radialis longus muscle
- 3- Extensor carpi radialis brevis muscle
- 4- Biceps brachii muscle
- 5- Tendon of the long head of biceps
- 6- Brachialis muscle
- 7- Pronator teres muscle
- 8- Tendon of the medial epicondylar muscles
- 9- Humerus
- 10- Anconeus muscle
- 11- Ulna
- 12- Triceps brachii muscle
- 13- Medial vein at the elbow
- 14- Brachial vein
- 15- Brachial artery
- 16- Median nerve
- 17- Musculocutaneous nerve
- 18- Cephalic vein
- 19- Basilic vein
- 20- Radial nerve

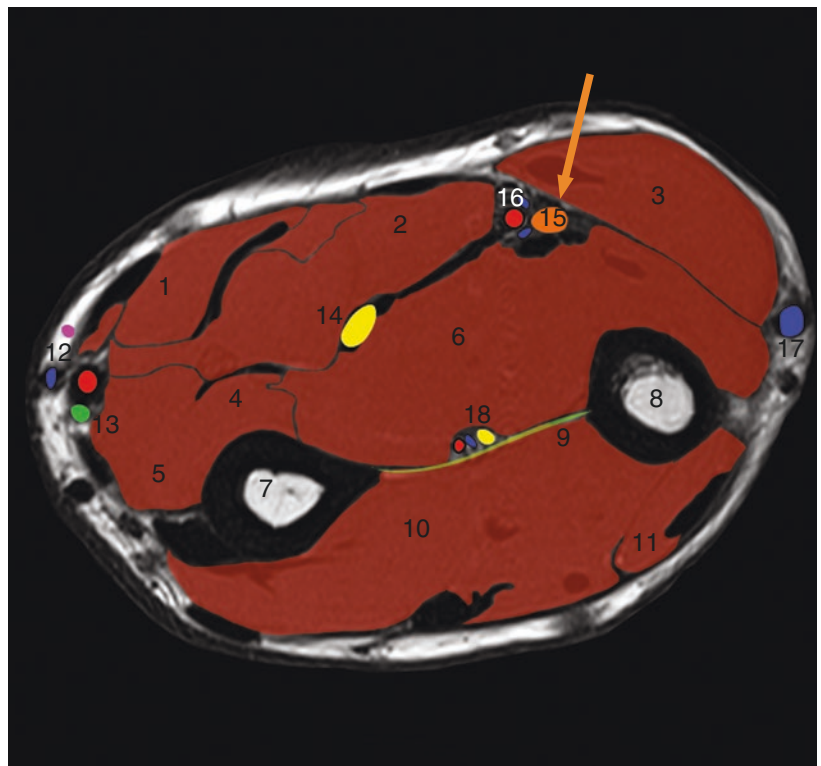
© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure U17. MRI scans in the elbow through the ulnar nerve

The Ulnar Nerve

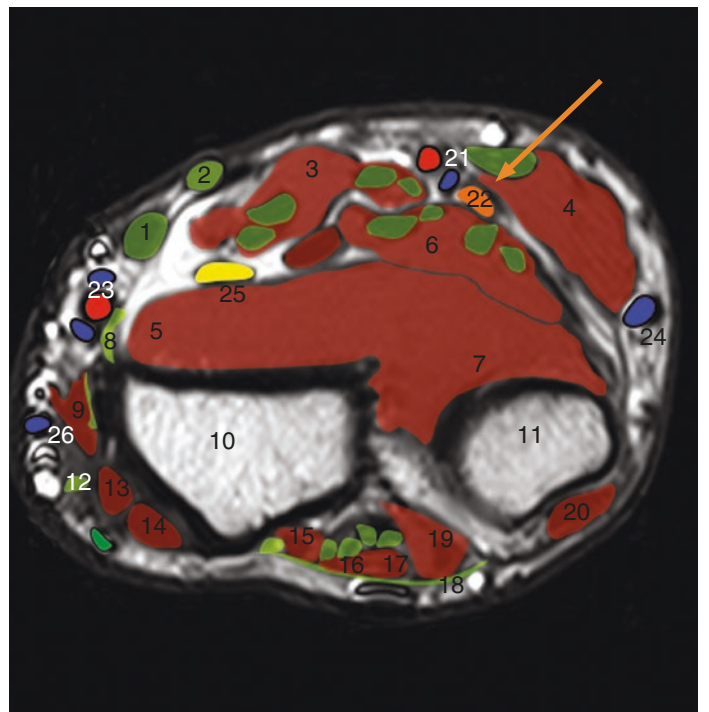
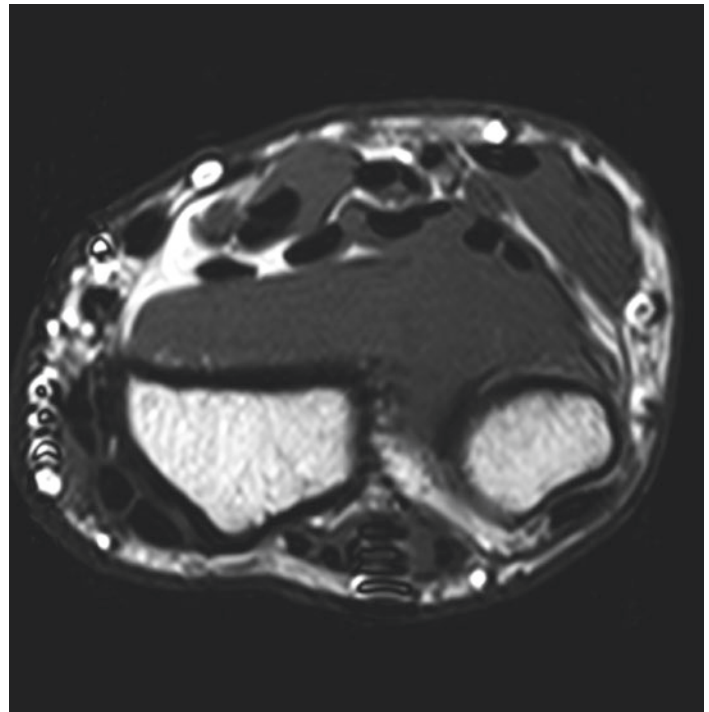
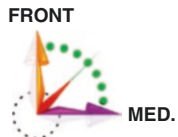


- 1- Flexor carpi radialis muscle
- 2- Flexor digitorum superficialis muscle
- 3- Flexor carpi ulnaris muscle
- 4- Flexor pollicis longus muscle
- 5- Extensor carpi radialis brevis muscle
- 6- Flexor digitorum profundus muscle
- 7- Radius
- 8- Ulna
- 9- Interosseous membrane of the forearm
- 10- Posterior compartment of the extensor digitorum muscles
- 11- Extensor carpi muscle
- 12- Radial artery and vein
- 13- Radial nerve
- 14- Median nerve
- 15- Ulnar nerve
- 16- Ulnar artery and vein
- 17- Basilic vein
- 18- Anterior interosseous artery, vein and nerve



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure U18. MRI scans in the forearm through the ulnar nerve



- 1- Flexor carpi radialis muscle
- 2- Palmaris longus muscle
- 3- Flexor digitorum superficialis muscle
- 4- Flexor carpi ulnaris muscle
- 5- Flexor pollicis longus muscle
- 6- Flexor digitorum profundus muscle
- 7- Pronator quadratus muscle
- 8- Brachioradialis muscle
- 9- Abductor pollicis longus muscle
- 10- Radius
- 11- Ulna
- 12- Extensor pollicis brevis muscle
- 13- Extensor carpi radialis longus muscle
- 14- Extensor carpi radialis brevis muscle
- 15- Extensor pollicis longus muscle
- 16- Extensor digitorum muscle
- 17- Extensor digiti minimi muscle
- 18- Extensor retinaculum
- 19- Extensor indicis muscle
- 20- Extensor carpi muscle
- 21- Ulnar artery and vein
- 22- Ulnar nerve
- 23- Radial artery and vein
- 24- Basilic vein
- 25- Median nerve
- 26- Cephalic vein

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure U19. MRI scans in the wrist through ulnar nerve

Pathology

Cubital Tunnel Syndrome

In the elbow, the ulnar nerve is situated behind the medial epicondyle of the humerus. It is accompanied by the superior collateral ulnar artery. It then goes in between the two heads of the flexor carpi ulnaris muscle. It can be compressed at this level (Figure U20).

Aetiology

- **Compression:** it is truly an entrapment neuropathy. The compression occurs at the level of the arch of the flexor carpi ulnaris muscle. This compression is more likely to happen after remodelling of bone, for post-injury reasons or not. Any cause of shrinking of this “ulnar tunnel” can be responsible for this syndrome. It is often due to a repeated, prolonged, or sometimes iatrogenic compression – surgery in genupectoral position and prolonged anaesthesia with the arm in a wrong position or use of crutches. Diabetes, smoking and arterial hypertension are risk factors, as well as hypothyroidism and intensive manual labour.
- **Traction:** the region described above is an important stretching area of the ulnar nerve during repeated flexion motions of the elbow. At this level, nerve injuries are more likely to happen in the case of “system” diseases such as diabetes, renal failure, hepatocellular failure and vitamin deficiency which can all weaken the nerve.

Clinical Significance

- **Sensitive signs:** the sensitive signs generally concern the last two fingers of the hand. It can be pain of neuropathic type or mere paraesthesiae. The paraesthesiae or pain can increase during the night, especially when the elbow is in a flexion position.

Paradoxically, the first sensibility mode affected is the proprioceptive function and secondarily the epicritic function.

- **Motor signs:** in the forearm, the ulnar nerve takes charge of the innervation of the flexor carpi ulnaris and partially

the flexor digitorum profundus muscle. In the hand, it innervates the major part of the intrinsic muscles except for the abductor pollicis brevis, opponens pollicis and the first and second lumbricals. Its motor impairment is therefore manifesting itself by an impossibility of adduction of the little finger and of flexion and extension for all the other fingers except for the thumb. Flexion deficit is higher for the metacarpophalangeal joints when the interphalangeal joints are maintained in an extension position.

Froment’s sign and an amyotrophy of the first interosseous space will be found belatedly, very noticeable on the dorsal face of the hand.

Clinical Forms

The revealing sign can be an amyotrophy of the interosseous muscles, which later extends towards the other muscles. It must compel one to seek for a distal compression of the nerve at the level of the hand.

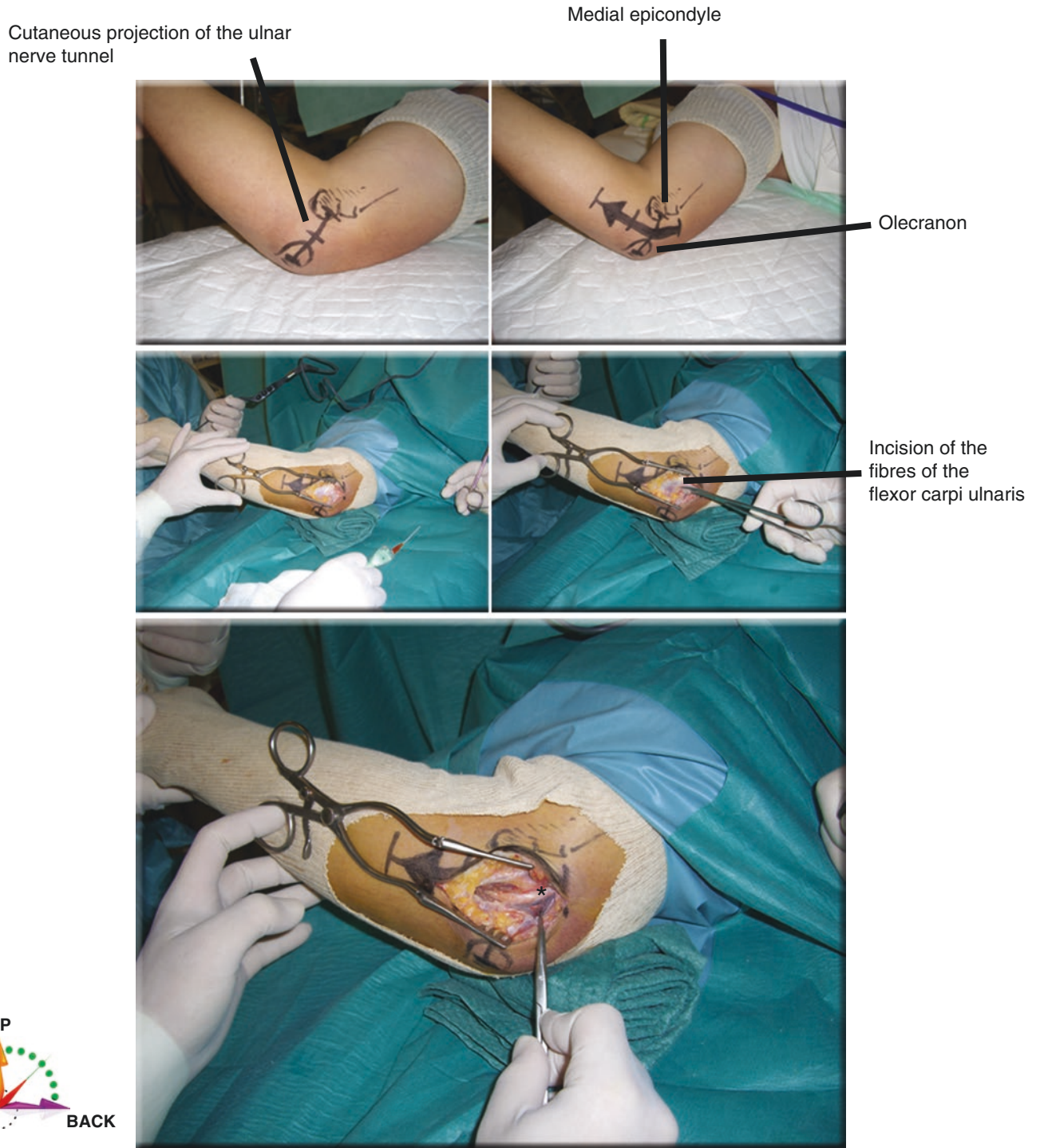
The sensitive signs may not appear for a long time, and the pain can stay localised in the elbow. An impairment of the flexor digitorum muscles remains minimal or non-existent in most cases, considering their double innervations.

Complementary Examinations

- Bilateral and comparative radiographies of both the elbows: the goal is to look for a radiopaque exostosis, proof of the possible existence of an arcade of Struthers.

The arcade of Struthers is a fibrous band stretched between an abnormal exostosis, called “supracondylar process”, situated 3–5 cm above the medial epicondyle and the junction of the medial epicondyle with the trochlea. It exists in 1% of subjects. This is the other nerve compression site that must systematically be sought for.

- An electroneuromyography objectifies the ulnar nerve injury and eliminates an associated impairment or a differential diagnosis.



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure U20. Pathology of the ulnar nerve: ulnar nerve entrapment at the elbow – decompression surgery in order to release the ulnar nerve (*) in its ulnar nerve tunnel

Treatment

A change in the patient's habits in position, which goes towards avoiding the position with an elbow in flexion which is likely to compress the nerve, is recommended as first intention. An elbow orthosis for night use can be suggested.

If the medical treatment fails, a surgical opening of the arcade of the flexor carpi ulnaris is generally sufficient.

The surgery's result is good or excellent in 90–95% of cases. The recovery period varies according to the severity of the disuse atrophy when surgery is operated and to whether the neuropathic character of pain is proven (Figure U21).

Ulnar Tunnel Syndrome (Guyon's Canal)

The ulnar canal is formed on the carpus by an expansion of the extensor retinaculum that inserts itself on the hamatum and pisiform bones (see above). The nerve can be compressed in this canal. At this position, the ulnar nerve splits into its two terminal branches (Figure U17).

Aetiology

- Compression: there was no reported case of a real entrapment neuropathy. There are two potential compression sites – either at the proximal level, at the level of the palmar carpal ligament or, more distally, under the arch formed by the pisiform and hamulus bones.

Clinical Signs

- Sensitive signs: the sensitive territory of the ulnar nerve includes the palmar face of the fifth finger and the medial half of the fourth finger. The symptoms associate pain, paraesthesiae, vasomotor disorders and epicritic and/or proprioceptive hypaesthesia of the ulnar region. They can be triggered by percussion of the nerve at this level (Tinel's sign). It is important to note that the ulnar nerve's territory has a variable size and that it can be spread out differently on the palmar face of the third, fourth and fifth fingers.
- Motor signs: the impairment is sensibly identical with the cubital tunnel syndrome. According to the level of compression, a disuse atrophy of the hypothenar and/or interossei muscles can appear. It is important to note that the flexor carpi ulnaris is spared by this motor impairment.

Clinical Forms

There are three possible clinical pictures depending on where the nerve injury is located:

- Type I injury, proximal, representing 30% of cases. It is mixed, sensitive and motor and is caused by synovial cyst or malunions in the wrist.
- Type II injury, representing 52% of cases. It affects the nerve after the latter gives off its sensitive branch. It is therefore a purely motor injury: the impairment is massive. It is referred to as type IIa injury if the compression affects the nerve before the origin of its hypothenar branches and therefore spares the hypothenar group. It is referred to as type IIb in cases of a more distal injury at the level of the hamulus. It is the most frequent form of injury. Type IIc injury is rarer, where the injury is outside and distally from the compartment, at the level of the arcade of the adductor digiti minimi, proximally related to the branches heading for the first dorsal interosseous muscle and the adductor pollicis.
- Type III injury, representing 18% of cases. It is purely sensitive because it affects this component at the end of the ulnar compartment in an isolated way. A motor impairment can also be seen when the palmaris brevis muscle is affected, causing a loss in the relief and of the palmar creases of the hypothenar eminence (Figure U22).

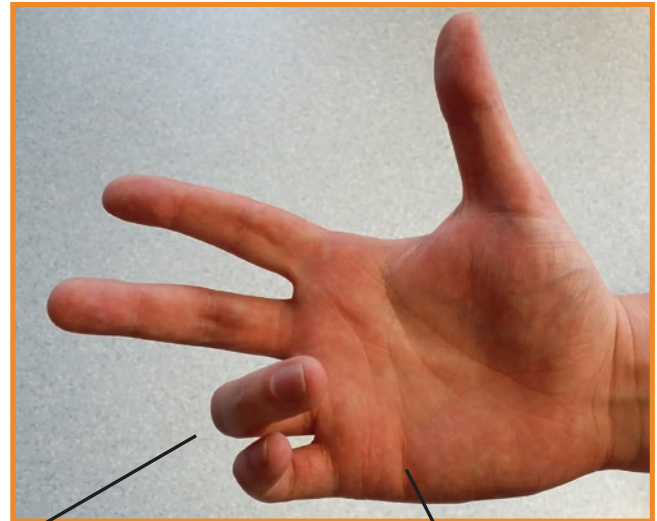
Complementary Examinations

- The level of compression can be identified using electrophysiological monitoring.
- The indication of an MRI must be discussed if there is any doubt of a synovial or fatty pathology or any other type of intrinsic/extrinsic compression of the nerve.
- Wrist radiographies are recommended. They allow investigation for the possibility of an abnormal osseous swelling.

Treatment

The treatment varies directly according to the cause. There is no general agreement. In the case of an acute or evolving extrinsic compression, a decompression surgery is often recommended.

Post-operative results are generally satisfying after a few months of follow-up.

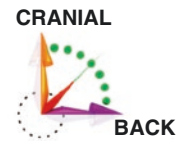
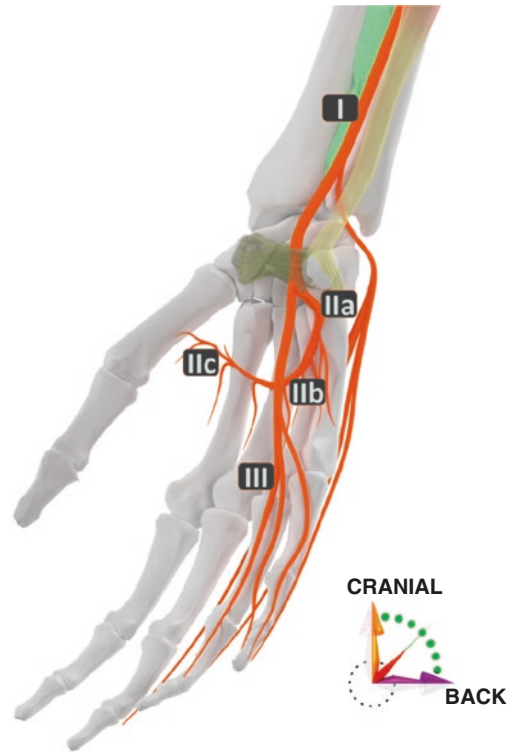
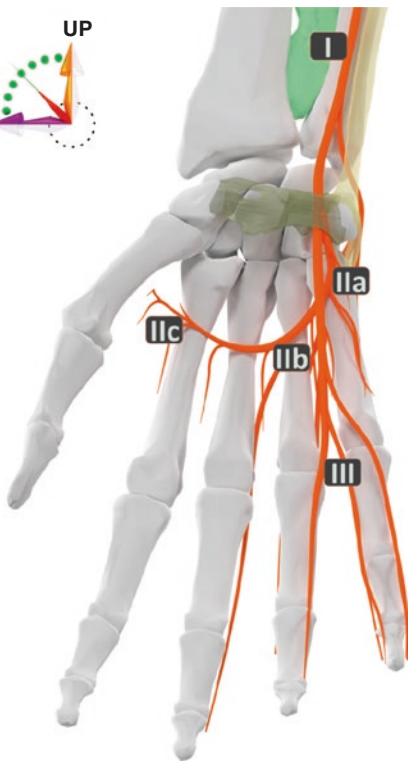
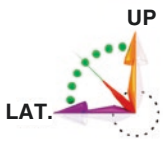


Ulnar claw

Disuse atrophy of the hypothenar compartment

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure U21. Ulnar nerve entrapment at the wrist – ulnar claw



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure U22. Anatomoclinical classification of ulnar nerve injuries. (1) Hamulus of hamate bone. (2) Deep motor branch of ulnar nerve. (3) Pisiform bone. (4) Superficial sensitive branch of the ulnar nerve



The Axillary Nerve

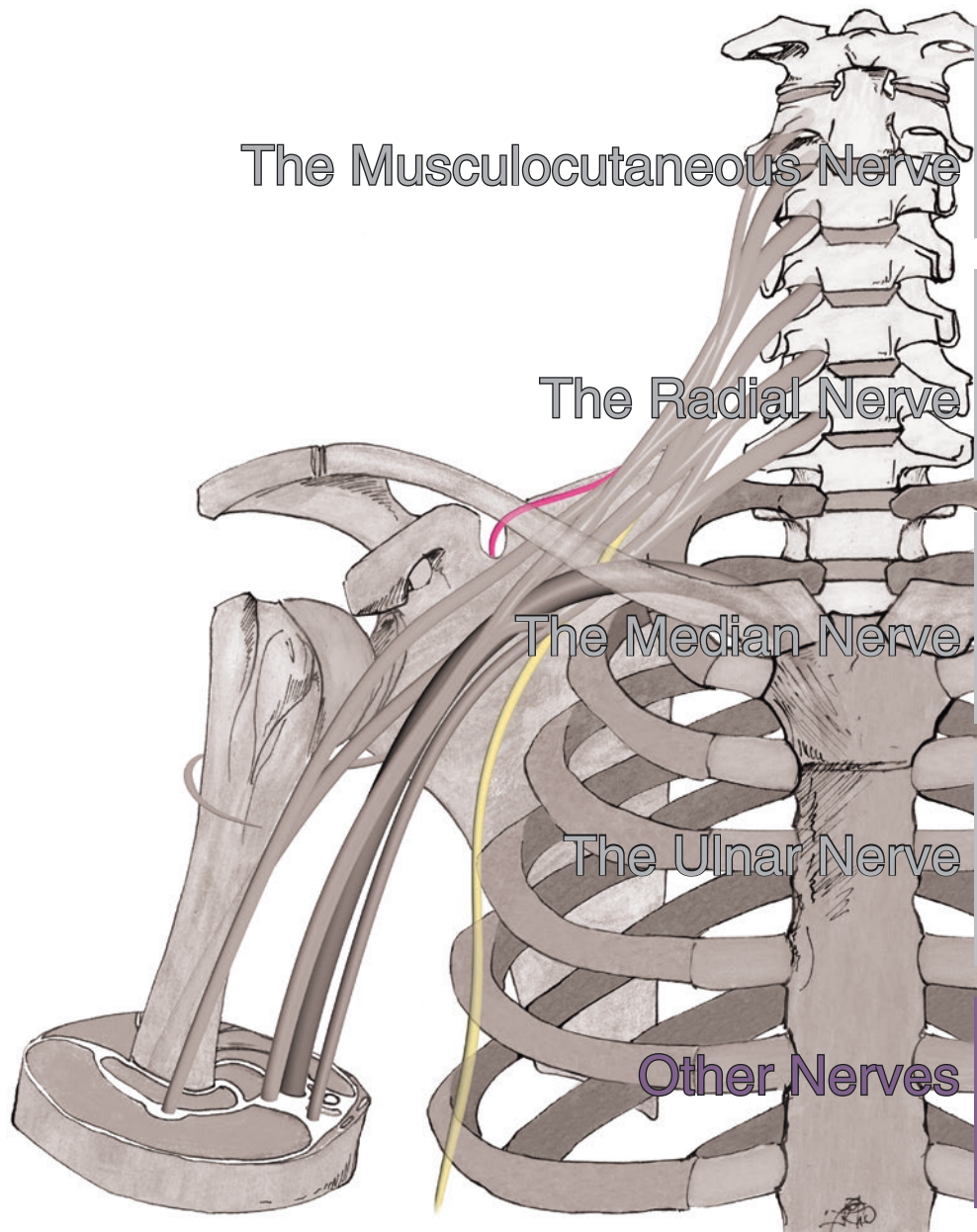
The Musculocutaneous Nerve

The Radial Nerve

The Median Nerve

The Ulnar Nerve

Other Nerves



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

SSc
TL

The Suprascapular Nerve

Morphological Data

The suprascapular nerve is a motor nerve. It is a collateral branch of the upper trunk of the brachial plexus and is responsible for the innervation of the scapular area.

Origin

It comes from the C5 to C6 roots, in the upper trunk of the brachial plexus. It originates where the brachial plexus splits into anterior and posterior division, at the level of the interscalene triangle (Figure SSc1).

Path

The suprascapular nerve's path is deep, at the ventral face of the trapezius and omohyoid muscles. It then goes behind the clavicle under the insertion of the trapezius. It goes above the scapula through the suprascapular notch on the upper border of the scapula (Figure SSc2).

At this level, it faces the suprascapular artery and the transverse scapular ligament. The nerve may give rise to a branch that accompanies the artery above the transverse scapular ligament.

It then goes through the spinoglenoid notch under the transverse scapular ligament and around the lateral border of the spine of the scapula in order to penetrate the infraspinous fossa, which is where the nerve ends (Figure SSc3).

Neurovascular Relations

In the suprascapular notch, the suprascapular artery, the transverse scapular ligament and the suprascapular nerve can be found from top to bottom (Figure SSc2).

Collateral Branches

The suprascapular nerve successively gives off:

- Articular branches for the acromioclavicular and glenohumeral joint.
- Cutaneous branches in 1/3 of individuals. These branches go through the suprascapular notch in front of the coracoacromial ligament and become subcutaneous when they perforate the deltoid muscle.
- Muscular branches for the supraspinatus muscle.

Terminal Branches

The suprascapular nerve ends at the level of the infraspinatus muscle when it distributes its motor fibres.

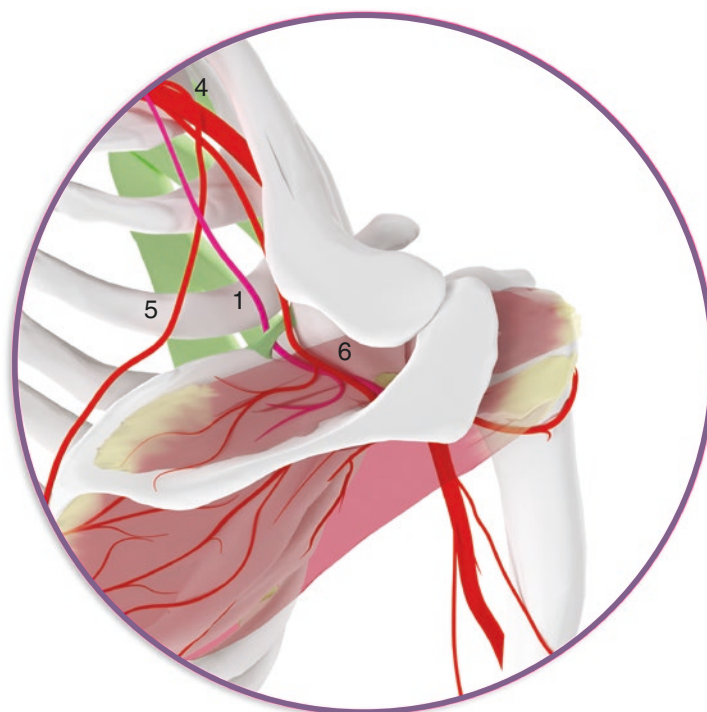
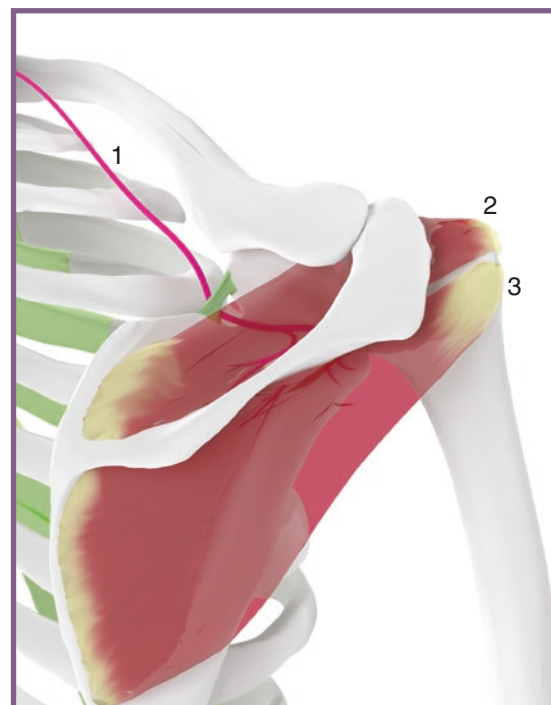
Motor Function

The suprascapular nerve takes charge of the innervation of the supraspinatus and infraspinatus muscles. The supraspinatus muscle is considered as the initiator of abduction movements and is in charge of elevating the head of the humerus at the beginning of abduction movements. The infraspinatus muscle allows movements of abduction and lateral rotation of the arm on the shoulder. Therefore, the suprascapular nerve takes charge of the elevation of the head of the humerus, the abduction and partially the lateral rotation of the arm.

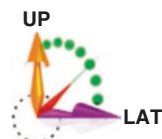


© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure SSc1. The suprascapular nerve's relations with bones



- 1- Suprascapular nerve
- 2- Supraspinatus muscle
- 3- Infraspinatus muscle
- 4- Axillary artery
- 5- Transverse cervical artery
- 6- Suprascapular artery

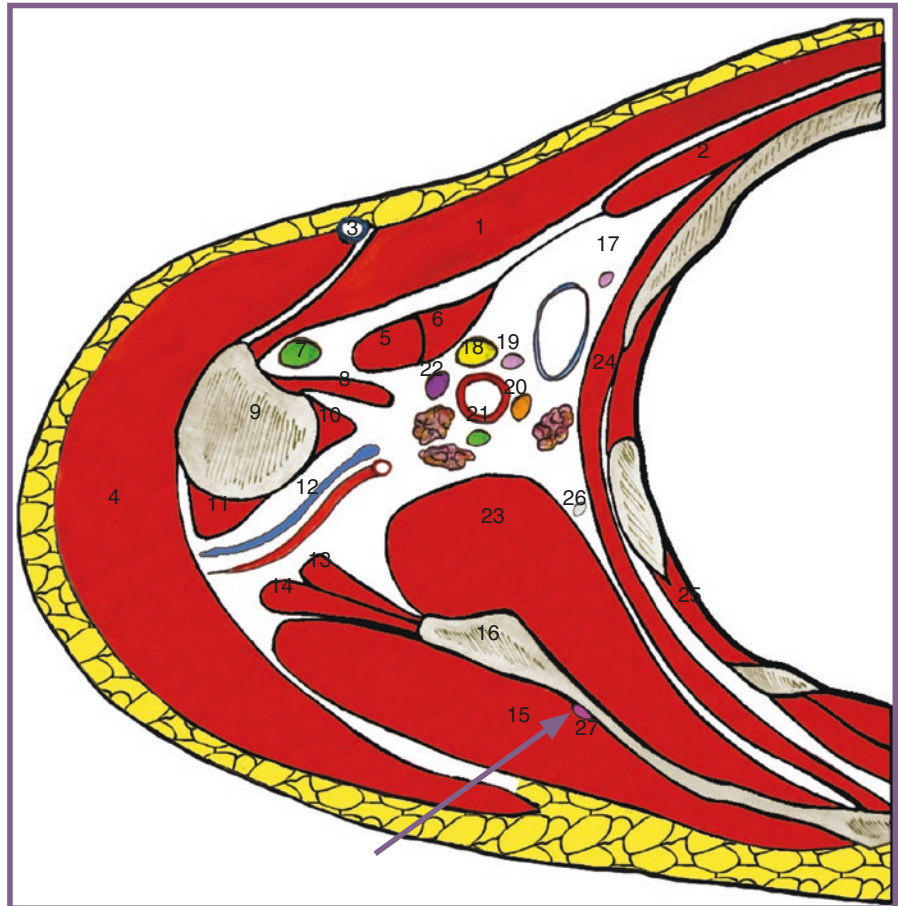
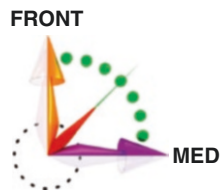


© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure SSc2. Osteoligamentous and vascular relations of the suprascapular nerve

The Suprascapular Nerve

- 1- Pectoralis major muscle
- 2- Pectoralis minor muscle
- 3- Cephalic vein
- 4- Deltoid muscle
- 5- Short head of the biceps brachii muscle
- 6- Coracobrachialis muscle
- 7- Tendon of the long head of the biceps brachii muscle
- 8- Latissimus dorsi muscle
- 9- Humerus
- 10- Teres major muscle
- 11- Lateral head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 12- Circumflex artery and nerve
- 13- Long head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 14- Teres minor muscle
- 15- Infraspinatus muscle
- 16- Scapula
- 17- Medial cutaneous nerve of arm
- 18- Median nerve
- 19- Medial cutaneous nerve of forearm
- 20- Ulnar nerve
- 21- Radial nerve
- 22- Musculocutaneous nerve
- 23- Subscapularis muscle
- 24- Serratus anterior
- 25- Intercostal muscles
- 26- Lateral thoracic artery
- 27- Suprascapular nerve



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure SSc3. Axial section at axillary fossa through the suprascapular nerve

Pathologies

It can be compressed in the case of entrapment neuropathy at the level of the suprascapular notch (Figures SSc4 and SSc5)

Aetiology

- **Traction:** The apparition of this syndrome is caused by micro-traumas: sport, professional activity, traumatic movements of retropulsion, some constitutional abnormalities and muscle imbalance problems such as those caused by trapezius palsy.
- **Compression:** a clavicle fracture can lead to an injury of the suprascapular nerve if the fracture concerns the lateral part of the clavicle, in its descending part, under the insertion of the trapezius muscle.

In medial rotation movements of the arm, the part where the suprascapular nerve goes through the suprascapular notch is a high-sensibility area. This compression can generally be found in sportspersons or individuals who have a job requiring repeated shoulder movements.

- **Section:** A section of the nerve can happen during shoulder, clavicle or scapular surgeries.

Clinical Significance

- **Sensitive signs:** The patient feels a dull, deep, shooting pain which exacerbates at night. Its first apparition can be sudden. The pain is situated in the posterolateral area of the shoulder and irradiates towards the acromioclavicular joint along the lateral border of the arm, towards the elbow, and can follow the radicular paths of C5 and C6. The pain is caused by cross body adduction and triggered by applying stress on the suprascapular joint, weakened by the elevation of the shoulder.
- **Motor signs:** Functional impairment is generally described as moderate. The motor deficit concerns the initial steps of the movement of abduction of the shoulder but not the whole movement, since the deltoid muscle is intact. It also becomes impossible for the patient to perform a complete lateral rotation. Another motor sign is a more or less extensive amyotrophy of the supraspinatus and infraspinatus muscles.

Complementary Examinations

- Shoulder and cervical spine radiographs are generally normal.
- Electroneuromyography: difficult to perform, but helps objectify an electrophysiological injury of the subscapular nerve.
- MRI and scanner can highlight an extrinsic compression.

Treatment

The first action should be a local corticosteroid infiltration. If this fails, treatment includes a surgical opening of the superior transverse scapular ligament and of the coracoacromial ligament sometimes associated with a removal surgery of an adenopathy which could worsen the compression. The result regarding pain is satisfying in 70% of cases. There is a better recovery for infraspinatus palsy than for supraspinatus palsy.

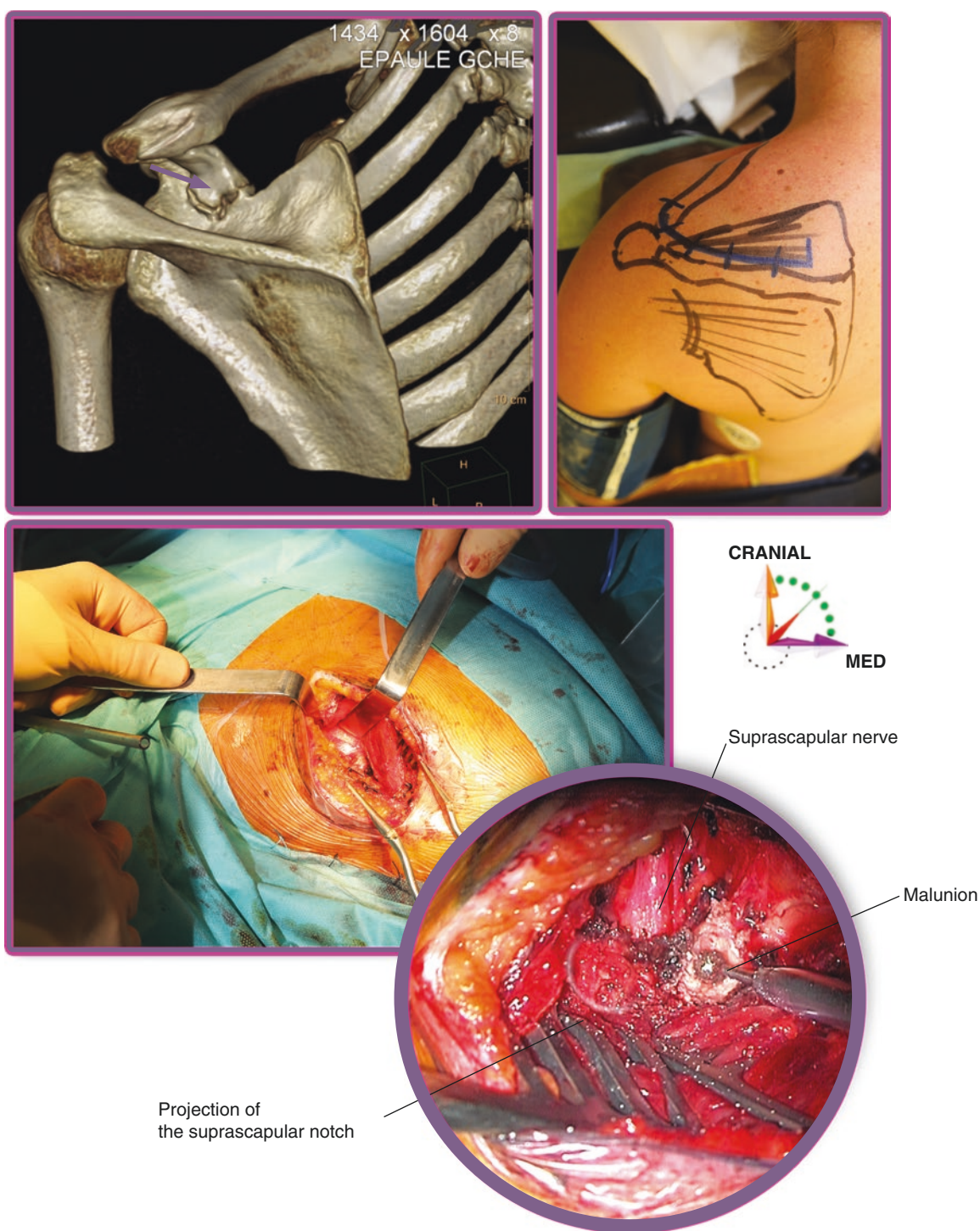
The Suprascapular Nerve



1. Suprascapular nerve
2. Supraspinatus muscle
3. Infraspinatus muscle
4. Teres minor muscle
5. Long head of the triceps brachii muscle
6. Teres major muscle
7. Lateral head of the triceps brachii muscle

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure SSc4. Pathology of the suprascapular nerve: Anatomical structures going through the spine of the scapula near the surgical entry point (see following example)



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure SSc5. Case of a patient presenting a malunion after a fracture with important tilting of the left clavicle. The callus becomes a bridge between the lateral clavicular fragment and the spine of the scapula by ensheathing the suprascapular nerve at the level of the notch. This compression causes stitching pain in the shoulder which increases in intensity during rotation movements of the scapula; a disuse atrophy of the rotator cuff muscles with deficit of initiation of abduction of the shoulder can be noticed. A decompression surgery of the suprascapular nerve through suprascapular access has been suggested to this patient and allowed for a nerve release by partially milling the callus and the suprascapular notch

The Long Thoracic Nerve

Morphological Data

The long thoracic nerve is a collateral motor branch of the brachial plexus, originating from its supraclavicular part.

Origin

It stems from the C5, C6 and C7 roots, shortly after they come out through the transverse foramina (Figure [LT1](#)).

Path

The long thoracic nerve goes down behind these previously mentioned roots, before the formation of the trunks of the plexus brachial. Then it generally pierces the scalenus medius muscle; the trunk of the nerve then emerges behind the clavicle and goes down the lateral chest wall in an oblique way, outside and below.

The second rib acts as a “sawhorse” as it travels vertically at this level and reaches the first digitation of the serratus anterior muscle. The latter covers the medial part of the axillary pit. The nerve then gives off a branch for each digitation of the serratus anterior muscle (Figure [LT2](#)).

Neurovascular Relations

In its thoracic part, the long thoracic nerve faces the lateral thoracic artery in behind (Figure [LT2](#)).

Terminal Branches

The long thoracic nerve ends when it gives off its motor fibres to the anterolateral face of the serratus anterior muscle.

Motor Function

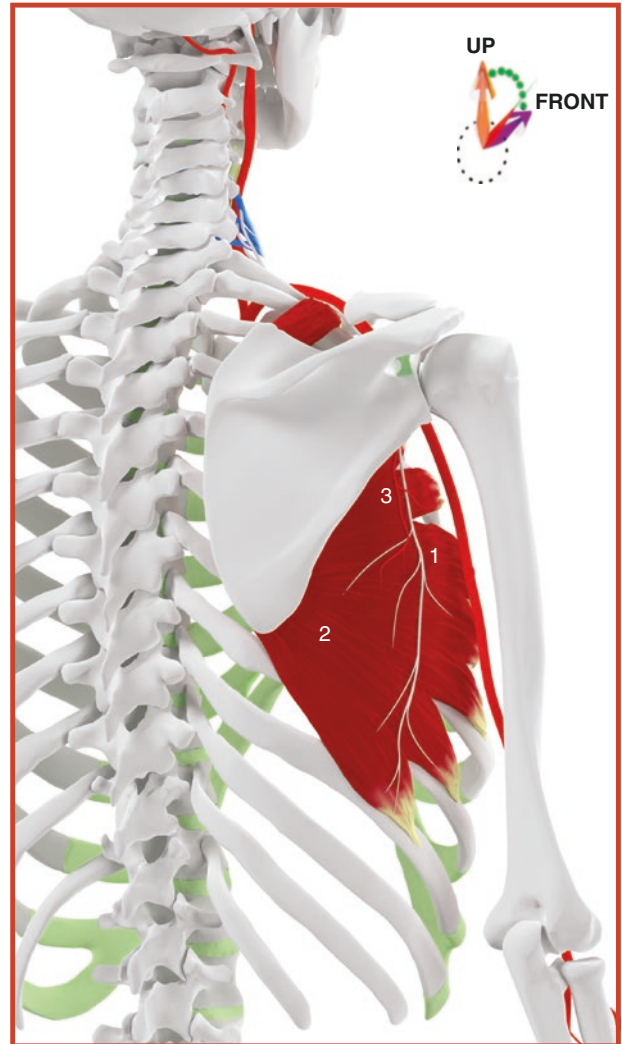
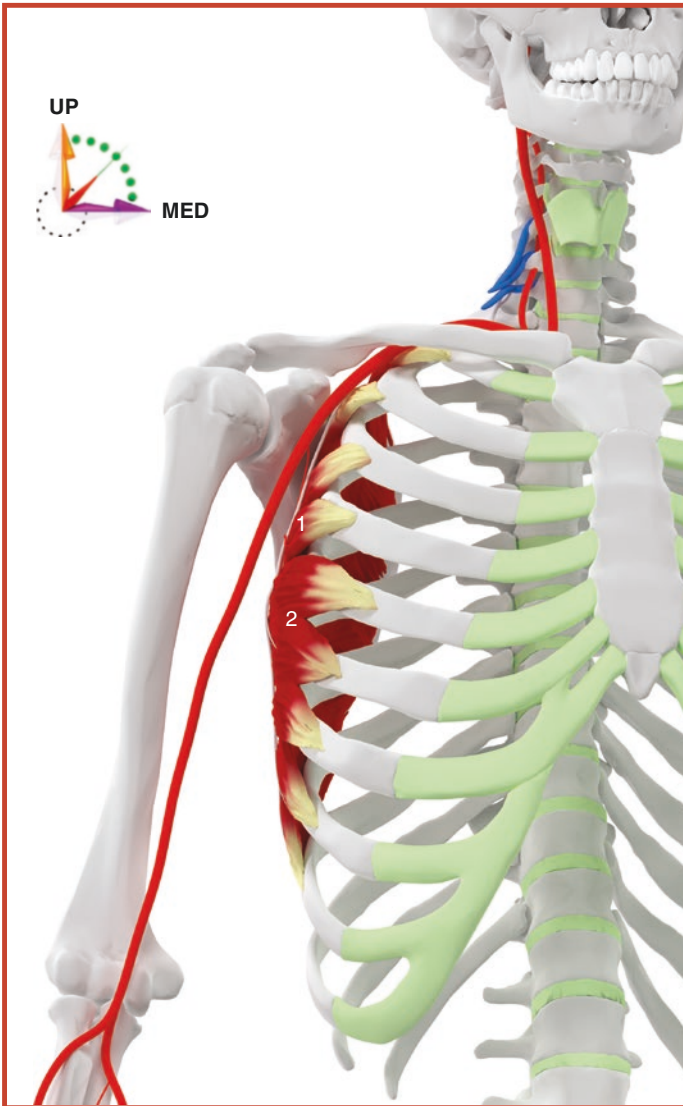
The long thoracic nerve takes charge of the innervation of the serratus anterior muscle. This muscle ends on the medial border of the scapula and delimitates the inter-serrato-thoracic and inter-scapulo-thoracic spaces (Figure [LT3](#)). The long thoracic nerve finally takes charge of the functions of abduction, lateral rotation, depression as well as maintaining the scapula against the posterior wall of the ribcage.



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure LT1. Motor innervation of the long thoracic nerve and its relations with the bones

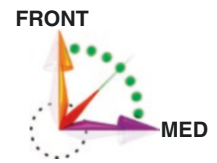
- 1- Long thoracic nerve
- 2- Serratus anterior
- 3- Lateral thoracic artery



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure LT2. Motor innervation of the long thoracic nerve and its relations with bones

The Long Thoracic Nerve



- 1- Pectoralis major muscle
- 2- Pectoralis minor muscle
- 3- Cephalic vein
- 4- Deltoid muscle
- 5- Short head of the Biceps brachii muscle
- 6- Coracobrachialis muscle
- 7- Tendon of the long head of the Biceps brachii muscle
- 8- Latissimus dorsi muscle
- 9- Humerus
- 10- Teres major muscle
- 11- Lateral head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 12- Circumflex artery and nerve
- 13- Long head of the triceps brachii muscle
- 14- Teres minor muscle
- 15- Infraspinatus muscle
- 16- Scapula
- 17- Medial cutaneous nerve of arm
- 18- Median nerve
- 19- Medial cutaneous nerve of forearm
- 20- Ulnar nerve
- 21- Radial nerve
- 22- Musculocutaneous nerve
- 23- Subscapularis muscle
- 24- Serratus anterior
- 25- Intercostal muscles
- 26- Long thoracic nerve
- 27- Suprascapular nerve



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure LT3. Axial section at axillary fossa through the long thoracic nerve

Pathologies

The long thoracic nerve is weakened by its length and slenderness. It can move on the “sawhorse” of the second rib, where it changes direction with a 60° angle on average. It can be compressed and/or stretched in the case of a forced depression of the shoulder or of an excessive retropulsion, especially in some sports or occupations: repetitive lifting of heavy weights, throws, etc. Isolated palsy of the serratus anterior ordinarily affects young adults between 20 and 40 years old.

Aetiology

- Traction: It can happen whilst carrying heavy weights or in cases of shoulder injuries of sternum-clavicle dislocation type, or clavicle fracture. Repeated movements with lateral extension or rotation, or even shoulder protraction, can also injure the long thoracic nerve.
- Compression: it can be positional, especially during general anaesthesia, when the arm is placed under the patient’s thorax.
- Section: an isolated injury of the long thoracic nerve can be seen in most cardiothoracic surgeries.

Clinical Significance

- Sensitive signs: A sudden parascapular thoracic pain, often during night-time, appears within a few hours after physical exercise. The pain’s location can vary, sometimes radiating to the upper limb.
- Motor signs: The medical practitioner can search for a winged scapula or “scapula alata” by making the patient press both hands flat against a wall. This can often show a unilateral bump on the spinal border of the scapula instead of a complete tilt (Figure [LT4](#)).

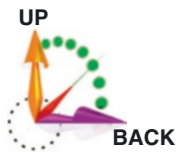
Treatment

Rest and the suppression of the triggering events can generally allow the nerve to heal, but the process is slow, requiring between 6 and 18 months.

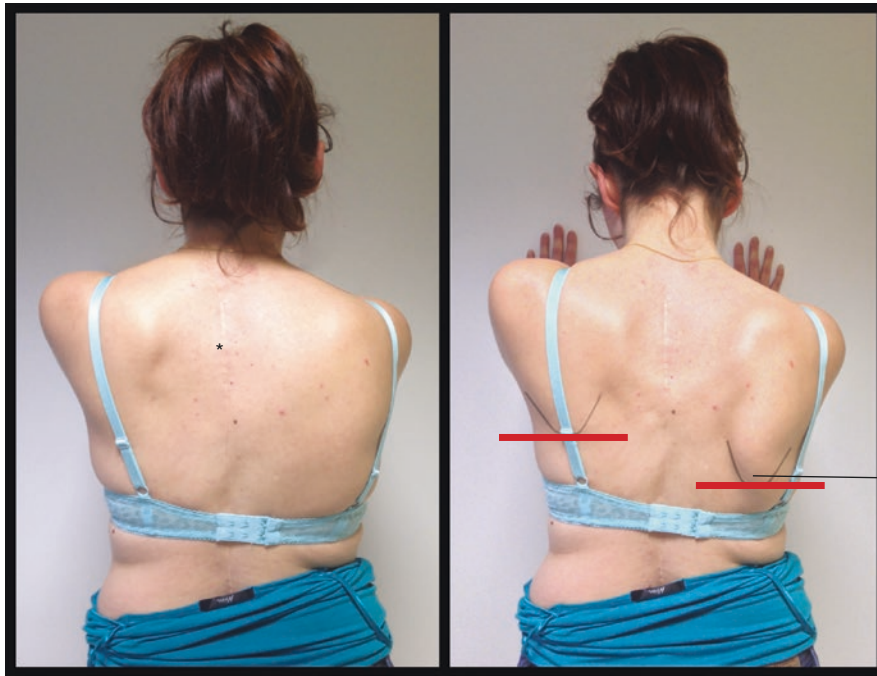
A direct surgery at the level of the nerve is not advised.

In the case of persisting paralysis, several orthopaedic surgery techniques of scapular stabilisation can be suggested as a palliative solution.

The Long Thoracic Nerve



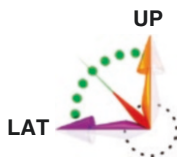
Internal border of the scapula



Inactive

While pushing against a wall

External border of the scapula



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure LT4. Case of a patient showing a scapula alata caused by a direct injury of the long thoracic nerve after a scoliosis surgery with combined approach, including a posterior (*) approach and a right thoracotomy

Plexus Brachial

1. Harris W (1904) The true form of the brachial plexus, and its motor distribution. *J Anat Physiol* 38:399–422
 2. Kerr A (1918) The Brachial plexus of nerves in man, the variations in its formation and branches. *Am J Anat* 23(2):285–395
 3. Billet H (1933) Les troncs primaires du plexus brachial. 63–71
 4. Fenart R (1958) Morphogenesis of the brachial plexus & its relation to the formation of the neck & the arm. *Acta Anat (Basel)* 32:322–360
 5. Latarjet A, Testud L (1948) *Testut's Traité d'Anatomie Humaine*. Paris, librairie Octave Doin, Gaston Doin et Cie, éditeurs
- Kahle W, Léonhardt H, Platzer W (2002) *Atlas de poche d'anatomie*. Tome 3: système nerveux et organes des sens. Flammarion médecines-sciences, Paris
- Kamina P (2002) *Précis d'anatomie clinique*. Tome I. Anatomie Générale. Maloine, Paris
- Kamina P, Santini J-J (1997) *Anatomie, introduction à la clinique*. coupes des membres 6. Maloine, Paris
- Maniker A (2005) *Operative exposures in peripheral nerve surgery*. Thieme Medical Publishers, New York

Masquelet AC (2005) *Voies d'abord chirurgicales du membre inférieur*. Masson, Issy-les-Moulineaux (Hauts-de-Seine)

Morphological Data Superior Member

Alnot J-Y (1997) *Lésions traumatiques des nerfs périphériques*. Expansion scientifique publ, Paris

Bauer R et al (1988) *Voies d'abord en chirurgie orthopédique et traumatologique*. Masson, Paris/Milan/Barcelone

Benzel EC, AANS Publications Committee (1992) *Practical approaches to peripheral nerve surgery*. American Association of Neurological Surgeons, Park Ridge, Ill

Chantelot C et al (2000) *Voies d'abord des nerfs du membre inférieur*. In: *Techniques chirurgicales – Orthopédie – Traumatologie*. Elsevier, Paris. pp 44–530

Denormandie P, Decq P (2009) *Atlas des techniques chirurgicales dans la spasticité*. Expression santé, Paris

Drake RL et al (2010) *Gray's anatomy for students*. Churchill Livingstone/Elsevier, Philadelphia

Fessler RG, Sekhar LN (2006) *Atlas of neurosurgical techniques: spine and peripheral nerves*. Thieme, New York

Honnart F (1989) *Voies d'abord en chirurgie orthopédique et traumatologique*, 3rd edn. Masson, Paris

Netter FH, Kamina P (2011) *Atlas d'anatomie humaine*. Elsevier Masson, [Issy-les-Moulineaux]

Oberlin C, Teboul F Touam C (2001) *Voies d'abord des nerfs du membre supérieur*. In: *Techniques chirurgicales – Orthopédie – Traumatologie*. Elsevier, Paris. pp 44–225

Pernkopf E (2005) *Atlas d'anatomie humaine*. Thorax, abdomen et membres, Tome 2. Piccin, Padoue

Platzer W (2007) *Atlas de poche d'anatomie*. Tome 1: appareil locomoteur. Flammarion médecines-sciences, Paris

Rohen JW et al (1999) *Anatomie humaine: atlas photographique d'anatomie systématique et topographique*. Maloine, Paris

Rouvière H (1976) *Précis d'anatomie et de dissection*. Masson, Paris/New York

Rouvière H, Delmas A, Delmas V (2002) *Anatomie humaine: descriptive, topographique et fonctionnelle*. Tome III. Masson, Paris

Roy-Camille R, Laurin CA, Riley LH (1990) *Atlas de chirurgie orthopédique*. Tome 2. Membre supérieur. Masson, Paris

Bibliography

- Roy-Camille R, Laurin CA, Riley LH (1992) Atlas de chirurgie orthopédique. Tome 3. Membre inférieur. Masson, Paris
- Salcman M et al (2004) Kempe's operative neurosurgery. Volume two. Posterior fossa, spinal and peripheral nerve. Springer, New York
- Schliack H, Mumenthaler M, Goerke H (1991) Peripheral nerve lesions: diagnosis and therapy. G. Thieme/Thieme Medical Publishers, Stuttgart/New York
- Tubiana R (1991) Traité de chirurgie de la main. Affections neurologiques, Tome 4. Paris/Milan/Barcelone, Masson
- Tubiana R (1980a) Traité de chirurgie de la main. Anatomie, physiologie, biologie, méthodes d'examen, Tome 1. Masson, Paris/New York
- Tubiana R (1980b) Traité de chirurgie de la main. Chirurgie des tendons, des nerfs et des vaisseaux, Tome 3. Masson, Paris/New York
- Tubiana R (1984) Traité de chirurgie de la main. Techniques chirurgicales. Traumatismes de la main, Tome 2. Masson, Paris
- Tubiana R et al (2004) Voies d'abord chirurgicales du membre supérieur. Masson, Paris/Milan/Barcelone [etc.]
- Pathology**
- Artico M et al (2000) 290 surgical procedures for ulnar nerve entrapment at the elbow: physiopathology, clinical experience and results. *Acta Neurochir* 142(3):303–308
- Atroshi I et al (1999) Prevalence of carpal tunnel syndrome in a general population. *JAMA* 282(2):153–158
- Aydinlioglu A et al (2000) Bilateral median nerve compression at the level of Struthers' ligament. Case report. *J Neurosurg* 92(4):693–696
- Baron D (2007) Prise en charge locale des syndromes canaux. *Rev Rhum* 74(4):424–433
- Bartels RHMA et al (2005) Simple decompression or anterior subcutaneous transposition for ulnar neuropathy at the elbow: a cost-minimization analysis—Part 2. *Neurosurgery* 56(3):531–536; discussion 531–536
- Bartels RHMA, Verbeek ALM (2007) Risk factors for ulnar nerve compression at the elbow: a case control study. *Acta Neurochir* 149(7):669–674; discussion 674
- Bassett FH, Nunley JA (1982) Compression of the musculocutaneous nerve at the elbow. *J Bone Joint Surg Am* 64(7):1050–1052
- Benaim J et al (2004) Neuropathies proximales du musculocutané. *Chir Main* 23:S77–S85
- Bouchaud-Chabot A, Roulot É (2007) Syndrome du canal carpien. *Rev Rhum* 74(4):371–375
- Bousquet JC et al (1996) Synovial cyst involving isolated paralysis of the infraspinatus muscle. Ultrasonographic diagnosis and MRI. *J De Radiologie* 77(4):275–277
- Braga-Silva J, Fontes Neto P, Foucher G (1996) Postoperative strength after surgical release of the carpal tunnel: a randomized prospective study. *Rev Bras Ortop* 31:355
- Cudlip SA et al (2002) Magnetic resonance neurography studies of the median nerve before and after carpal tunnel decompression. *J Neurosurg* 96(6):1046–1051
- Dailiana Z, Roulot É, Le Viet D (2000) Surgical treatment of compression of the lateral antebrachial cutaneous nerve. *J Bone Joint Surg* 82:420–423
- Davidson JJ, Bassett FH, Nunley JA (1998) Musculocutaneous nerve entrapment revisited. *J Shoulder Elbow Surg/Am Shoulder Elbow Surgeons* 7(3):250–255
- Delmotte A et al (2009) Physiology of the injured peripheral nerve. *Neuro-Chirurgie*, 55 Suppl 1:S13–21
- Dumontier C et al (2004) Compression du nerf thoracicus-longus (Nerf de Charles-Bell). *Chir Main* 23:S63–S76
- Erbayraktar S et al (2002) Comparison of partial excision with simple section of the transverse carpal ligament in the

- treatment of carpal tunnel syndrome. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 109(6):1953–1959
- Farmer JE, Davis TR (2008) Carpal tunnel syndrome: a case-control study evaluating its relationship with body mass index and hand and wrist measurements. *J Hand Surg (European Volume)* 33(4):445–448
- Gerritsen AA et al (2003) Splinting for carpal tunnel syndrome: prognostic indicators of success. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry* 74(9):1342–1344
- Gervasio O et al (2005) Simple decompression versus anterior submuscular transposition of the ulnar nerve in severe cubital tunnel syndrome: a prospective randomized study. *Neurosurgery* 56(1):108–117; discussion 117
- Kim DH et al (2005) Management and outcomes of 42 surgical suprascapular nerve injuries and entrapments. *Neurosurgery* 57(1):120–127; discussion 120–127
- Kim DH et al (2006a) Surgical treatment and outcomes in 15 patients with anterior interosseous nerve entrapments and injuries. *J Neurosurg* 104(5):757–765
- Kim DH et al (2006b) Surgical treatment and outcomes in 45 cases of posterior interosseous nerve entrapments and injuries. *J Neurosurg* 104(5):766–777
- Lapierre F, Buffenoir K et al (2009) The main tunnel syndromes. *Neurochirurgie* 55(4–5):393–412
- Lapierre F, Rigoard P, Wager M (2009) Peripheral nerve tumors. *Neurochirurgie* 55(4–5):413–420
- De Lecluse J (2010) Syndromes canauxiaux des nerfs axillaire, musculo-cutané et radial au coude. *J de Traumatologie du Sport* 27(3):152–160
- Lussiez B, Allieu Y (2004) Compression du nerf radial à la gouttière de torsion humérale (syndrome de Lotem). *Chir Main* 23:S102–S109
- Mansat M (1986) Syndromes canauxiaux et des défilés. In *Enc. Med. Chir. Paris*. 15005: A10–A11
- Martin BI et al (2005) Randomized clinical trial of surgery versus conservative therapy for carpal tunnel syndrome [ISRCTN84286481]. *BMC Musculoskelet Disord* 6:2
- Moutet F (2004) Compression du nerf ulnaire á la loge de Guyon. *Chir Main* 23:S134–S140
- Noterman J (1975) Surgical pathology of the peripheral nerve. Introduction. *Acta Chirurgica Belgica Suppl* 1:9–25
- O’Gradaigh D, Merry P (2000) Corticosteroid injection for the treatment of carpal tunnel syndrome. *Ann Rheum Dis* 59(11):918–919
- Pazzaglia C et al Italian CTS and others entrapment Study Group (2005) Multicenter study on carpal tunnel syndrome and pregnancy incidence and natural course. In: Alexandre A, Bricolo A, Millesi H (eds) *Advanced peripheral nerve surgery and minimal invasive spinal surgery*. Springer, Vienna, pp 35–39. Available at: http://link.springer.com/10.1007/3-211-27458-8_9. Accessed 1 Dec 2014
- Pogliacomini F, Perelli-Ercolini D, Vaienti E (2000) Isolated atrophy of the infraspinatus muscle in baseball players. In *Acta bio-medica de L’Ateneo parmense: organo della Società di medicina e scienze naturali di Parma* 71(5):127
- Raimbeau G, Saint-Cast Y (2004) Compressions du nerf radial au coude. In *Chirurgie de la main*. 23(S1):86–101
- Rigoard P et al (2009) Bases anatomiques des voies d’abord chirurgicales des nerfs du membre supérieur : à l’usage des jeunes neurochirurgiens. *Neurochirurgie* 55(4–5):384–392
- Roulot É, Charlez C (2004) Le nerf ulnaire au coude. In *Chirurgie de la main*. 23(S1):110–123
- Schliack H, Mumenthaler M, Goerke H (1991) *Peripheral nerve lesions: diagnosis and therapy*. G. Thieme/Thieme Medical Publishers, Stuttgart/New York
- Serra L et al (2003) Endoscopic release in carpal tunnel syndrome: analysis of clinical results in 200 cases. *Minim Invasive Neurosurg* 46(1):11–15

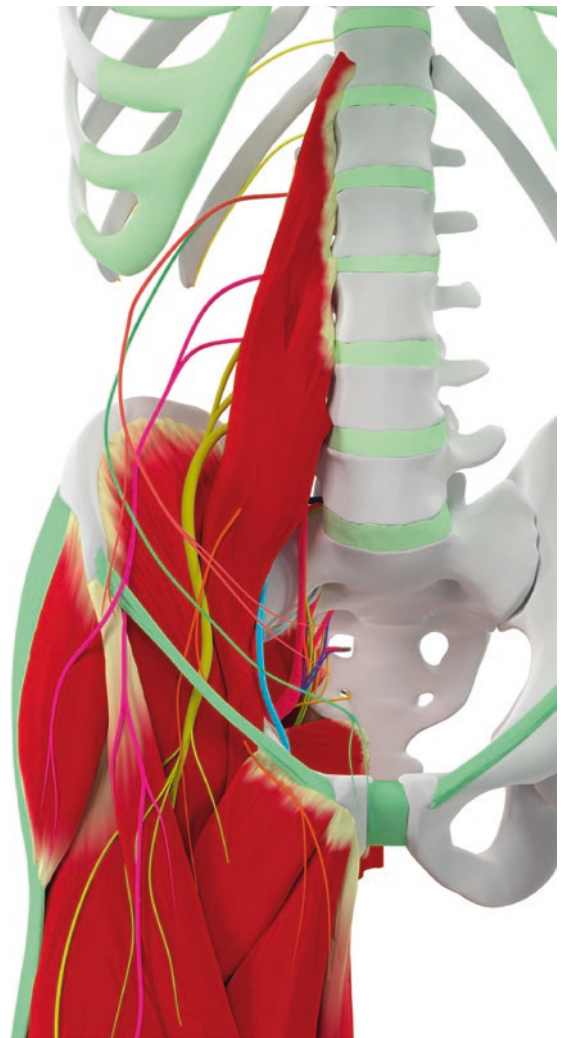
Bibliography

- Shapiro S (1995) Microsurgical carpal tunnel release. *Neurosurgery* 37(1):66–70
- Siqueira MG, Martins RS (2005) The controversial arcade of Struthers. *Surgical Neurology* 64 Suppl 1:S1:17–20; discussion S1:20–21
- Taha A et al (2004) Outcomes of cubital tunnel surgery among patients with absent sensory nerve conduction. *Neurosurgery* 54(4):891–895;discussion 895–896
- Thoma A et al (2004) A meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials comparing endoscopic and open carpal tunnel decompression. *Plast Reconstr Surg* 114(5):1137–1146
- Le Viet D, Van Der Linden DM, Faivre S (2004) Syndromes canalaire rares du membre supérieur. *Chir Main* 23:S210–S215
- Weber RA, Boyer KM (2005) Consecutive versus simultaneous bilateral carpal tunnel release. *Ann Plast Surg* 54(1):15–19

Part III

NERVES OF THE LOWER LIMB

THE LUMBOSACRAL PLEXUS



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

The Lumbosacral Plexus

Morphological Data

The innervation of lower limbs is controlled by the lumbosacral plexus.

The Lumbar Plexus

The lumbar plexus is made up of the union of the anterior branches of the four first lumbar spinal nerves. This connection occurs between the corporeal insertion (in front) and the costotransverse head of the psoas muscle (behind), at the level of the transverse apophyses of the lumbar vertebrae. In more than half of the cases, a ramification from T12 also participates to the constitution of the lumbar plexus. At its origin, the lumbar plexus is a triangle shape that widens laterally as one looks further away from its origin. It goes through the iliopsoas muscle and then faces the kidney in front and the quadratus lumborum muscle behind.

The ventral ramus of L1 splits into three branches: an upper branch, making the iliohypogastric nerve; an intermediate branch, making the ilioinguinal nerve; and a lower branch, merging with the ventral ramus of L2 to constitute the genitofemoral nerve.

The ventral ramus of L2 divides into four branches participating in the formation of the genitofemoral nerve (having an anastomosis with a branch of the ventral ramus of L1), lateral femoral cutaneous nerve (having an anastomosis with a ramus from L3), obturator nerve and femoral nerve.

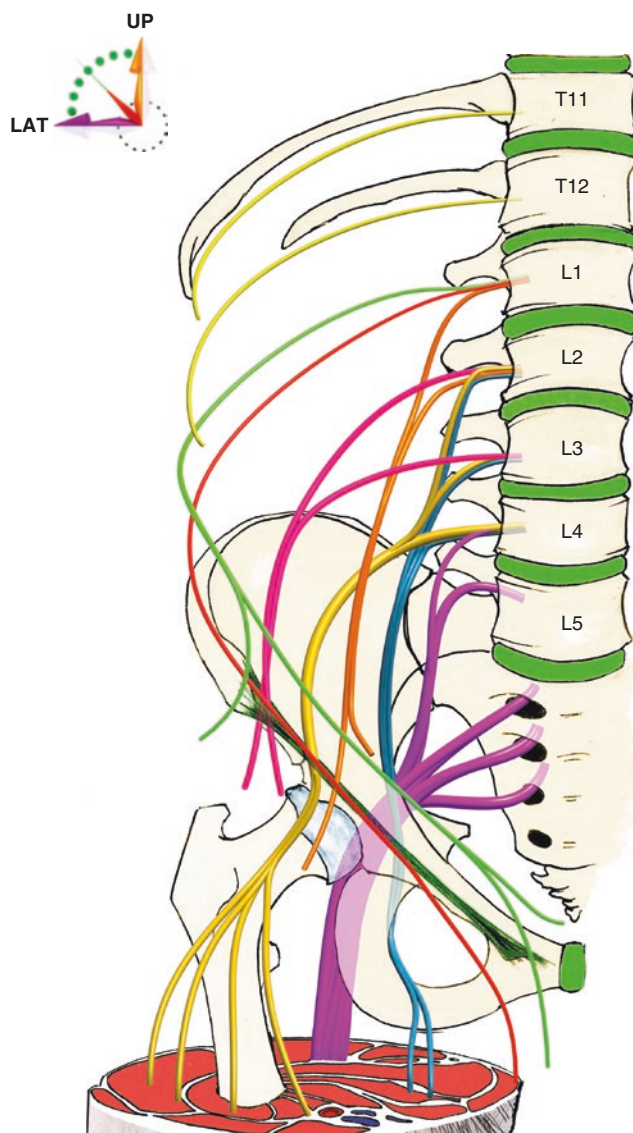
The ventral ramus of L3 divides into three branches: the ramus anastomotic with L2 that forms the lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, a branch that innervates the femoral nerve and another for the obturator nerve.

The ventral ramus of L4 divides into three branches: a branch that makes up the femoral nerve, a branch that constitutes the obturator nerve and a branch that makes an anastomosis with the ventral ramus of L5 and forms the lumbosacral trunk, which is the terminal branch of the lumbar plexus (Figure LP1).

Along its short path, the lumbar plexus gives off some ramifications headed towards the adjacent muscles, in particular the quadratus lumborum and iliopsoas muscles in behind and psoas minor in front.

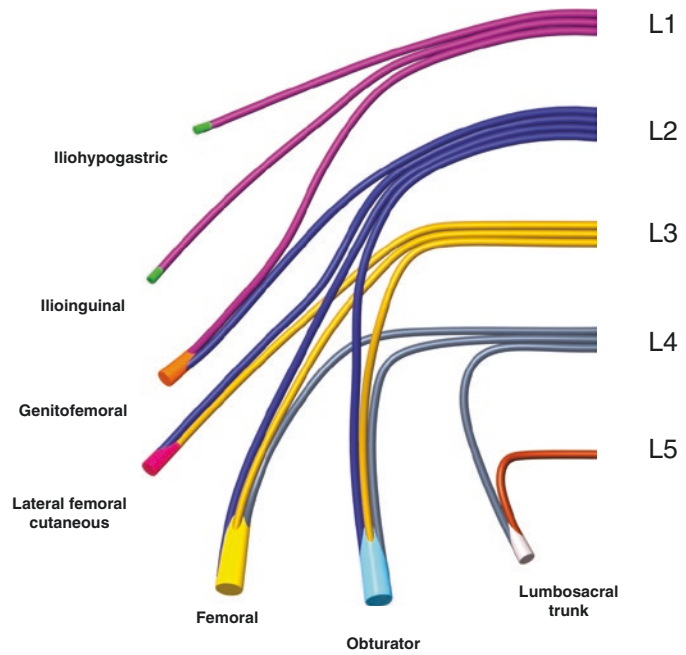
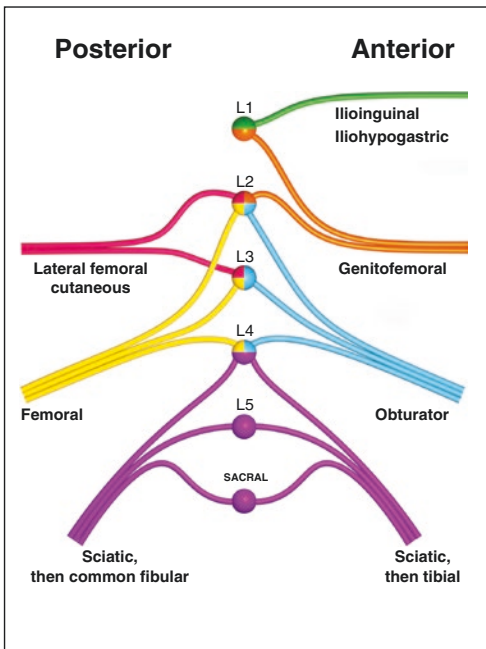
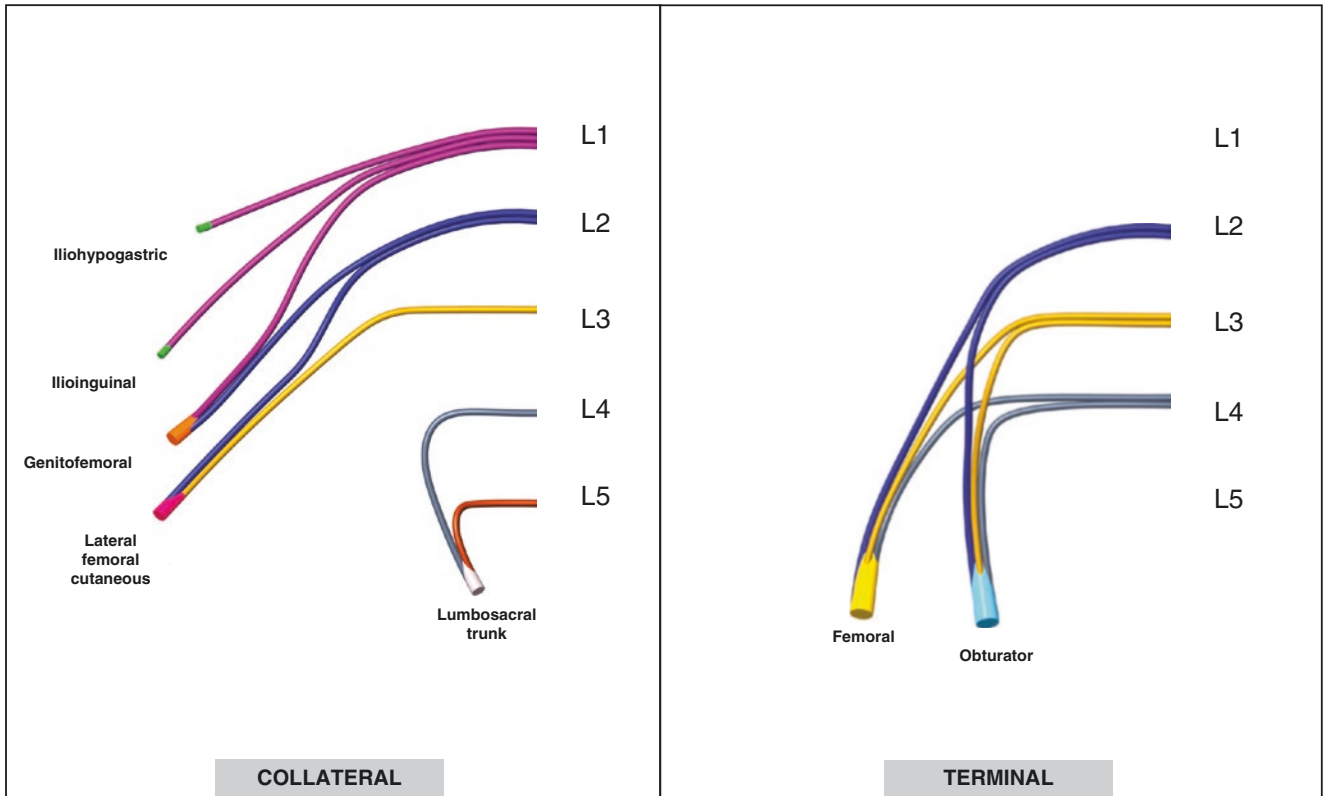
In total, the lumbar plexus gives off three important branches for the innervation of the lower limbs (Figure LP2):

- The obturator nerve (union of the most anterior ventral branches of L2, L3 and L4)
- The femoral nerve (union of the most posterior ventral branches of L2, L3 and L4 and whose bulkiest divisions undergo an anastomosis in order to constitute this nerve)
- The lateral femoral cutaneous nerve (made up of the thinnest branches of the previously mentioned divisions)



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure LP1. Global view of the lumbosacral plexus



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure LP2. Origin of the branches of the lumbar plexus

The Lumbosacral Plexus

Morphological Data

The Sacral Plexus

The fibres from the ventral ramus of L4 merge with L5 to create the lumbosacral trunk. The latter emerges from the medial face of the psoas, goes in front of the sacroiliac joint and then penetrates the pelvis and participates in the constitution of the sacral plexus. It is situated in front of the piriformis muscle, at the level of the posterior wall of the pelvis. It comes from the union of the lumbosacral trunk with the anterior rami of the sacral nerves that come out of the sacral foramina which go down and merge into a main trunk.

The sacral plexus is made up of the union of the first three sacral roots of the lumbosacral trunk.

It then divides into:

- The actual sacral plexus (L4–S3), responsible for the innervation of the lower limbs and of the pelvic girdle
- The pudendal plexus (S2–S4), specifically dedicated to the innervation of the perineum (including external genitalia) and of the pelvic viscera

The greater portion of the ventral rami of S1, S2 and S3 merge with the lumbosacral trunk and form the sciatic nerve (Figure LP4).

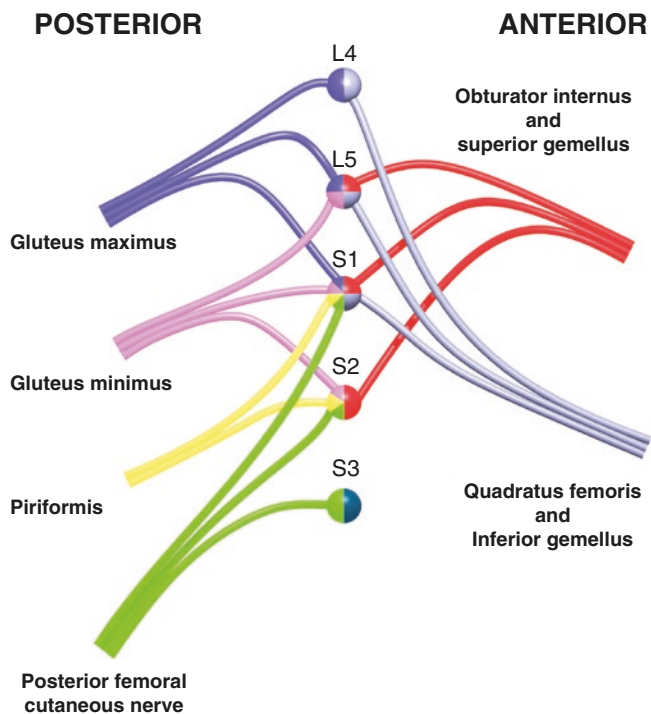
The lumbosacral plexus gives off several collateral branches (Figure LP3):

- At the level of the anterior branches, there are the obturator internus nerve, the nerves that innervate the superior and inferior gemellus muscles and the nerve to the quadratus femoris.
- At the level of the posterior branches, there are the nerve to the piriformis, the superior gluteal nerve (for the gluteus minimus and medius as well as the tensor fasciae latae), the inferior gluteal nerve (for the gluteus maximus) and the posterior cutaneous femoral nerve. This sensitive nerve made up of nerve fibres coming from S1, S2 and S3 (Figure PL4). It comes out of the pelvis through the infra-piriform foramen and gives off a gluteal branch, the inferior cluneal nerves, a perineal branch and cutaneous ramifications for the posterior face of the thigh, the popliteal fossa and the posterior fossa of the leg in relation to the inter-gastrocnemius compartment.

The lumbosacral plexus makes anastomoses with the pudendal plexus and the pelvic sympathetic ganglia.

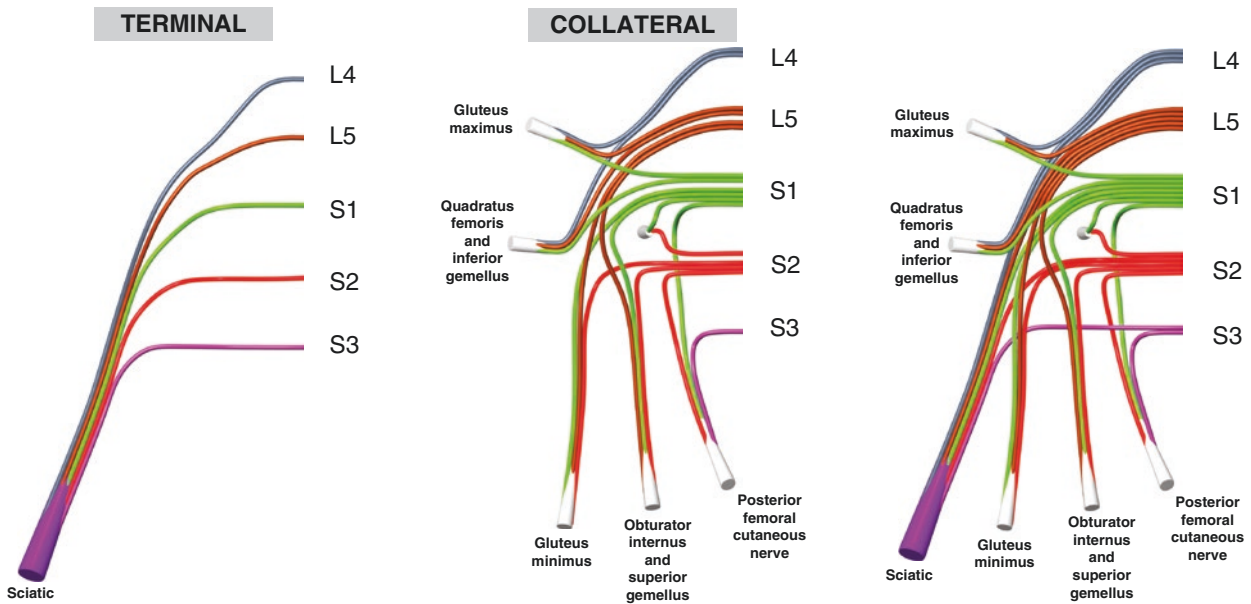
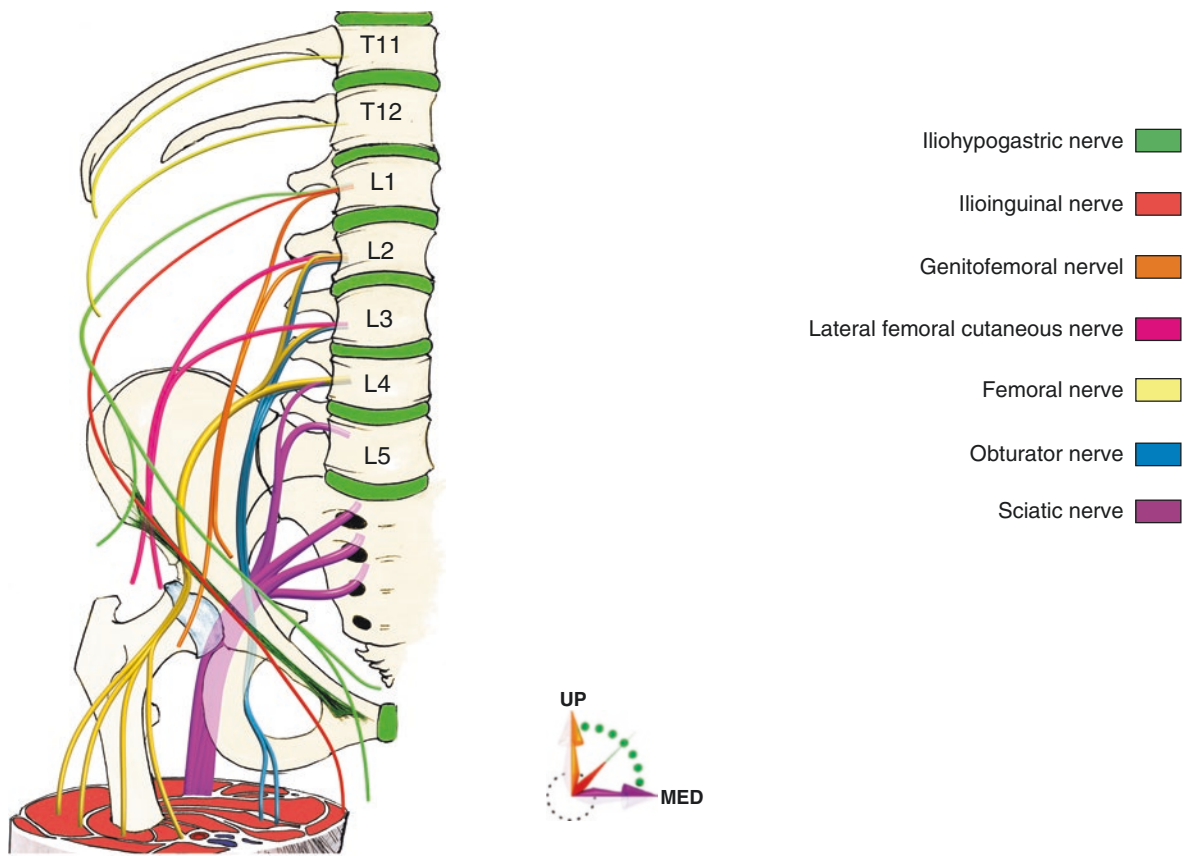
As an insight on history, the most detailed inventory of the variations of the constitution of the lumbar plexus has been written by Bonniot in 1922; it describes most of the classical variations. Statistical data that is this old are difficult to handle and to extrapolate, although it is observable that about a third of the dissected lumbar plexuses in this book showed a cranial or a caudal extension in their constitution.

This first description of the variations of the constitution of the lumbar plexus has been used as a base in the global apprehension of the subsequent descriptions. Sherrington described the pre-fixed and post-fixed plexuses, Langley mentioned and classified the anterior and posterior plexuses, and Bardeen and Etling made a semantic difference by mentioning the proximal, median and distal plexuses.



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure LP3. Origin of the collateral branches of the sacral plexus



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

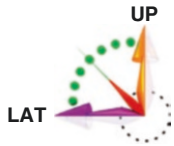
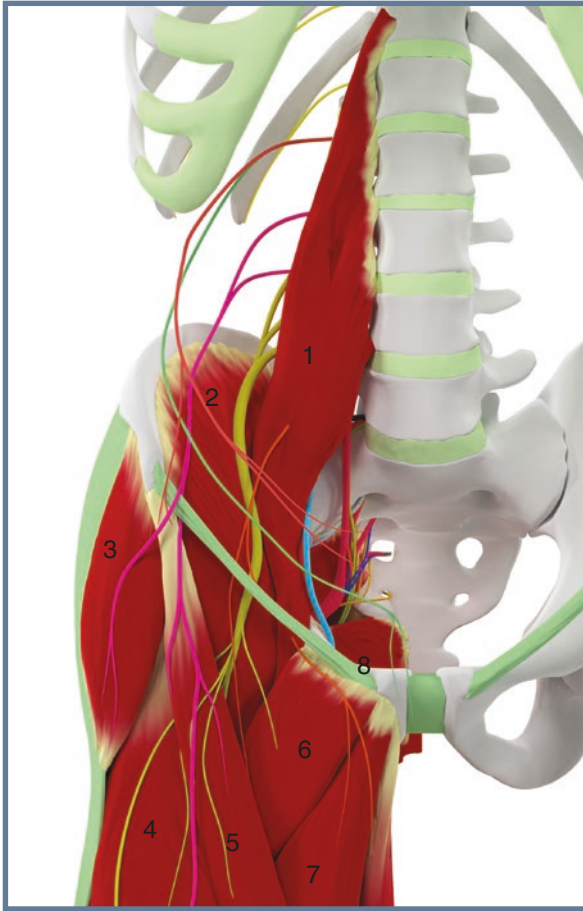
Figure LP4. The sacral plexus

Relationships Between the Lumbar and Sacral Plexuses

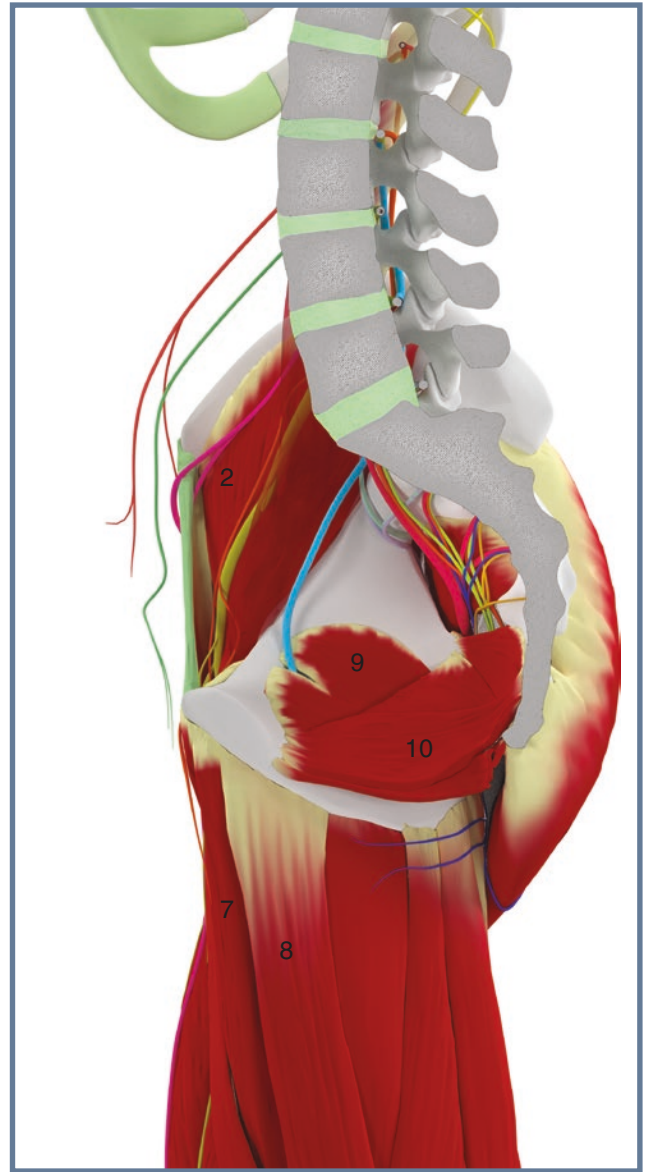
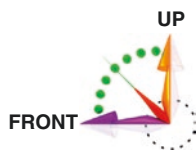
After the emergence of the roots from the intervertebral foramina and the formation of the trunks of the plexus, these trunks go in front of the transverse apophyses of the second, third and fourth lumbar vertebrae.

For the lumbar part, the branches of the plexus are in a close relationship with the two heads of the psoas major muscle, between which the ascending lumbar vein runs. This vein goes in front of the L5 and L4 ventral rami, then goes upwards and places itself, in most cases, behind the ventral rami of L2 and then of L1 (Figures [LP5](#), [LP6](#), [LP7](#), [LP8](#) and [LP9](#)).

For the sacral part, the plexus is covered by the parietal pelvic fascia and faces the internal iliac vessels and the ureter in front. The vascular relationships are essentially on the arterial level (the superior gluteal artery for the lumbosacral trunk and S1, the inferior gluteal artery for L2 and S3 and the lateral sacral artery in front of S1 for the internal pudendal artery below the plexus). The ilio-lumbar vein goes between the two roots of the lumbosacral trunk and then heads behind the lumbar plexus to get around it.



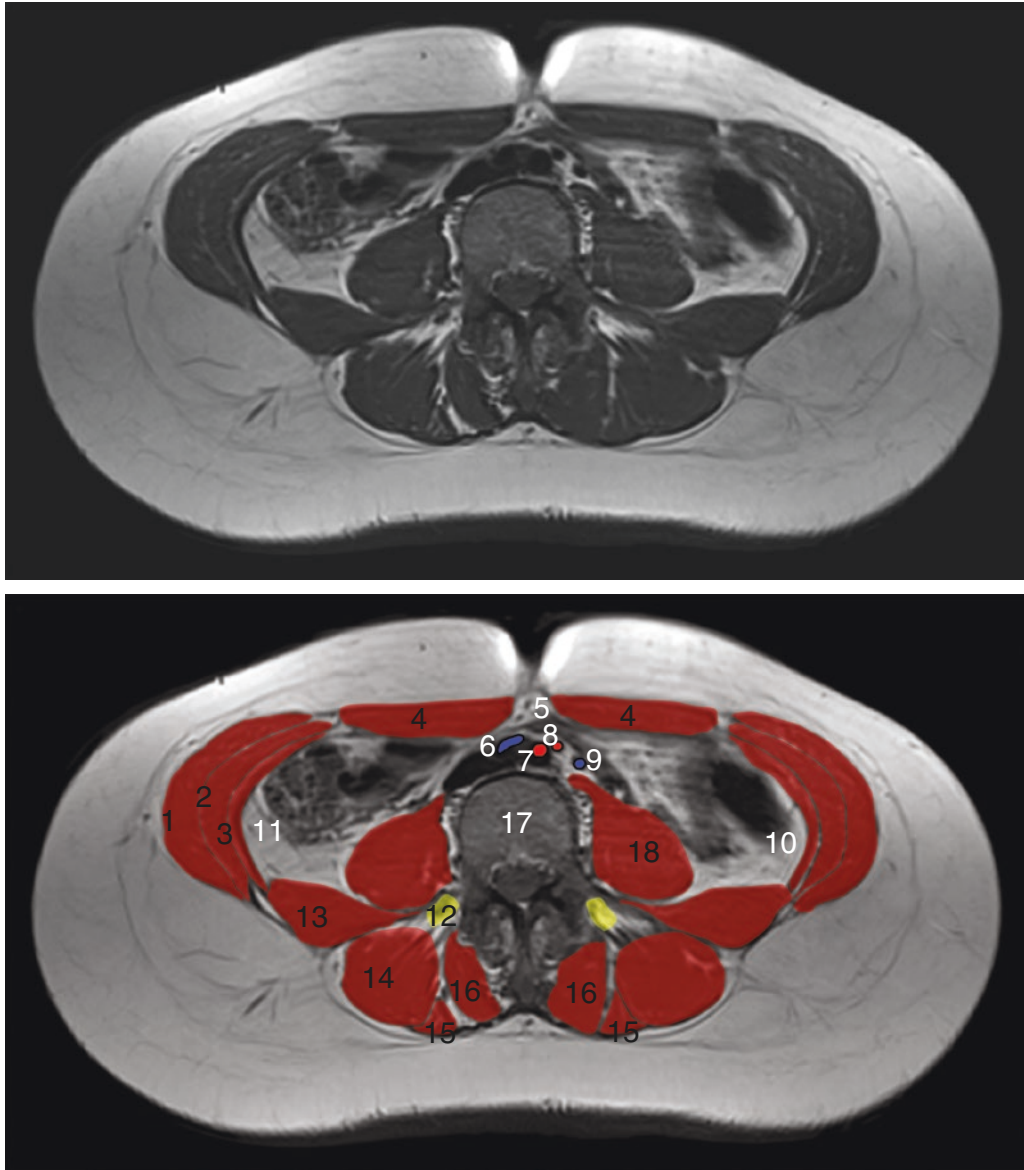
- 1- Psoas major muscle
- 2- Iliopsoas muscle
- 3- Tensor fasciae latae muscle
- 4- Rectus femoris muscle
- 5- Sartorius muscle
- 6- Pectineus muscle
- 7- Adductor longus muscle
- 8- Gracilis muscle
- 9- Obturator internus muscle
- 10- Levator ani muscle



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure LP5. Main muscular relations of the lumbar and sacral plexus

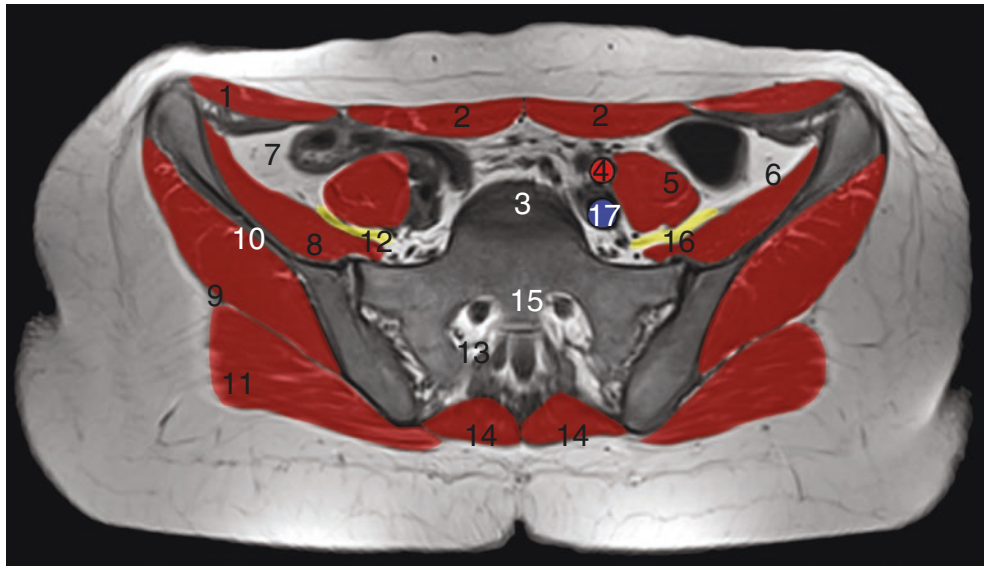
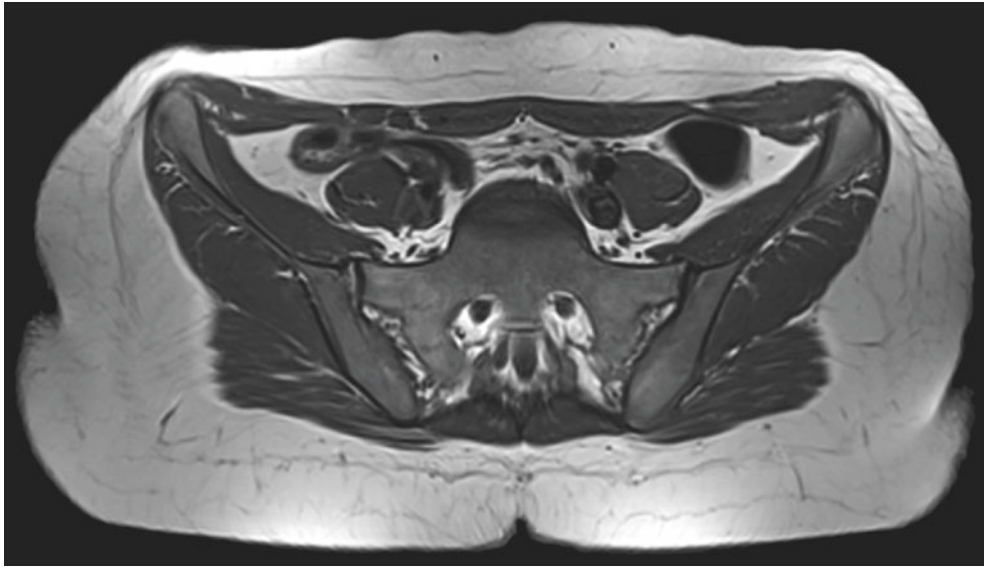
The Lumbosacral Plexus



- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1- Right external oblique muscle | 10- Left colon |
| 2- Right transverse abdominis muscle | 11- Right colic flexure |
| 3- Right internal oblique muscle | 12- Right lumbar plexus |
| 4- Rectus abdominis muscles | 13- Right quadratus lumborum muscle |
| 5- Linea alba | 14- Right iliocostalis muscle |
| 6- Right common iliac vein | 15- Longissimus muscles |
| 7- Right common iliac artery | 16- Erector spinae muscles |
| 8- Left common iliac artery | 17- 5 th lumbar vertebra (L5) |
| 9- Left common iliac vein | 18- Left psoas major muscle |

© 2016 Riguard. All rights reserved

Figure LP6. MRI scans through the lumbar plexus

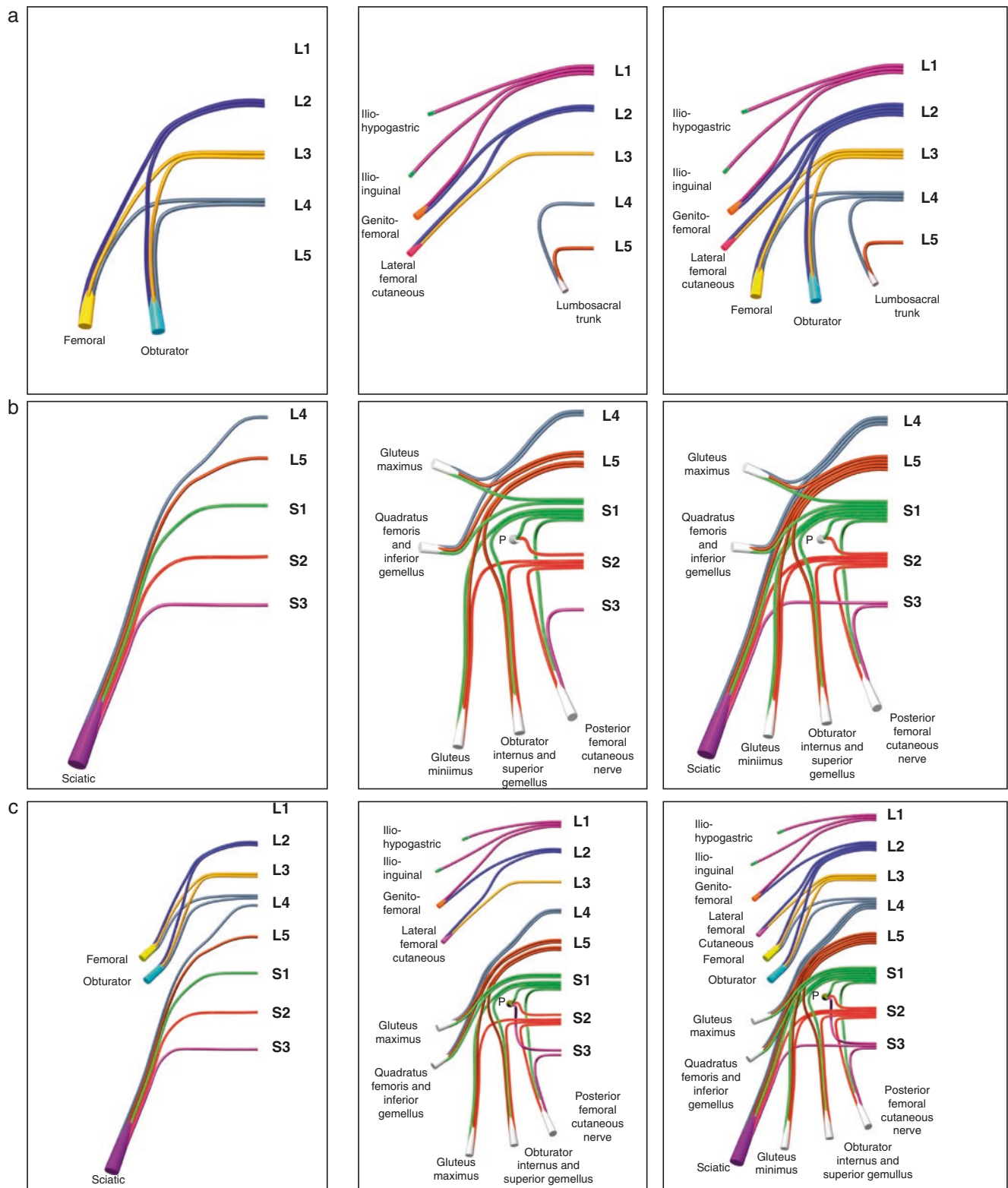


- | | |
|--|---|
| 1- Right external oblique and transverse muscles | 10- Wing of ilium |
| 2- Rectus abdominis muscles | 11- Right gluteus maximus muscle |
| 3- Sacral promontory | 12- Right 5 th lumbar nerve and branches of the plexus |
| 4- Left common iliac artery | 13- Right 1 st sacral nerve |
| 5- Left psoas major muscle | 14- Erector spinae muscles |
| 6- Left colon | 15- Sacrum |
| 7- Caecum | 16- Left lumbar plexus |
| 8- Right iliacus muscle | 17- Left common iliac vein |
| 9- Right gluteus medius muscle | |

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

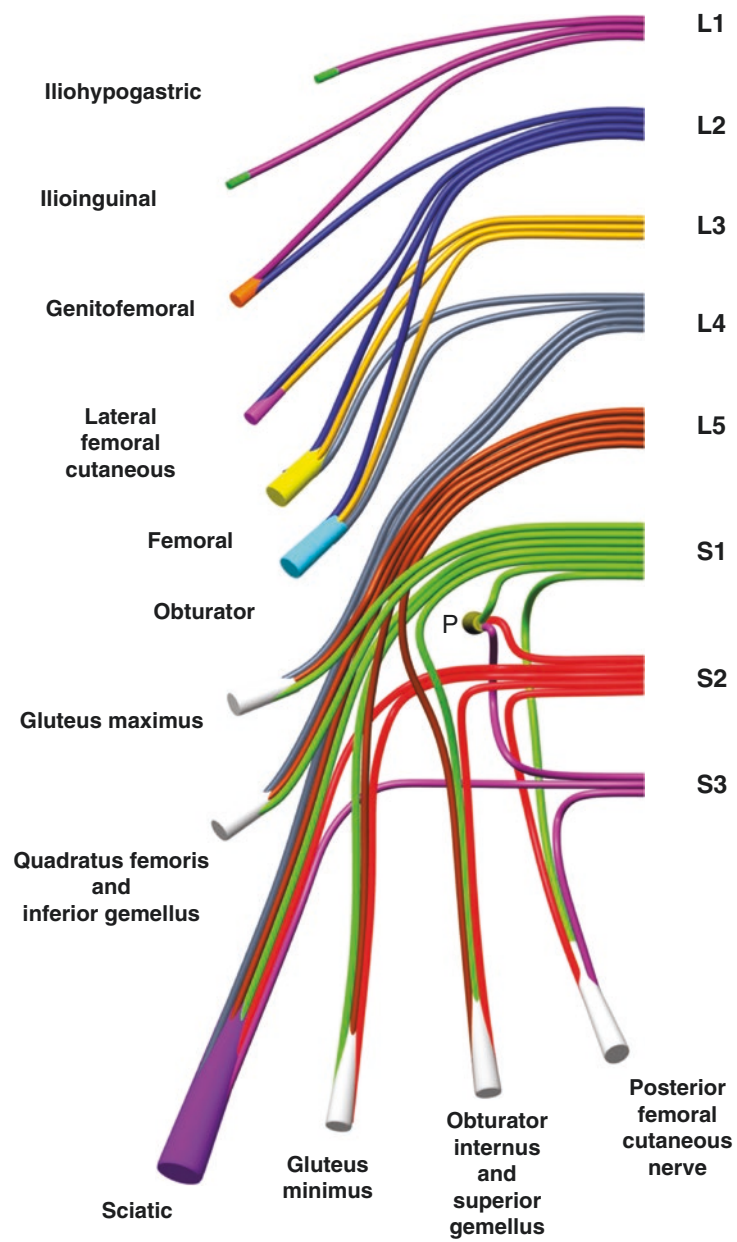
Figure LP7. MRI scans through the lumbosacral plexus

The Lumbosacral Plexus



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

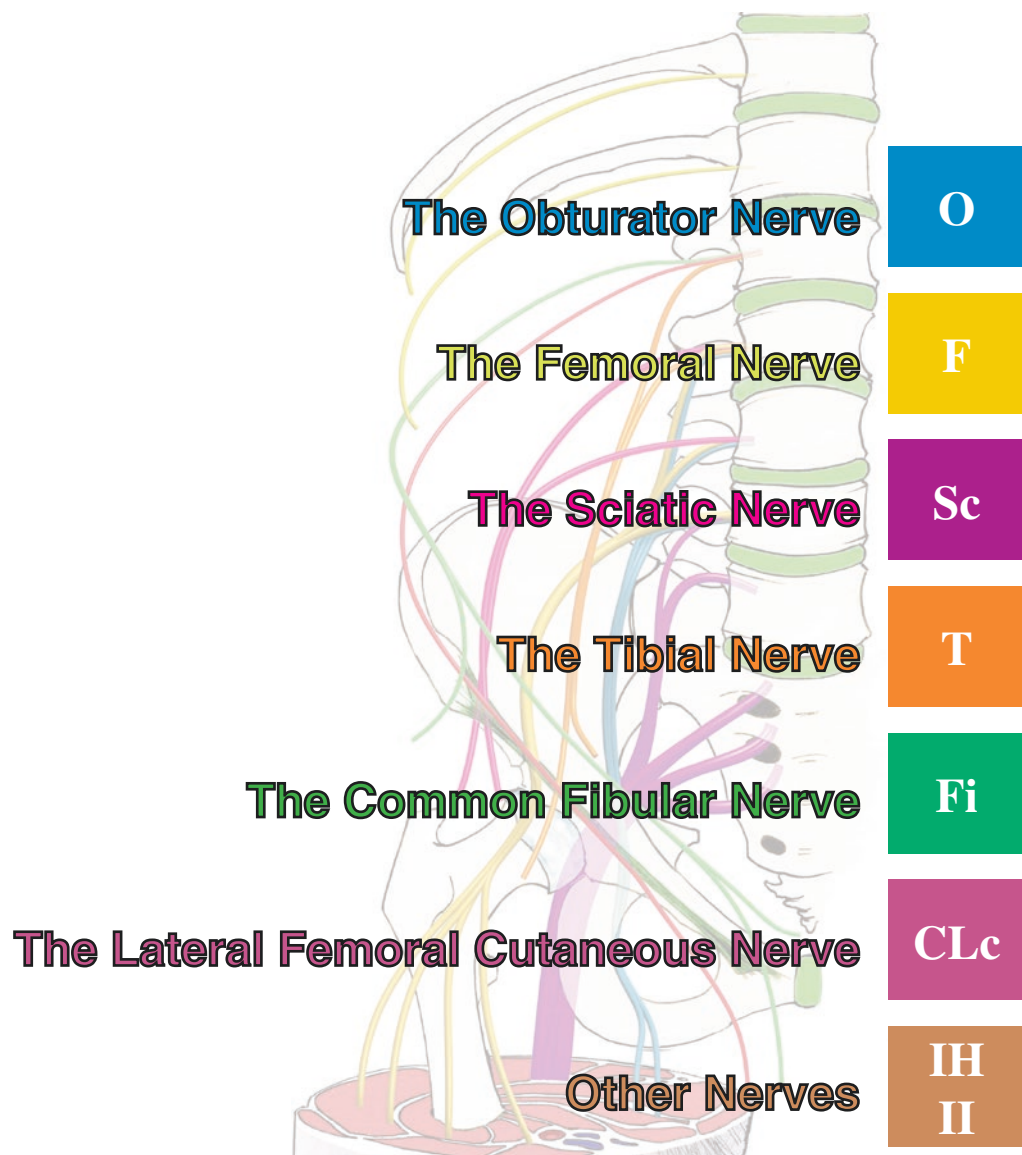
Figure LP8. (a) Lumbar plexus, (b) sacral plexus, (c) lumbosacral plexus

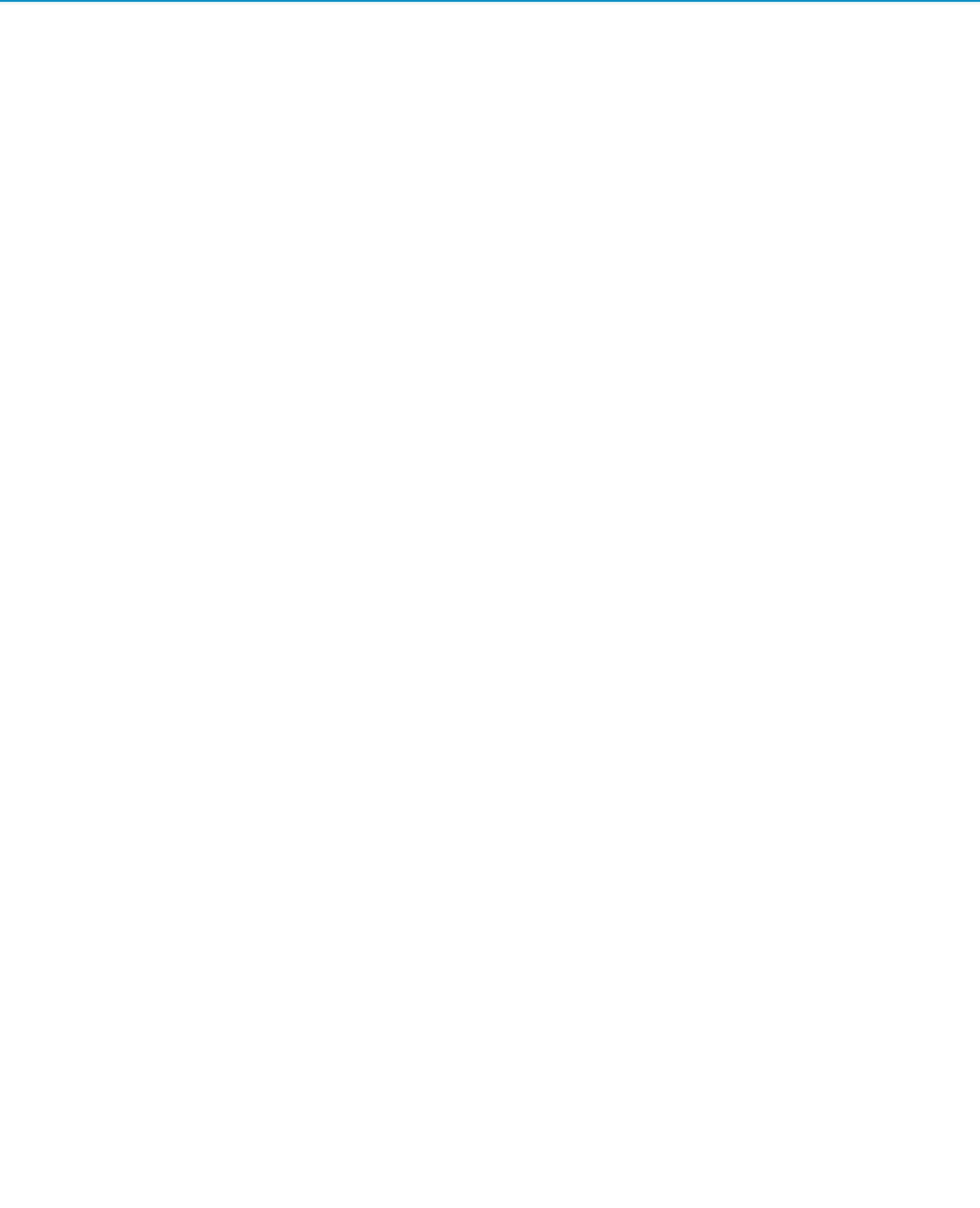


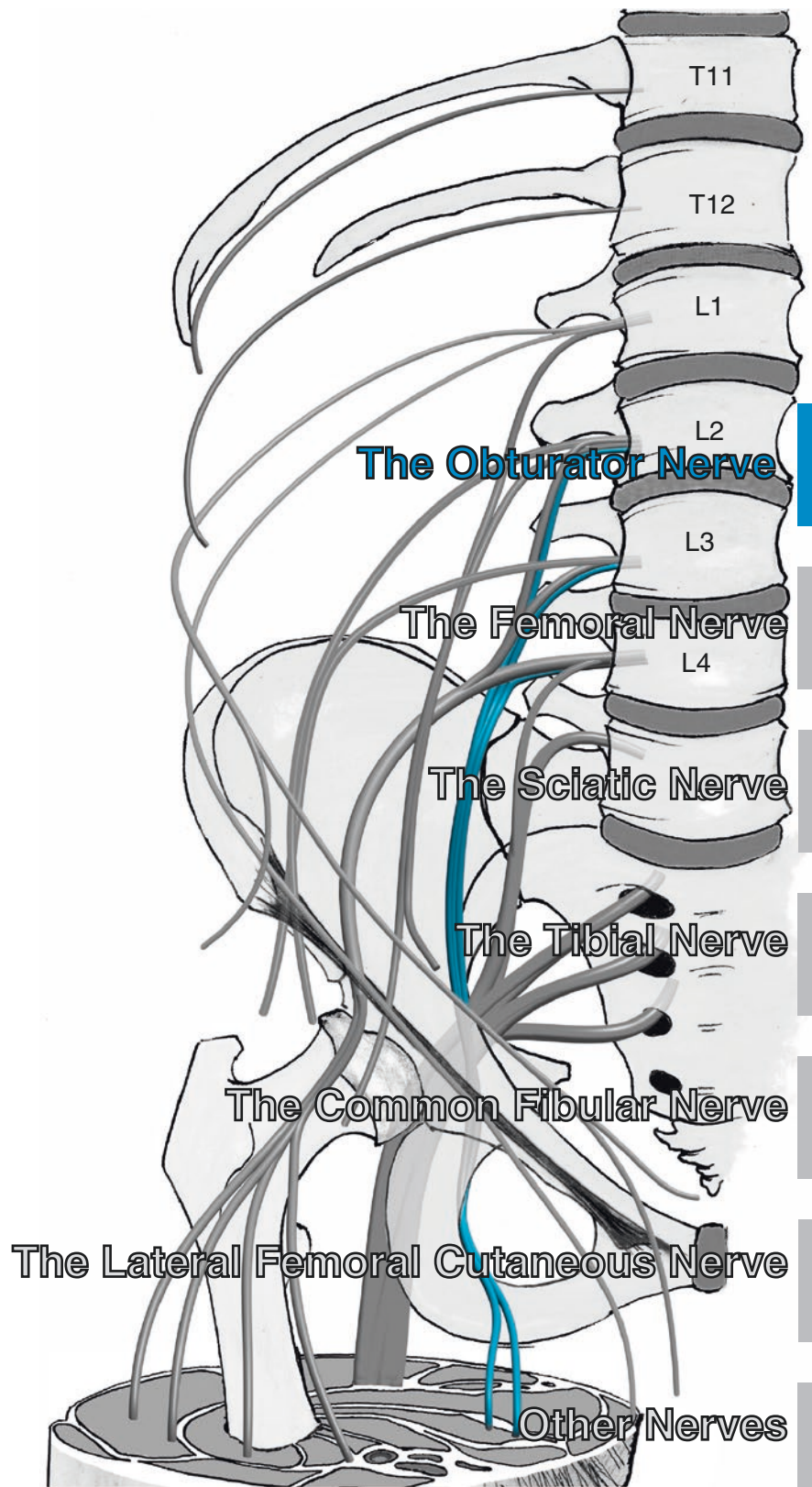
© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure LP9. Overview diagram of the lower limb plexus branches

PERIPHERAL BRANCHES







© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Morphological Data

The obturator nerve is a mixed nerve and the terminal branch of the lumbar plexus (Figures O1 and O2). Its function relates to the motor and sensitive innervation of the medial compartment of the thigh.

Origin

The obturator nerve comes from the L2, L3 and L4 roots of the lumbar plexus. It originates in the anterior branches of its constituting ventral lumbar roots. The posterior branches of these roots give off the femoral nerve.

The obturator nerve enters the lesser pelvis area from the medial face of the iliopsoas muscle whilst going outwards of and along the internal iliac vessels (Figures O3 and O4). It appears at the level of the L5 vertebra (Figure O3). It then faces the femoral nerve that goes laterally and alongside the iliopsoas muscle.

An inconstant extra branch can start in the L3 and L4 lumbar roots, after the origin of the obturator nerve: the accessory obturator nerve. It is situated laterally related to the obturator but also emerges from the medial face of the iliopsoas muscle. It then goes down vertically and can end in several ways:

- Either with a terminal anastomosis with the femoral nerve or the obturator nerve
- Or with a terminal fan-shaped ramification that includes cutaneous branches for the upper part of the femoral triangle, muscular branches for the pectineus and adductor brevis muscle and a vascular branch and joint fibres for the hip joint capsule

Path

After passing through the medial face of the iliopsoas muscle, the obturator nerve goes down in front of the sacroiliac joint (Figure O3). At this level, it faces the vas deferens or ovarian fossa medially (Figure O4).

It then goes further, in contact with the internal obturator muscle, and penetrates the thigh through a foramen at the level of the obturator membrane (Figure O3). This membrane separates the obturator internus muscle behind (situated in the pelvis minor) and the obturator externus muscle in front (situated at the top of the thigh).

The obturator nerve then divides into anterior and posterior branches (Figure O2). The muscle bundles of the adductor

brevis, innervated by this nerve, are often found in between these branches.

Neurovascular Relations

In front of the sacroiliac joint, the obturator nerve faces (Figure O4):

- The ascending lumbar artery medially
- The common iliac artery's termination and the origin of the external iliac artery, when the vascular fork is high, in front

It is situated in the upper thigh (Figures O5, O6, O7, O8, O10, O11, O12, O13 and O14):

- Behind the pectineus muscle
- Below the inguinal ligament
- In front of the obturator externus muscle

The terminal branches of the obturator muscles face the medial circumflex femoral artery medially. This artery makes a loop with a medial convexity, close to the nerve.

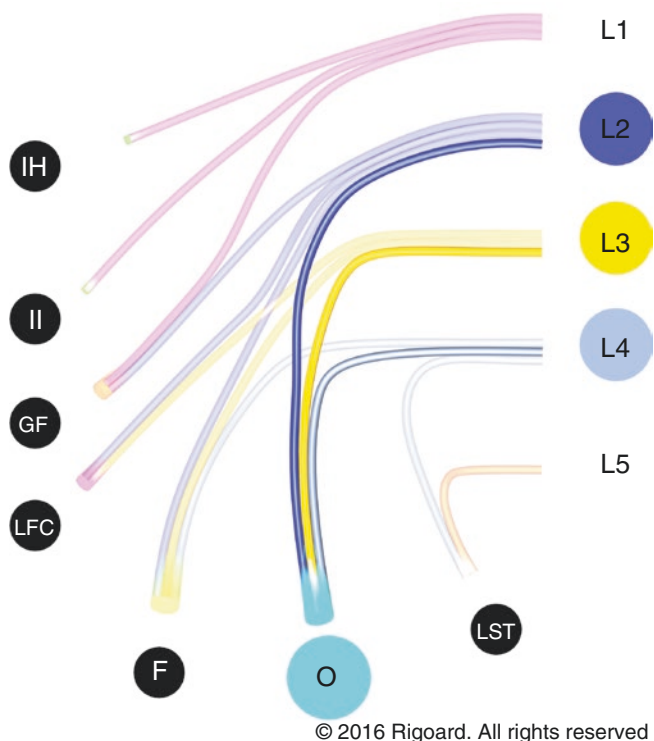
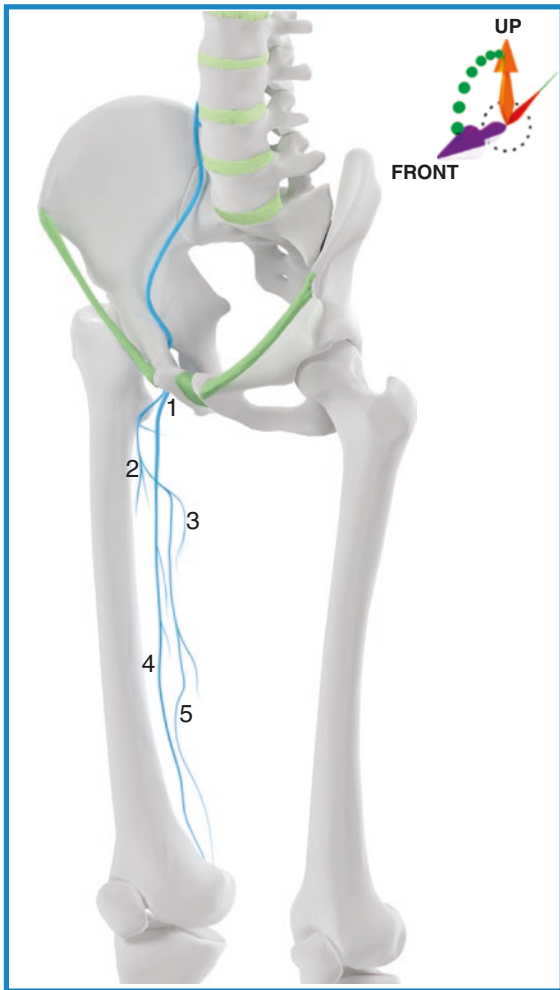
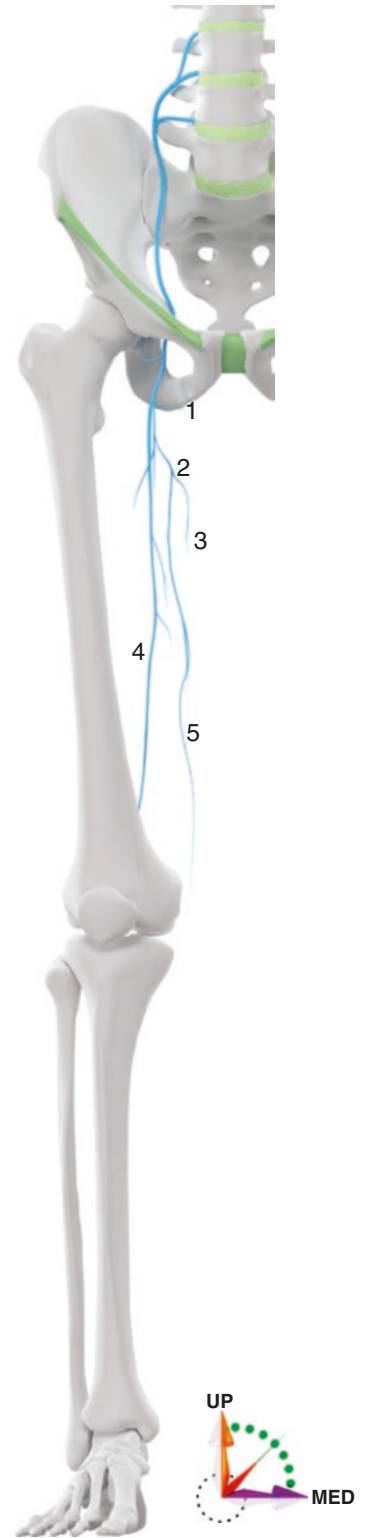
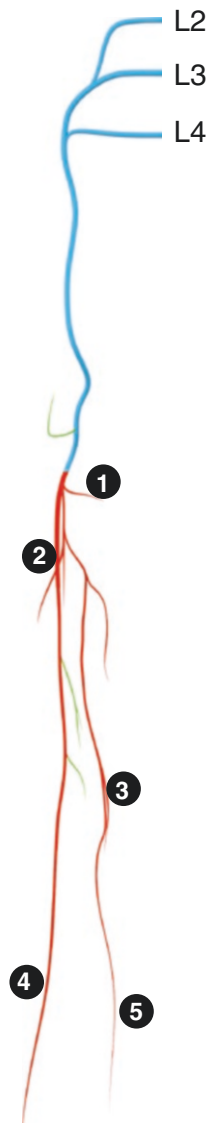


Figure O1. Origin of the obturator nerve



■ Motor branches
■ Sensitive branches

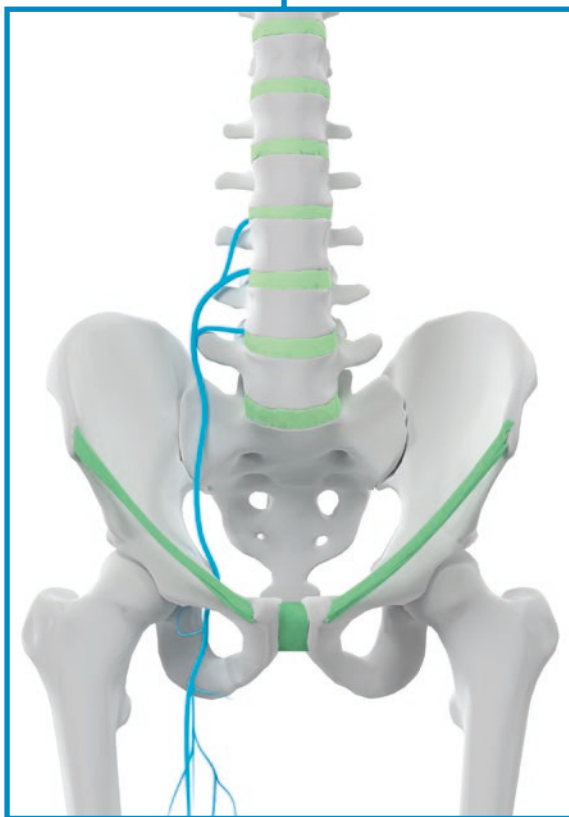
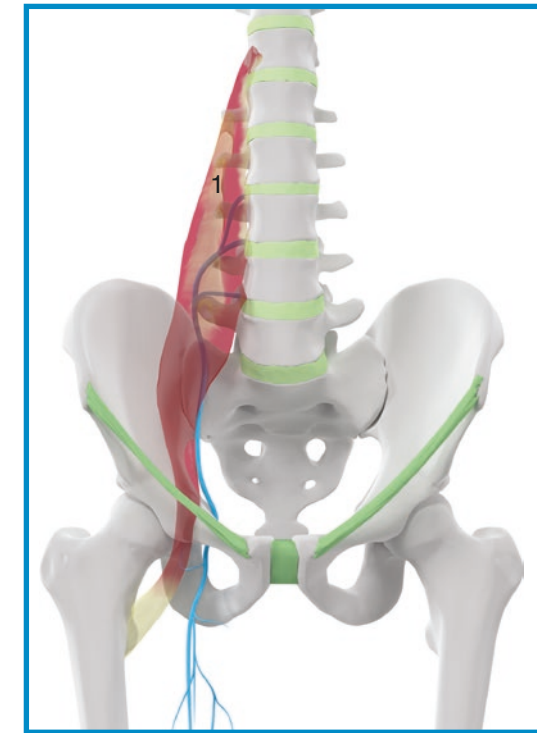


- 1 Branch for the pectineus muscle
- 2 Branch for the adductor longus muscle
- 3 Branch for the gracilis muscle
- 4 Posterior branch terminal
- 5 Anterior branch terminal

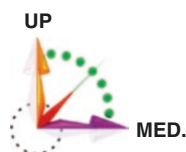
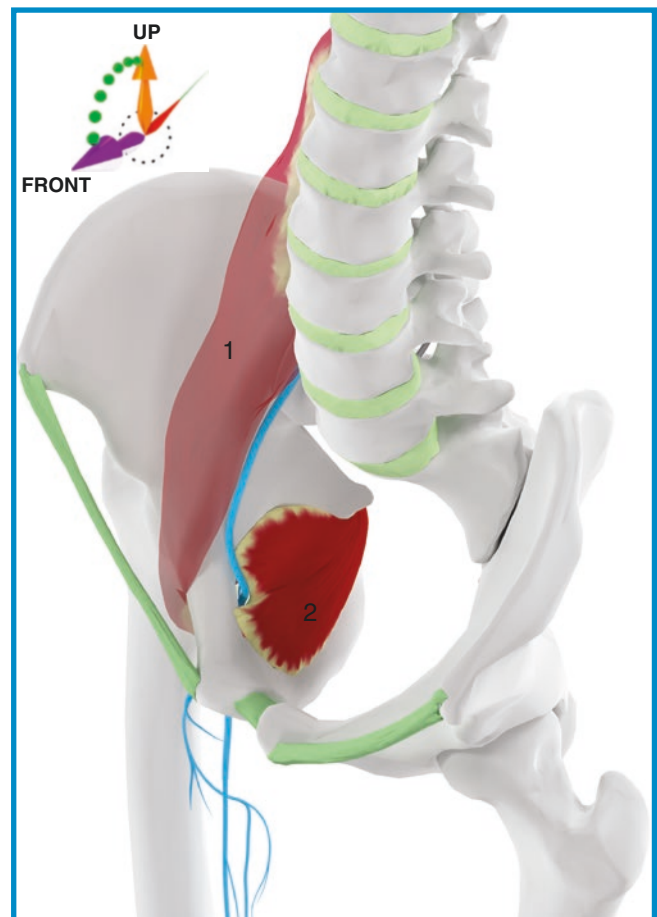
© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure O2. Topographical distribution of the obturator nerve and its relations with bones

The Obturator Nerve

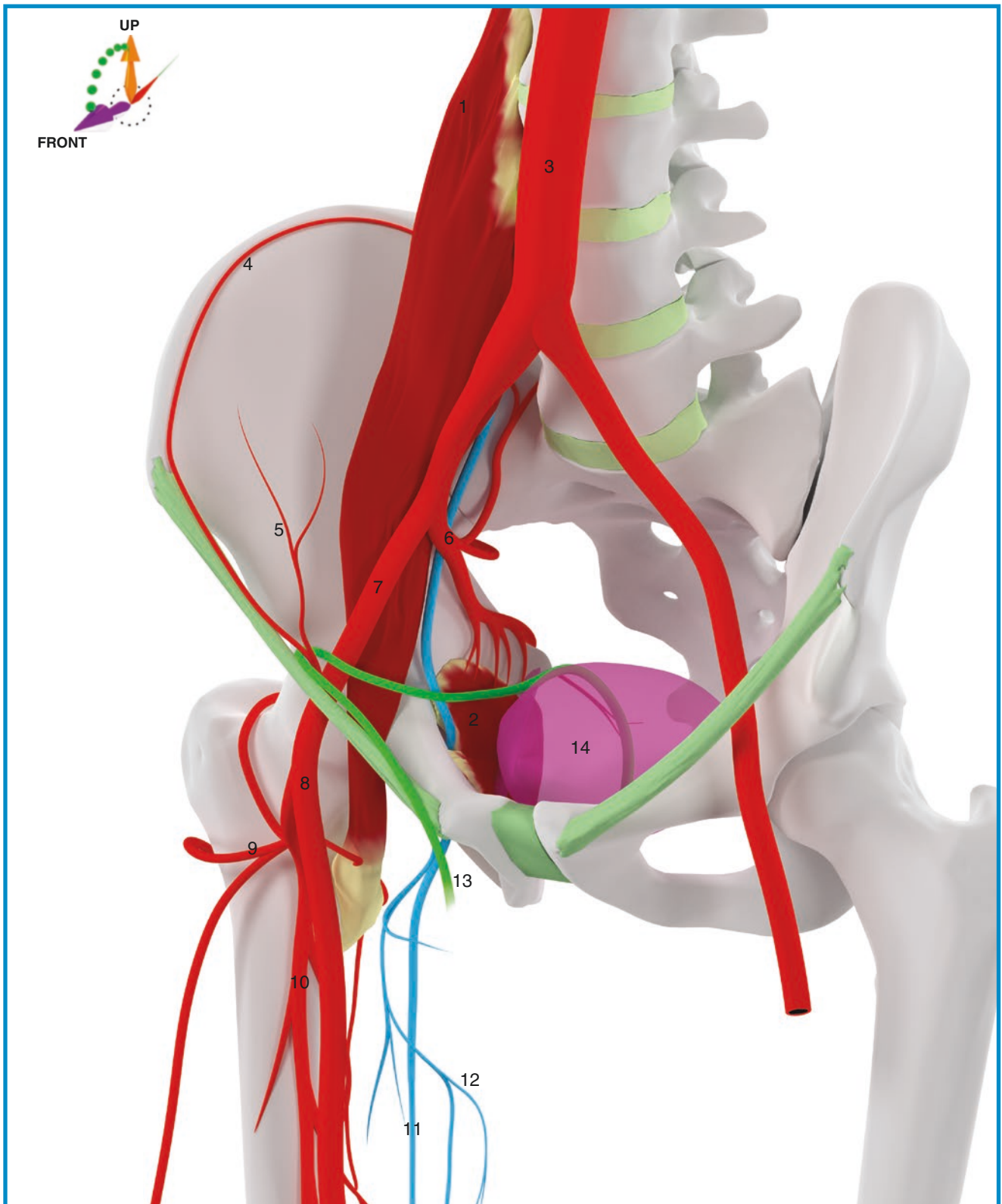


- | | |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 1- Psoas major muscle | 8- Femoral artery |
| 2- Obturator internus muscle | 9- Lateral circumflex femoral artery |
| 3- Abdominal aorta | 10- Deep femoral artery |
| 4- Deep circumflex iliac artery | 11- Obturator nerve (posterior branch) |
| 5- Inferior epigastric artery | 12- Obturator nerve (anterior branch) |
| 6- Internal iliac artery | 13- Vas deferens |
| 7- External iliac artery | 14- Bladder |



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

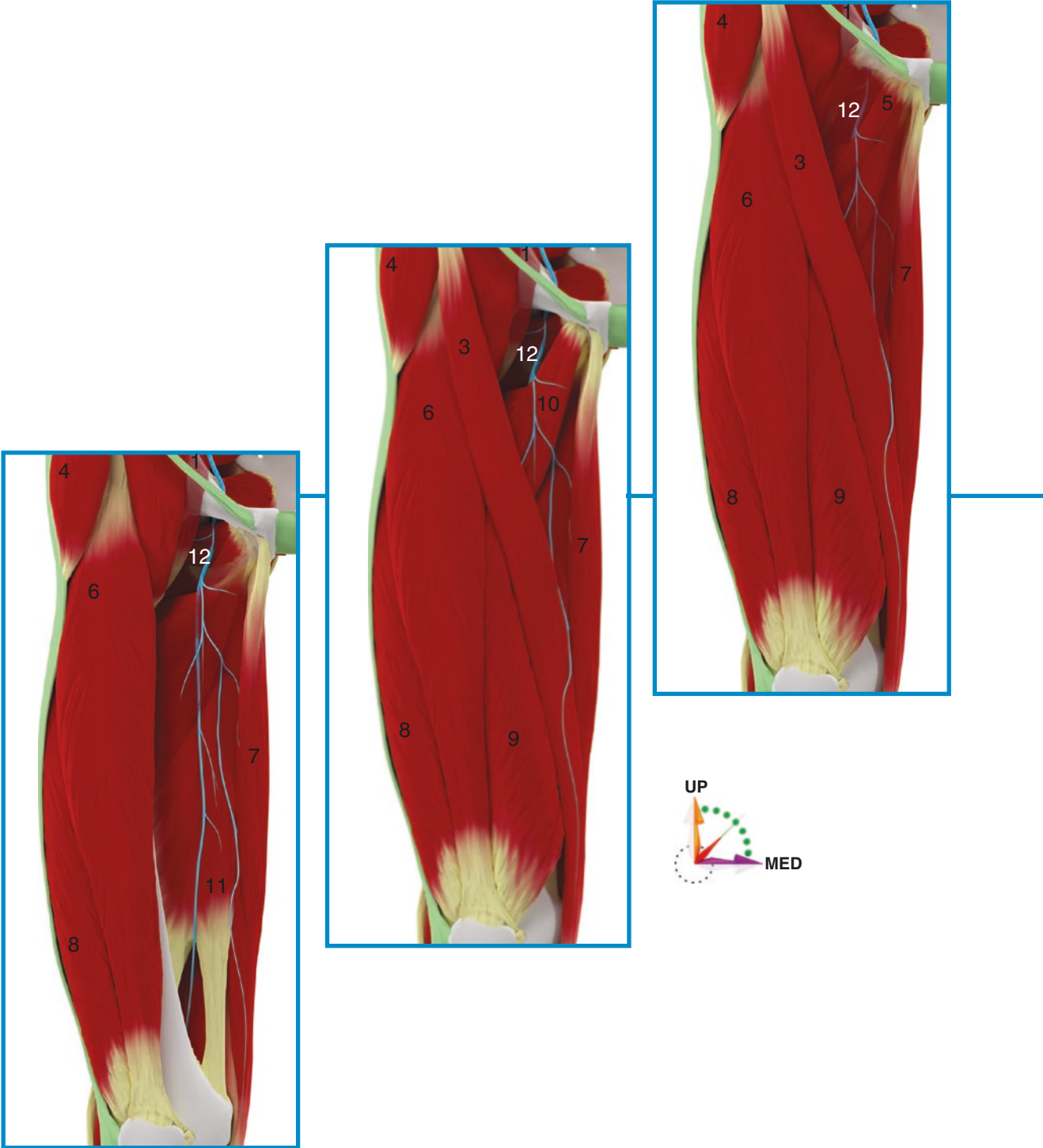
Figure O3. Origin of the obturator nerve and its relations with muscles during its path in the pelvis



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

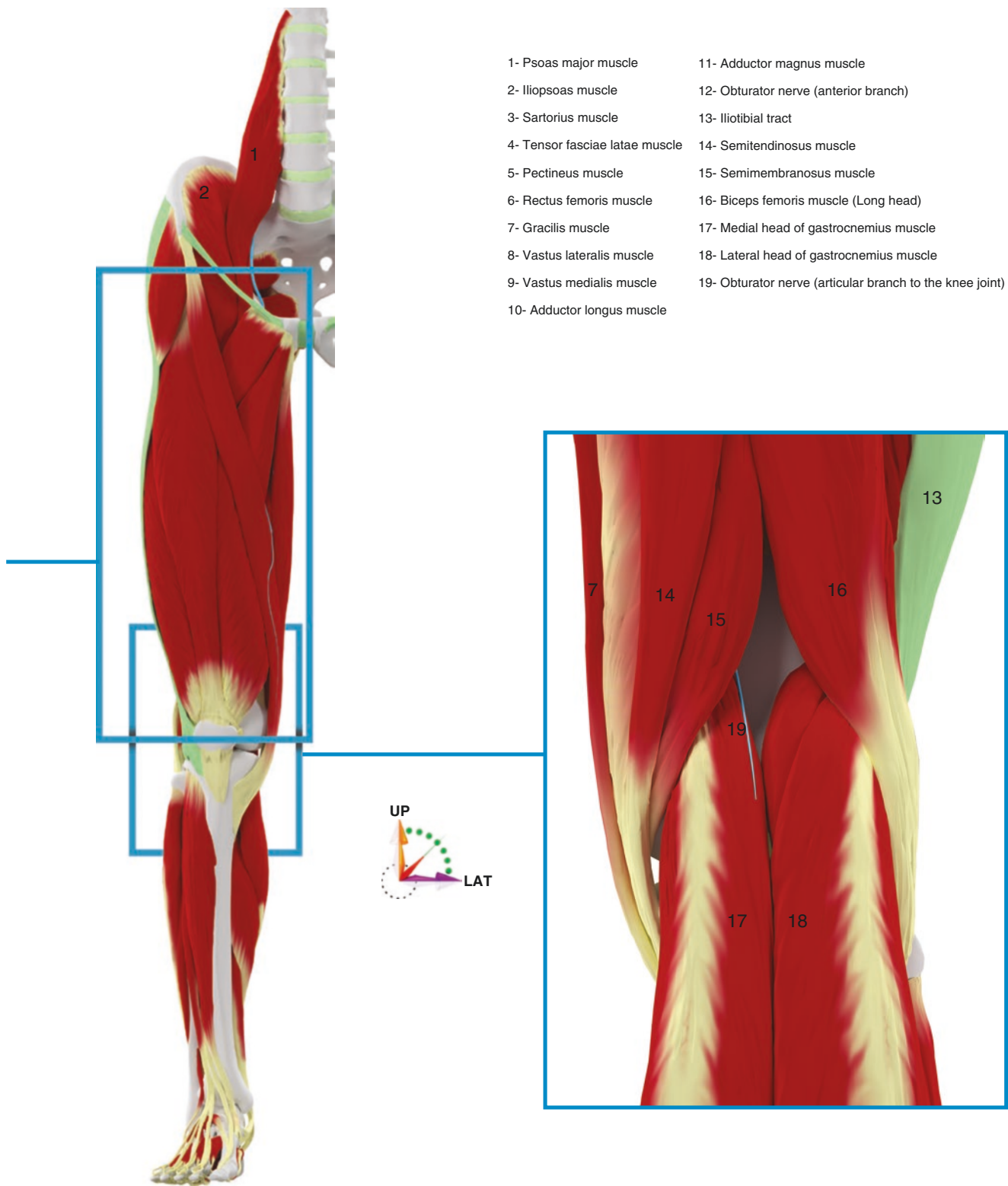
Figure O4. Vascular relations of the obturator nerve in the pelvis

The Obturator Nerve



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

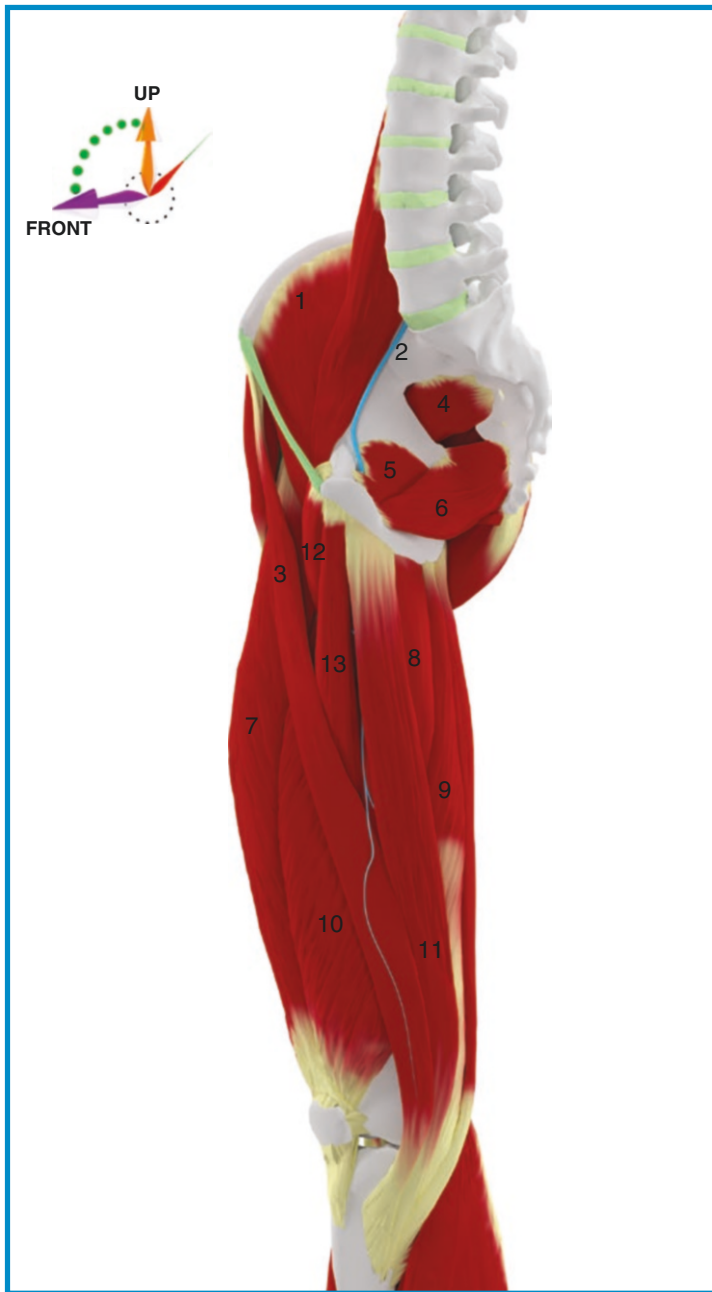
Figure O5. Muscular relations of the obturator nerve in the thigh (anterior view from superficial to deep)



© 2016 Riguard. All rights reserved

Figure O6. Posterior view of the terminal branch of the obturator nerve in the popliteal fossa

The Obturator Nerve

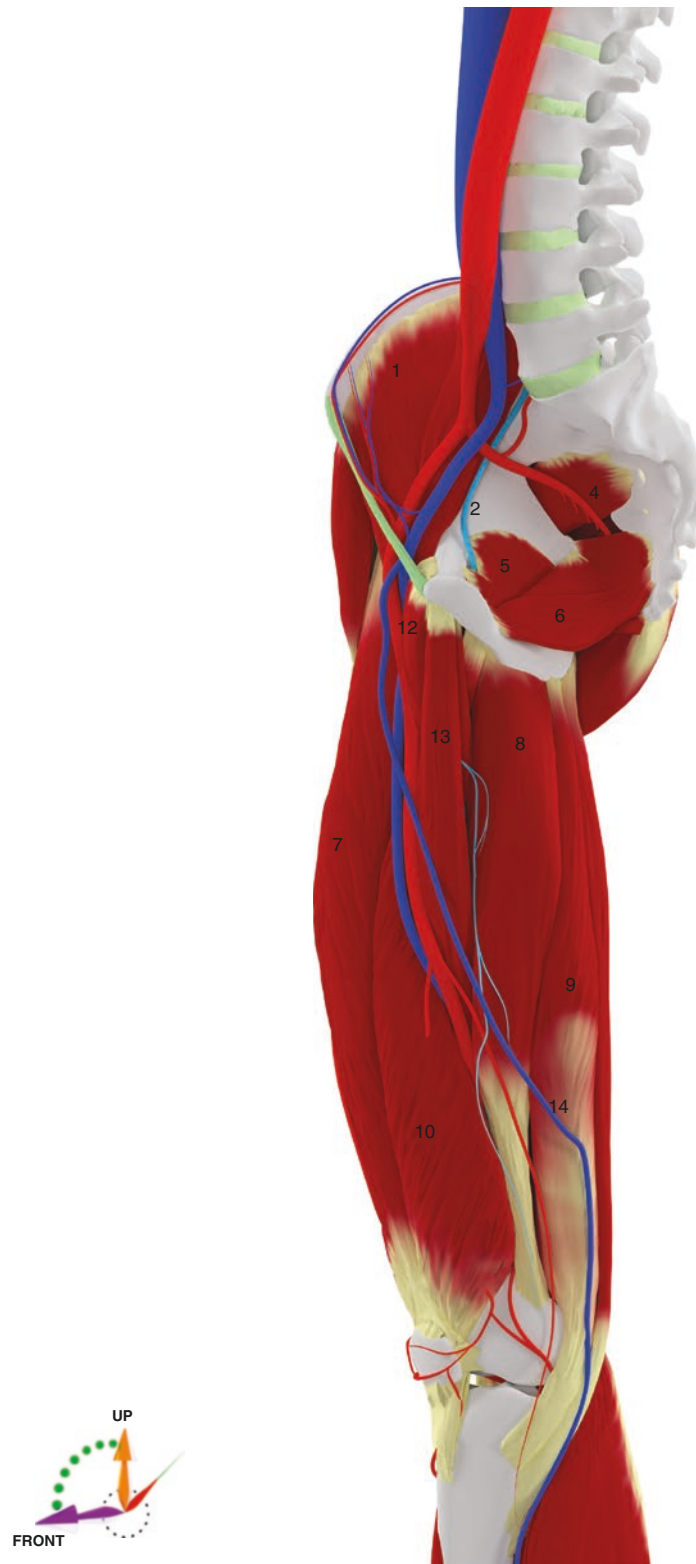


- | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1- Iliopsoas muscle | 8- Semimembranosus muscle |
| 2- Obturator nerve | 9- Semitendinosus muscle |
| 3- Sartorius muscle | 10- Vastus medialis muscle |
| 4- Piriformis muscle | 11- Gracilis muscle |
| 5- Obturator internus muscle | 12- Pectineus muscle |
| 6- Levator ani muscle | 13- Adductor longus muscle |
| 7- Rectus femoris muscle | 14- Great saphenous vein |



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure 07. Medial view of the thigh showing the muscular relations of the obturator nerve's terminal branches



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure 08. Medial view of the thigh showing the vascular relations of the terminal branches of the obturator nerve

The Obturator Nerve

Collateral Branches

The collateral branches arise in the obturator foramen:

- Two articular nerves for the hip joint, in its anterior medial part.
- One to two nerves for the obturator externus muscle. The nerve of the obturator externus muscle generally divides into two branches, for the upper and anterior parts of the muscle (Figures O5 and O7).

Terminal Branches

The anterior branch goes down along the pectineus and adductor longus muscles, lying firstly on the obturator externus muscle, and then the adductor brevis muscle. It ends in ramifications that innervate the skin of the internal face of the thigh and the adductor longus, pectineus and gracilis muscles and sometimes the adductor brevis (Figures O5 and O7).

The posterior branch begins its path between the pectineus muscle in front and the obturator externus muscle behind and then it sinks and goes through the obturator externus – inner-

vated by that same posterior branch – in order to finally rest on the adductor brevis a little deeper. It then goes in front of the adductor magnus, also innervated by the posterior branch.

Motor Function

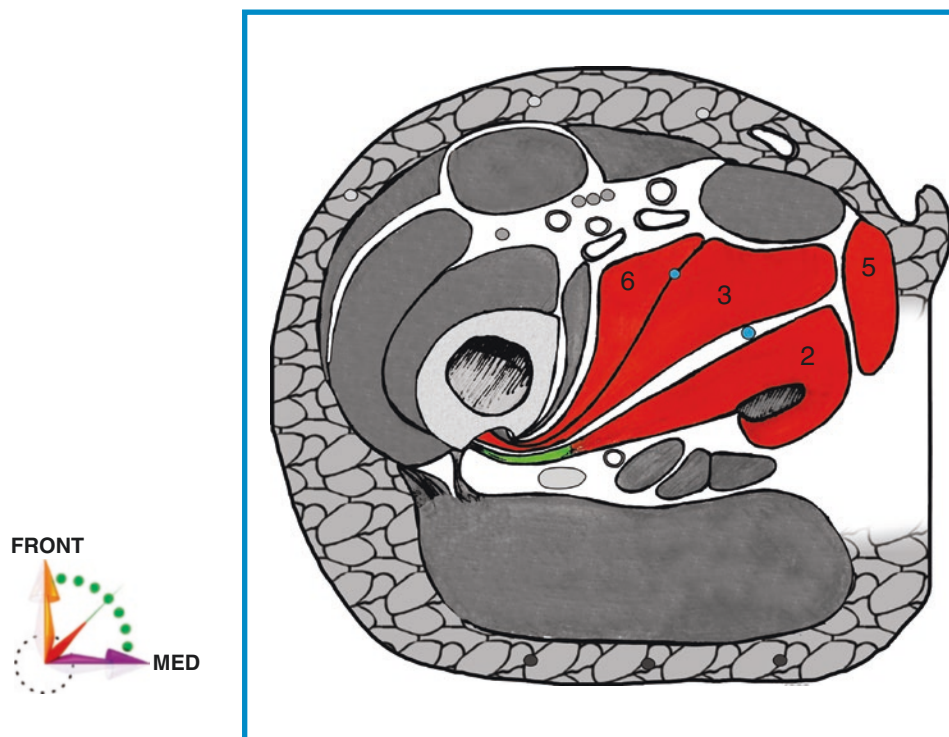
The obturator nerve innervates all of the adductor muscles of the thigh and the obturator externus muscle, thanks to a collateral branch. It is therefore in charge of the adduction and lateral rotation of the thigh (Figures O9 and O10).

Sensitive Function

The obturator nerve innervates the medial face of the thigh.

Anastomoses

It makes anastomoses with the femoral nerve through the saphenous nerve and, when it exists, with the accessory obturator nerve (Figure O10).

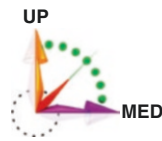


© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure O9. Motor innervation of the obturator nerve



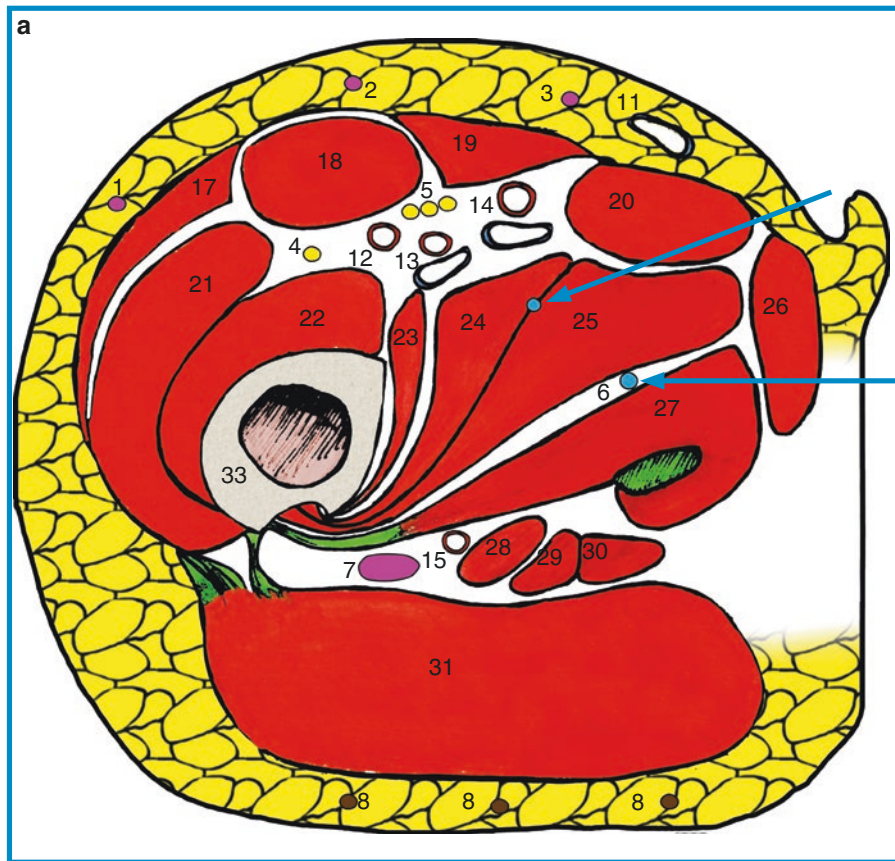
- 1- Obturator externus muscle
- 2- Adductor magnus muscle
- 3- Adductor brevis muscle
- 4- Adductor longus muscle
- 5- Gracilis muscle
- 6- Pectineus muscle



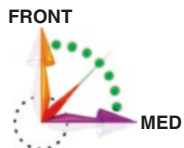
© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure O10. Motor and sensitive innervation of the obturator nerve

The Obturator Nerve

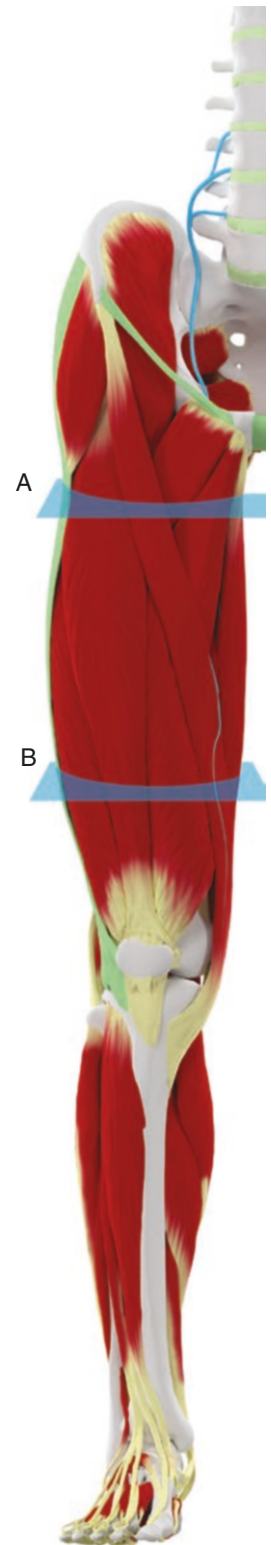
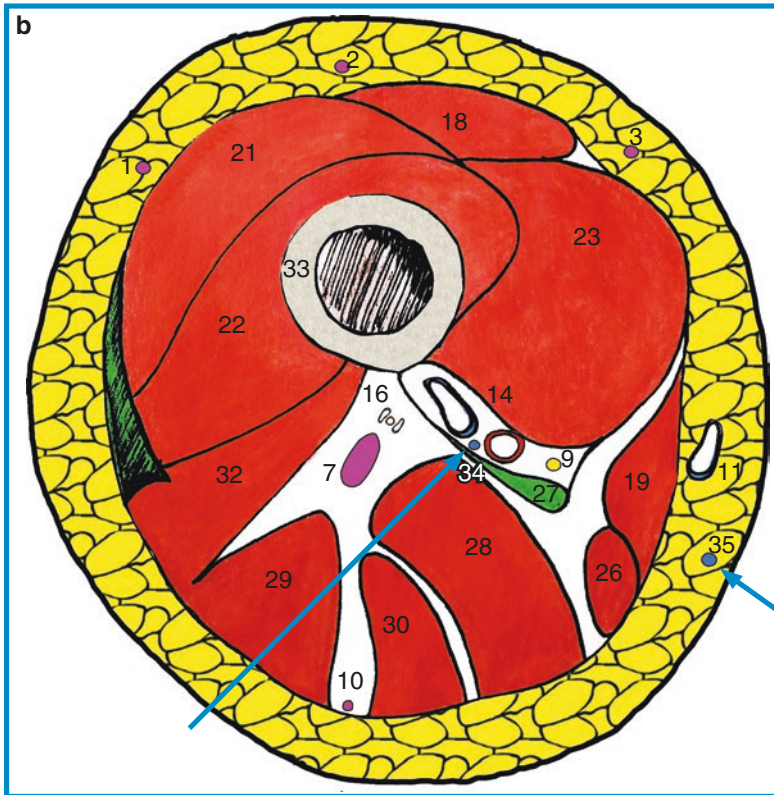


- | | |
|--|--|
| 1- Lateral femoral cutaneous nerve | 11- Great saphenous vein |
| 2- Anterior cutaneous nerve of the thigh | 12- Artery to the quadriceps muscle |
| 3- Medial cutaneous nerve of the thigh | 13- Deep femoral artery and vein |
| 4- Nerve to the quadriceps muscle | 14- Femoral artery and vein |
| 5- Terminal branch of the femoral nerve | 15- Inferior gluteal artery |
| 6- Branch of the obturator nerve | 16- Deep branch of the deep femoral artery |
| 7- Sciatic nerve | 17- Tensor fasciae latae muscle |
| 8- Inferior cluneal nerves | 18- Rectus femoris muscle |
| 9- Saphenous nerve | 19- Sartorius muscle |
| 10- Posterior femoral cutaneous nerve | |

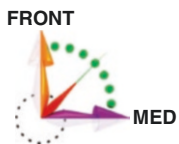


© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure O11. Relations of the obturator nerve in the thigh, axial view



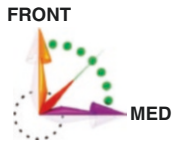
- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| 20- Adductor longus muscle | 29- Long head of the biceps femoris muscle |
| 21- Vastus lateralis muscle | 30- Semitendinosus muscle |
| 22- Vastus intermedius muscle | 31- Gluteus maximus muscle |
| 23- Vastus medialis muscle | 32- Short head of the biceps femoris muscle |
| 24- Pectineus muscle | 33- Femur |
| 25- Adductor brevis muscle | 34- Obturator nerve (articular branch to the knee joint) |
| 26- Gracilis muscle | 35- Cutaneous branch of obturator nerve |
| 27- Adductor magnus muscle | |
| 28- Semimembranosus muscle | |



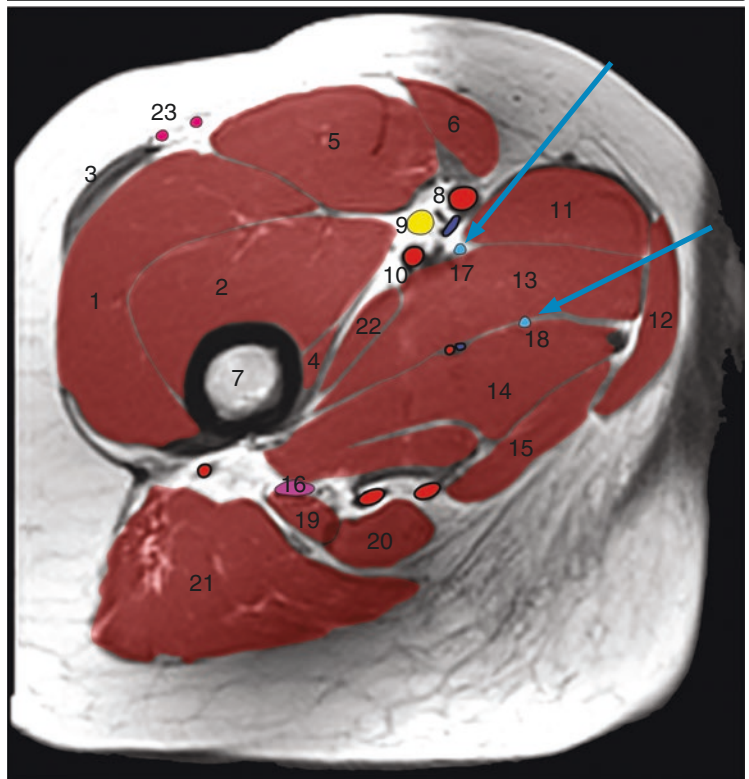
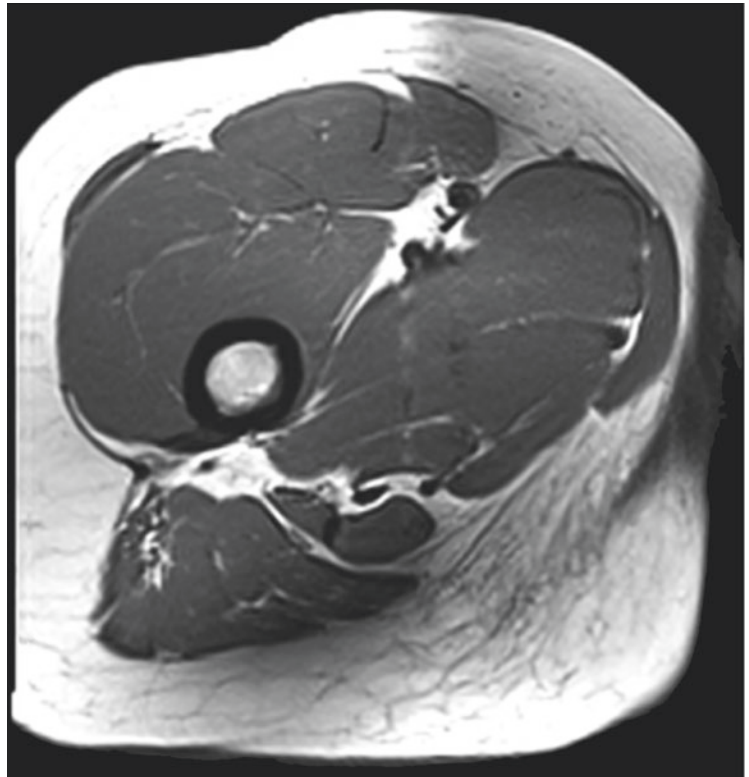
© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure O12. Relations of the obturator nerve in the thigh, axial view

The Obturator Nerve

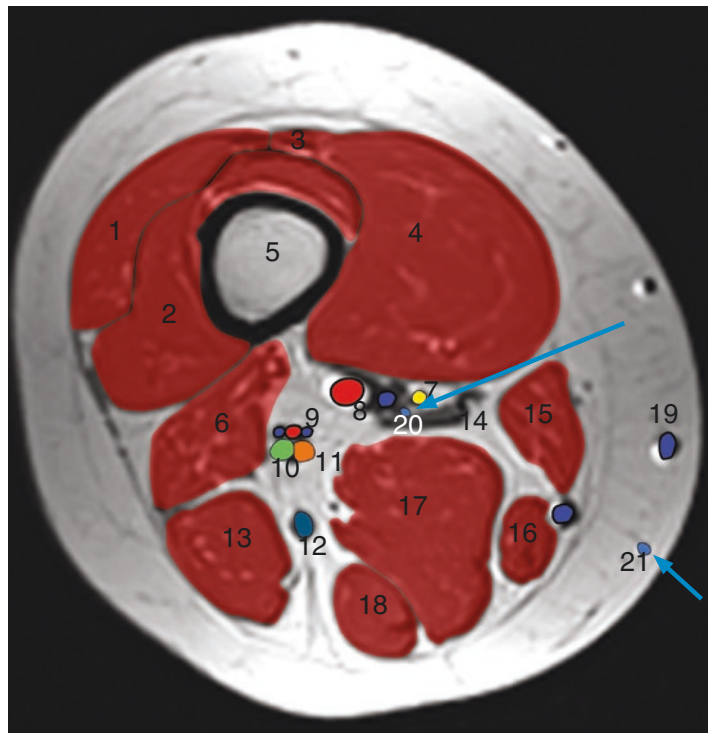
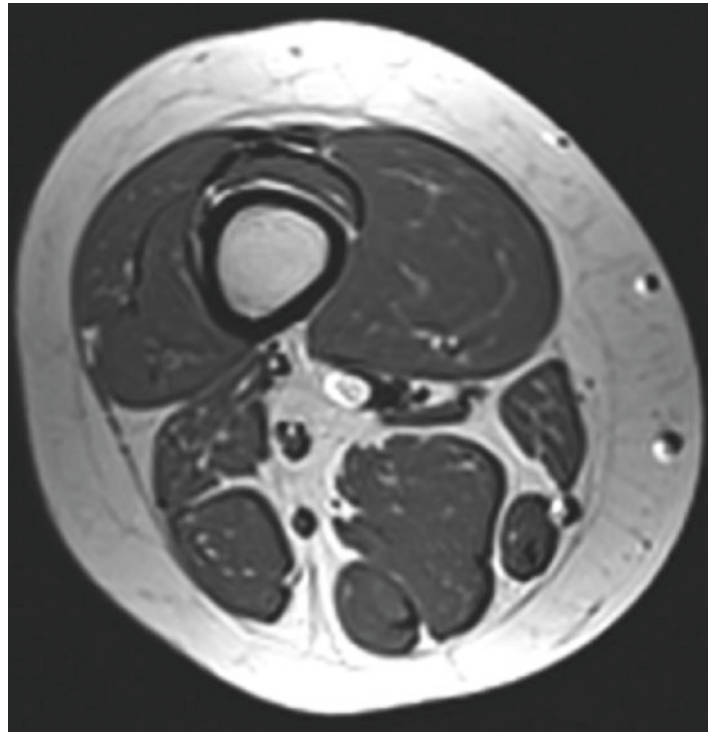
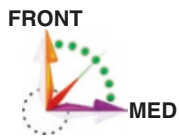


- 1- Vastus lateralis muscle
- 2- Vastus intermedius muscle
- 3- Tensor fasciae latae muscle
- 4- Vastus medialis muscle
- 5- Rectus femoris muscle
- 6- Sartorius muscle
- 7- Femur
- 8- Femoral artery and vein
- 9- Femoral nerve
- 10- Deep femoral artery and vein
- 11- Adductor longus muscle
- 12- Gracilis muscle
- 13- Adductor brevis muscle
- 14- Adductor magnus muscle
- 15- Semimembranosus muscle
- 16- Sciatic nerve
- 17- Anterior branch of the obturator nerve
- 18- Posterior branch of the obturator nerve
- 19- Tendon of the biceps femoris muscle
- 20- Tendon of the semitendinosus muscle
- 21- Gluteus maximus muscle
- 22- Pectineus muscle
- 23- Lateral femoral cutaneous nerve



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure O13. MRI scans at the proximal third of the thigh through the obturator nerve



- 1- Vastus lateralis muscle
- 2- Vastus intermedius muscle
- 3- Rectus femoris muscle
- 4- Vastus medialis muscle
- 5- Femur
- 6- Short head of the biceps femoris muscle
- 7- Saphenous nerve
- 8- Femoral artery and vein
- 9- Perforating artery and vein of the deep femoral artery and vein
- 10- Common fibular nerve
- 11- Tibial nerve
- 12- Posterior femoral cutaneous nerve
- 13- Long head of the biceps femoris muscle
- 14- Adductor magnus muscle
- 15- Sartorius muscle
- 16- Gracilis muscle
- 17- Semimembranosus muscle
- 18- Semitendinosus muscle
- 19- Great saphenous vein
- 20- Obturator nerve (articular branch to the knee joint)
- 21- Obturator nerve (cutaneous branch)

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure O14. MRI scans at the distal third of the thigh through the obturator nerve

Pathology

Obturator Neuralgia

The obturator nerve is a terminal branch of the lumbar plexus. It leaves the pelvis through the obturator canal, above the obturator membrane and the obturator externus muscle (Figure O3). It is at this level that an entrapment neuropathy can occur (Figure O15). It innervates the adductor muscles of the thigh, the pectineus muscle and the gracilis muscle (Figure O10).

Aetiology

- **Compression:** This is the most frequent injury mechanism, responsible for a genuine entrapment neuropathy. Its trigger factors have been identified: pregnancy, intensive sport activity, etc. An obturator hernia should systematically be researched in case of suggestive clinical signs.
- **Section or iatrogenic thermal injury:** several types of surgeries can cause an iatrogenic obturator neuralgia: genitourinary, orthopaedic, visceral, vascular, etc.

Clinical Significance

- **Sensitive signs:** The obturator nerve innervates the skin of the medial area of the thigh (Figure O10). The sensitive signs can be pain, hypoesthesia and paraesthesiae in this area. Sensitive signs only occur if the anterior branch is concerned and can appear only during effort: inguinal pain or at the level of the insertion of the adductor muscles that irradiates towards the internal face of the thigh and the posterior face of the knee. There can be a zone of hypoesthesia

on the medial and inferior face of the thigh that only rarely goes beyond the knee. This pain can be relieved with flexion, a fact that differentiates it from hip injuries.

- **Motor signs:** motor signs only appear in severe injuries, or belatedly, walking difficulties with a feeling of instability in the leg, especially in athletes in jumping activities.

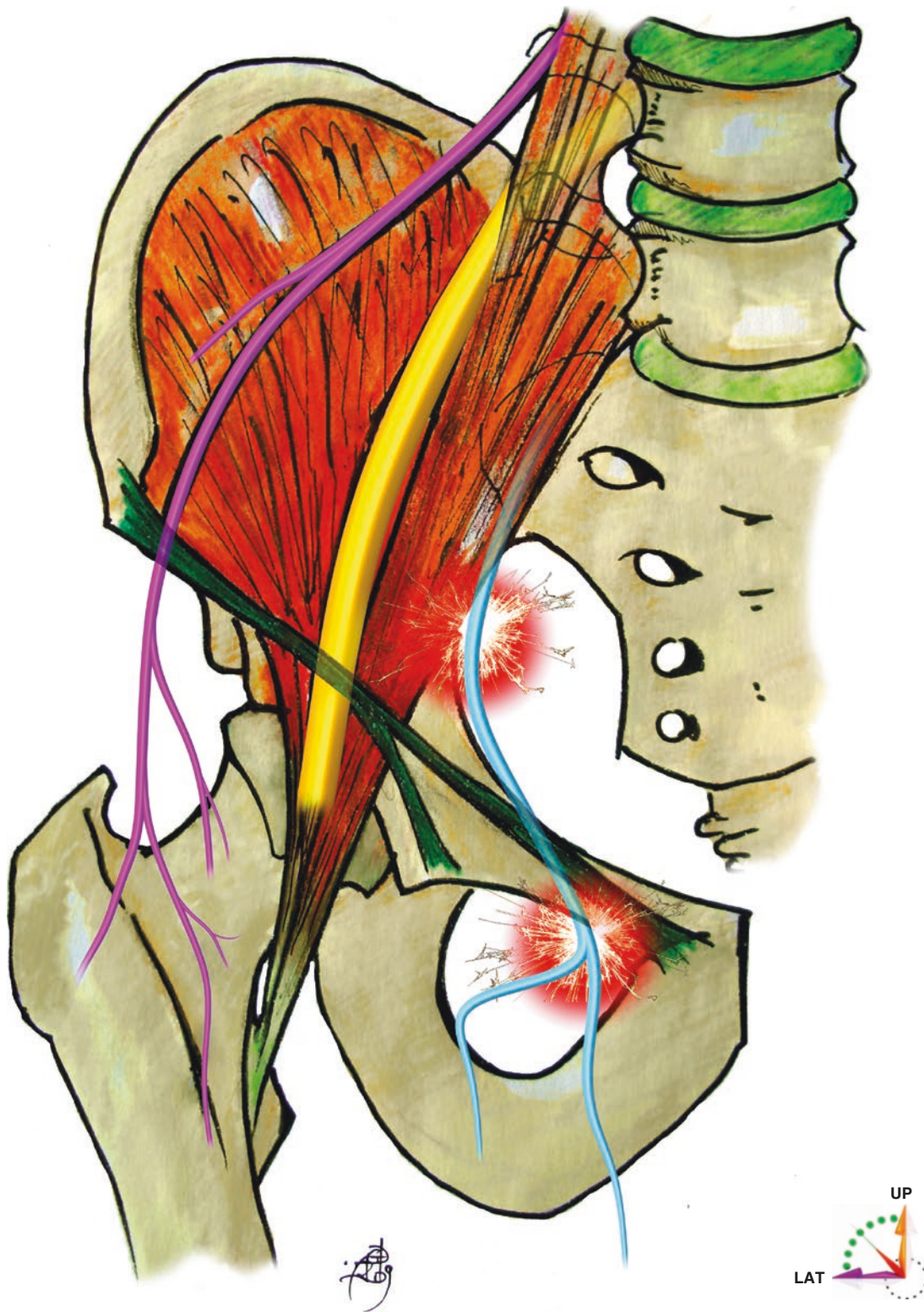
The obturator nerve is essentially in charge of the adduction of the thigh, which will be the first deficient function found in motor testing. During examination, a decrease in the capacity of adduction and medial rotation will be found, which ultimately leads to a disuse atrophy of the adductor muscles, causing the patient to walk with external rotation and circumduction.

Complementary Examinations

- An electrophysiology will have a paramount interest. It classically objectifies alterations of the speed of conduction of the nerve as well as signs of partial muscle denervation at the level of the adductors.
- An MRI of the thigh eliminates an extrinsic compression of the nerve.

Treatment

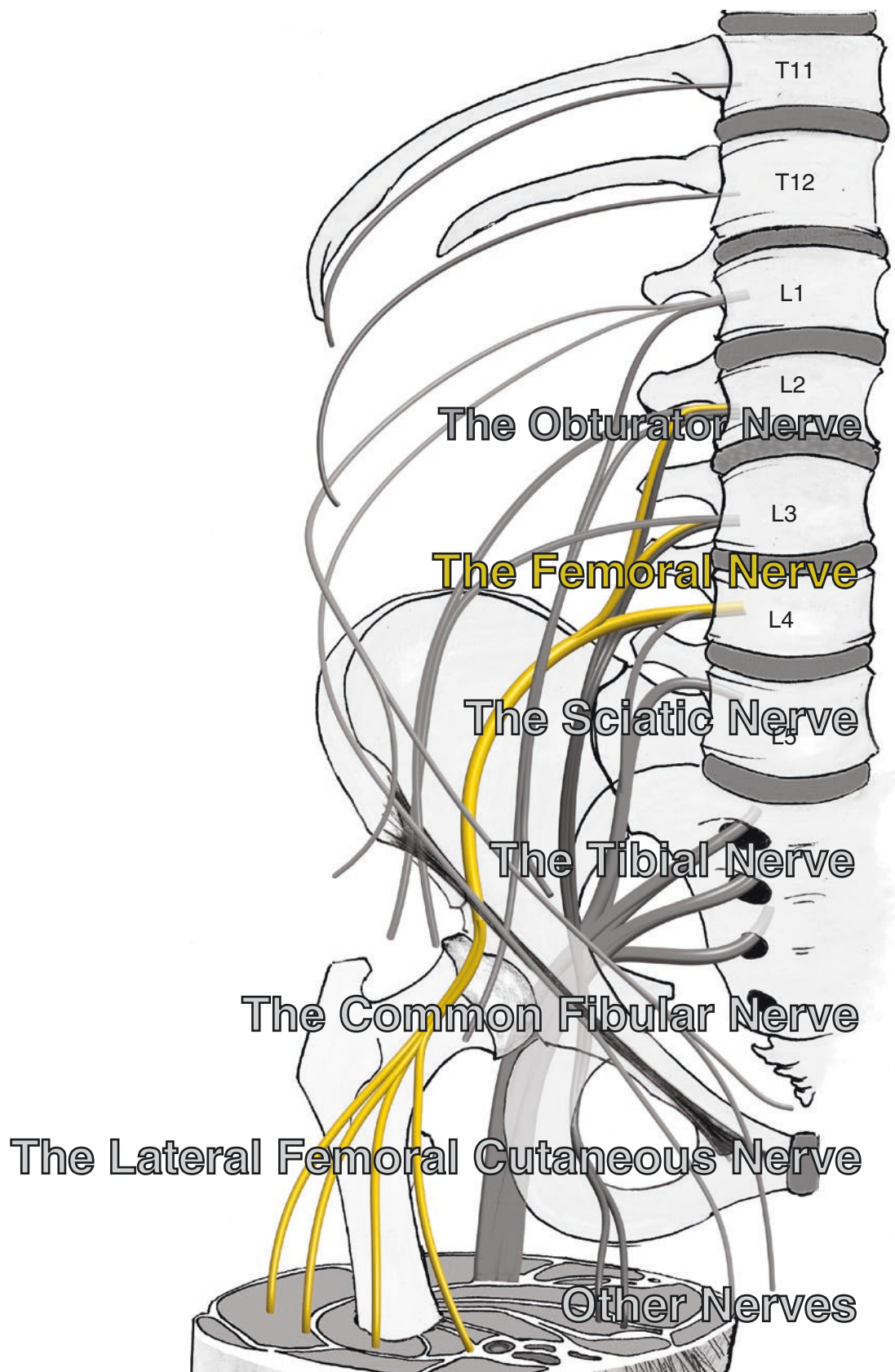
If the anterior branch is the only injured element and is diagnosed early, muscle stretching and electrical stimulation of the adductors can be suggested. Decompression surgery can be discussed if the compression is refractory after invasive management.



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure O15. Pathology of the obturator nerve: potential injury areas





Morphological Data

The femoral nerve is a mixed nerve. It is the main terminal branch of the lumbar plexus. Its main function is the innervation of the muscles of the anterior compartment of the thigh.

Origin

It is constituted of the roots of L2, L3 and L4 (Figures F1 and F2). The posterior branches of these lumbar roots unite when they go between the two layers of the iliopsoas muscle (Figure F3), under the lateral femoral cutaneous nerve and under and behind the obturator nerve.

Path

The femoral nerve goes between the psoas and iliac nerves and then reaches the top of the thigh (Figure F3). At this level, it is situated under the iliac fascia and faces the caecum in front and to the right and the descending colon in front and to the left. It lies against the groove of the psoas muscle, under an aponeurotic membrane (Figure PL7).

It then crosses the femoral canal (Figure F4) just outside of the projection at its middle, the iliopectineal arch, where it rests outside of the femoral artery (Figure F5). In the femoral canal, it faces the femoral branch of the genitofemoral nerve and the femoral vascular pedicle medially (Figure F3).

Then, it divides into two main terminal branches: the anterior and posterior branches (Figures F2, F4, F5 and F6).

Neurovascular Relations

Under the iliac fascia, the femoral nerve faces the external iliac artery via the iliacus muscle medially (Figure PL7).

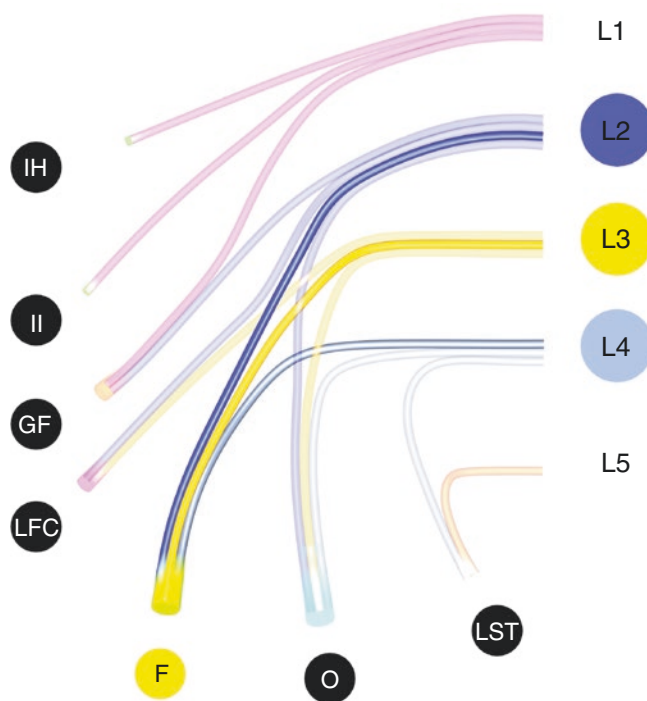
Under the inguinal ligament, it faces the femoral artery medially via the iliopectineal arch (Figure F5).

At the same level, the lateral circumflex femoral artery, which is a collateral branch of the femoral artery, goes behind or through the terminal branches of the femoral nerve.

Collateral Branches

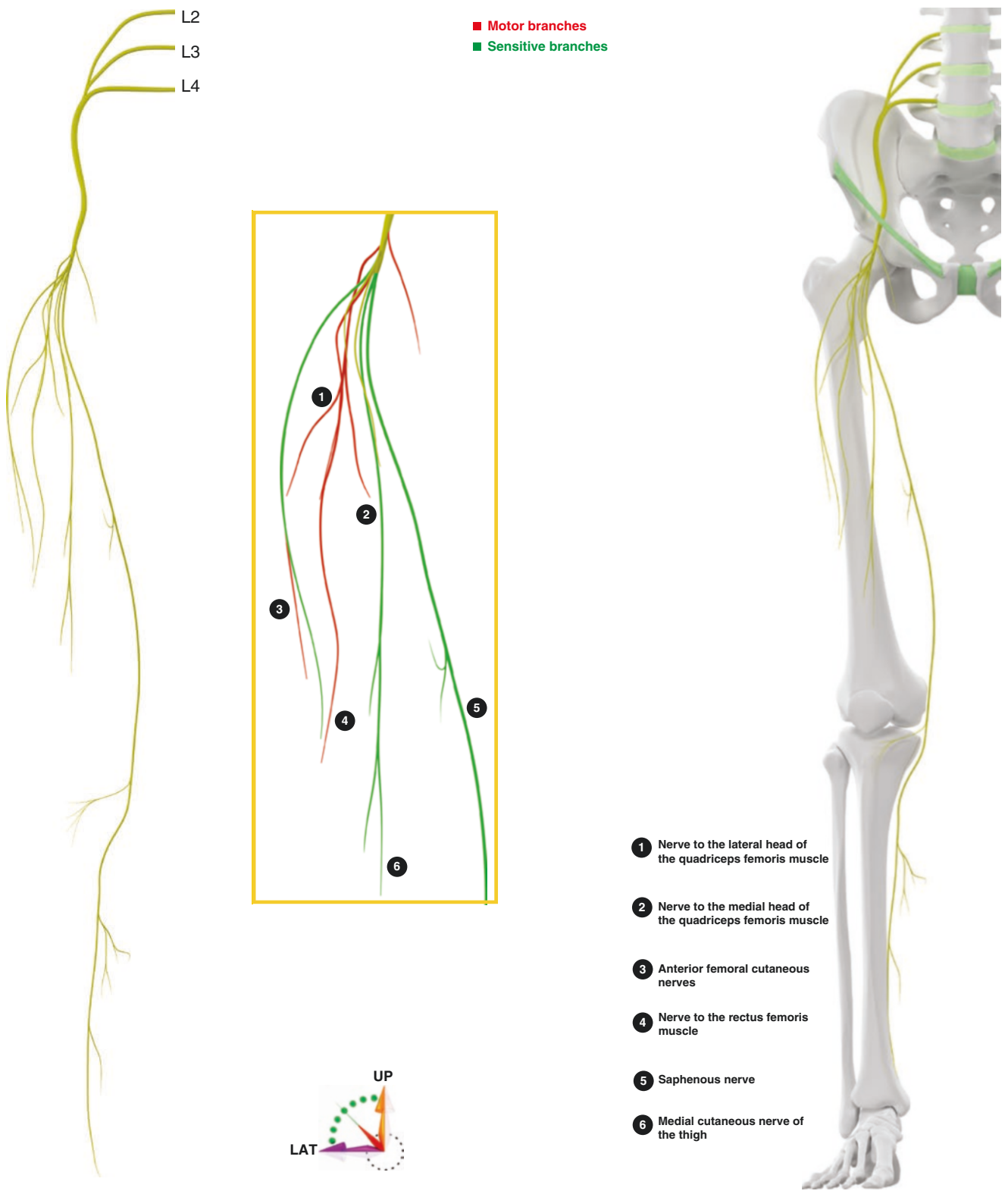
The femoral nerve successively gives rise to:

- Muscle branches for the iliopsoas and pectineus muscles
- A branch for the femoral artery



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure F1. Origin of the femoral nerve



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure F2. Topographical distribution of the femoral nerve and its relations with bones

The Femoral Nerve

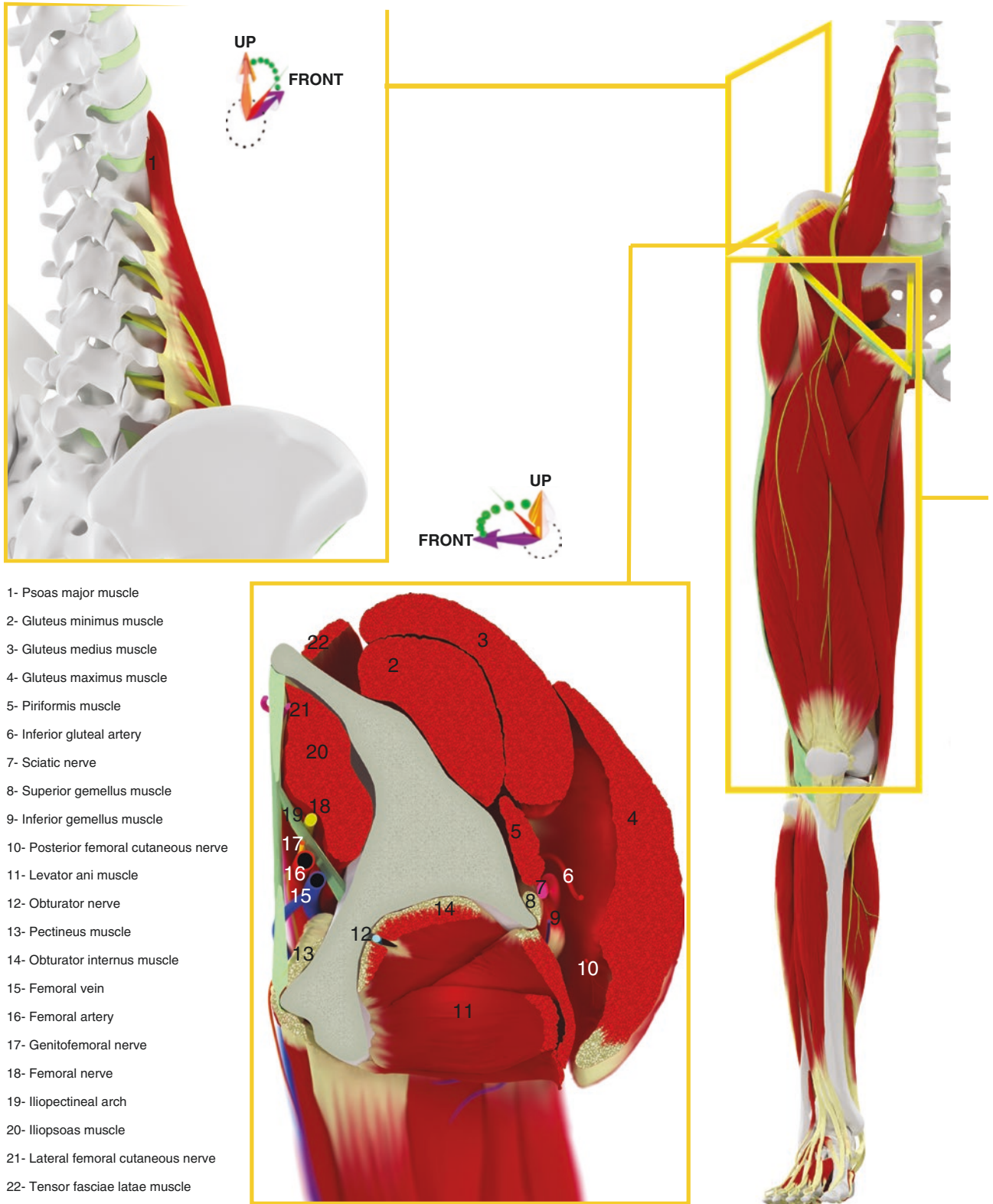
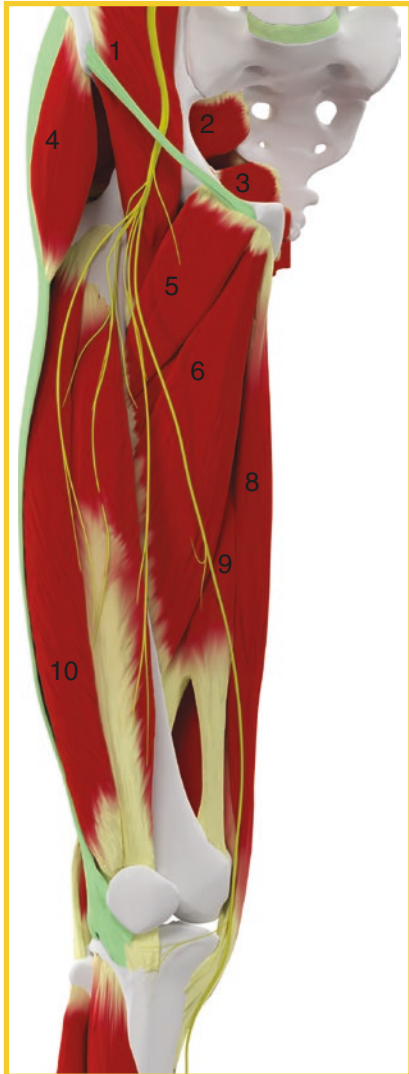
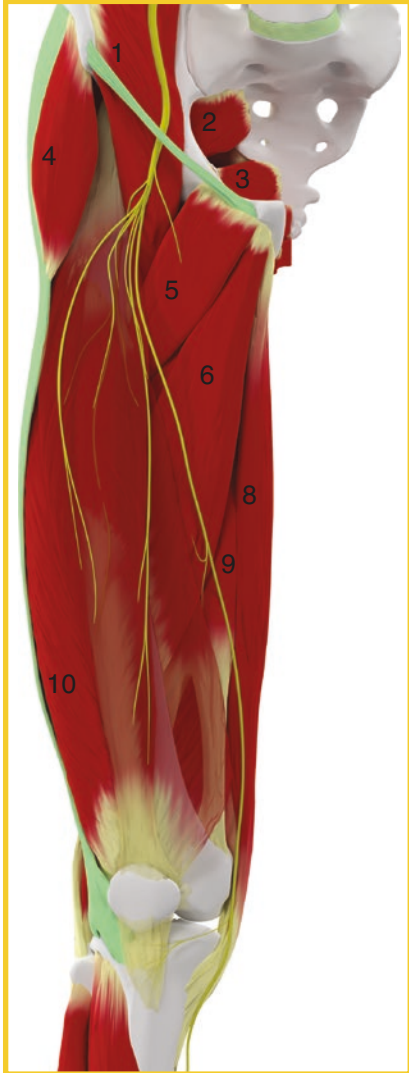
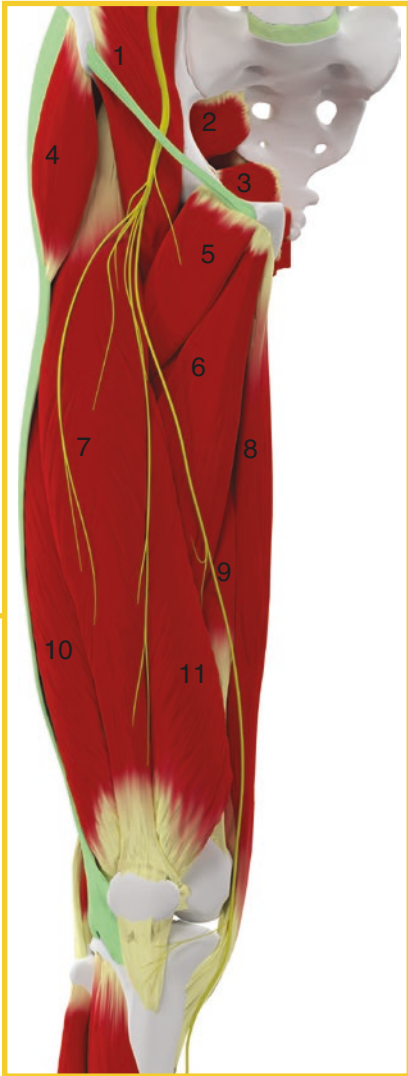
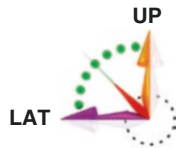


Figure F3. Muscular relations of the femoral nerve at its origin and at the iliopectineal arch



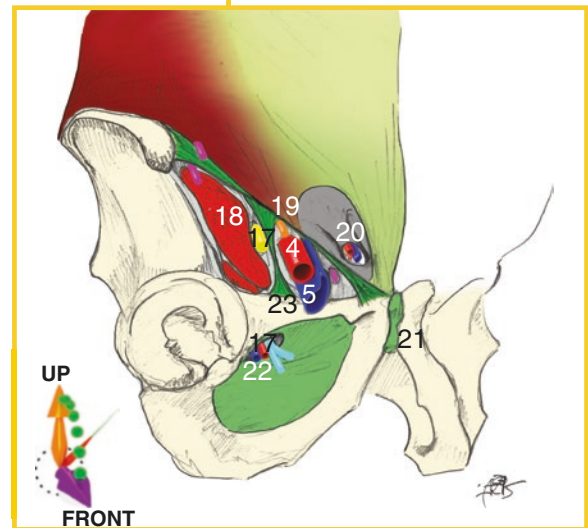
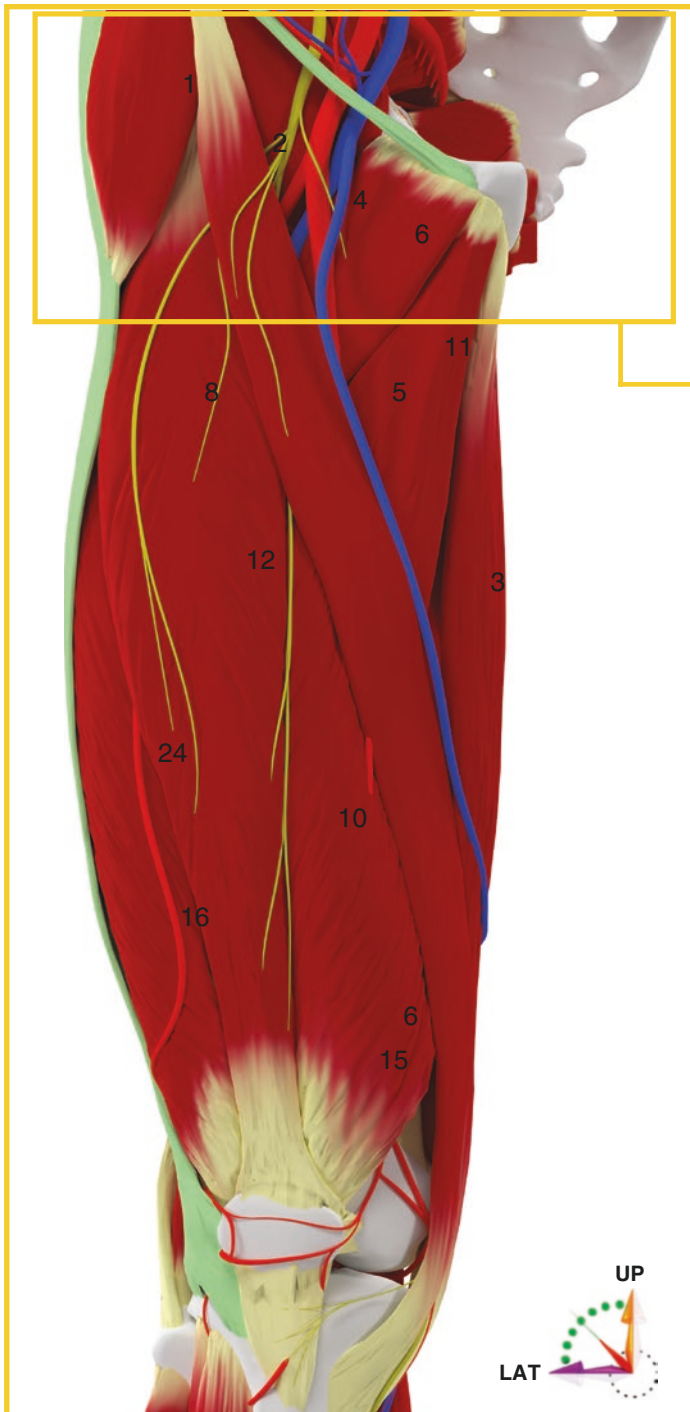
- 1- Iliopsoas muscle
- 2- Piriformis muscle
- 3- Obturator internus muscle
- 4- Tensor fasciae latae muscle
- 5- Pectineus muscle
- 6- Adductor longus muscle
- 7- Rectus femoris muscle
- 8- Gracilis muscle
- 9- Adductor magnus muscle
- 10- Vastus lateralis muscle
- 11- Vastus medialis muscle



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure F4. Muscular relations of the femoral nerve in the thigh (anterior view from superficial to deep)

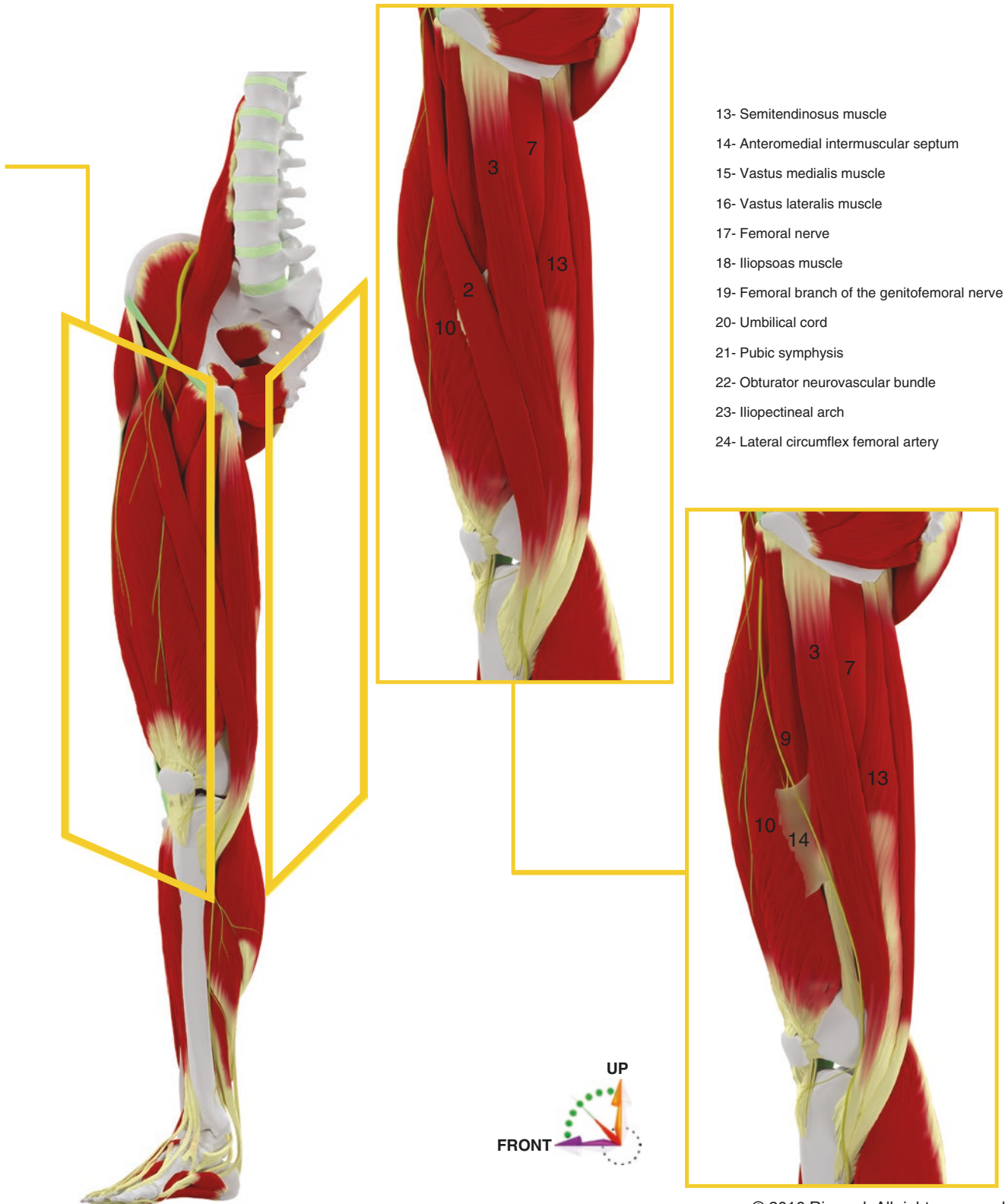
The Femoral Nerve



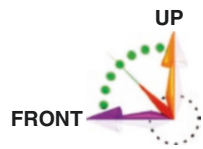
- 1- Tensor fasciae latae muscle
- 2- Sartorius muscle
- 3- Gracilis muscle
- 4- Femoral artery
- 5- Femoral vein
- 6- Pectineus muscle
- 7- Semimembranosus muscle
- 8- Anterior cutaneous nerve of the thigh
- 9- Saphenous nerve
- 10- Medial cutaneous nerve of the thigh
- 11- Adductor longus muscle
- 12- Rectus femoris muscle

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure F5. Neurovascular and muscular relations of the femoral nerve in thigh (Drawing by P. Rigoard, based on Sobotta)



- 13- Semitendinosus muscle
- 14- Anteromedial intermuscular septum
- 15- Vastus medialis muscle
- 16- Vastus lateralis muscle
- 17- Femoral nerve
- 18- Iliopsoas muscle
- 19- Femoral branch of the genitofemoral nerve
- 20- Umbilical cord
- 21- Pubic symphysis
- 22- Obturator neurovascular bundle
- 23- Iliopectineal arch
- 24- Lateral circumflex femoral artery



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure F6. Muscular relations of the femoral nerve at the adductor canal (internal view)

The Femoral Nerve

Terminal Branches

The femoral nerve splits after crossing the femoral canal under the inguinal ligament, in the femoral triangle, formerly named triangle of Scarpa (Figure F4).

This triangle is delimited by the inguinal ligament as a superior base, medially by the gracilis muscle and laterally by the sartorius muscle. The femoral nerve then gives off several terminal branches, including two main branches: the anterior and the posterior branch. Through these branches, the femoral nerve spreads to the muscles of the anterior face of the thigh and to the skin with the anterior cutaneous nerves and the medial cutaneous nerve of the thigh (Figures F2, F4, F8 and F9).

The anterior branch also splits to innervate the muscles of the anterior face of the thigh with the nerves of the sartorius muscle, the nerves of the heads of the quadriceps femoris muscle and the nerves of the pectineus and adductor longus muscles (Figure F4). The nerves of the sartorius muscle spread to the whole muscle from its posterior face at the upper half of its path.

This branch also gives off a vascular branch for the profunda femoral artery and the main, anterior and medial cutaneous nerves of the thigh. These nerves originate from under the sartorius muscle and reach the skin by following its medial face closely or going through it (Figure F5). Finally, they make ramifications at the level of the skin in the anterior part of the thigh.

The posterior branch, also called saphenous nerve, goes down to the knee (Figure F2). It begins at the upper third of the thigh and is initially situated at the medial face of the femoral artery. The saphenous nerve then goes into the adductor canal, which is an extension of the lower part of the femoral triangle (Figure F5).

The adductor canal, formerly known as Hunter's canal, is defined laterally and in front by the medial head of the quadriceps muscle, medially by the vastoadductor intermuscular septum and behind the adductor longus and magnus muscles. The saphenous nerve then crosses the vastoadductor fascia (also called subsartorial fascia) which links the medial head of the quadriceps femoris muscle to the adductor magnus muscle and the femoral artery from its front and then goes along its medial side (Figure F6). There, it faces the

descending genicular artery laterally, which is a collateral branch of the femoral artery. This path is under the sartorius muscle, from the origin of the saphenous nerve to the knee.

At the level of the knee, the saphenous nerve becomes subcutaneous to innervate the medial face of the leg via the infrapatellar branch. It accompanies the great saphenous vein and finally divides into two terminal branches (Figures F6, F10 and F11).

The accessory saphenous nerve is a terminal branch of the femoral nerve that emerges medially and above the other terminal branches. It quickly divides into a superficial branch, which goes along the great saphenous vein until the knee, and a deep branch, which accompanies the femoral artery until the adductor canal. This deep branch finally makes ramifications under the skin of the medial side of the knee.

Motor Function

The femoral nerve takes charge of the flexion of the thigh on the torso and the extension of the leg on the thigh chiefly by innervating the iliopsoas muscle. This same muscle also manages the lateral rotation of the thigh (Figure F7a, b).

The femoral nerve can accessorially provide a function of adduction of the thigh by innervating the pectineus muscle.

Sensitive Function

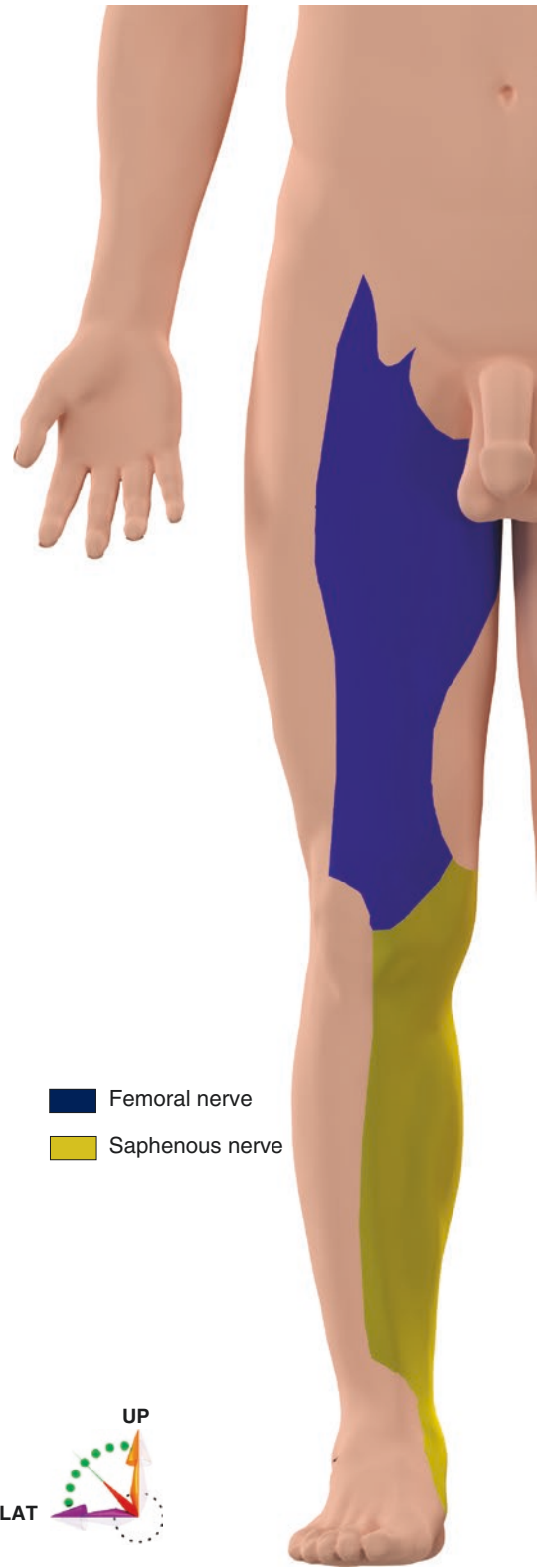
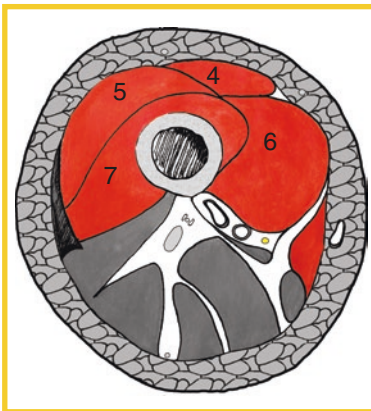
The femoral nerve takes charge of the innervation of the anterior face of the thigh, the anterior and medial faces of the knee, the medial half of the leg and the medial side of the ankle (Figure F7).

Anastomoses

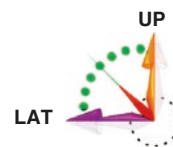
The femoral nerve successively makes anastomoses with the following nerves:

- The genitofemoral nerve
- The obturator nerve, under the proximal part of the sartorius muscle, thus forming the subsartorial plexus
- The sciatic nerve in rare circumstances
- The deep fibular nerve, via the saphenous nerve

- 1- Iliopsoas muscle
- 2- Sartorius muscle
- 3- Pectineus muscle
- 4- Rectus femoris muscle
- 5- Vastus lateralis muscle
- 6- Vastus medialis muscle
- 7- Vastus intermedius muscle



■ Femoral nerve
 ■ Saphenous nerve



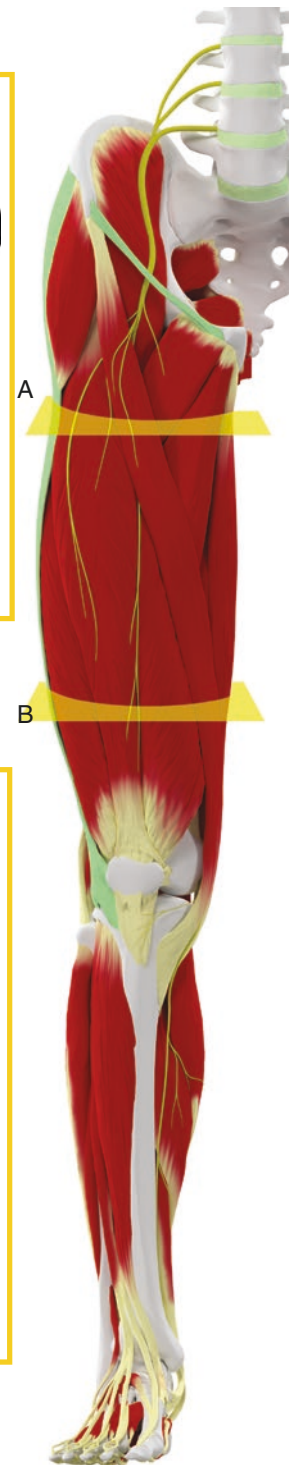
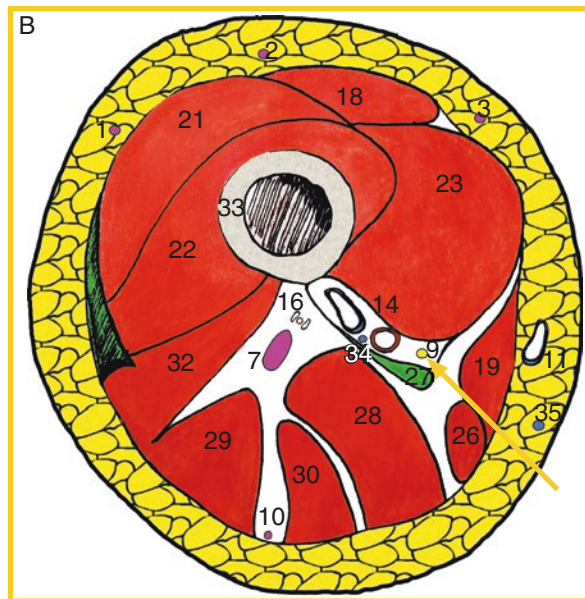
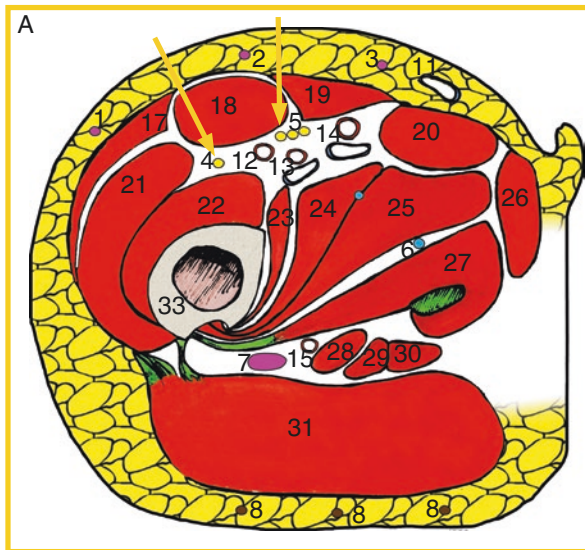
© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure F7. Motor and sensitive innervation of the femoral nerve

The Femoral Nerve

- 1- Lateral femoral cutaneous nerve
- 2- Anterior cutaneous nerve of the thigh
- 3- Medial cutaneous nerve of the thigh
- 4- Nerve to the quadriceps muscle
- 5- Terminal branch of the femoral nerve
- 6- Branch of the obturator nerve
- 7- Sciatic nerve
- 8- Inferior cluneal nerves
- 9- Saphenous nerve
- 10- Posterior femoral cutaneous nerve
- 11- Great saphenous vein
- 12- Artery to the quadriceps muscle
- 13- Deep femoral artery and vein
- 14- Femoral artery and vein
- 15- Inferior gluteal artery
- 16- Deep branch of the deep femoral artery
- 17- Tensor fasciae latae muscle
- 18- Rectus femoris muscle
- 19- Sartorius muscle
- 20- Adductor longus muscle
- 21- Vastus lateralis muscle
- 22- Vastus intermedius muscle
- 23- Vastus medialis muscle
- 24- Pectineus muscle
- 25- Adductor brevis muscle
- 26- Gracilis muscle
- 27- Adductor magnus muscle
- 28- Semimembranosus muscle
- 29- Long head of the biceps femoris muscle
- 30- Semitendinosus muscle
- 31- Gluteus maximus muscle
- 32- Short head of the biceps femoris muscle
- 33- Femur
- 34- Obturator nerve (articular branch to the knee joint)
- 35- Obturator nerve (cutaneous branch)

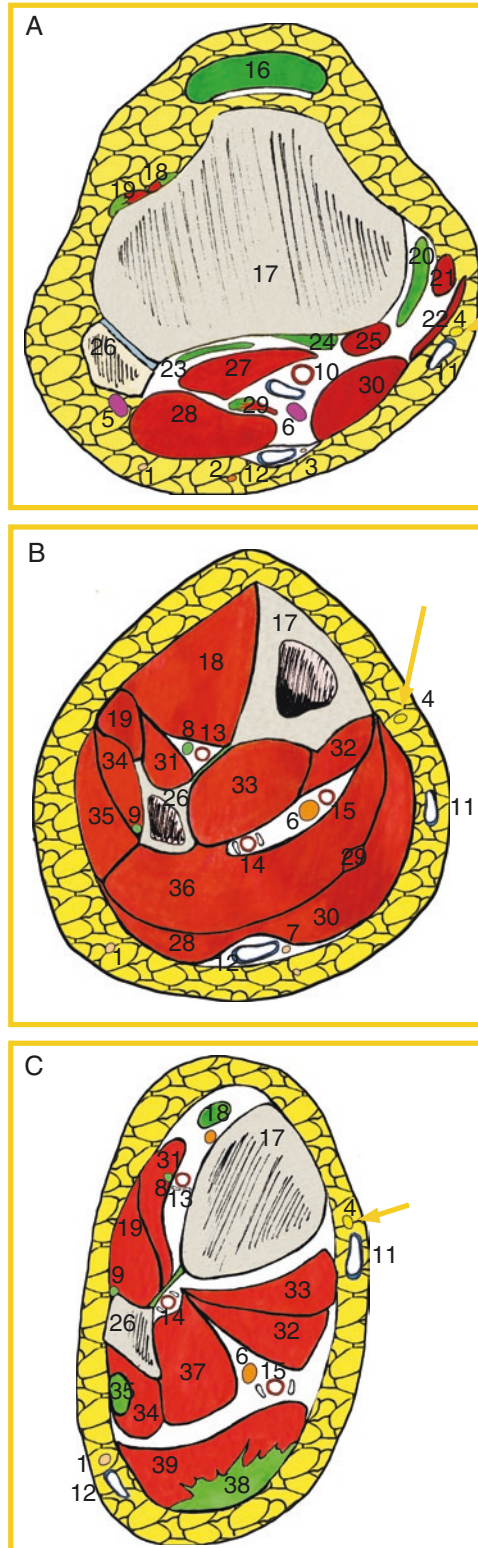
FRONT



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure F8. Relations of the femoral nerve in the thigh, axial sections

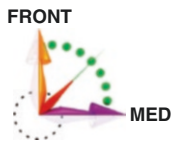
- 1- Lateral sural cutaneous nerve
- 2- Peroneal communicating nerve
- 3- Medial sural cutaneous nerve
- 4- Saphenous nerve
- 5- Fibular nerve
- 6- Tibial nerve
- 7- Sural nerve
- 8- Deep fibular nerve
- 9- Superficial fibular nerve
- 10- Popliteal artery and vein
- 11- Great saphenous vein
- 12- Small saphenous vein
- 13- Anterior tibial artery
- 14- Fibular artery and vein
- 15- Posterior tibial artery
- 16- Patellar ligament of quadriceps femoris muscle
- 17- Tibia
- 18- Tibialis anterior muscle
- 19- Extensor digitorum longus muscle
- 20- Medial collateral ligament
- 21- Gracilis muscle
- 22- Sartorius muscle
- 23- Synovial bursa
- 24- Posterior cruciate ligament
- 25- Semimembranosus muscle
- 26- Fibula
- 27- Popliteus muscle
- 28- Lateral head of the gastrocnemius muscle
- 29- Plantaris muscle
- 30- Medial head of the gastrocnemius muscle
- 31- Extensor hallucis longus muscle
- 32- Flexor digitorum longus muscle
- 33- Posterior tibial muscle
- 34- Peroneus brevis muscle
- 35- Peroneus longus muscle
- 36- Soleus muscle
- 37- Flexor hallucis longus muscle
- 38- Calcaneal tendon
- 39- Triceps surae muscle



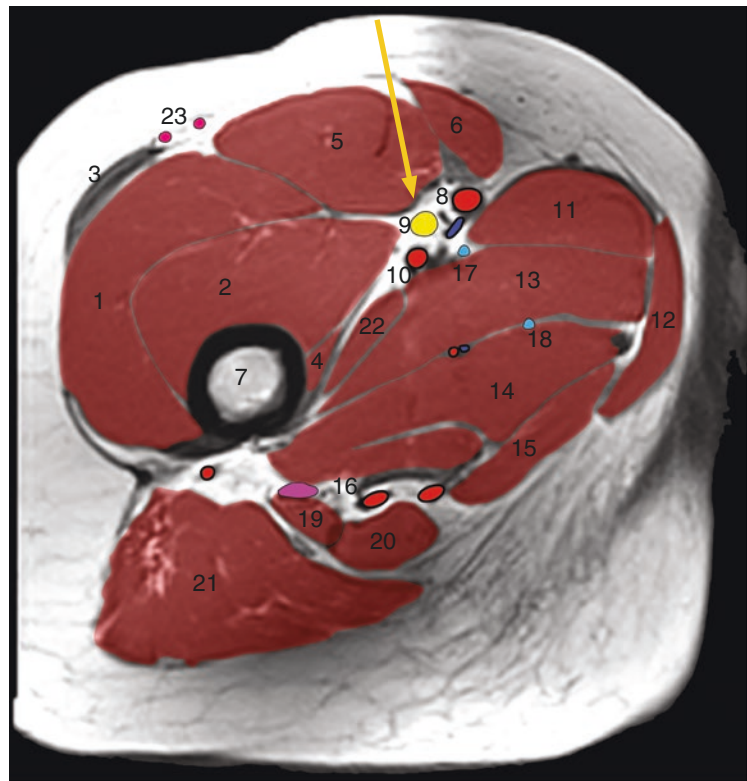
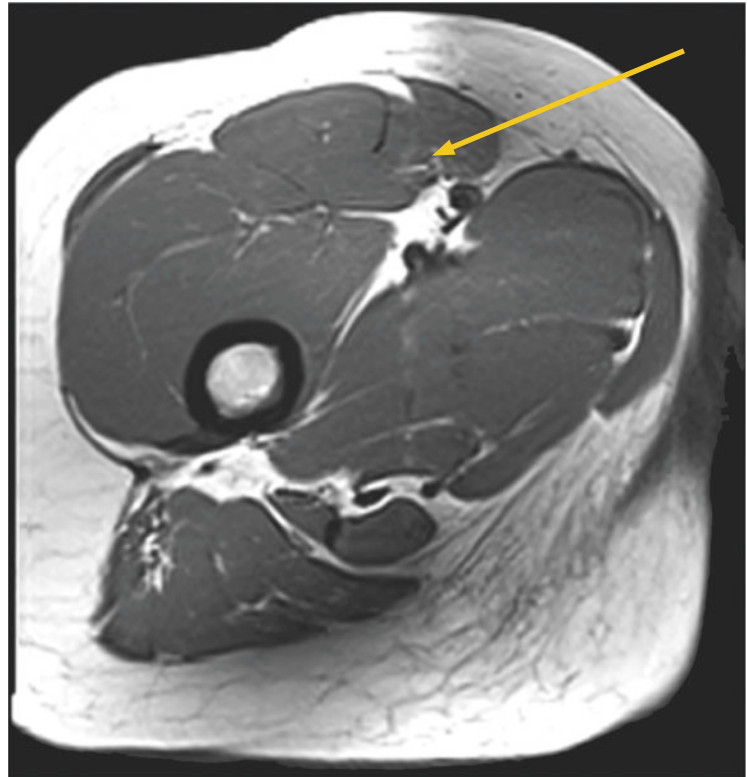
© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure F9. Relations of the femoral nerve in the leg, axial sections

The Femoral Nerve

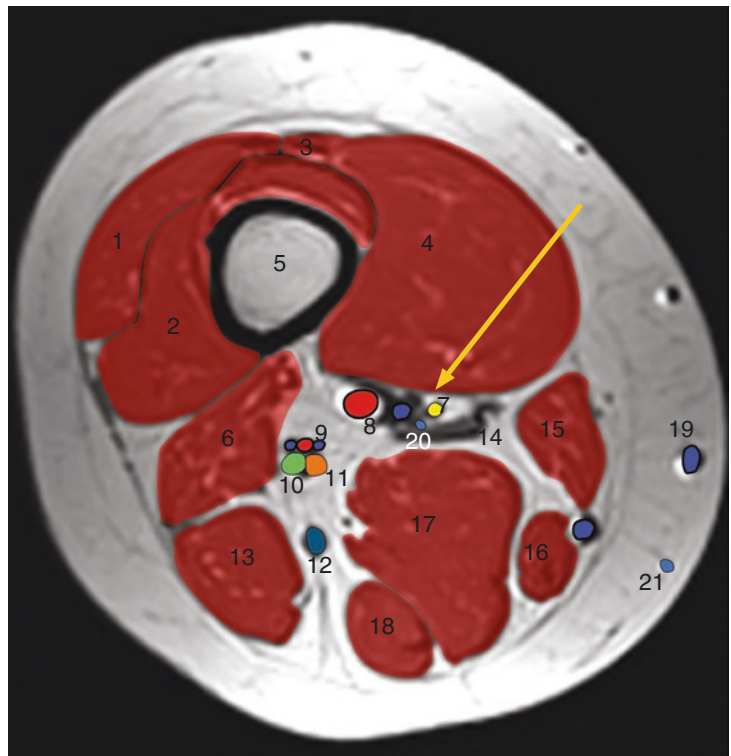
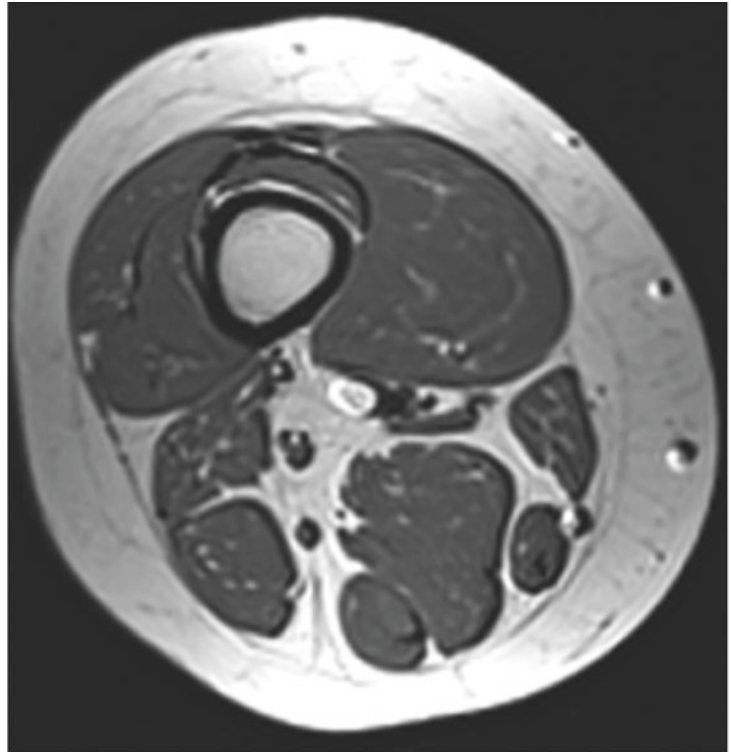


- 1- Vastus lateralis muscle
- 2- Vastus intermedius muscle
- 3- Tensor fasciae latae muscle
- 4- Vastus medialis muscle
- 5- Rectus femoris muscle
- 6- Sartorius muscle
- 7- Femur
- 8- Femoral artery and vein
- 9- Femoral nerve
- 10- Deep femoral artery and vein
- 11- Adductor longus muscle
- 12- Gracilis muscle
- 13- Adductor brevis muscle
- 14- Adductor magnus muscle
- 15- Semimembranosus muscle
- 16- Sciatic nerve
- 17- Anterior branch of the obturator nerve
- 18- Posterior branch of the obturator nerve
- 19- Tendon of the biceps femoris muscle
- 20- Tendon of the semitendinosus muscle
- 21- Gluteus maximus muscle
- 22- Pectineus muscle
- 23- Lateral femoral cutaneous nerve



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure F10. MRI scans at the proximal third of the thigh through the femoral nerve



- 1- Vastus lateralis muscle
- 2- Vastus intermedius muscle
- 3- Rectus femoris muscle
- 4- Vastus medialis muscle
- 5- Femur
- 6- Short head of the biceps femoris muscle
- 7- Saphenous nerve
- 8- Femoral artery and vein
- 9- Perforating artery and vein of the deep femoral artery and vein
- 10- Common fibular nerve
- 11- Tibial nerve
- 12- Posterior femoral cutaneous nerve
- 13- Long head of the biceps femoris muscle
- 14- Adductor magnus muscle
- 15- Sartorius muscle
- 16- Gracilis muscle
- 17- Semimembranosus muscle
- 18- Semitendinosus muscle
- 19- Great saphenous vein
- 20- Obturator nerve (articular branch to the knee joint)
- 21- Obturator nerve (cutaneous branch)

© 2016 Riguard. All rights reserved

Figure F11. MRI scans at the distal third of the thigh through the femoral nerve

Pathology

Femoral Nerve Syndrome or Femoral Neuralgia

The femoral nerve is a terminal branch of the lumbar plexus. It leaves the pelvis under the femoral arch, at which point it faces the femoral artery medially. This arch is closed at the top by the iliopectineal ligament and can be subject to an entrapment neuropathy (Figures F12 and F13).

Aetiology

- Compression: This entrapment neuropathy can be caused by repeated hip movements that generate a compression of the nerve at this level, a laborious pregnancy, an injury caused by a tumour, an expansion of the psoas muscle or a surgery, for example (Figure F13).

Clinical Significance

- Sensitive signs: These concern the anterior face of the thigh and can elicit hip pain. This pain can appear more clearly during hip movements that compress the nerve.
- Motor signs: The femoral nerve innervates the iliopsoas muscle and the greater part of the muscles of the anterior compartment of the thigh. Chronic damage can cause a

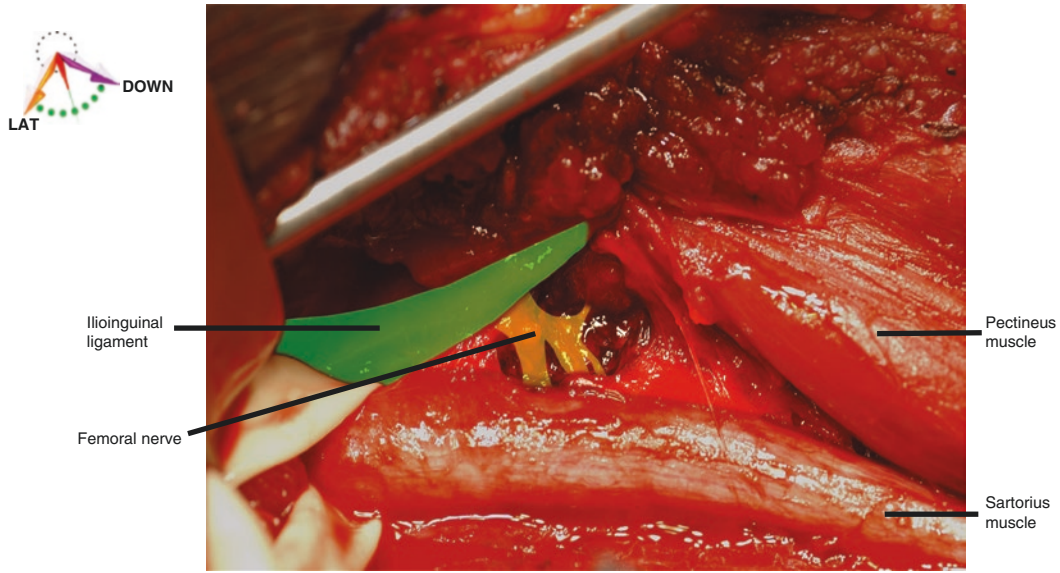
paresis and an amyotrophy of the quadriceps femoris muscle. The patient's ability to extend their leg on the thigh is reduced or can even become impossible. Since the iliopsoas muscle is innervated prior to the femoral nerve's damage, the flexion of the thigh on the torso is generally sustained.

Complementary Examinations

- An electroneuromyography shows signs of a denervation in the muscles innervated by the femoral nerve.
- Imaging of the lumbar vertebrae eliminates the possibility of an injury from a compression or a discoradicular conflict on L3 or L4.

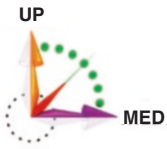
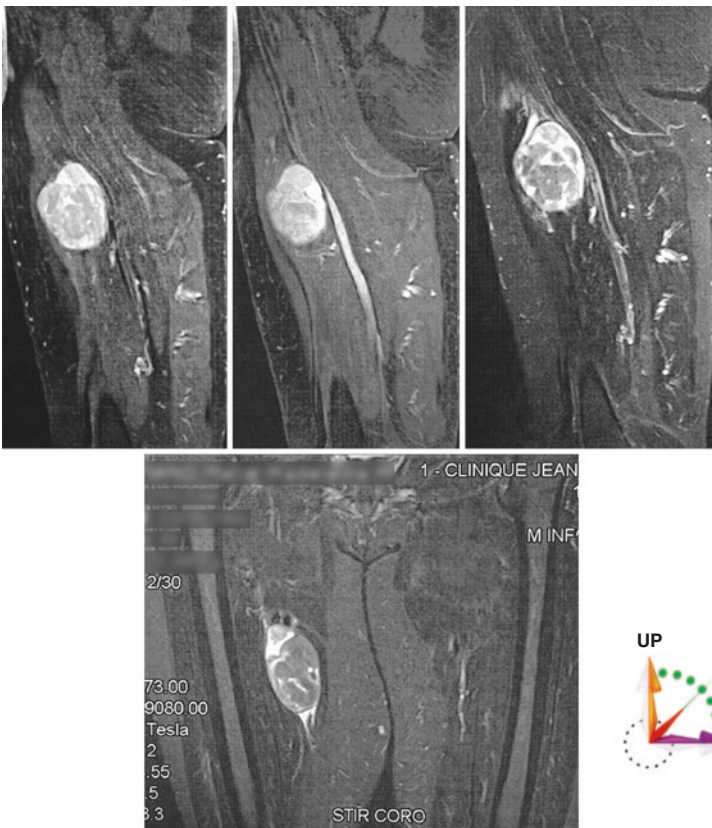
Treatment

In cases of proven entrapment neuropathy, surgical treatment consists of a section of the femoral ligament. Chances of morbidity are close to zero regardless of the surgical access. This surgery generally obtains excellent results regarding both the pain and the functional recovery of the quadriceps muscle.



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

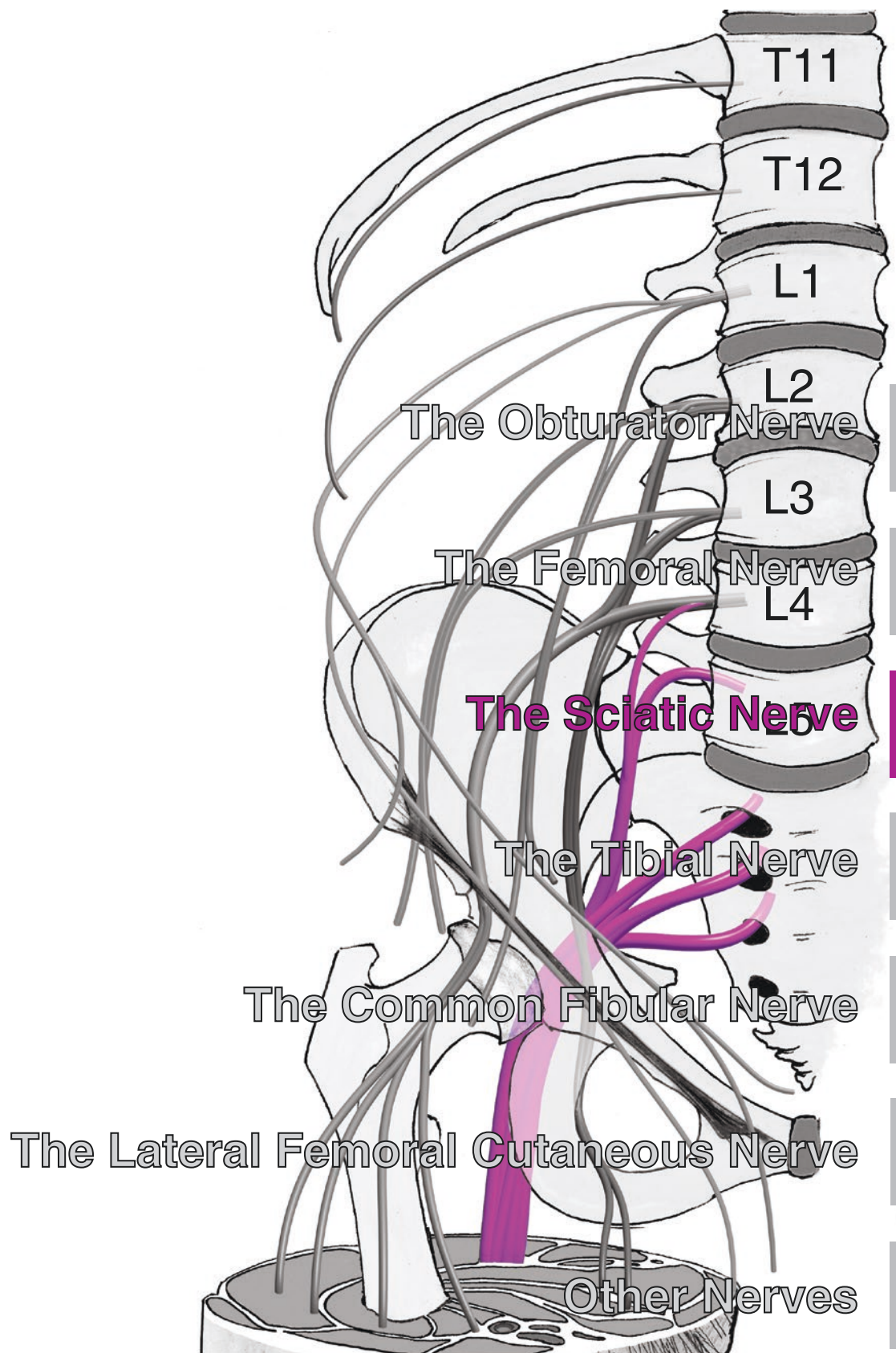
Figure F12. Operative view of a decompression of the femoral nerve at the femoral triangle



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure F13. MRI scan of the thigh (coronal sections) performed after the apparition of a femoral neuralgia in a context of weight loss and evolving swelling of the thigh. Discovery of a soft tissue tumour in contact with the femoral branches





Sc

The Sciatic Nerve

Morphological Data

The sciatic nerve is a mixed nerve. It is the largest nerve in the human body. Its path is posterior to the root of the lower body, under the buttock, until the popliteal fossa, at which point it splits into two terminal branches: the tibial nerve and the common fibular nerve. The sciatic nerve trunk innervates the muscles of the posterior compartment of the thigh.

Origin

The sciatic nerve is the only terminal branch of the sacral plexus. It is composed of the L4, L5, S1, S2 and S3 roots (Figure Sc1). It comes from the lumbosacral trunk, formed by the anterior ramifications of the L4 and L5 roots and of the anterior ramifications of the first three sacral roots (Figure Sc2). The lumbar roots unite in front of the sacroiliac joint, whilst the sacral roots unite in front of the piriformis muscle. The superior gluteal artery can be found between the lumbosacral trunk and the sacral roots. At its origin, the sciatic nerve faces the internal iliac vessels and the ureter in front.

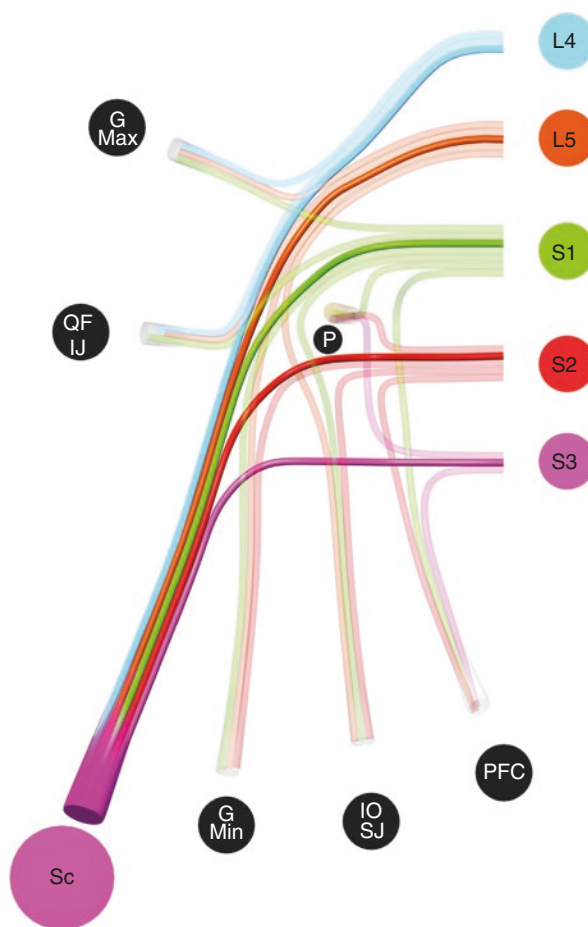
Path

After its roots merge together, the sciatic nerve goes out through the great sciatic notch and under the piriformis muscle and continues its way on the posterior face of the buttock (Figures Sc3, Sc6, Sc9 and Sc15). Then, it describes a concave curve medially and goes down vertically in the posterior territory of the thigh, in its median axis in the top of the thigh. A little lower, it turns medially until the middle of the popliteal fossa, where it splits into its terminal branches (Figure Sc2).

It emerges at the level of the buttock, under the deep face of the piriformis muscle and above the superior gemellus muscle. It is accompanied by the posterior femoral cutaneous nerve and by the posterior gluteal nerve behind, as well as the inferior rectal nerve, the obturator internus muscle and the internal pudendal pedicle medially. At this point, it faces the inferior gluteal artery medially (Figure Sc4). This artery gives off a collateral branch that follows the sciatic nerve and the accompanying artery of the sciatic nerve. The sciatic trunk goes between the greater trochanter on the outside and the ischial tuberosity on the inside.

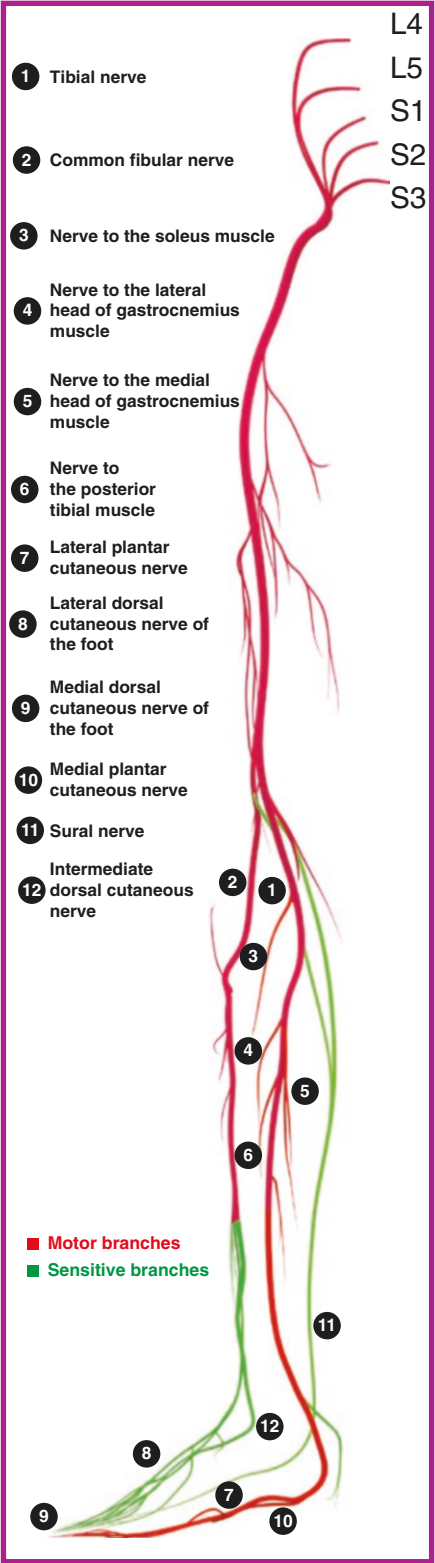
The landmark to access the nerve in the thigh is a vertical line drawn by taking a point halfway between the ischial tuberosity and the greater trochanter at the top and another point at the top of the diamond formed by the popliteal fossa at the bottom.

It is covered at the level of the buttock by the gluteus maximus muscle. In this area, the nerve goes behind the adductor magnus muscle. It then goes between the two heads of the biceps femoris muscle, with the short head in front and the long head behind (Figure Sc5). It then faces the two heads of this muscle laterally and the semitendinosus and semimembranosus muscles medially. The artery of the sciatic nerve follows the nerve in its path in the thigh, lying on its posterior side.



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

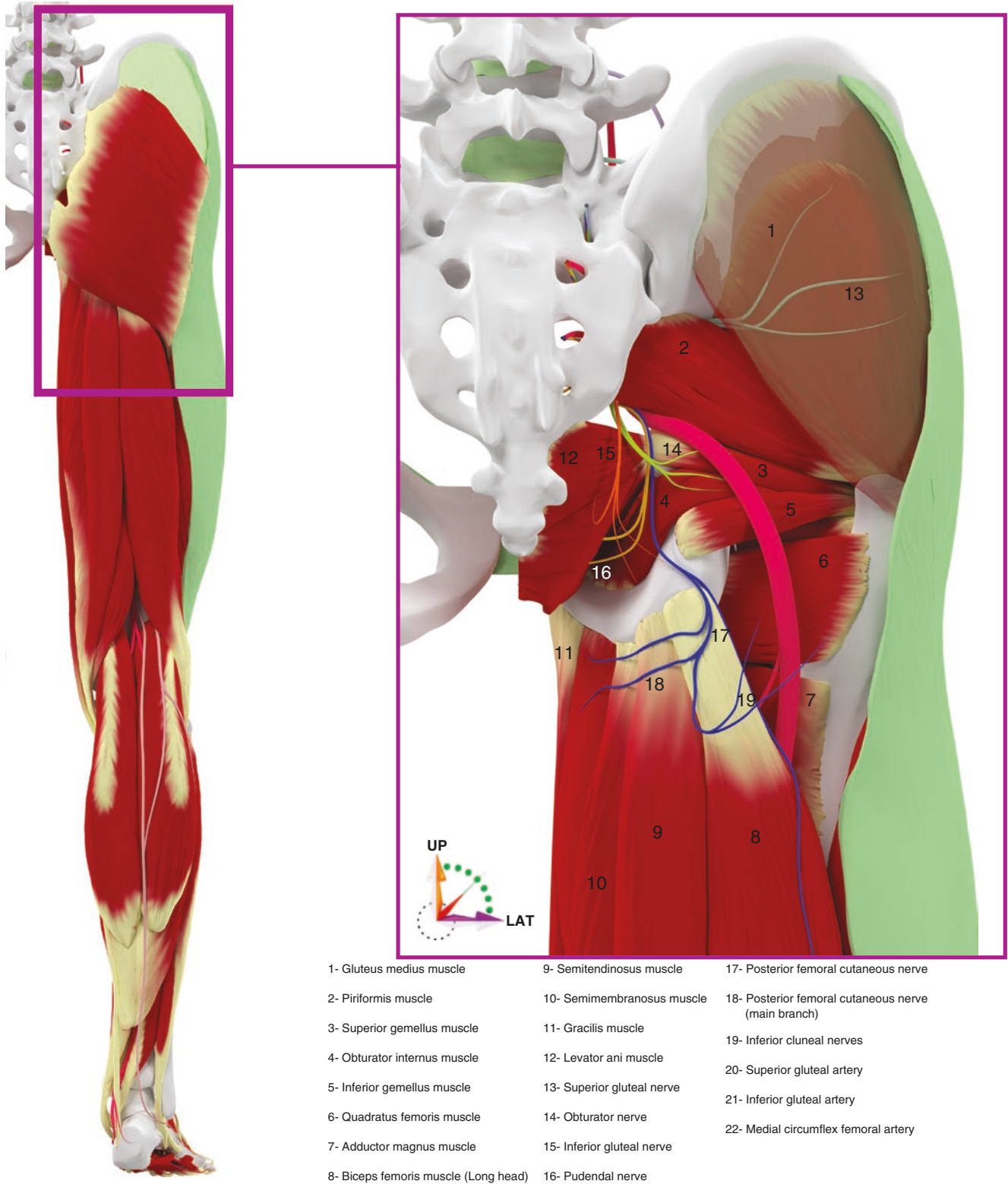
Figure Sc1. Origin of the sciatic nerve



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure Sc2. Topographical distribution of the collateral and terminal branches of the sciatic nerve and their relations with bones

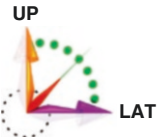
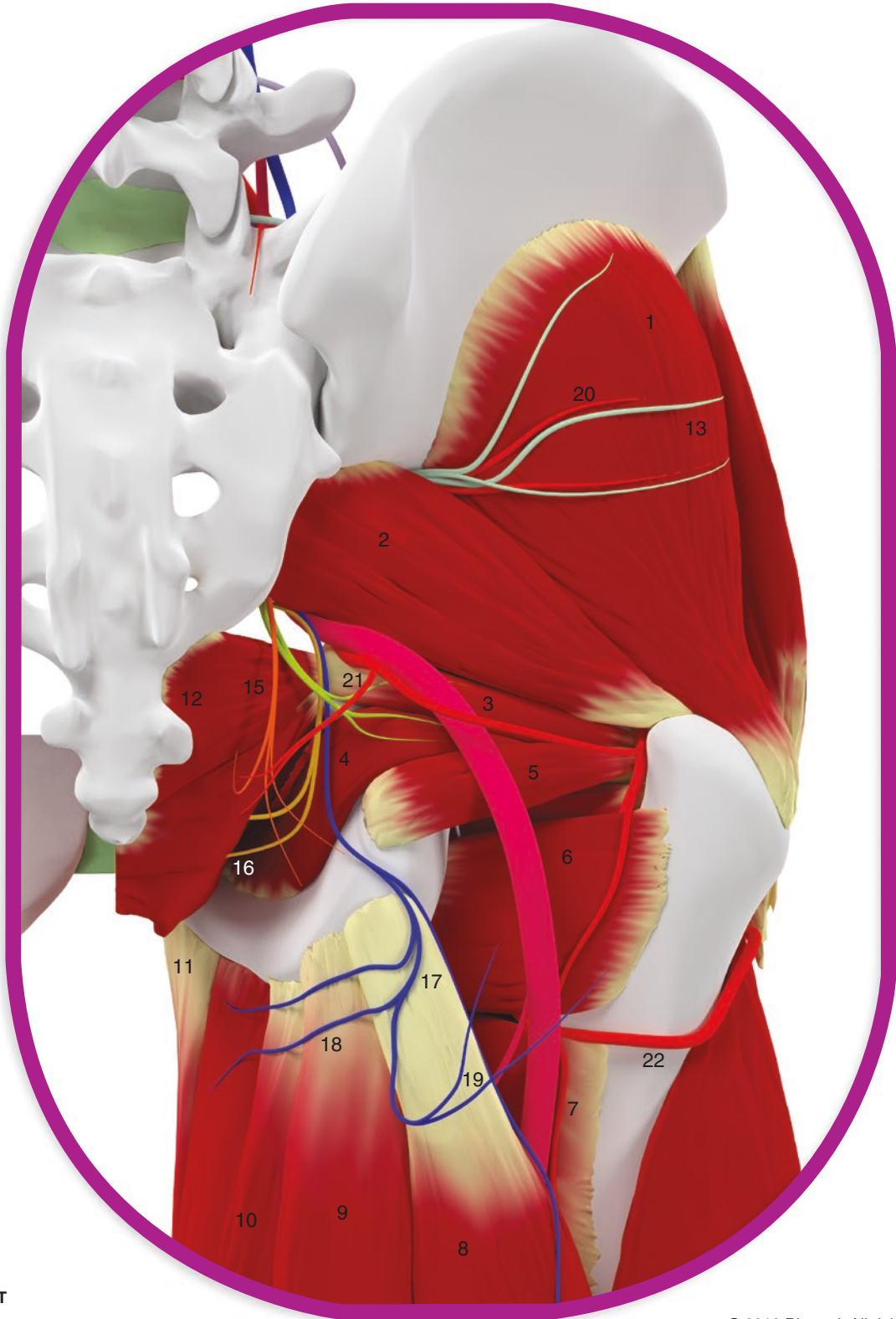
The Sciatic Nerve



- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|---|
| 1- Gluteus medius muscle | 9- Semitendinosus muscle | 17- Posterior femoral cutaneous nerve |
| 2- Piriformis muscle | 10- Semimembranosus muscle | 18- Posterior femoral cutaneous nerve (main branch) |
| 3- Superior gemellus muscle | 11- Gracilis muscle | 19- Inferior cluneal nerves |
| 4- Obturator internus muscle | 12- Levator ani muscle | 20- Superior gluteal artery |
| 5- Inferior gemellus muscle | 13- Superior gluteal nerve | 21- Inferior gluteal artery |
| 6- Quadratus femoris muscle | 14- Obturator nerve | 22- Medial circumflex femoral artery |
| 7- Adductor magnus muscle | 15- Inferior gluteal nerve | |
| 8- Biceps femoris muscle (Long head) | 16- Pudendal nerve | |

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

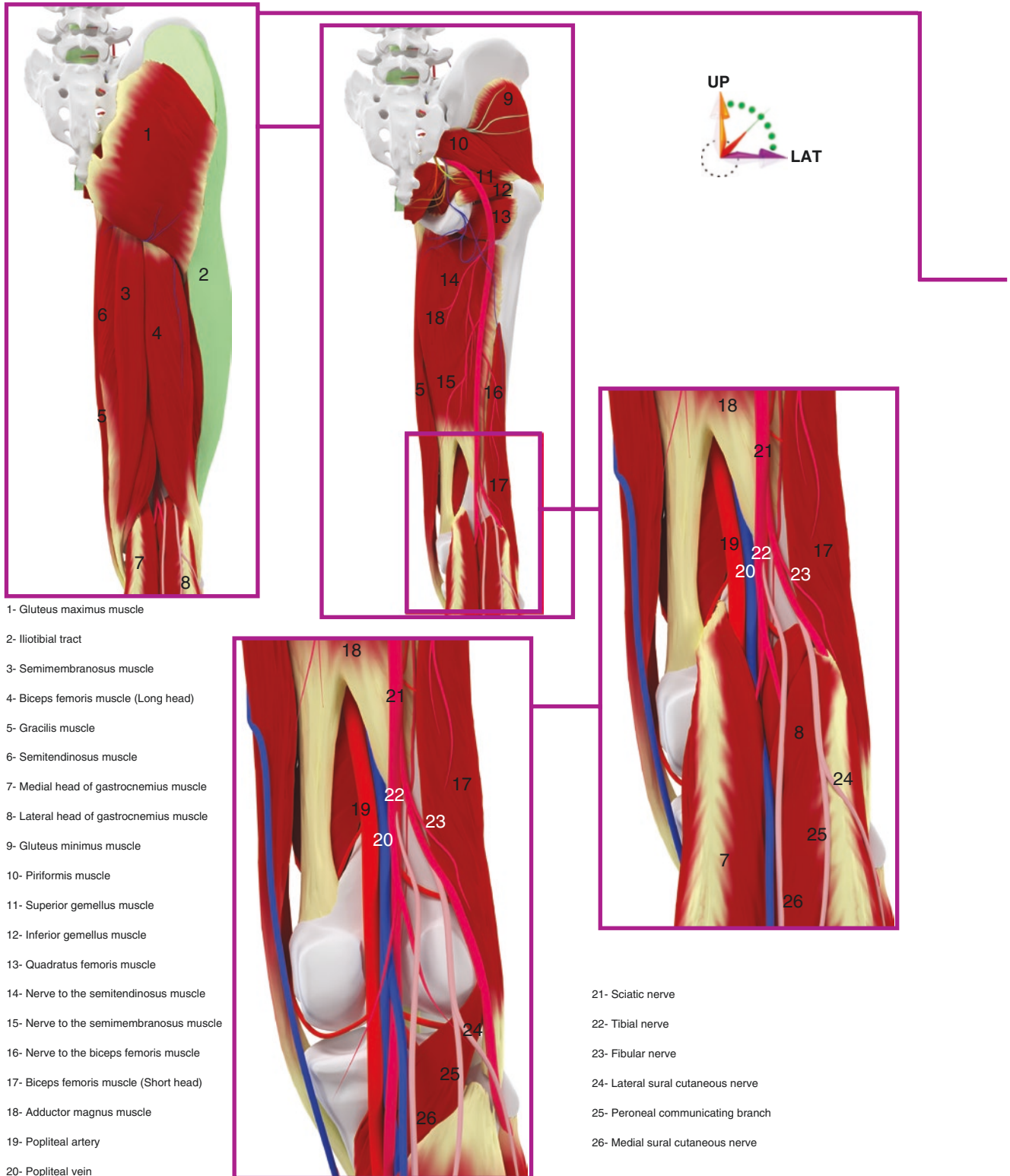
Figure Sc3. Muscular relations of the sciatic nerve and its collateral branches in the buttock



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

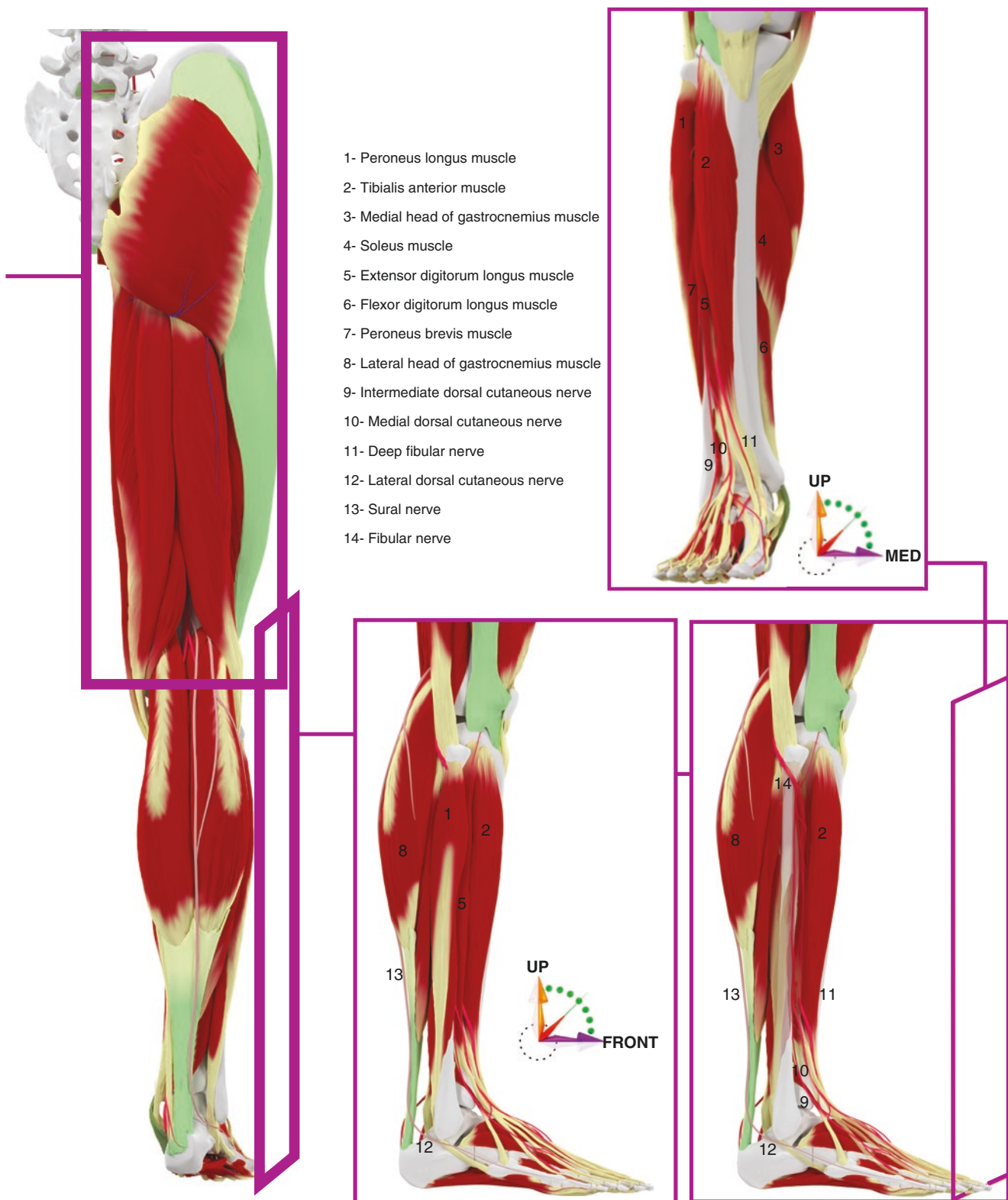
Figure Sc4. Neurovascular relations of the sciatic nerve's collateral branches and trunk in the buttock

The Sciatic Nerve



© 2016 Riguard. All rights reserved

Figure Sc5. Muscular relations of the sciatic nerve in the thigh and at the popliteal fossa



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure Sc6. Muscular relations of the sciatic nerve in the leg (lateral and anterior views)

The Sciatic Nerve

Finally, it passes above the heads of the gastrocnemius muscle, in the median axis of the popliteal fossa, where it gives off its terminal branches (Figure Sc5). In its terminal part, the sciatic nerve is accompanied by the femoral artery, which generally splits a few centimetres above the nerve's division.

Neurovascular Relations

At its origin, the sciatic nerve faces the internal iliac artery in front.

In the buttock, the sciatic nerve faces (Figures Sc3 and Sc4):

- The superior gluteal artery and nerves via the piriformis muscle above
- The inferior gluteal artery medially (formerly called sciatic artery) which then crosses the sciatic nerve in behind

In the thigh, the sciatic nerve is escorted by the accompanying artery of the sciatic nerve, which is a branch of the inferior gluteal artery (Figure Sc5).

At its terminal part, the nerve faces the popliteal artery medially, which passes under the adductor hiatus (Figure Sc5).

Collateral Branches

The sciatic nerve gives off many motor branches for the muscles of the posterior compartment of the thigh (Figure Sc5):

- The superior and inferior nerves of the semitendinosus muscle
- The nerve of the semimembranosus muscle, which it penetrates on its lateral side
- The nerve of the adductor magnus muscle
- A branch for each head of the biceps femoris muscle

And finally, an articular nerve for the posterior face of the knee joint.

Terminal Branches

In the popliteal fossa, the sciatic nerve splits into two terminal branches, the tibial nerve medially and the common fibular nerve laterally (Figure Sc2).

Motor Function

The sciatic nerve innervates the muscles of the posterior compartment of the thigh: the biceps femoris, semitendinosus, and semimembranosus and adductor magnus muscles (Figures Sc7 and Sc8).

It therefore takes charge of the flexion of the leg on the thigh and of the extension of the thigh on the buttock.

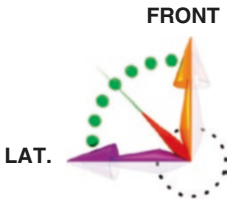
Through its terminal branches, it also takes charge of a large part of movements such as propulsion, stabilisation and dorsiflexion as well as foot inclination.

Sensitive Function

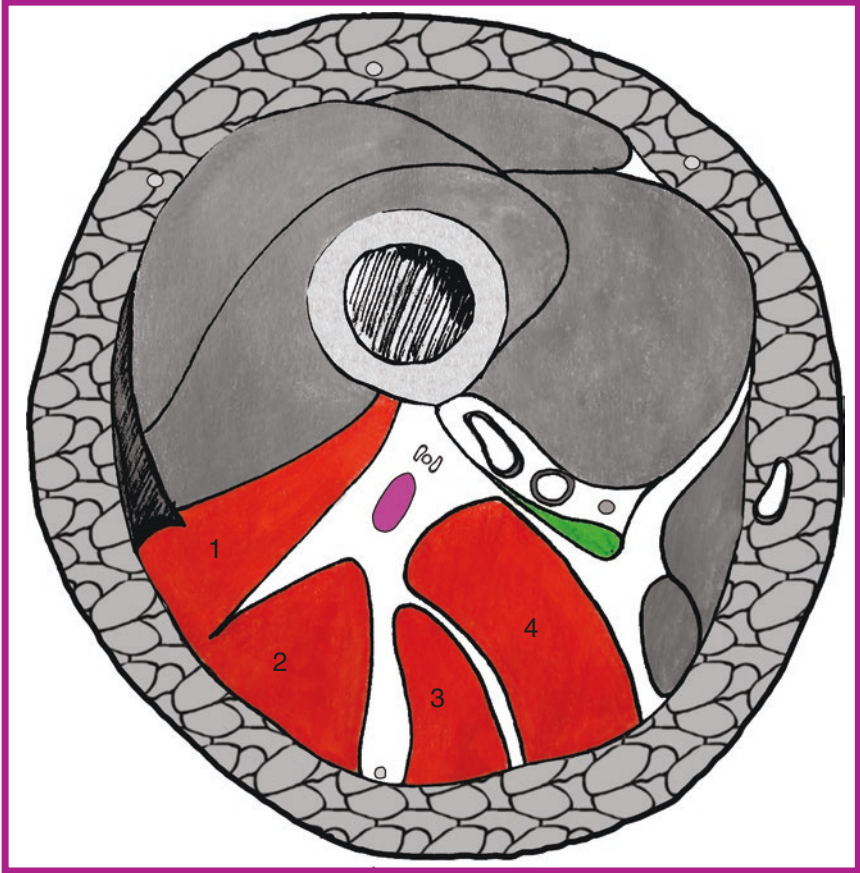
The sciatic nerve does not have its own sensitive territory. Its terminal branches take charge of the cutaneous innervation of the foot and of the lateral part of the leg (Figure Sc8). The tibial crest therefore represents the limit between these cutaneous territories and that of the saphenous nerve, in the medial part of the leg.

Anastomoses

The sciatic nerve makes anastomoses in its proximal part with the posterior femoral cutaneous nerve, at the beginning of its path outside of the pelvis.



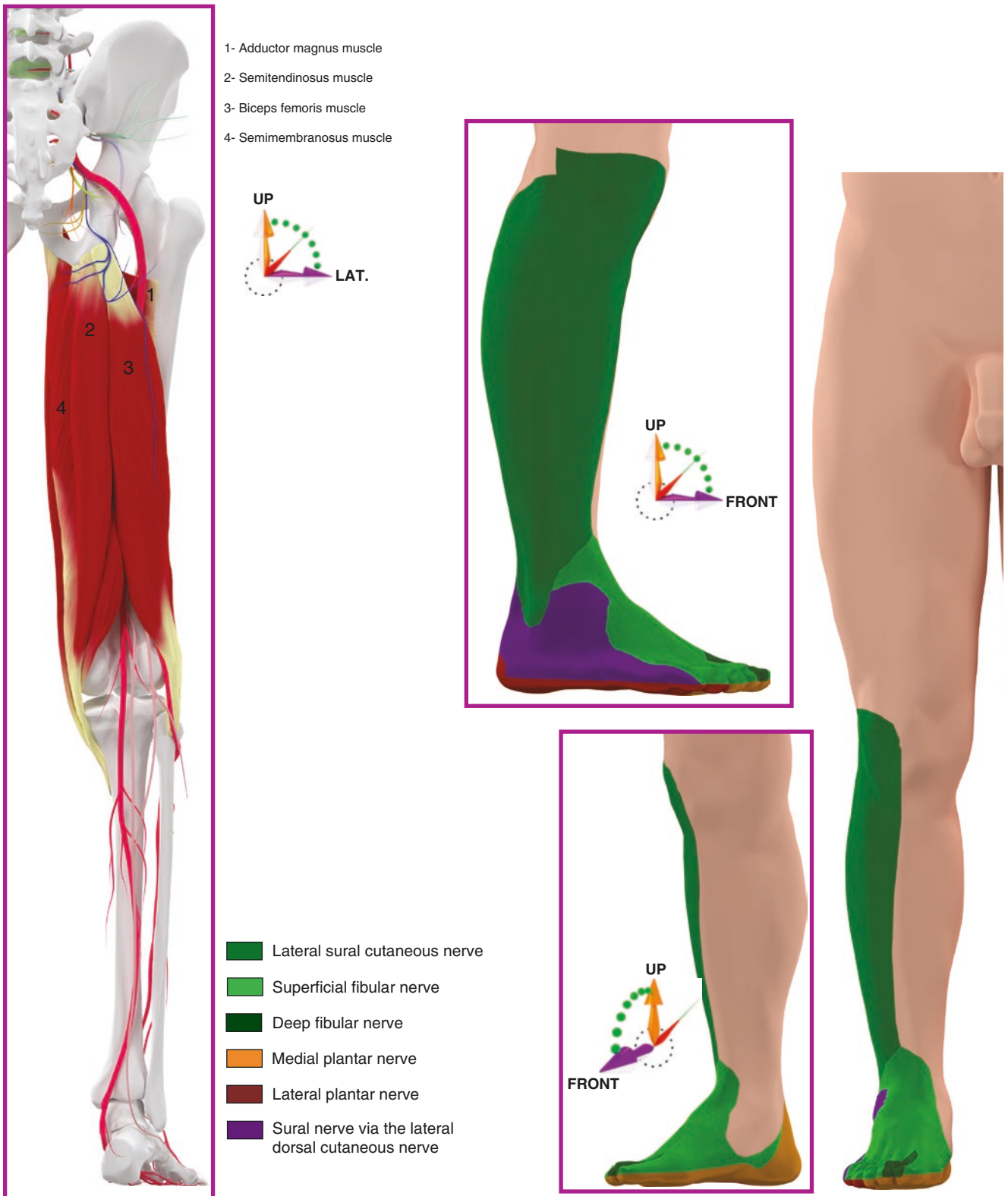
- 1- Biceps femoris muscle (short head)
- 2- Biceps femoris muscle (long head)
- 3- Semitendinosus muscle
- 4- Semimembranosus muscle



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure Sc7. Motor innervation of the sciatic nerve

The Sciatic Nerve

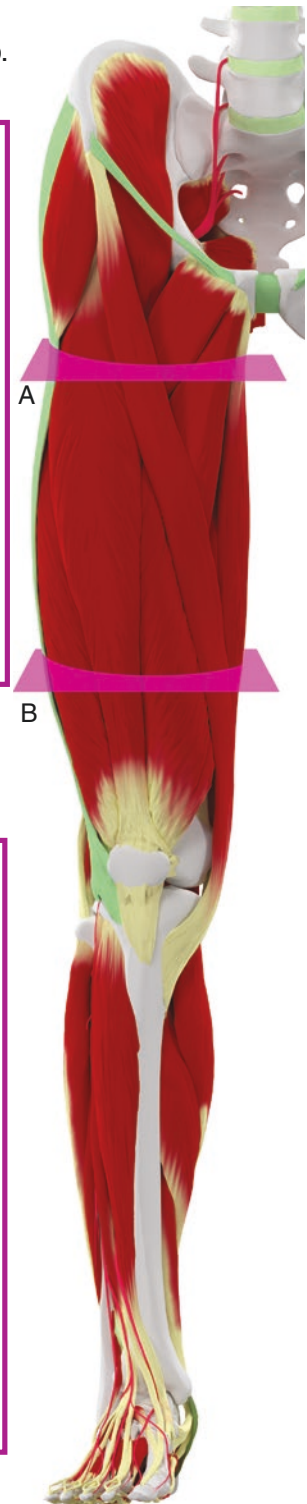
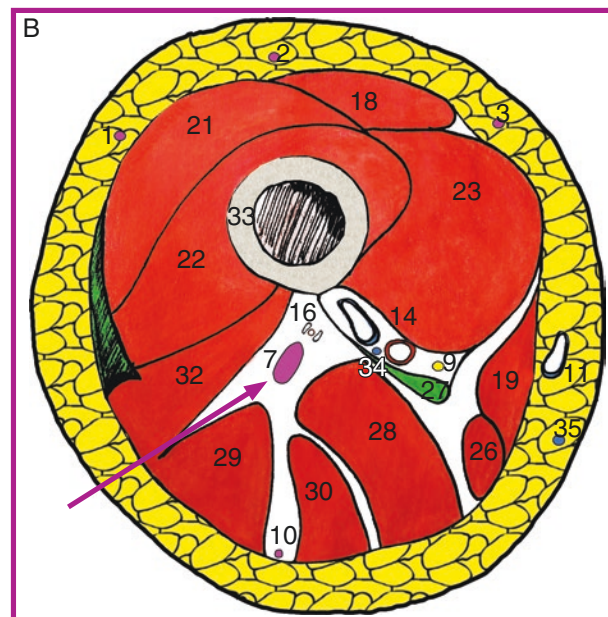
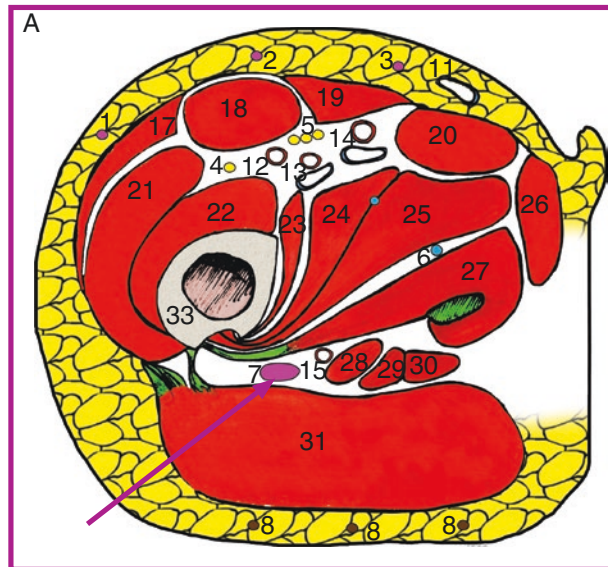
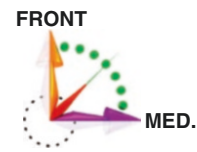


© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure Sc8. Motor and sensitive innervation of the sciatic nerve

- 1- Lateral femoral cutaneous nerve
- 2- Anterior cutaneous nerve of the thigh
- 3- Medial cutaneous nerve of the thigh
- 4- Nerve to the quadriceps muscle
- 5- Terminal branch of the femoral nerve
- 6- Branch of the obturator nerve
- 7- Sciatic nerve
- 8- Inferior cluneal nerves
- 9- Saphenous nerve
- 10- Posterior femoral cutaneous nerve
- 11- Great saphenous vein
- 12- Artery to the quadriceps muscle
- 13- Deep femoral artery and vein
- 14- Femoral artery and vein
- 15- Inferior gluteal artery
- 16- Deep branch of the deep femoral artery

- 17- Tensor fasciae latae muscle
- 18- Rectus femoris muscle
- 19- Sartorius muscle
- 20- Adductor longus muscle
- 21- Vastus lateralis muscle
- 22- Vastus intermedius muscle
- 23- Vastus medialis muscle
- 24- Pectineus muscle
- 25- Adductor brevis muscle
- 26- Gracilis muscle
- 27- Adductor magnus muscle
- 28- Semimembranosus muscle
- 29- Long head of the biceps femoris muscle
- 30- Semitendinosus muscle
- 31- Gluteus maximus muscle
- 32- Short head of the biceps femoris muscle
- 33- Femur
- 34- Obturator nerve (articular branch to the knee joint)
- 35- Obturator nerve (cutaneous branch)

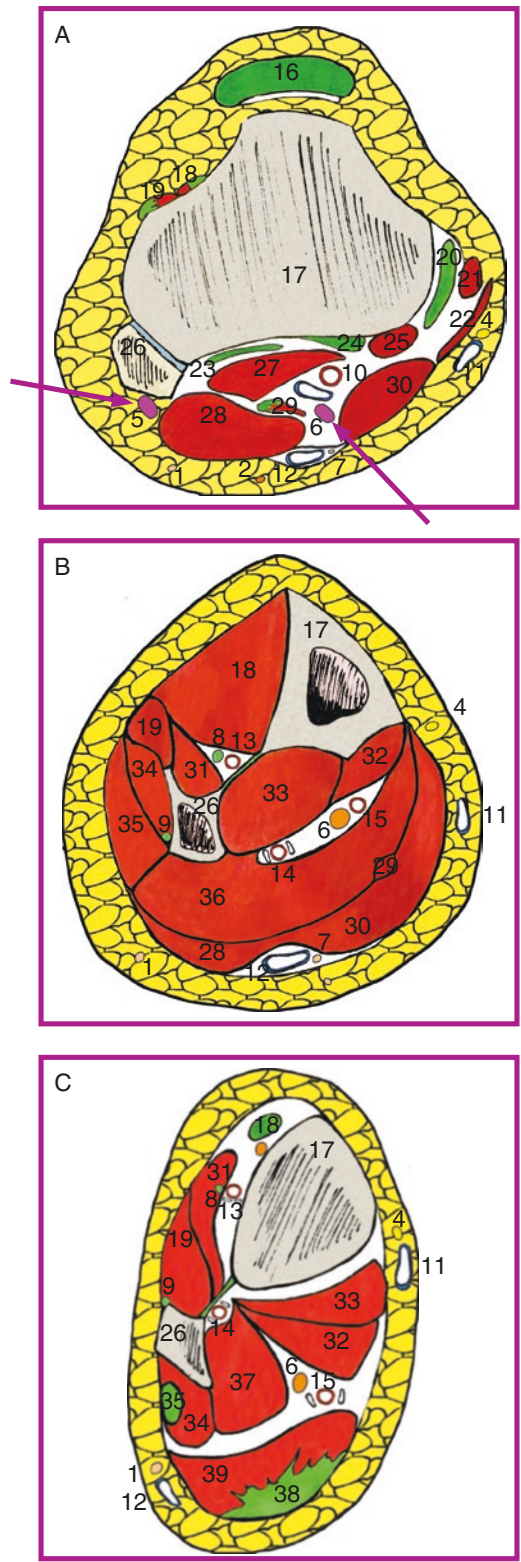


© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure Sc9. Relations of the sciatic nerve in the thigh, axial sections

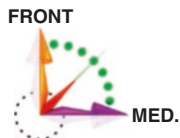
The Sciatic Nerve

- 1- Lateral sural cutaneous nerve
- 2- Peroneal communicating nerve
- 3- Medial sural cutaneous nerve
- 4- Saphenous nerve
- 5- Fibular nerve
- 6- Tibial nerve
- 7- Sural nerve
- 8- Deep fibular nerve
- 9- Superficial fibular nerve
- 10- Popliteal artery and vein
- 11- Great saphenous vein
- 12- Small saphenous vein
- 13- Anterior tibial artery
- 14- Fibular artery and vein
- 15- Posterior tibial artery
- 16- Patellar ligament of quadriceps femoris muscle
- 17- Tibia
- 18- Tibialis anterior muscle
- 19- Extensor digitorum longus muscle
- 20- Medial collateral ligament
- 21- Gracilis muscle
- 22- Sartorius muscle
- 23- Synovial bursa
- 24- Posterior cruciate ligament
- 25- Semimembranosus muscle
- 26- Fibula
- 27- Popliteus muscle
- 28- Lateral head of the gastrocnemius muscle
- 29- Plantaris muscle
- 30- Medial head of the gastrocnemius muscle
- 31- Extensor hallucis longus muscle
- 32- Flexor digitorum longus muscle
- 33- Posterior tibial muscle
- 34- Peroneus brevis muscle
- 35- Peroneus longus muscle
- 36- Soleus muscle
- 37- Flexor hallucis longus muscle
- 38- Calcaneal tendon
- 39- Triceps surae muscle

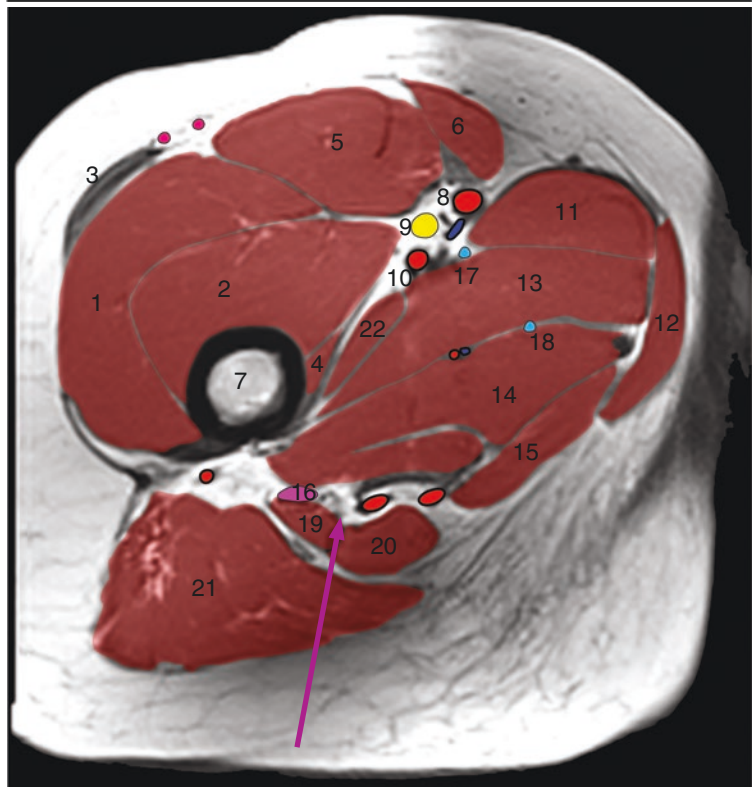


© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure Sc10. Relations of the sciatic nerve in the leg, axial section



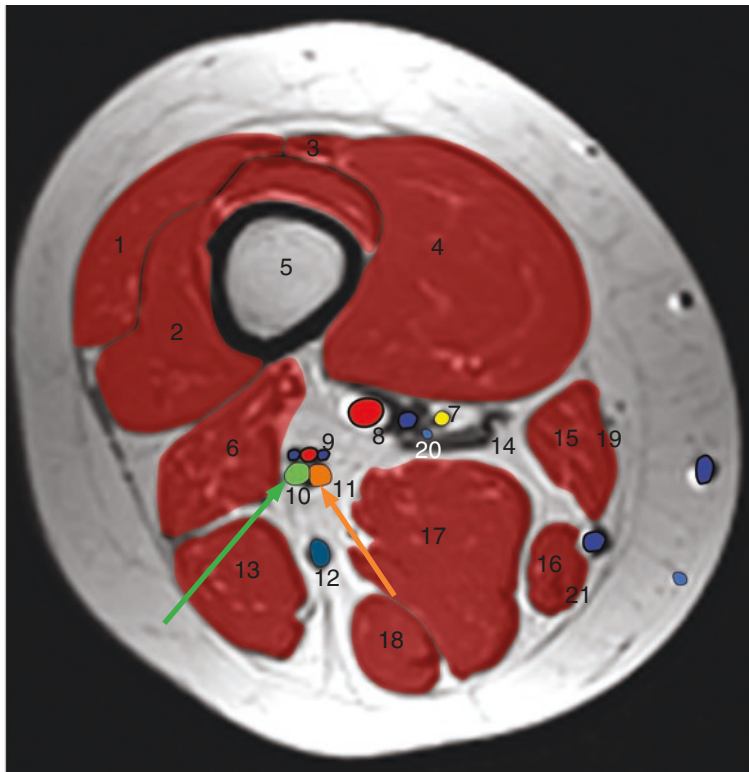
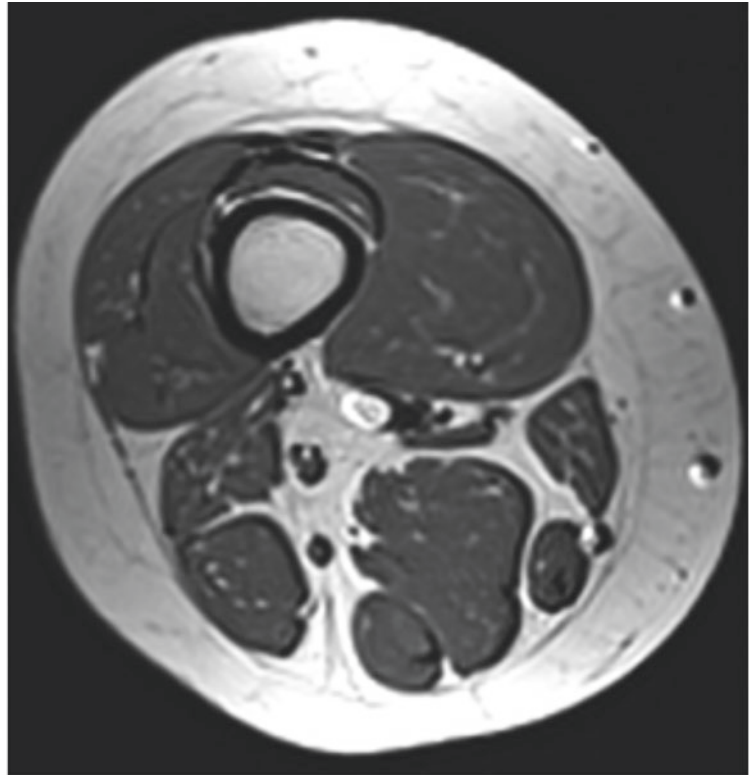
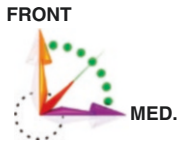
- 1- Vastus lateralis muscle
- 2- Vastus intermedius muscle
- 3- Tensor fasciae latae muscle
- 4- Vastus medialis muscle
- 5- Rectus femoris muscle
- 6- Sartorius muscle
- 7- Femur
- 8- Femoral artery and vein
- 9- Femoral nerve
- 10- Deep femoral artery and vein
- 11- Adductor longus muscle
- 12- Gracilis muscle
- 13- Adductor brevis muscle
- 14- Adductor magnus muscle
- 15- Semimembranosus muscle
- 16- Sciatic nerve
- 17- Anterior branch of the obturator nerve
- 18- Posterior branch of the obturator nerve
- 19- Tendon of the biceps femoris muscle
- 20- Tendon of the semitendinosus muscle
- 21- Gluteus maximus muscle
- 22- Pectineus muscle
- 23- Lateral femoral cutaneous nerve



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure Sc11. MRI scans at the proximal third of the thigh through the sciatic nerve and its terminal branches

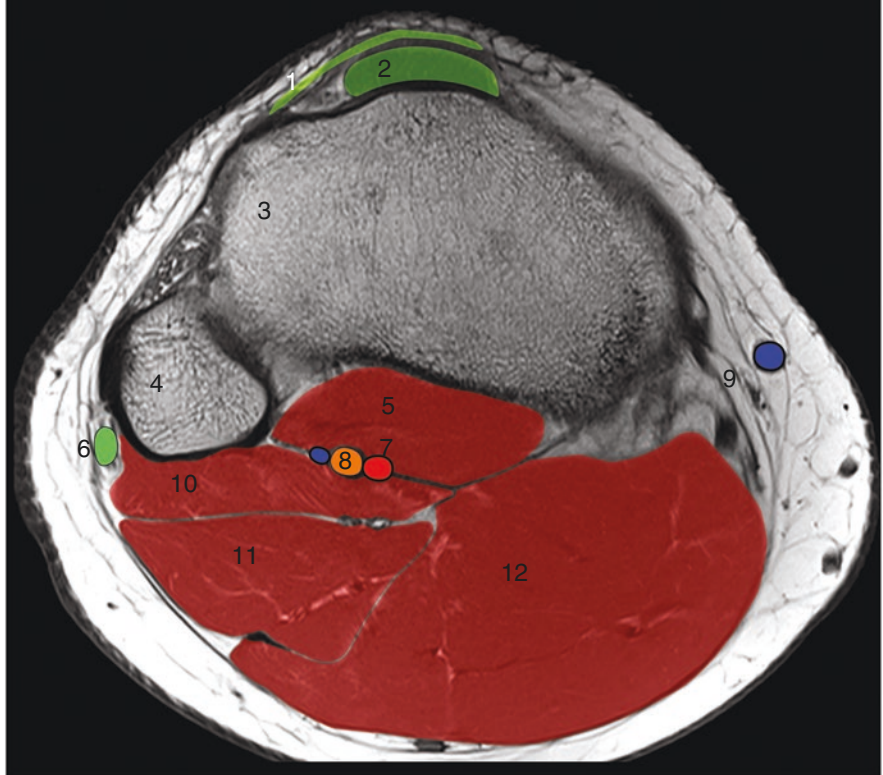
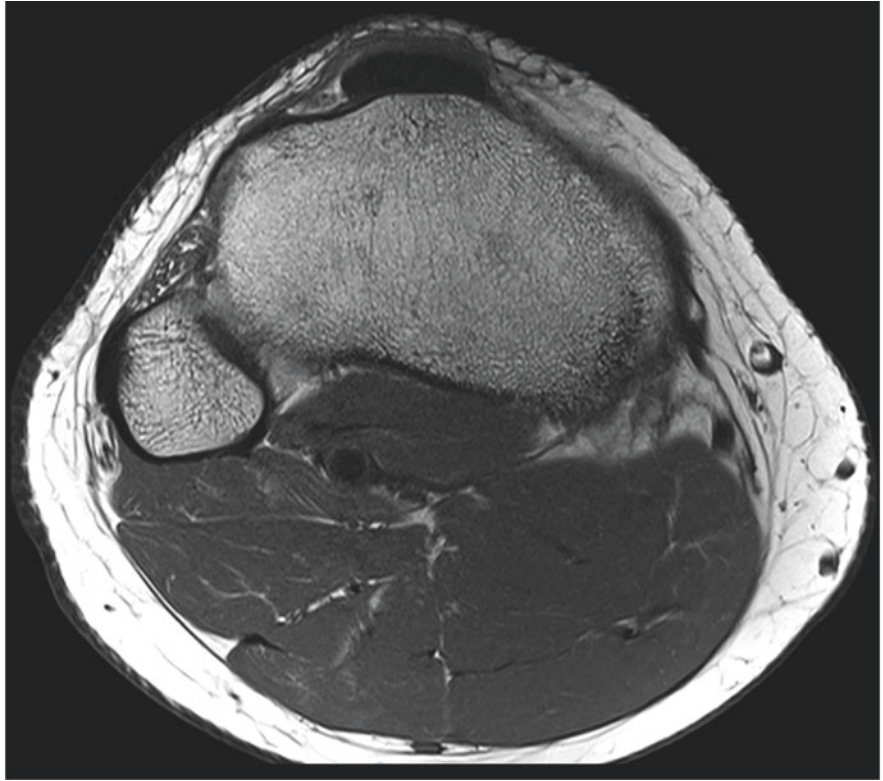
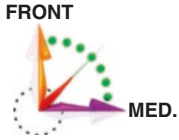
The Sciatic Nerve



- 1- Vastus lateralis muscle
- 2- Vastus intermedius muscle
- 3- Rectus femoris muscle
- 4- Vastus medialis muscle
- 5- Femur
- 6- Short head of the biceps femoris muscle
- 7- Saphenous nerve
- 8- Femoral artery and vein
- 9- Perforating artery and vein of the deep femoral artery and vein
- 10- Common fibular nerve
- 11- Tibial nerve
- 12- Posterior femoral cutaneous nerve
- 13- Long head of the biceps femoris muscle
- 14- Adductor magnus muscle
- 15- Sartorius muscle
- 16- Gracilis muscle
- 17- Semimembranosus muscle
- 18- Semitendinosus muscle
- 19- Great saphenous vein
- 20- Obturator nerve (articular branch to the knee joint)
- 21- Obturator nerve (cutaneous branch)

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure Sc12. MRI scans at the distal third of the thigh through the sciatic nerve and its terminal branches

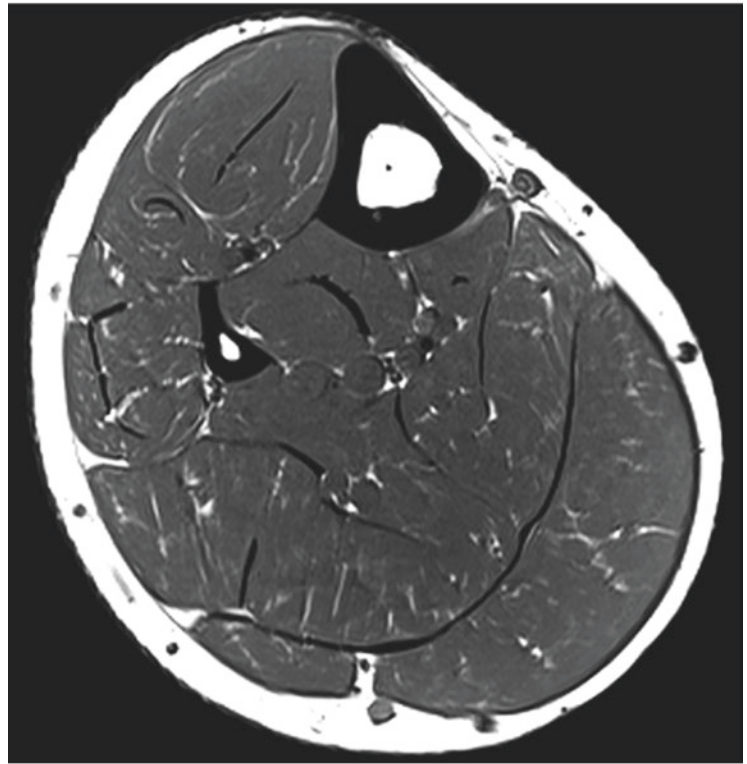
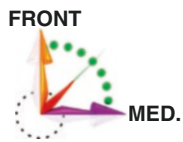


- 1- Patellar ligament
- 2- Deep infrapatellar bursa
- 3- Tibia
- 4- Fibula
- 5- Popliteus muscle
- 6- Common fibular nerve
- 7- Posterior tibial artery and vein
- 8- Tibial nerve
- 9- Great saphenous vein
- 10- Soleus muscle
- 11- Lateral head of gastrocnemius muscle
- 12- Medial head of gastrocnemius muscle

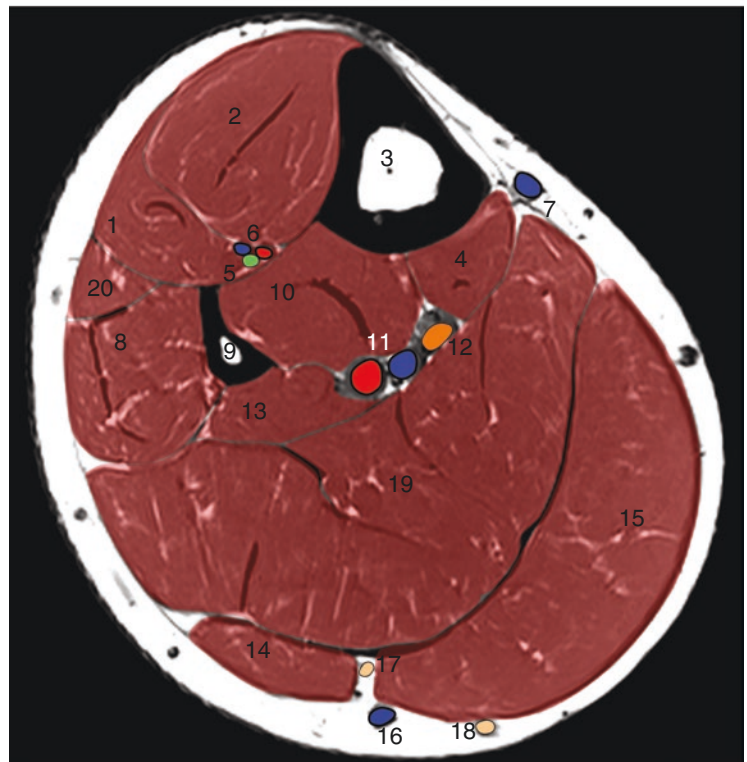
© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure Sc13. MRI scans at the proximal third of the leg through the sciatic nerve and its terminal branches

The Sciatic Nerve

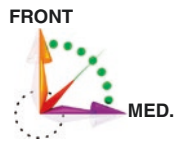


- 1- Extensor digitorum longus muscle
- 2- Tibialis anterior muscle
- 3- Tibia
- 4- Flexor digitorum longus muscle
- 5- Deep fibular nerve
- 6- Anterior tibial artery and vein
- 7- Great saphenous vein
- 8- Peroneus longus and brevis muscles
- 9- Fibula
- 10- Posterior tibial muscle
- 11- Posterior tibial artery and vein
- 12- Tibial nerve
- 13- Flexor hallucis longus muscle
- 14- Lateral head of gastrocnemius muscle
- 15- Medial head of gastrocnemius muscle
- 16- Small saphenous vein
- 17- Medial sural cutaneous nerve
- 18- Sural nerve
- 19- Soleus muscle
- 20- Extensor hallucis longus muscle

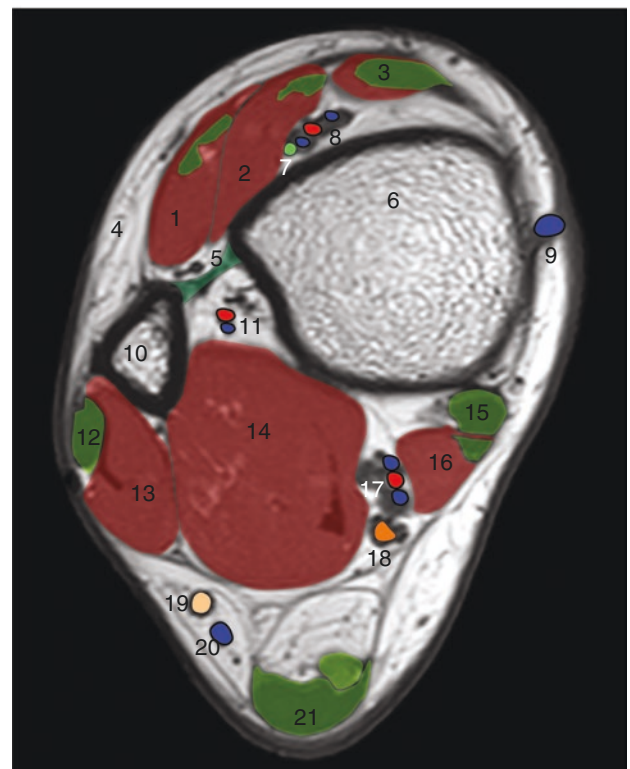
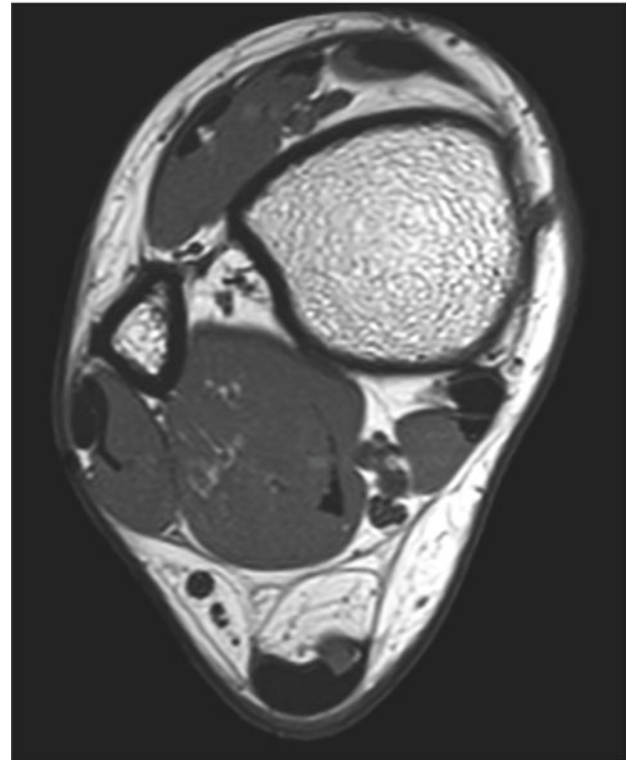


© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure Sc14. MRI scans at the distal third of the leg through the sciatic nerve and its terminal branches



- 1- Extensor digitorum longus muscle
- 2- Extensor hallucis longus muscle
- 3- Tendon of the tibialis anterior muscle
- 4- Superficial fibular nerve
- 5- Interosseous membrane
- 6- Tibia
- 7- Deep fibular nerve
- 8- Anterior tibial artery and vein
- 9- Great saphenous vein
- 10- Fibula
- 11- Fibular artery and vein
- 12- Tendon of the peroneus longus muscle
- 13- Peroneus brevis muscle
- 14- Flexor hallucis longus muscle
- 15- Tendon of the posterior tibial muscle
- 16- Flexor digitorum longus muscle
- 17- Posterior tibial artery and vein
- 18- Tibial nerve
- 19- Sural nerve
- 20- Small saphenous vein
- 21- Tendons of the triceps surae and plantaris muscles



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure Sc15. MRI scans in the ankle through the sciatic nerve and its terminal branches

Pathology

The sciatic nerve is the terminal branch of the sacral plexus. It goes out of the pelvis between the pyramidalis and superior gemellus muscles and then goes down on the posterior face of the thigh until the popliteal fossa, where it divides into its two terminal branches, the tibial and common fibular nerves (Figure Sc2).

In the thigh, it does not have its own sensitive function, but it innervates the muscles of the posterior compartment of the thigh (Figures Sc7 and Sc8). It takes charge of the flexion of the leg on the thigh, of the extension of the thigh on the torso and of the foot's mobility.

Aetiology

- Compression: multiple events can cause compression of the sciatic nerves, amongst which pregnancy and injuries caused by tumours are noteworthy.
- Section: truncal injuries of the sciatic nerve generally occur outside of the lesser pelvis. Iatrogenic complications can occur during an intramuscular injection in the buttock near the position of the nerve.
- Traction/stretching: particularly in cases of posterior dislocation of the hip or related to the dislocation itself or as an iatrogenic complication during its reduction (Figure Sc16).

Femoral fractures where the two parts of the bone are out of alignment (displaced fracture) and rather far from each other can cause an injury of the sciatic trunk either because of direct stress or because of stretching (Figure Sc17).

Clinical Significance

The clinical signs can evoke an L5 or S1 leg pain.

- Sensitive signs: they concern a direct injury of the nerve. Hypoesthesia affects the territories of the terminal branches of the sciatic nerve, which are the lateral face of the leg, and the territory of the fibular nerve and the foot. The pain is often localised in the buttock or at the

compression point. The fact that the pain worsens at night can suggest an ischial bursitis.

- Motor signs: these can concern the muscles of the leg that are innervated by the terminal branches of the sciatic nerve, or those directly innervated by it in the thigh. A deficit of all the muscles of the posterior compartment of the thigh, of the leg or even of the foot can then be noticed according to the injury's level of seriousness. The extension of the thigh on the torso, the flexion of the leg on the thigh and dorsiflexion of the foot can suffer from a deficit.

Clinical Forms

- Piriformis syndrome: the piriformis muscle can make contact with the posterior cutaneous nerve of the thigh and the sciatic nerve. The posterior cutaneous nerve of the thigh is the first to be affected, and the pain often only goes down to the popliteal fossa.
- Obturator internus syndrome: the compression occurs where the nerve goes between the obturator internus and piriformis muscles, a point where the pudendal nerve can also be affected. The pain can then invade the territory of the pudendal nerve in a concomitant manner.

Complementary Examinations

- An MRI of the speculated compression area can be very informative by searching for a very frequently found extrinsic cause, after clinical orientation.
- An electroneuromyography will objectify the electrophysiological injury of the nerve.

Treatment

If there is no expansive process, the first treatment would be medical, associating a treatment of the pain with physiotherapy and analgesic medication, and then eventually resorting to corticosteroid injections. Surgery is only rarely adopted.

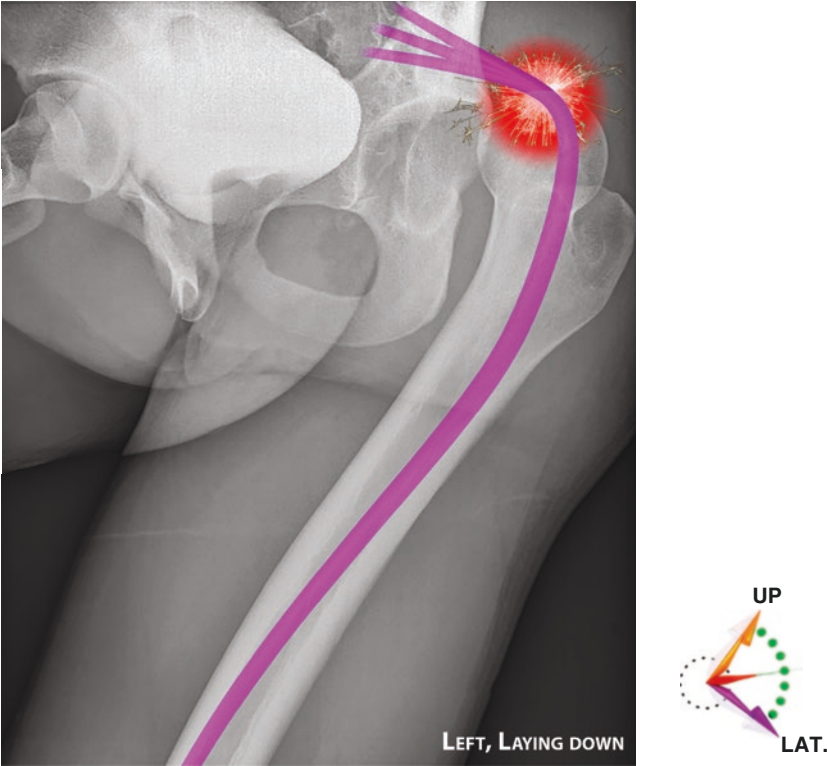
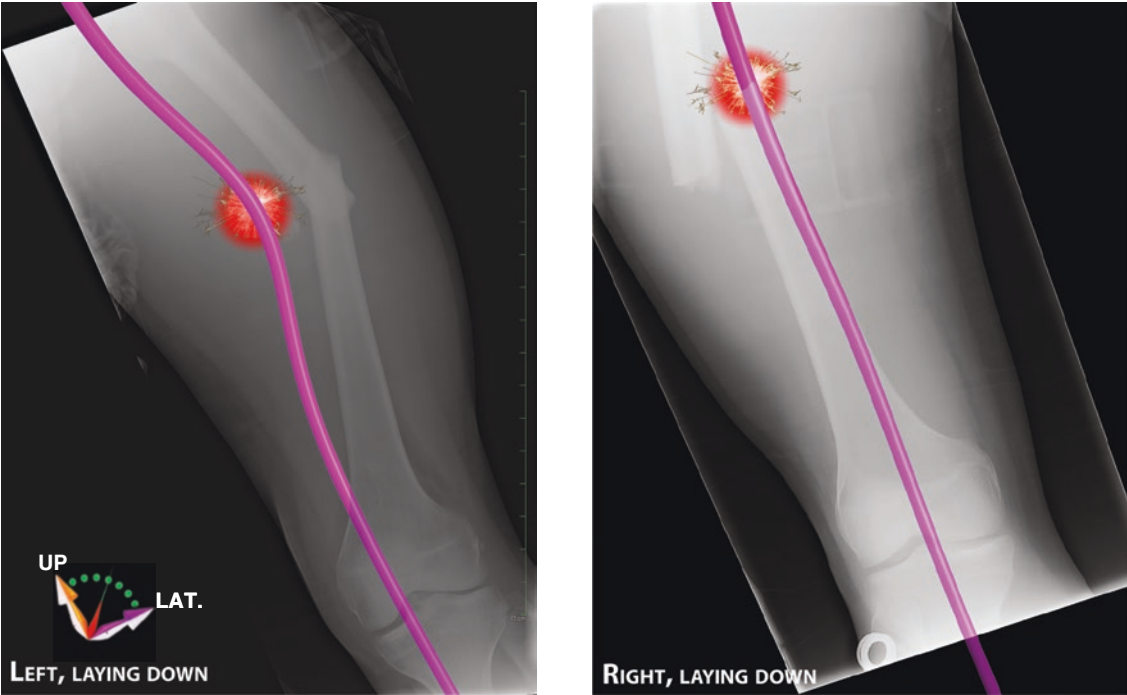


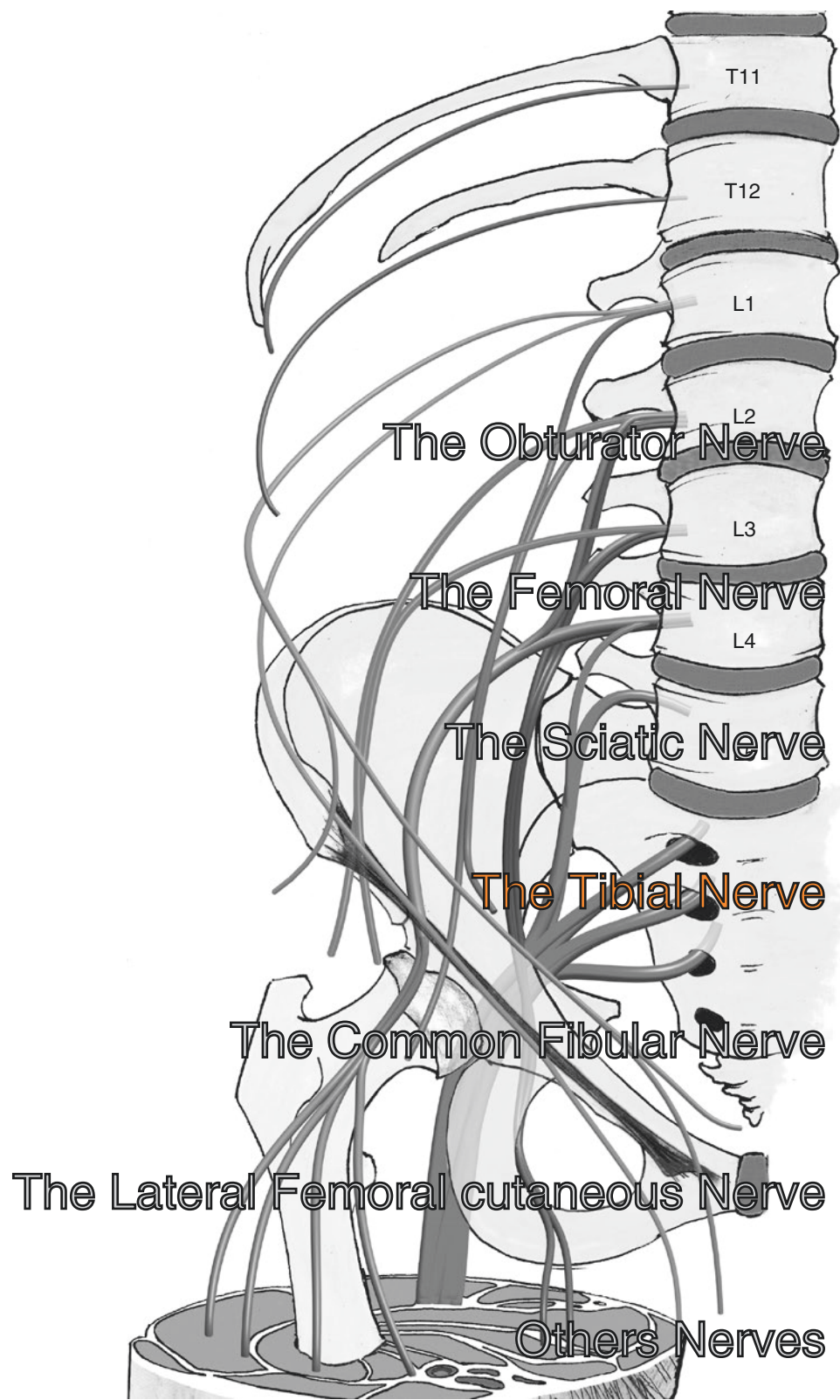
Figure Sc16. Traumatic posterior dislocation of the hip, which can injure the trunk of the sciatic nerve (stretch or direct injury)



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure Sc17. Diaphyseal femur fracture with neurological signs





© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Morphological Data

The tibial nerve is a mixed nerve and the main and medial terminal branch of the sciatic nerve. It innervates the muscles of the posterior compartment of the leg and the plantar face of the foot whilst going behind the medial malleolus.

Origin

The tibial nerve is the most voluminous terminal branch of the sciatic nerve. It is constituted of the same roots as this nerve: L4, L5, S1, S2 and S3 (Figures T1 and T2). It begins at the upper angle of the popliteal fossa. At this level, it faces the fibular nerve laterally, which is the lateral terminal branch of the sciatic nerve (Figure T2).

Path

In the popliteal fossa, it goes down vertically, medially related to the popliteal vein then to the popliteal artery (Figures T3, T4 and T5). This neurovascular pedicle is enclosed by a muscular embedment (Figure T3). This coat has the shape of a diamond, delimited by:

- Above and medially: the semitendinosus and semimembranosus muscles
- Above and laterally: the biceps femoris muscle
- Below and medially: the medial head of the gastrocnemius muscle
- Below and laterally: the lateral head of the gastrocnemius muscle

It then penetrates into the posterior compartment of the leg, going in front of the tendinous arch of the soleus muscle and then lying against the interosseous membrane, thus forming the posterior tibial neurovascular bundle (Figure T5). It faces the soleus muscle in behind and, above this area, the crural fascia below and faces in succession the tibialis posterior and the flexor digitorum longus muscles in front.

In the ankle, the tibial nerve is situated inside the calcaneal tendon and then under the posterior tibial artery, behind the medial malleolus (Figure T6).

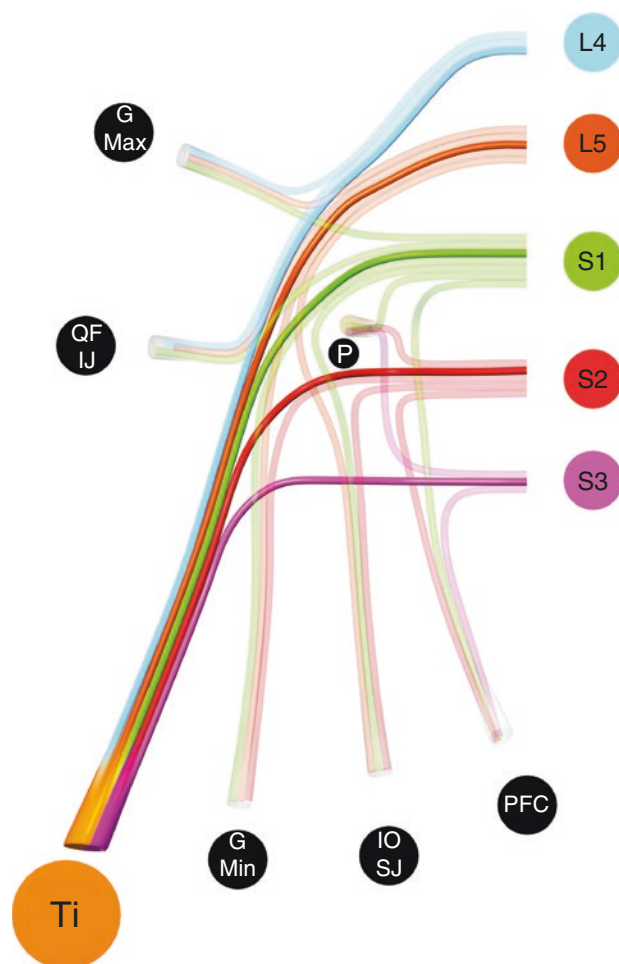
At this level, the neurovascular pedicle is surrounded by the tendon of the flexor digitorum longus muscle in front and by the tendon of the flexor hallucis longus muscle behind. These two tendons and the posterior tibial pedicle are maintained in the ankle by the flexor retinaculum, the insertion of which is

on the medial malleolus of the tibia above and on the medial face of the calcaneus below (Figures T7 and T8).

In the inferior part of this path, the tibial nerve separates into two terminal branches: the medial and lateral plantar nerves (Figures T10, T11, T12 and T13).

Neurovascular Relations

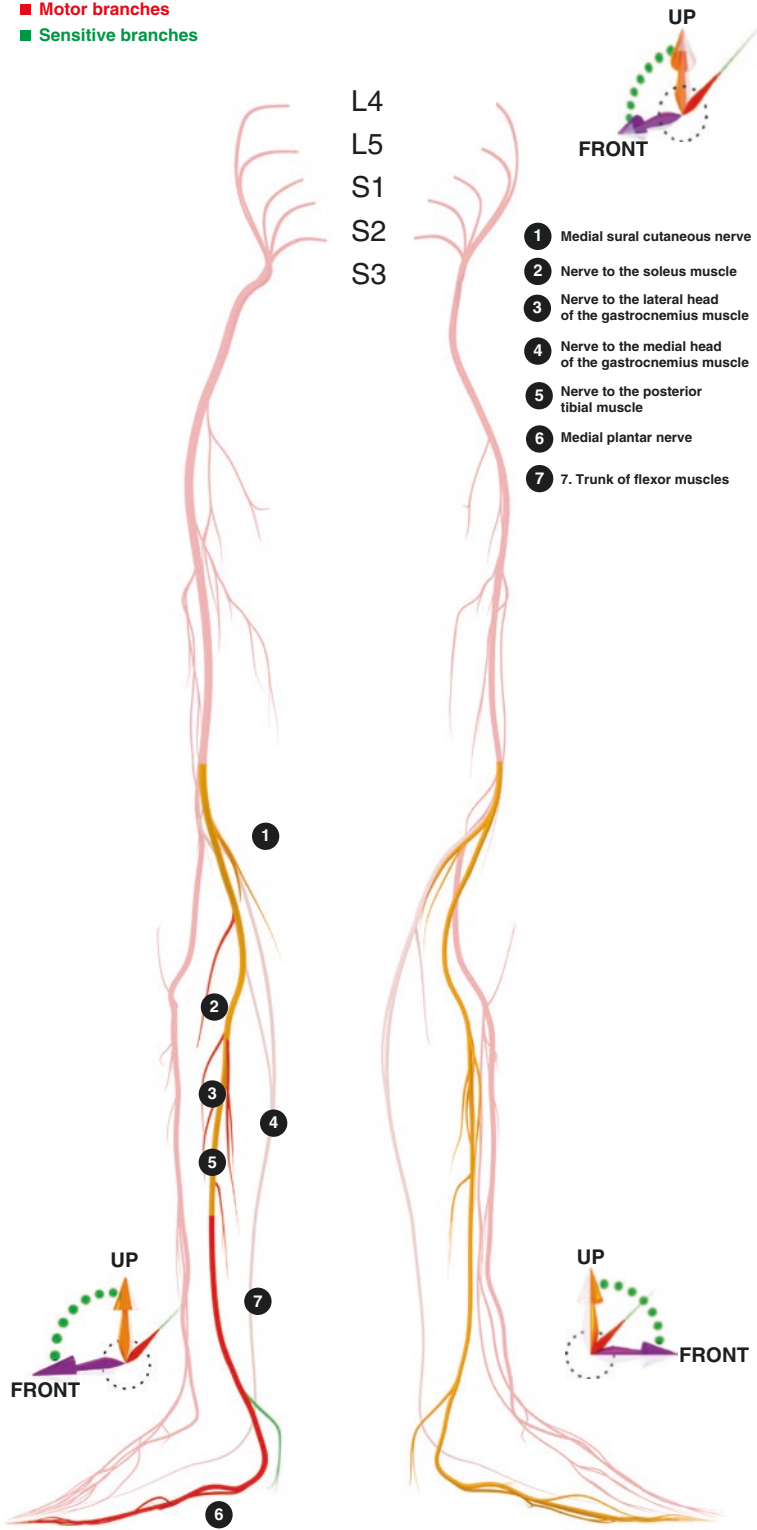
In the popliteal fossa, the tibial nerve faces the popliteal artery medially, albeit a little more superficial because this artery lies against the posterior side of the tibial plateau and faces it through the intermediary of the popliteus muscle (Figure T5).



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure T1. Origin of the tibial nerve, branch of the sciatic nerve

■ Motor branches
■ Sensitive branches



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

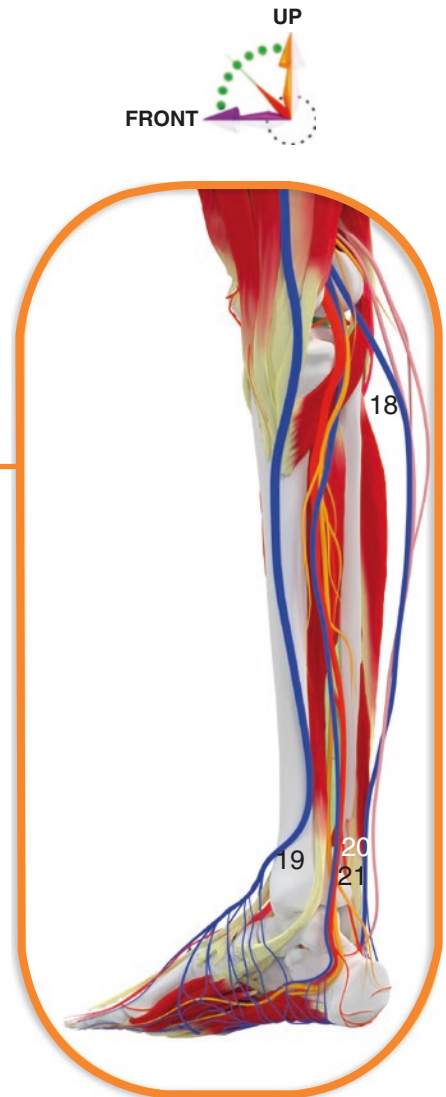
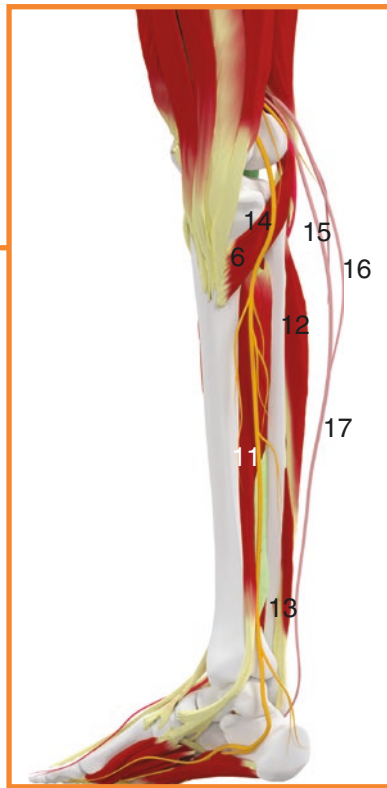
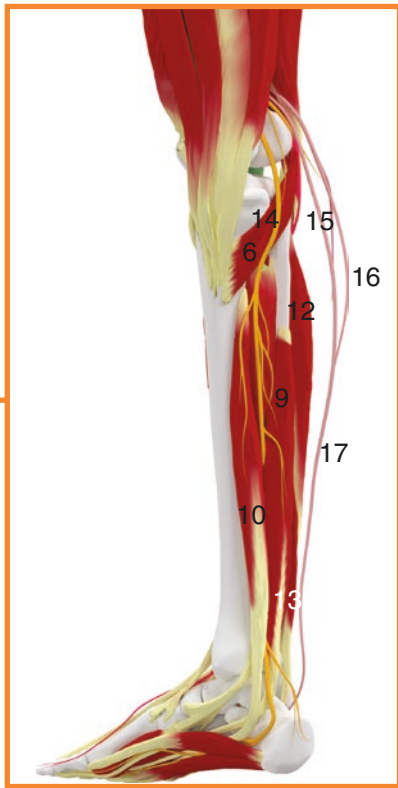
Figure T2. Topographical distribution of the tibial nerve and its relations with bones

The Tibial Nerve



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

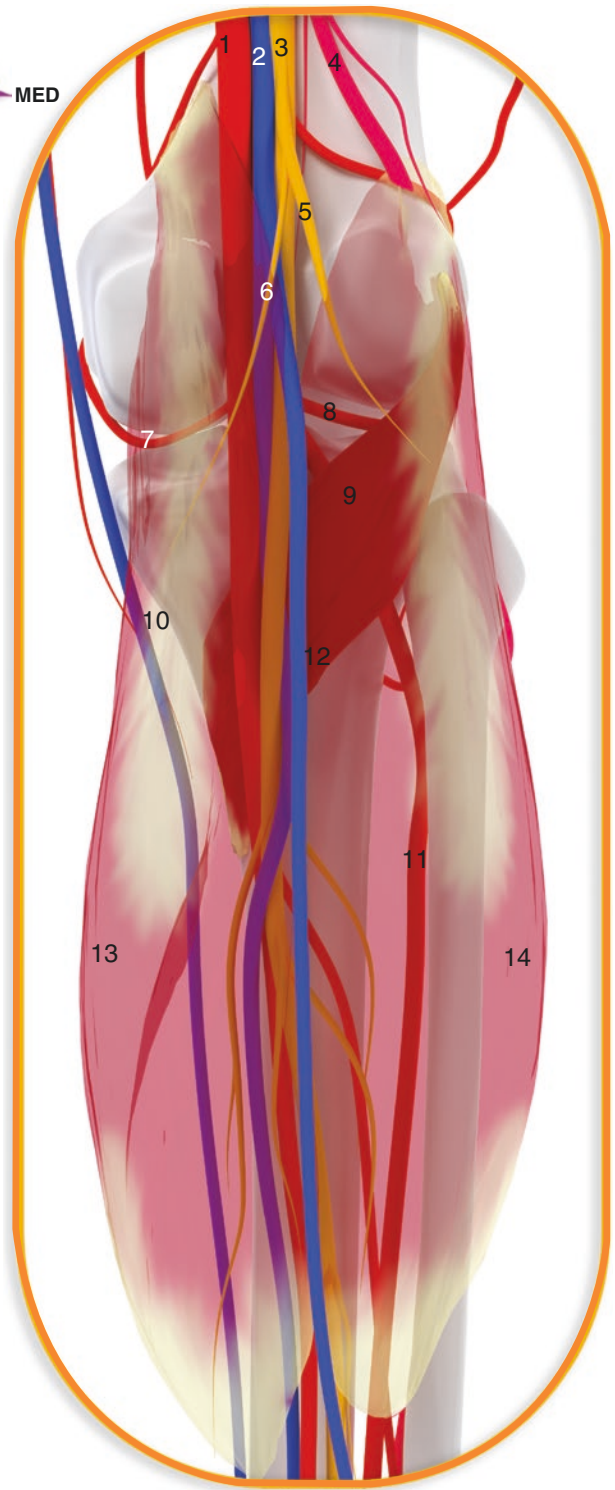
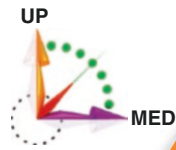
Figure T3. Muscular relations of the tibial nerve in the calf and ankle (from superficial to deep)



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure T4. Neurovascular and muscular relations of the tibial nerve in the calf and ankle (from superficial to deep)

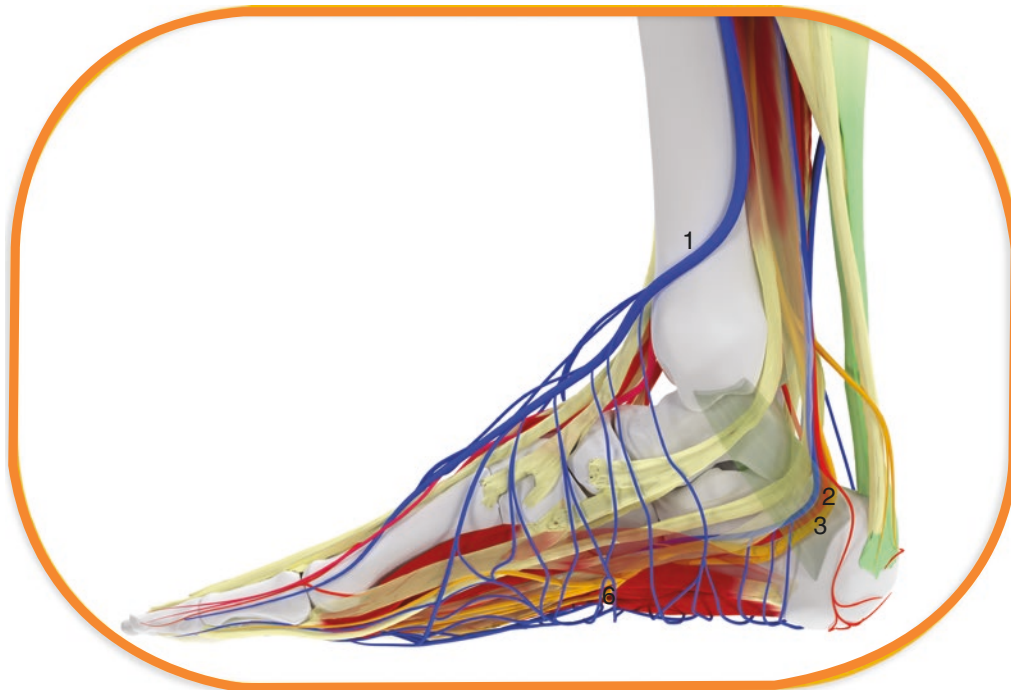
The Tibial Nerve



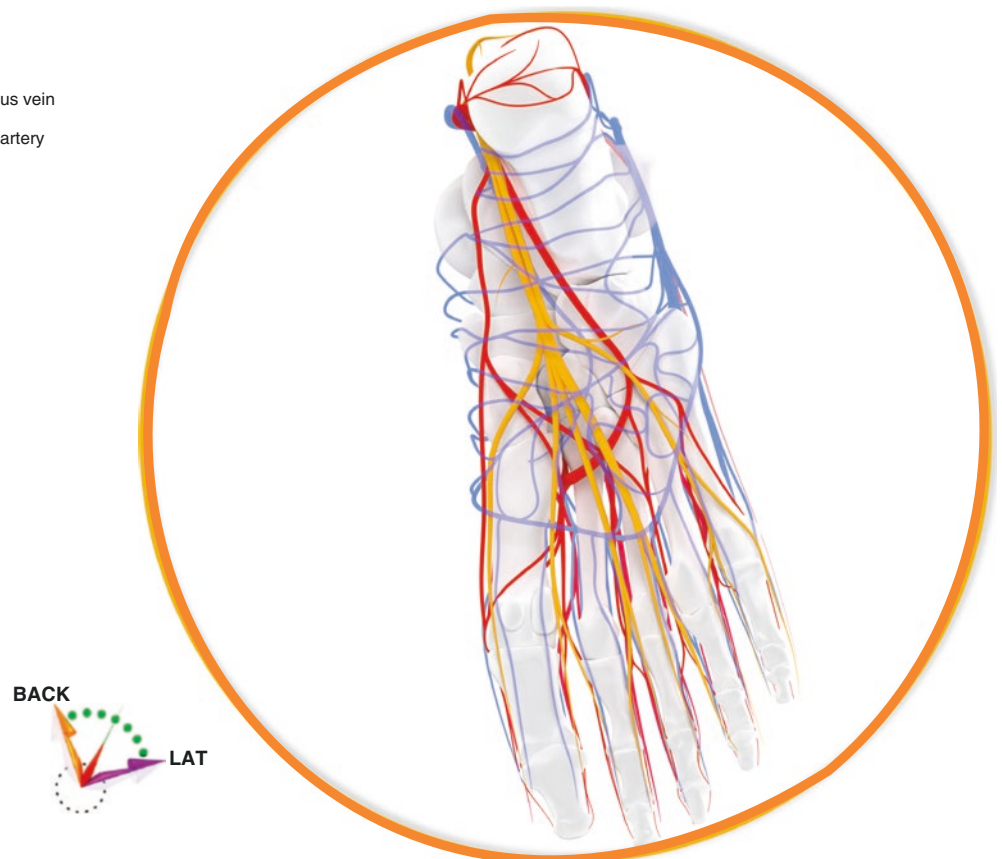
- | | |
|--|--|
| 1- Popliteal artery | 8- Lateral inferior genicular artery |
| 2- Popliteal vein | 9- Popliteus muscle |
| 3- Tibial nerve | 10- Great saphenous vein |
| 4- Fibular nerve | 11- Fibular artery |
| 5- Nerve to the lateral head of the gastrocnemius muscle | 12- Small saphenous vein |
| 6- Nerve to the medial head of the gastrocnemius muscle | 13- Medial head of gastrocnemius muscle |
| 7- Medial inferior genicular artery | 14- Lateral head of gastrocnemius muscle |

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure T5. Neurovascular relations of the tibial nerve in the popliteal fossa



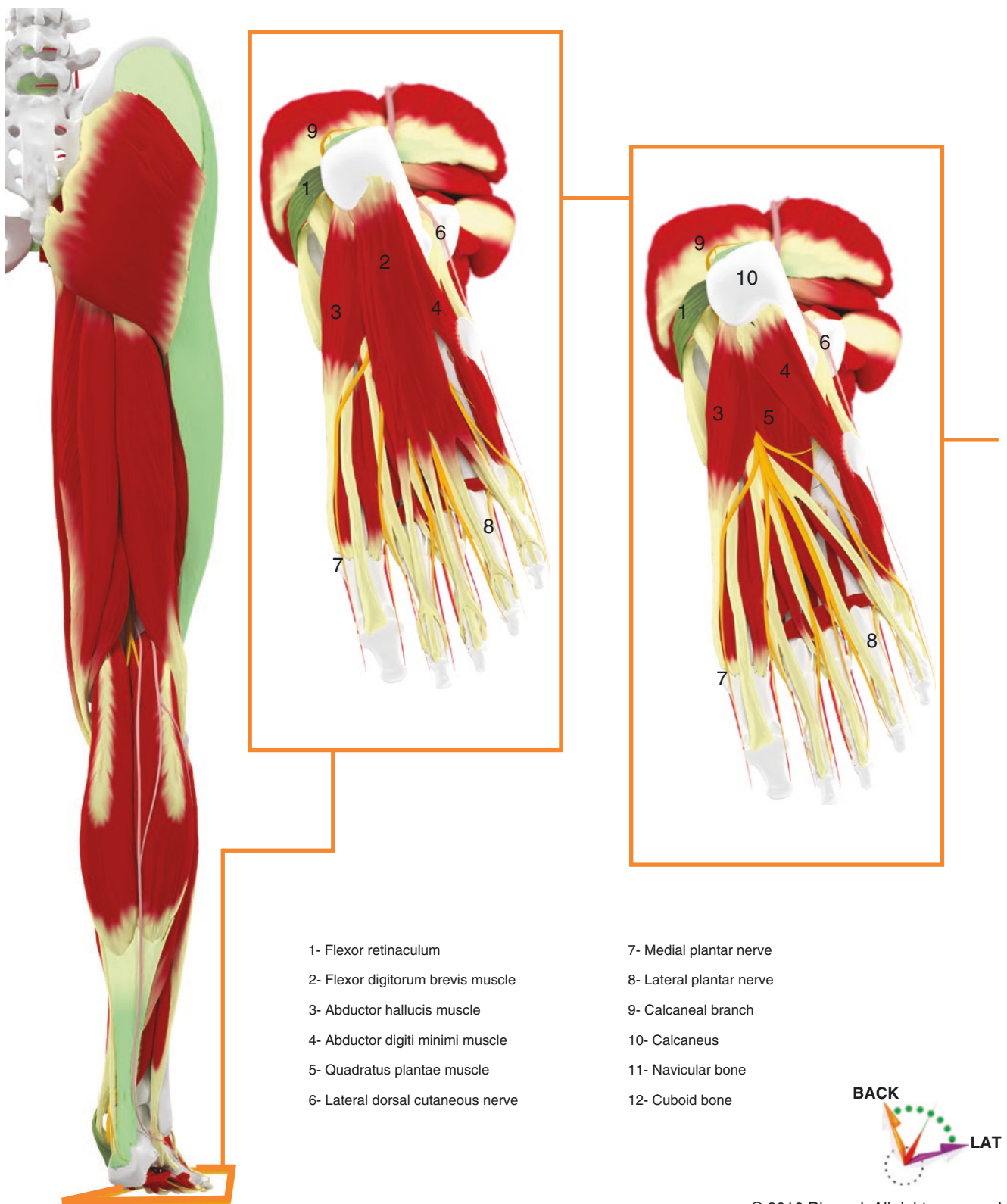
- 1- Great saphenous vein
- 2- Posterior tibial artery
- 3- Tibial nerve



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

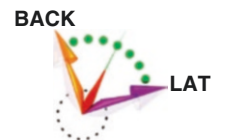
Figure T6. Neurovascular relations of the tibial nerve in the foot (median and inferior views)

The Tibial Nerve



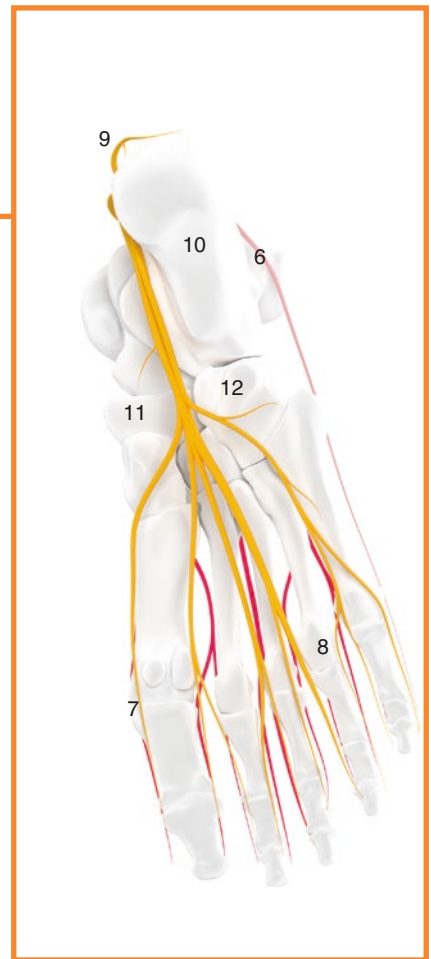
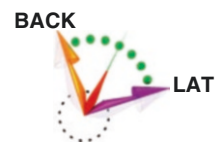
- 1- Flexor retinaculum
- 2- Flexor digitorum brevis muscle
- 3- Abductor hallucis muscle
- 4- Abductor digiti minimi muscle
- 5- Quadratus plantae muscle
- 6- Lateral dorsal cutaneous nerve

- 7- Medial plantar nerve
- 8- Lateral plantar nerve
- 9- Calcaneal branch
- 10- Calcaneus
- 11- Navicular bone
- 12- Cuboid bone



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure T7. Muscular relations of the tibial nerve in the foot (inferior view, from superficial to deep)



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure T8. Muscular relations of the tibial nerve in the foot (inferior view, from superficial to deep)

The Tibial Nerve

In the leg, the tibial nerve is situated behind and laterally related to the posterior tibial artery and its veins.

Under the medial malleolus, the tibial nerve faces the posterior tibial artery above (Figure T6).

Collateral Branches

The tibial nerve gives off several types of collateral branches (Figure T2):

- Muscular branches for the muscles that it innervates: the soleus muscle, the plantaris muscle, the medial and lateral heads of the gastrocnemius muscles, the popliteus muscle, the tibialis posterior muscle, the flexor digitorum longus and the flexor hallucis longus muscles (Figure T4)
- Articular branches for the posterior face of the knee and the medial face of the tibiotarsal joint
- Sensitive branches for the innervation of the teguments (Figures T4 and T9)

Amongst the sensitive branches, one noteworthy branch is the medial sural cutaneous nerve. This branch can merge with a lateral or a fibular branch in order to form the sural nerve (Figure T4). This nerve goes down and along the calcaneal tendon laterally in order to innervate the lateral edge of the foot through its terminal branch, the lateral dorsal digital nerve of the fifth toe. It can also split into three dorsal digital nerves to innervate the dorsal and lateral face of the fourth toe and the medial and lateral face of the fifth toe.

Terminal Branches

The tibial nerve divides into the lateral and medial plantar nerves under the medial malleolus and behind the flexor retinaculum (Figure T8). The plantar nerves then run in the plantar area, where they are first covered by the abductor hallucis muscle and the flexor digitorum brevis (Figures T7 and T8). The medial and lateral plantar arteries are situated between these two nerves. The former crosses the medial plantar nerve from above and distally.

The medial plantar nerve goes in front and laterally under the tendons of the flexor digitorum longus muscle (Figures T7 and T8). It gives off three muscular branches for the muscles that it innervates: the abductor hallucis, the flexor digitorum brevis and flexor hallucis brevis muscles. It also gives off the medial and lateral plantar digital nerves of the hallux and of the second, third and fourth toes. The innervation of the fourth toe can also be partially managed by the sural nerve.

The lateral plantar nerve goes ahead in front and laterally. It is crossed from below by the lateral plantar artery, which positions itself laterally. It is covered above by the muscle that it

innervates, the quadratus plantae muscle, and below by the flexor digitorum brevis. At the level of the fifth metatarsal, the lateral plantar nerve splits into its two terminal branches:

- The superficial branch goes towards the front and gives off muscular branches for the flexor brevis digiti minimi, opponens digiti minimi and abductor digiti minimi muscles and cutaneous branches for the lateral plantar face of the little toe and the fourth interosseous space with the fourth common plantar digital nerve.
- The deep branch is more medial and goes towards the front to innervate the muscles of the plantar interosseous spaces: the lumbrical muscles, the plantar interossei muscles, the dorsal interossei muscles and the adductor hallucis muscle.

Motor Function

Thanks to its collateral and terminal branches, the tibial nerve takes charge of the innervation of all the muscles of the posterior compartment of the leg (Figures T4 and T9): the tibialis posterior, the flexor digitorum longus and flexor hallucis longus as well as all the muscles of the plantar face of the foot – the flexor digitorum brevis, the lumbricals, the plantar interossei, the flexor digiti minimi brevis, the opponens digiti mini, the abductor digiti minimi and adductor hallucis. It is therefore responsible for the adduction, inversion, eversion and extension of the foot as well as the flexion, adduction and abduction of the toes.

Sensitive Function

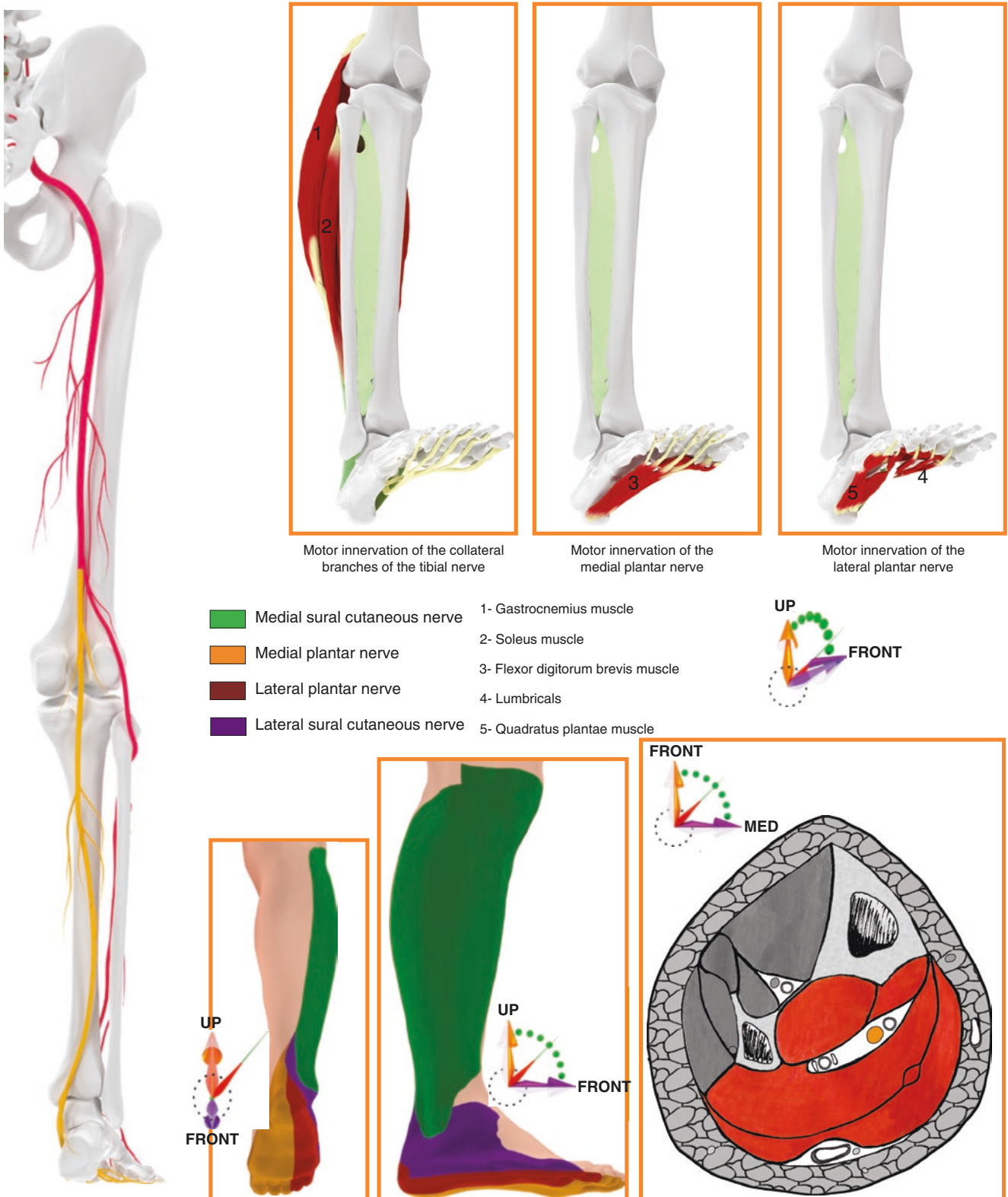
The sensitive function of the tibial nerve is managed by its terminal branches, the medial and lateral plantar nerves, and by the tibial branch of the sural nerve (Figure T9).

The sural nerve innervates the inferior part of the posterolateral face of the leg, under the territories of the posterior femoral cutaneous nerve and the lateral sural cutaneous nerves. This territory extends until the lateral edge of the foot and the fifth toe.

The plantar nerves take charge of the whole sensitive innervation of the plantar face of the foot. The separation between their territories is generally situated at the level of the fourth toe. This distribution is similar to that of the innervation of the palmar face of the hand between the median and ulnar nerves.

Anastomoses

The most common anastomosis is the one composed of the medial sural cutaneous nerve and its homologous branch from the fibular nerve in order to make the sural nerve.

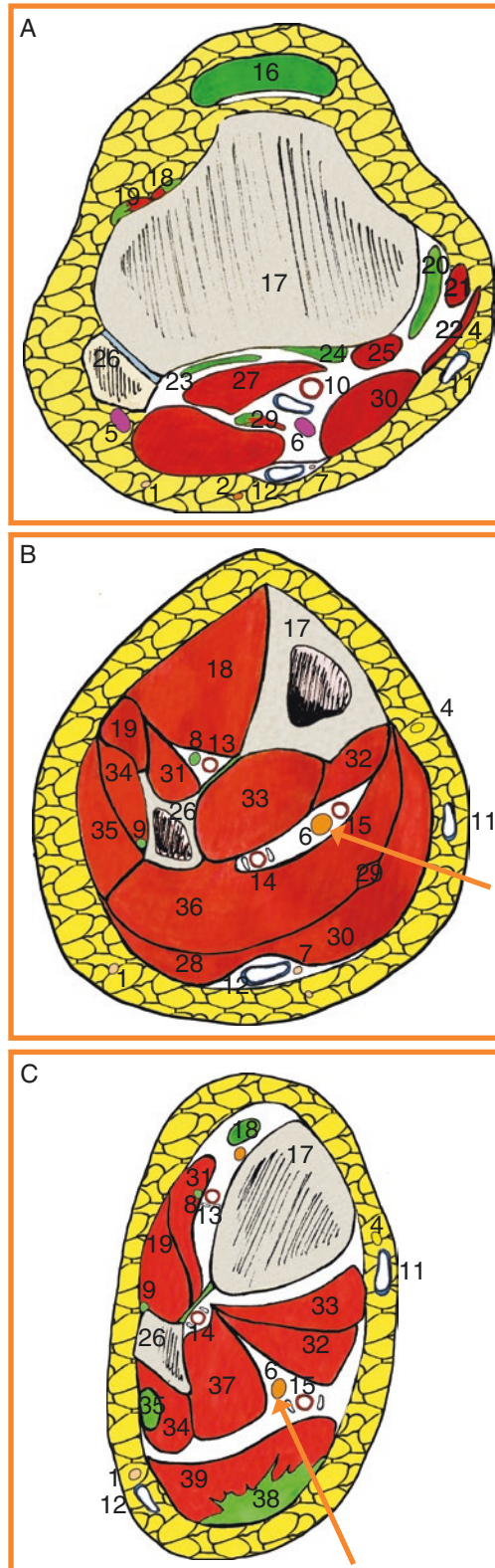


© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure T9. Motor and sensitive innervation of the tibial nerve

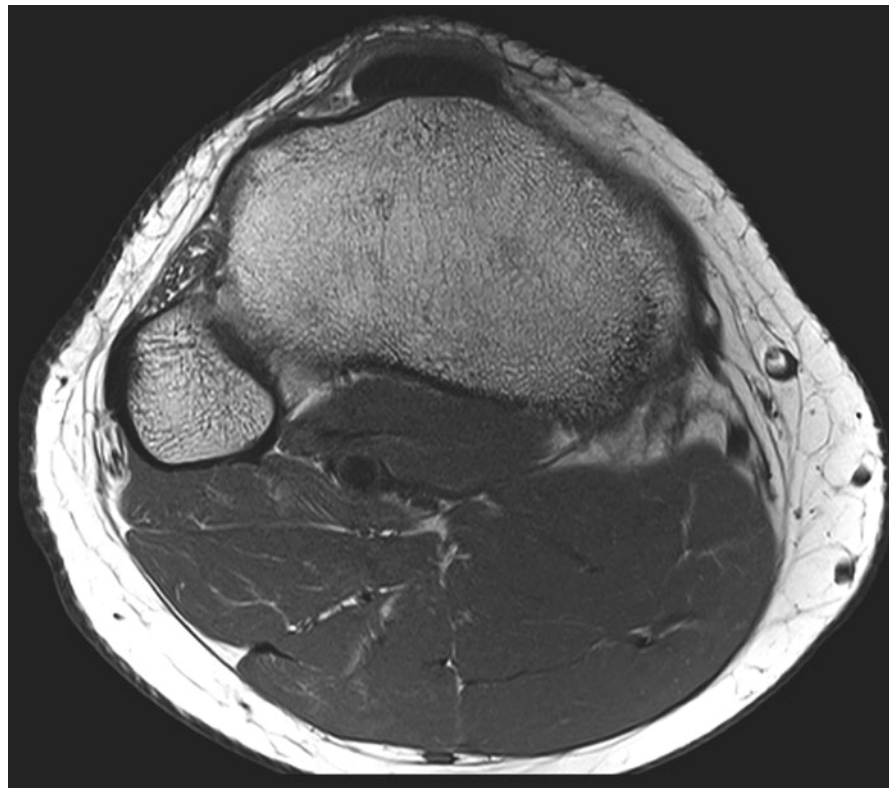
The Tibial Nerve

- 1- Lateral sural cutaneous nerve
- 2- Peroneal communicating nerve
- 3- Medial sural cutaneous nerve
- 4- Saphenous nerve
- 5- Fibular nerve
- 6- Tibial nerve
- 7- Sural nerve
- 8- Deep fibular nerve
- 9- Superficial fibular nerve
- 10- Popliteal artery and vein
- 11- Great saphenous vein
- 12- Small saphenous vein
- 13- Anterior tibial artery
- 14- Fibular artery and vein
- 15- Posterior tibial artery
- 16- Patellar ligament of quadriceps femoris muscle
- 17- Tibia
- 18- Tibialis anterior muscle
- 19- Extensor digitorum longus muscle
- 20- Medial collateral ligament
- 21- Gracilis muscle
- 22- Sartorius muscle
- 23- Synovial bursa
- 24- Posterior cruciate ligament
- 25- Semimembranosus muscle
- 26- Fibula
- 27- Popliteus muscle
- 28- Lateral head of the gastrocnemius muscle
- 29- Plantaris muscle
- 30- Medial head of the gastrocnemius muscle
- 31- Extensor hallucis longus muscle
- 32- Flexor digitorum longus muscle
- 33- Posterior tibial muscle
- 34- Peroneus brevis muscle
- 35- Peroneus longus muscle
- 36- Soleus muscle
- 37- Flexor hallucis longus muscle
- 38- Calcaneal tendon
- 39- Triceps surae muscle

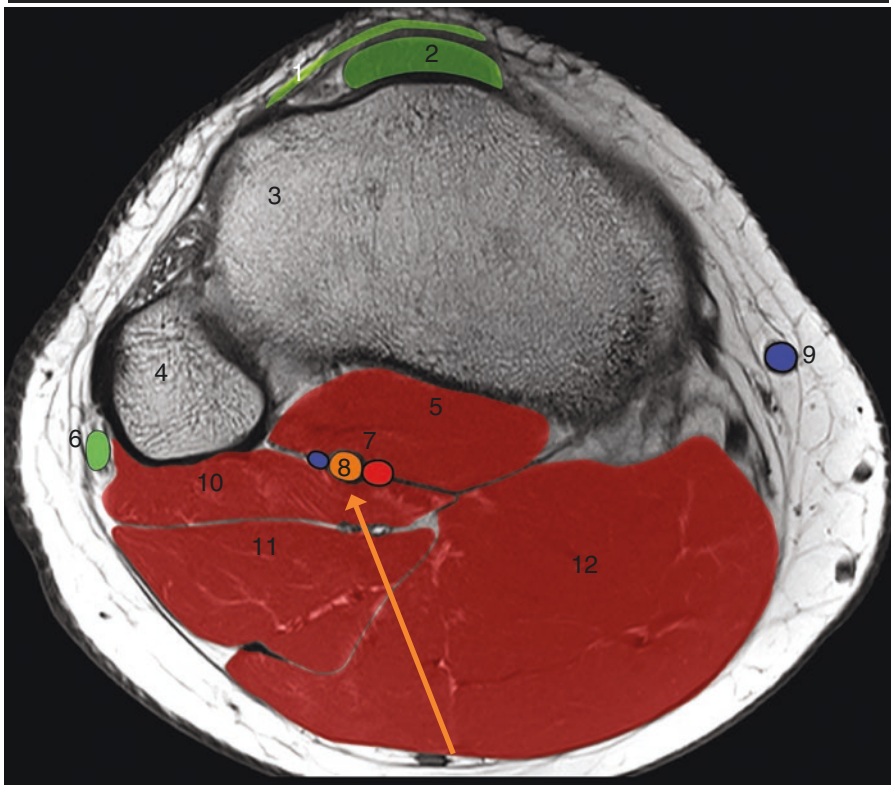
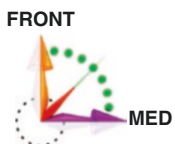


© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure T10. Relations of the tibial nerve in the leg, axial sections



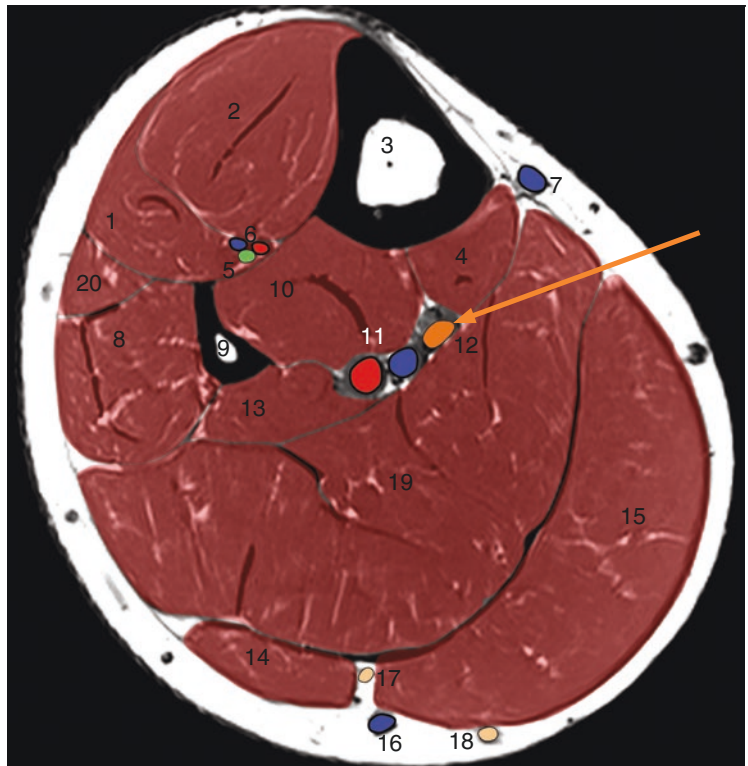
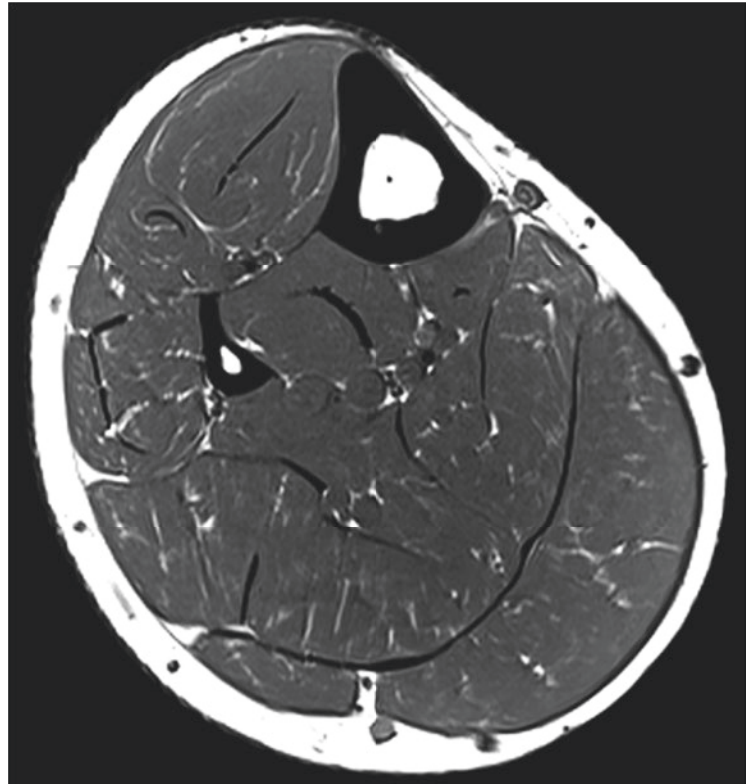
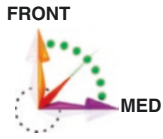
- 1- Patellar ligament
- 2- Deep infrapatellar bursa
- 3- Tibia
- 4- Fibula
- 5- Popliteus muscle
- 6- Common fibular nerve
- 7- Posterior tibial artery and vein
- 8- Tibial nerve
- 9- Great saphenous vein
- 10- Soleus muscle
- 11- Lateral head of gastrocnemius muscle
- 12- Medial head of gastrocnemius muscle



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure T11. MRI scans at the proximal third of the leg through the tibial nerve

The Tibial Nerve



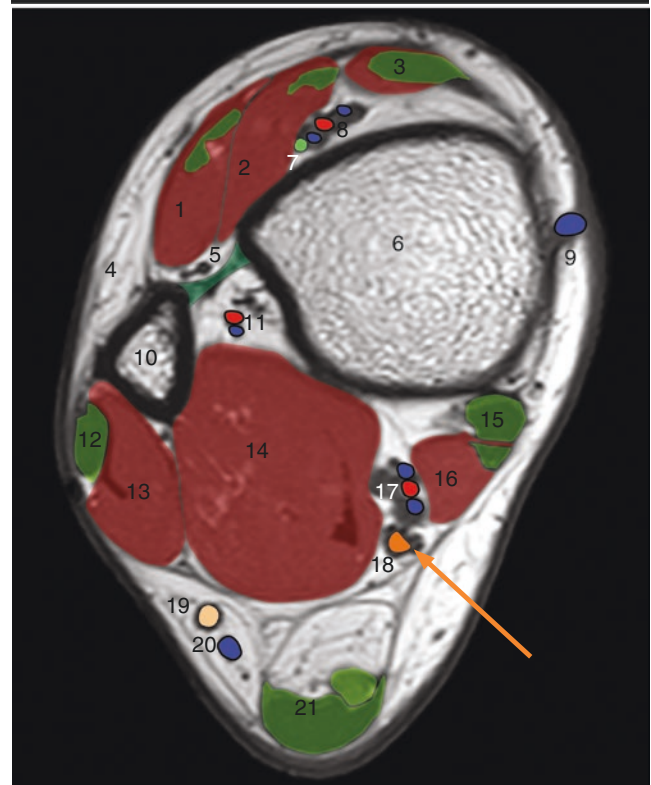
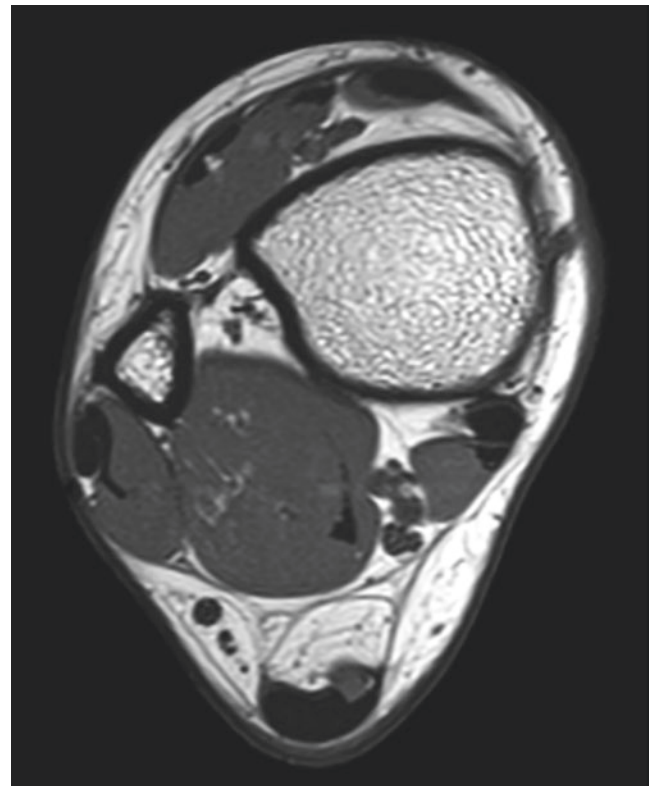
- 1- Extensor digitorum longus muscle
- 2- Tibialis anterior muscle
- 3- Tibia
- 4- Flexor digitorum longus muscle
- 5- Deep fibular nerve
- 6- Anterior tibial artery and vein
- 7- Great saphenous vein
- 8- Peroneus longus and brevis muscles
- 9- Fibula
- 10- Posterior tibial muscle
- 11- Posterior tibial artery and vein
- 12- Tibial nerve
- 13- Flexor hallucis longus muscle
- 14- Lateral head of gastrocnemius muscle
- 15- Medial head of gastrocnemius muscle
- 16- Small saphenous vein
- 17- Medial sural cutaneous nerve
- 18- Sural nerve
- 19- Soleus muscle
- 20- Extensor hallucis longus muscle

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure T12. MRI scans at the distal third of the leg through the tibial nerve



- 1- Extensor digitorum longus muscle
- 2- Extensor hallucis longus muscle
- 3- Tendon of the tibialis anterior muscle
- 4- Superficial fibular nerve
- 5- Interosseous membrane
- 6- Tibia
- 7- Deep fibular nerve
- 8- Anterior tibial artery and vein
- 9- Great saphenous vein
- 10- Fibula
- 11- Fibular artery and vein
- 12- Tendon of the peroneus longus muscle
- 13- Peroneus brevis muscle
- 14- Flexor hallucis longus muscle
- 15- Tendon of the posterior tibial muscle
- 16- Flexor digitorum longus muscle
- 17- Posterior tibial artery and vein
- 18- Tibial nerve
- 19- Sural nerve
- 20- Small saphenous vein
- 21- Tendons of the triceps surae and plantaris muscles



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure T13. MRI scans in the ankle through the tibial nerve

Pathology

Soleus Syndrome

In the leg, the tibial nerve goes under the tendinous arch of the soleus muscle. This arch can compress the tibial nerve in diverse circumstances. It is therefore a true entrapment neuropathy.

Aetiology

- Compression: this entrapment neuropathy can happen on the posterior face of the leg. However, a pure entrapment neuropathy remains rare, and it is important to look for another cause using an appropriate imagery technique (echography or MRI), especially the presence of an articular ganglion cyst or of a tumour (Figure T14).

Clinical Significance

- Sensitive signs: the patient complains about a stabbing, sharp pain originating from the upper part of the posterior face of the leg. Tinel's sign can be found at the level of the tendinous arch of the soleus muscle, awaking the pain. This pain can be worsened by a flexion of the foot on the leg, mimicking Homans' sign (the differential diagnosis being deep vein thrombosis). A hypoesthesia settles on the territory of the tibial nerve, without affecting that of the sural nerve. It therefore concerns a territory in the

shape of a triangle with an upper vertex going towards the lower part of the calf, the heel and the sole of foot.

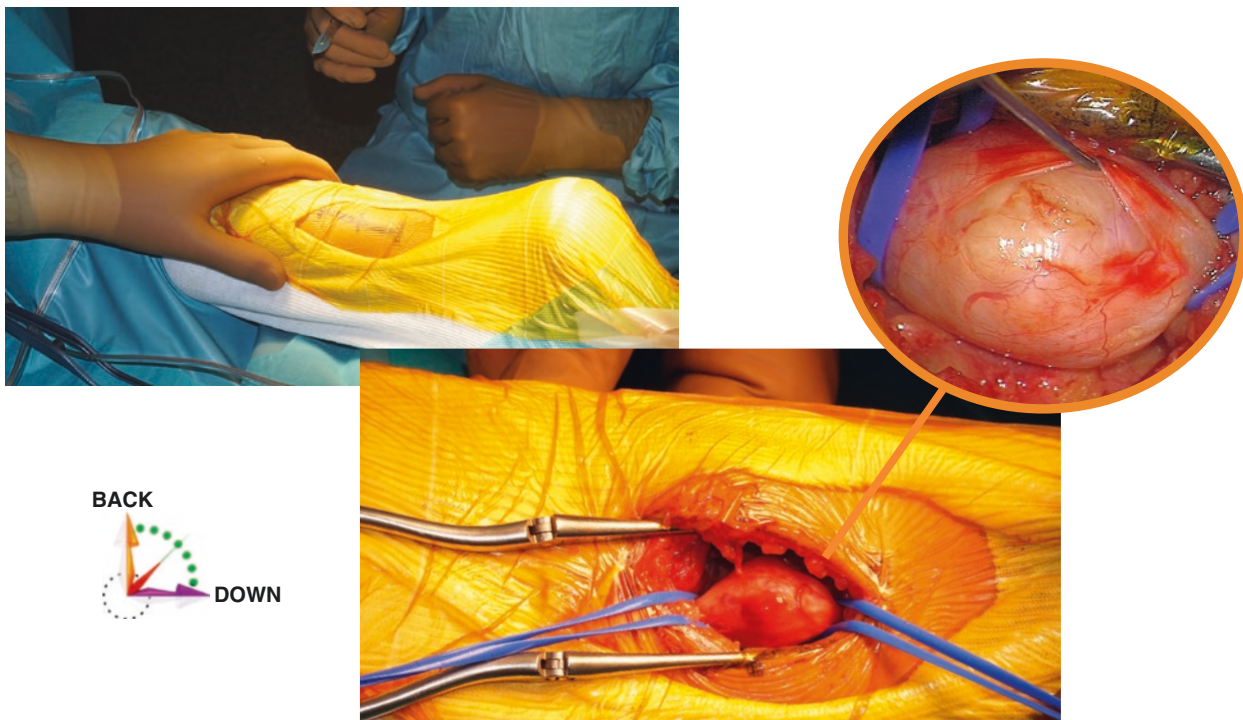
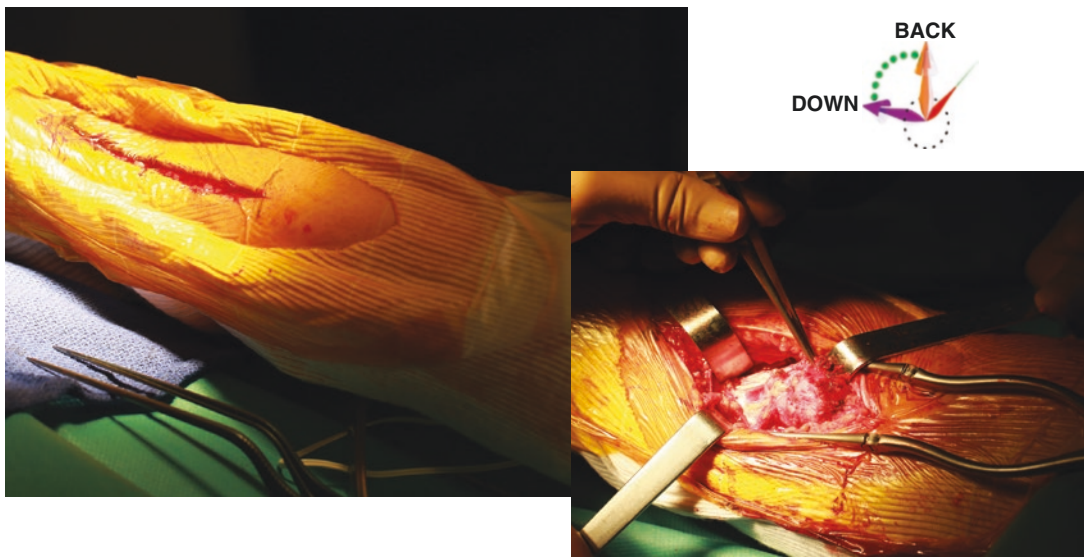
- Motor signs: in addition to the previously described deficits, there is also a denervation of the muscles of the posterior compartment of the leg that can lead to disuse atrophy. At first, the patient can no longer stand on tip-toes. Then, the patient's Achilles reflex becomes absent, and, eventually, as mentioned above, a disuse atrophy of the posterior compartment of the leg can appear.

Complementary Examinations

- An electroneuromyography gives little to no information in a case of pure entrapment neuropathy.
- MRI is the examination of choice for searching for an extrinsic compression cause.

Treatment

If there is no compression element open to etiological treatment, the treatment should be conservative: bed rest and work on improvement of the patient's posture in order to isolate pain-relieving attitudes, physiotherapy, etc. If a genuine compression of the tibial nerve is brought to light, the tendinous arch of the soleus muscle should be sectioned if it's a pure entrapment neuropathy, whilst resection surgery should be favoured if a compression injury is seen on the imagery.



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure T14. Removal surgery of a schwannoma at the level of the popliteal fossa (*above*) and of the posterior compartment of the leg (*below*). The latter was generating neuropathic pain sensations on the lower part of the calf and at the level of the arch of the foot in the right leg

Tarsal Tunnel Syndrome

This is the equivalent of carpal tunnel syndrome for the lower limb, although much less frequent.

The tibial nerve goes under the medial malleolus, in the flexor retinaculum, accompanied by the posterior tibial veins and arteries. It generally divides at this level into two branches: the medial and lateral plantar nerves. In this tunnel, the vessels are superficial in relation to the nerve.

Aetiology

This is a true entrapment neuropathy where the tibial nerve is compressed. Traumatic factors can favour its apparition such as post-traumatic deformity, excessive sports activity or an expansive process inside the canal.

Clinical Significance

- Sensitive signs: pain, paraesthesiae or even a “burning” sensation in the foot concerning the sole of the foot and/or the heel (Figure T15). These territories correspond to injury of the medial and lateral plantar nerves. These sensations are sometimes replaced by numbness, with an increase of the symptoms during night-time. The patient lets their foot hang outside of the bed, relieved by a varus position. The pain can be evoked by performing Tinel’s sign under the medial malleolus. The differential diagnosis must eliminate a pain originating from an arteritis. If the nerve division is situated in a higher position, the area of pain can only reach as far as the heel.
- Motor signs: the tibial nerve innervates all of the muscles of the plantar face of the foot. A deficit can happen

belatedly in the extension of the toes, the flexion of the foot and the inversion of the foot. A paresis of the intrinsic muscles of the foot can sometimes exist.

Clinical Forms

A general check-up should look for history of micro- or macro-traumas, tenosynovitis, rheumatoid polyarthritis, dialysed kidney failures, vein thrombosis, varicose veins and all other elements that may have an etiological influence and can necessitate a specific treatment.

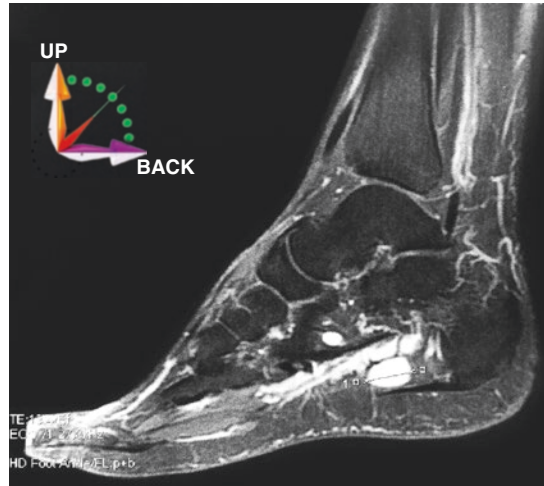
Complementary Examinations

- An electroneuromyography confirms the diagnosis in most cases, whilst an echo Doppler eliminates the possibility of a vascular pathology if doubt remains.
- Radiographies allow for the evaluation of the general skeleton status.
- An MRI can be performed when searching for associated pathologies, especially for an intrinsic injury of the nerve (tumour, intraneural cyst injury, etc.) or for a muscle anomaly (Figure T15).

Treatment

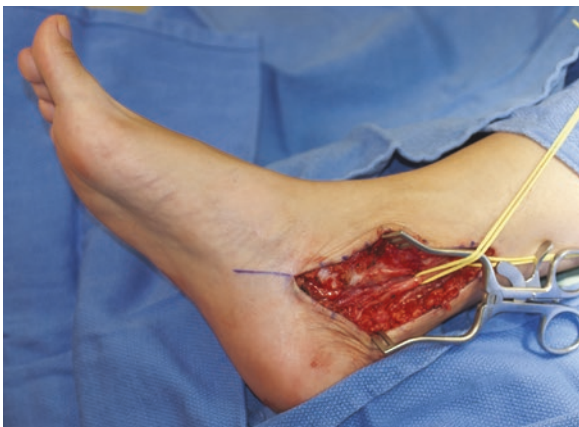
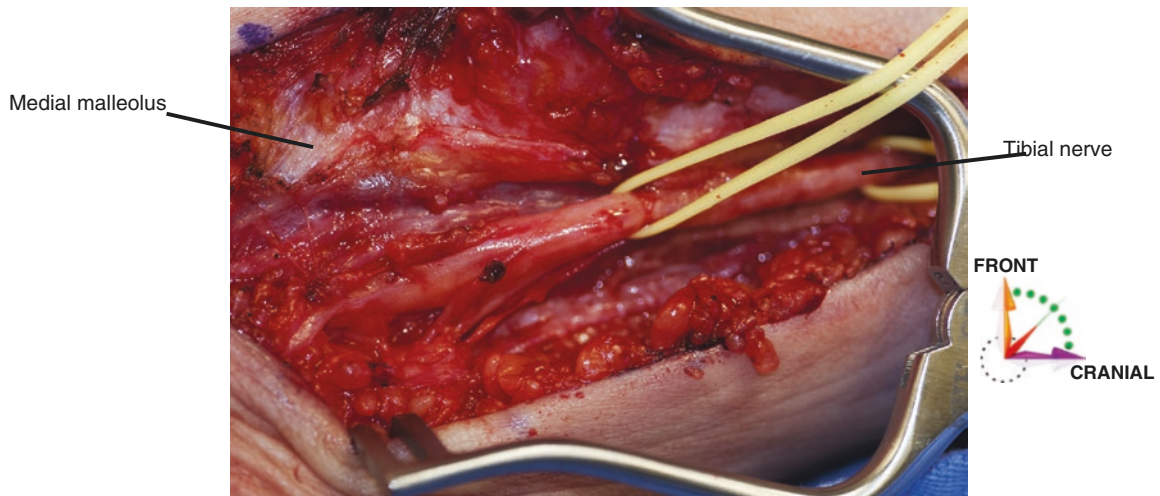
Conservative treatment includes local infiltrations. It depends on the eventual presence of a trigger factor.

Surgical treatment gives the best results: 98% of good or excellent results after 1 year, with less than 1% of recurrence in pure entrapment neuropathy cases. Surgery consists of cutting the retinaculum at the internal face of the malleolus in order to release the nerve (Figure T16).



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

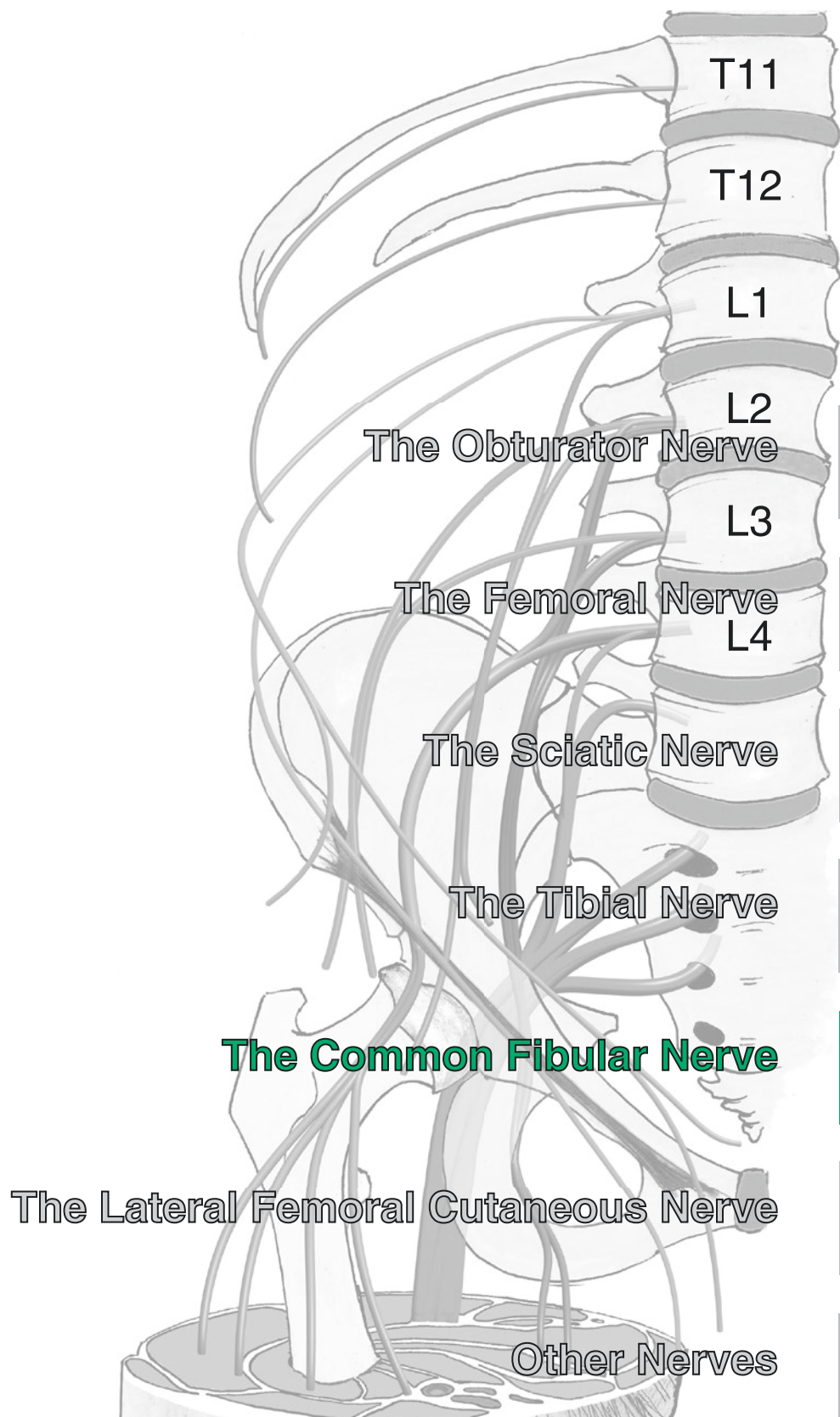
Figure T15. Case of a patient showing proven neuropathic pain sensations at the sole of the foot. The MRI highlights a string of schwannoma-type injuries along the branches of the plantar nerves



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure T16. Diagrams of the pathology of the tibial nerve and surgical approach in the ankle

The Common Fibular Nerve



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

The Common Fibular Nerve

Morphological Data

The common fibular nerve (*also known as common peroneal nerve, peroneal nerve, external popliteal nerve, lateral popliteal nerve*) is a mixed nerve and constitutes the lateral terminal branch of the sciatic nerve. It innervates the muscles of the anterolateral compartment of the leg and of the dorsal face of the foot, essentially through its terminal branches, the deep and superficial fibular nerves.

Origin

The common fibular nerve is made up of the L4, L5, S1 and S2 roots (Figures Fi1 and Fi2). It originates from the trunk of the sciatic nerve at the level of the popliteal fossa, in its uppermost vertex. At this point, it faces the tibial nerve medially, which is the medial and main terminal branch of the sciatic nerve.

Path

It goes downwards and laterally in the popliteal fossa. It then faces the tibial nerve medially and the upper part of the biceps femoris muscle laterally and then goes around its fibular insertion from below (Figure Fi3). It then passes above the proximal insertion of the lateral head of the gastrocnemius muscle, where it generally gives off the lateral sural cutaneous nerve (Figures Fi3, Fi8, Fi9, Fi10 and Fi11).

The fibular nerve then goes around the head of the fibula, between the tendon of the biceps femoris above and the lateral head of the gastrocnemius below (Figures Fi3 and Fi4). It then goes through the crural intermuscular septum in order to place itself on the deep face of the peroneus longus muscle and to split into superficial fibular nerve and deep fibular nerve (Figure Fi5).

Neurovascular Relations

In the popliteal fossa, the common fibular nerve faces the popliteal vessels situated on the median axis of the limb medially (Figure T5).

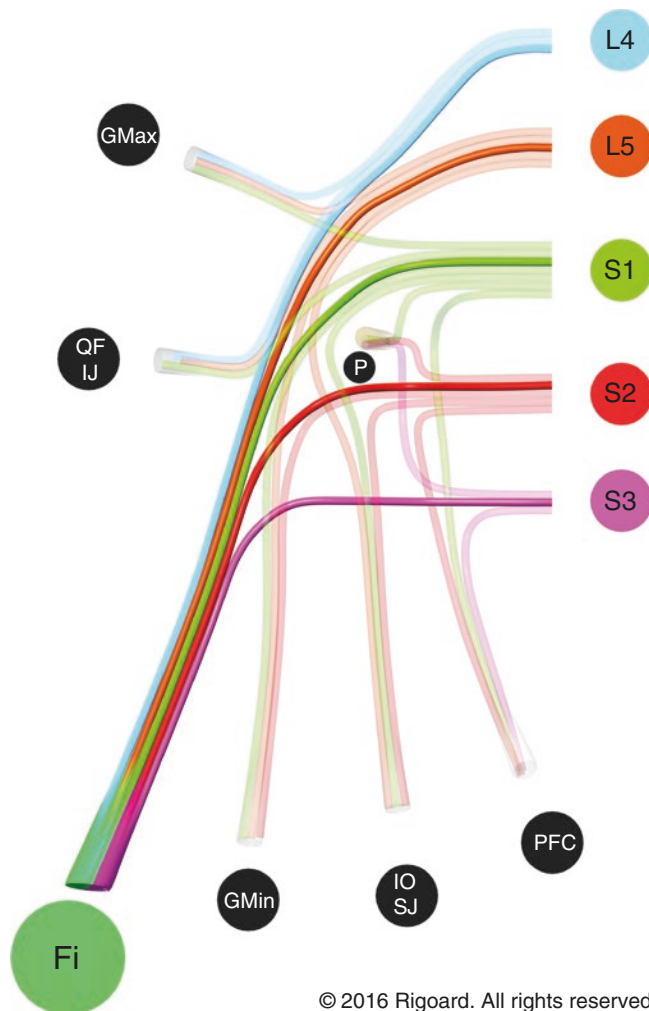
In the leg, the superficial fibular nerve faces the perforating branch of the fibular artery laterally.

In the anterolateral face of the leg, the deep fibular nerve faces the anterior tibial artery medially then laterally, which it crosses in front (Figures Fi4 and Fi6).

Collateral Branches

The fibular nerve gives off:

- A peroneal communicating nerve which makes an anastomosis with the medial sural cutaneous nerve, a branch of the tibial nerve
- The lateral sural cutaneous nerve, headed towards the skin
- A branch for the knee joint
- Branches for the tibialis anterior muscle, which originates slightly before the division of the fibular nerve



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure Fi1. Origin of the fibular nerve

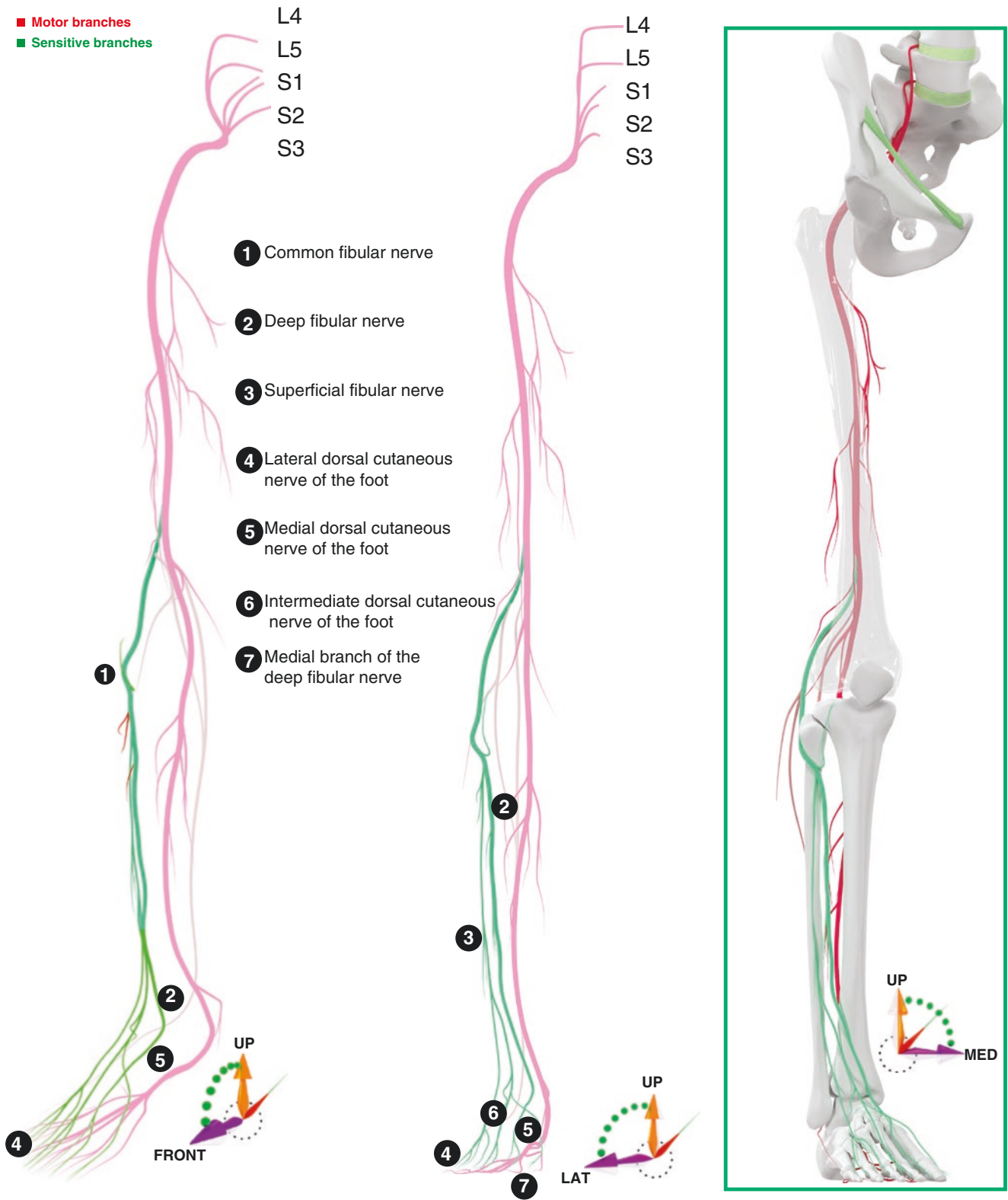
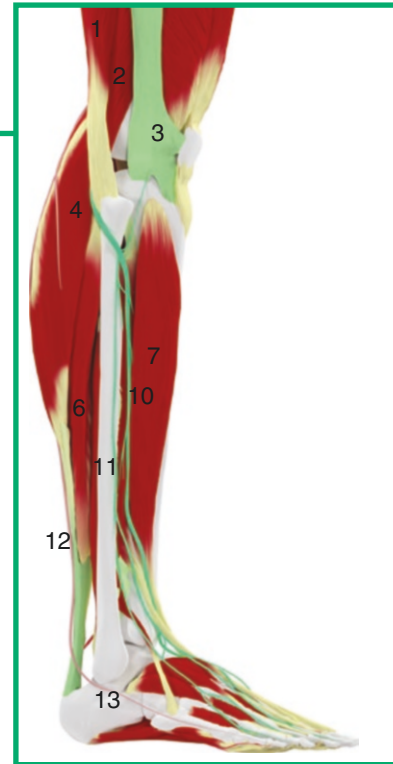
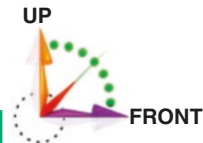


Figure Fi2. Topographical distribution of the fibular nerve and its relations with bones

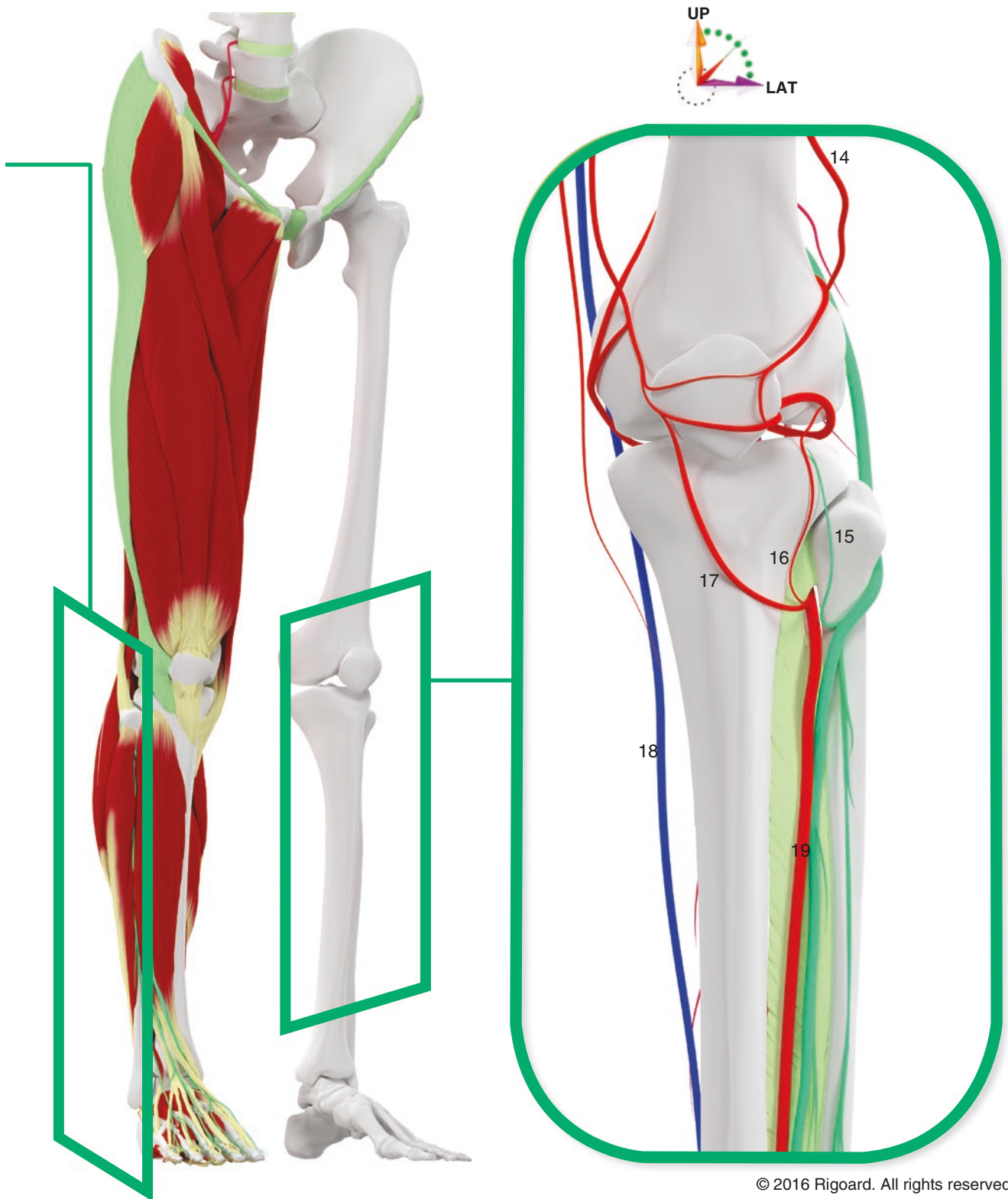
The Common Fibular Nerve



- 1- Biceps femoris muscle (long head)
- 2- Biceps femoris muscle (short head)
- 3- Iliotibial tract
- 4- Lateral head of gastrocnemius muscle
- 5- Peroneus longus muscle
- 6- Soleus muscle
- 7- Tibialis anterior muscle
- 8- Extensor digitorum longus muscle
- 9- Peroneus brevis muscle
- 10- Superficial fibular nerve
- 11- Deep fibular nerve
- 12- Sural nerve
- 13- Lateral dorsal cutaneous nerve of the foot
- 14- Ascending branch of the lateral collateral artery in the thigh
- 15- Recurrent articular nerve of the knee
- 16- Anterior tibial recurrent artery
- 17- Medial tibial recurrent artery
- 18- Great saphenous vein
- 19- Anterior tibial artery

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

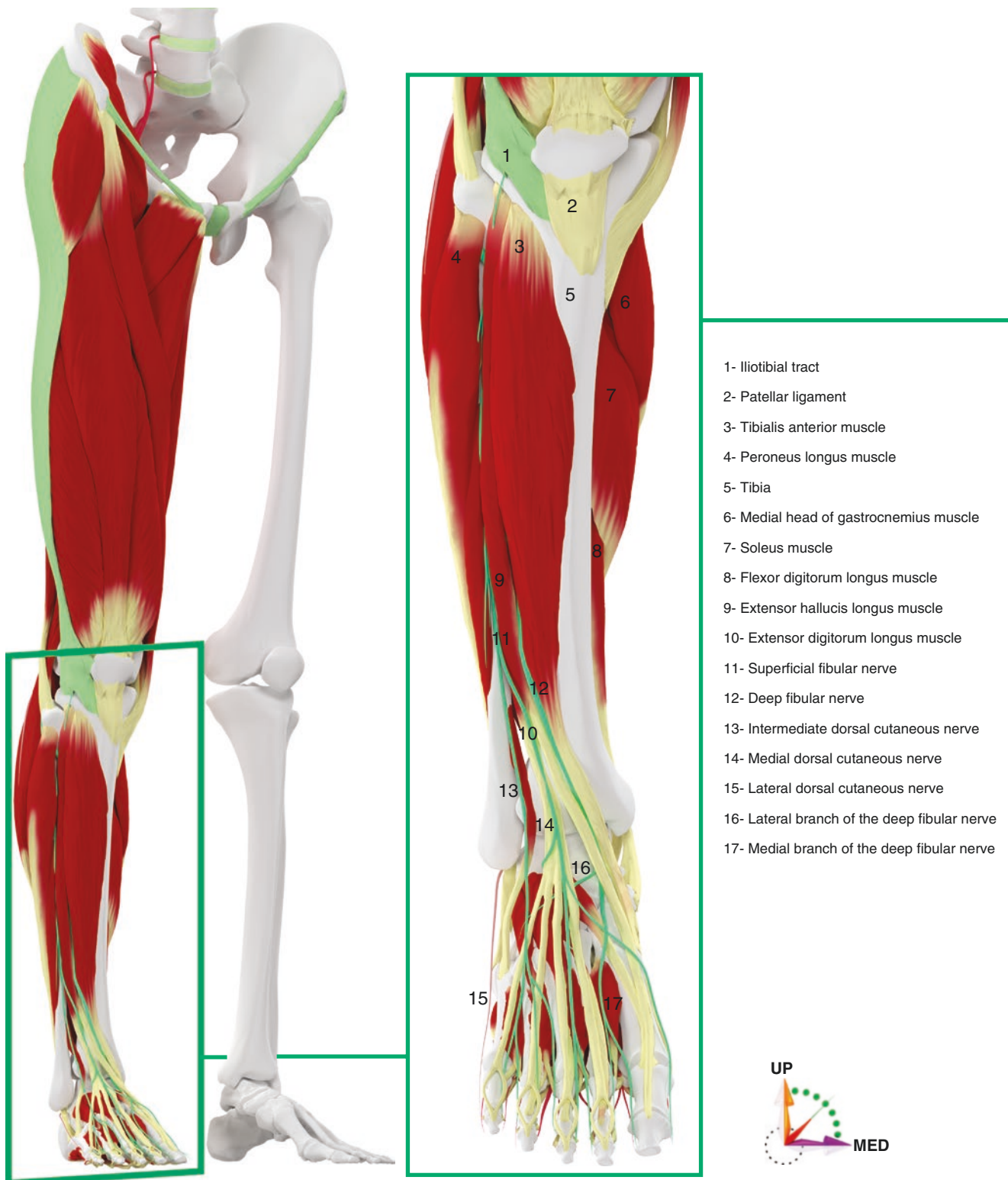
Figure Fi3. Muscular relations of the fibular nerve at the neck of the fibula and at the level of the anterior compartment of the leg (lateral view, from superficial to deep)



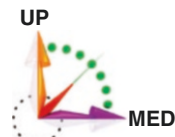
© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure Fi4. Neurovascular relations of the fibular nerve at the neck of the fibula and at the level of the anterior compartment of the leg (anterior view)

The Common Fibular Nerve

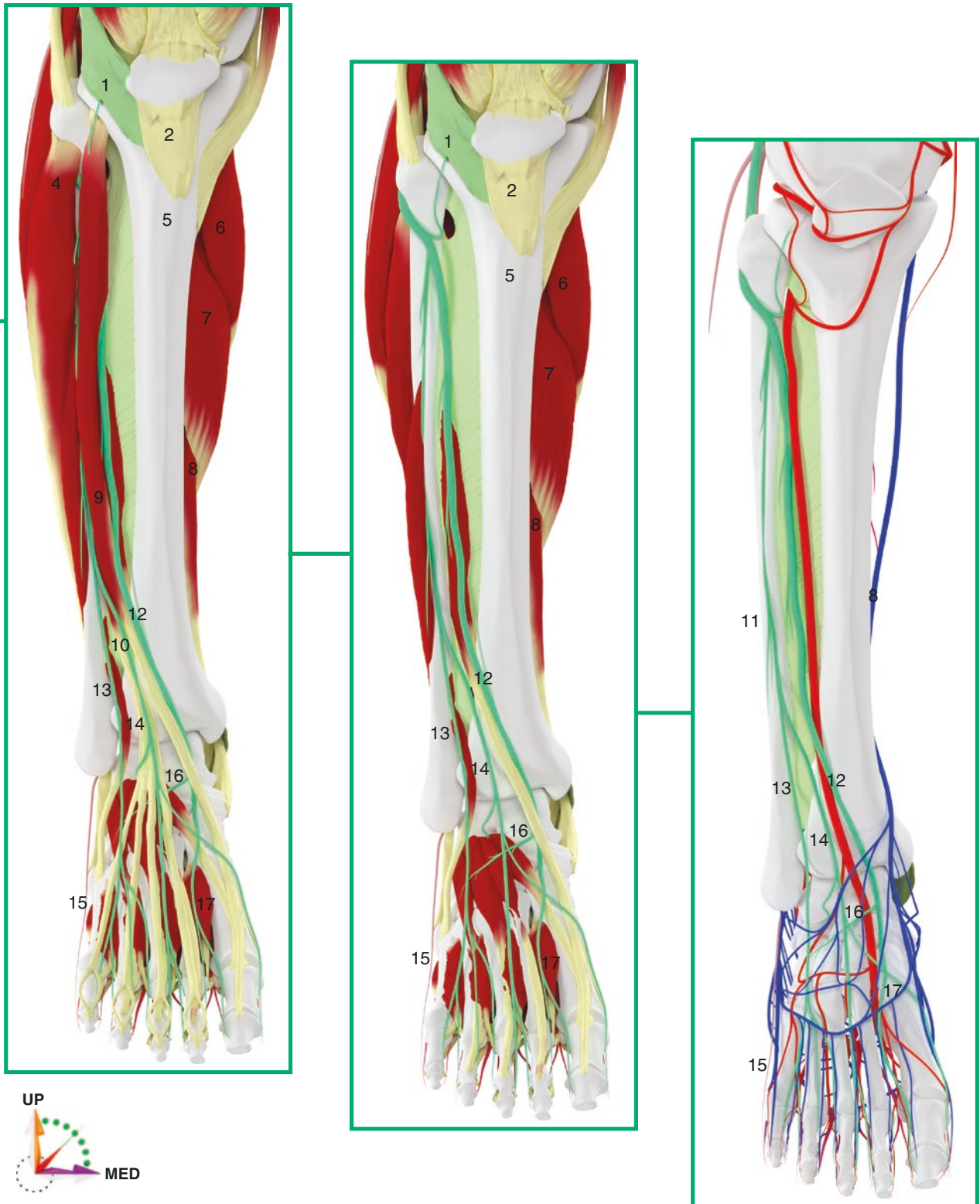


- 1- Iliotibial tract
- 2- Patellar ligament
- 3- Tibialis anterior muscle
- 4- Peroneus longus muscle
- 5- Tibia
- 6- Medial head of gastrocnemius muscle
- 7- Soleus muscle
- 8- Flexor digitorum longus muscle
- 9- Extensor hallucis longus muscle
- 10- Extensor digitorum longus muscle
- 11- Superficial fibular nerve
- 12- Deep fibular nerve
- 13- Intermediate dorsal cutaneous nerve
- 14- Medial dorsal cutaneous nerve
- 15- Lateral dorsal cutaneous nerve
- 16- Lateral branch of the deep fibular nerve
- 17- Medial branch of the deep fibular nerve



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure Fi5. Muscular relations of the fibular nerve in the leg



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure Fi6. Neurovascular and muscular relations of the fibular nerve in the leg

The Common Fibular Nerve

Terminal Branches

The fibular nerve divides into two terminal branches between the two insertions of the peroneus longus muscle. It gives off the superficial fibular nerve, which is lateral, and the deep fibular nerve, which is medial (Figure Fi2).

The superficial fibular nerve (formerly known as the musculocutaneous nerve of the leg) makes its way along the deep face of the peroneus longus muscle and then between the peroneus longus and brevis laterally and extensor digitorum longus medially. It perforates the anterior intermuscular aponeurosis at the inferior third of the leg and gives off several branches, which are headed towards the skin. On its path, the superficial fibular nerve gives off several collateral branches: muscular branches for the peroneus longus and brevis muscles and then cutaneous branches, notably for the lateral malleolus (Figure Fi5).

The superficial fibular nerve then splits into two terminal branches, in front of the extensor retinaculum (Figure Fi6):

- The medial branch gives off the medial dorsal digital nerve of the hallux and a branch that is headed towards the first interosseous space and splits into two dorsal collateral digital nerves: lateral of the hallux and medial of the second toe. It also gives off a third branch for the second interosseous space, which splits into two dorsal digital nerves – lateral of the second toe and medial of the third toe.
- The lateral branch follows the same path and gives off the branches of the third and fourth interosseous spaces. It therefore gives off several dorsal digital nerves: lateral of the third toe, medial of the fourth toe, lateral of the fourth toe and medial of the fifth toe.

The deep fibular nerve (formerly known as the anterior tibial nerve) also originates between the two insertions of the peroneus longus muscle. It goes around the neck of the fibula, then makes its way on the deep face of the extensor digitorum longus and joins the anterior tibial artery slightly in front of the interosseous membrane, at the upper third of the leg (Figure Fi4). With this membrane, it forms the anterior neurovascular bundle until the ankle, where it divides into lateral and medial terminal branches. On the anterior face of the leg, the deep fibular nerve faces the anterior tibial artery medially and the extensor digitorum longus laterally (Figure Fi6). In front, the tibialis anterior muscle can be found medially, and the extensor digitorum longus can be found laterally. In the lower part of the leg, the extensor hallucis longus, which was lateral, comes over the neurovascular pedicle and covers it.

The deep fibular nerve gives off several collateral branches:

- Muscular branches for the tibialis anterior, extensor digitorum longus, extensor hallucis longus and peroneus longus and brevis (Figure Fi7).
- Articular branches for the tibial-tarsal joint.
- It ends after going under the extensor retinaculum, forming two branches: lateral and medial.

The medial branch extends the path of the dorsal artery of the foot (also known as dorsalis pedis artery) whilst remaining lateral in relation to this artery until the first interosseous space. It then divides to support or replace the lateral dorsal digital nerve of the hallux and medial dorsal digital nerve of the second toe. The cutaneous innervation of these toes by these branches remains inconstant.

The lateral branch goes under the dorsal tarsal artery and under the extensor hallucis brevis muscle, which it innervates, as well as the extensor hallucis muscle (Figure Fi6).

Motor Function

The fibular nerve innervates the muscles of the anterolateral compartment of the leg (Figure Fi7): tibialis anterior, extensor digitorum longus, extensor hallucis longus and peroneus longus and brevis. It also innervates the muscles of the dorsal face of the foot – extensor digitorum brevis and extensor hallucis brevis.

It is therefore in charge of the flexion of the foot on the leg, the eversion of the foot and extension of the toes.

Sensitive Function

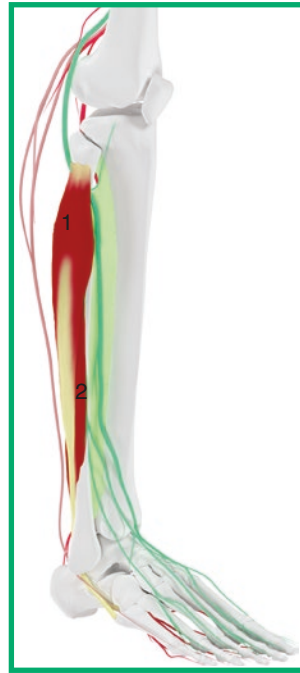
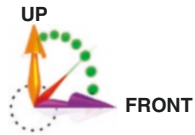
The sensitive function of the fibular nerve mainly originates from the superficial fibular nerve (Figures Fi7, Fi8, Fi9, Fi10 and Fi11). Its territory concerns the dorsal face of the foot, under the territories of the saphenous and lateral sural cutaneous nerves and medially in relation to the territory of the sural nerve. The medial distal branch of the deep fibular nerve takes charge of the innervation of the first interdigital space.

Anastomoses

The fibular nerve can make anastomoses, either directly or through its terminal branches, with:

- The tibial nerve,
- The sural nerve through the peroneal communicating nerve (this anastomosis is almost constant),
- The saphenous nerve
- And the lateral femoral cutaneous nerve

- 1- Peroneus longus muscle
- 2- Peroneus brevis muscle
- 3- Tibialis anterior muscle
- 4- Extensor digitorum longus muscle
- 5- Extensor digitorum brevis muscle



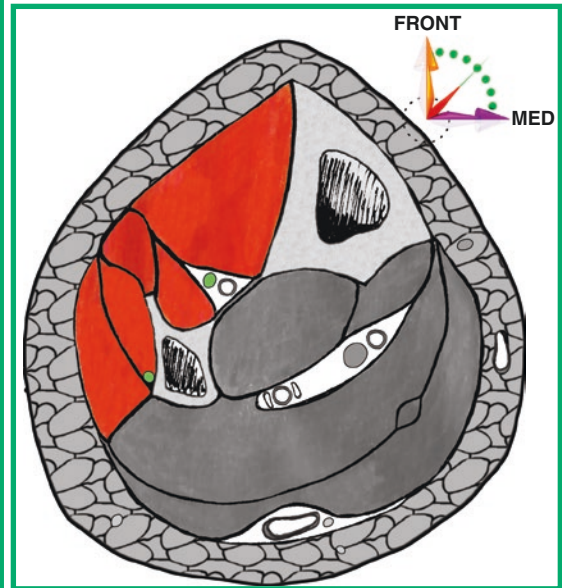
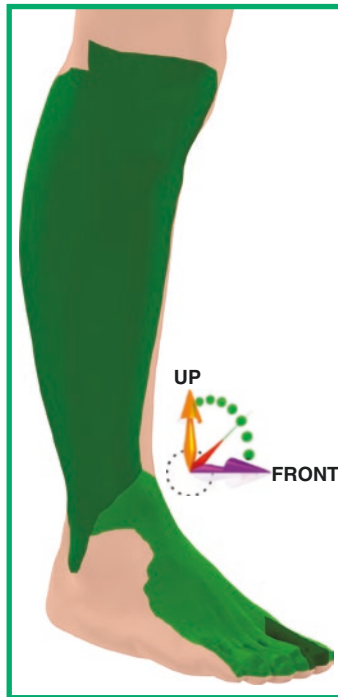
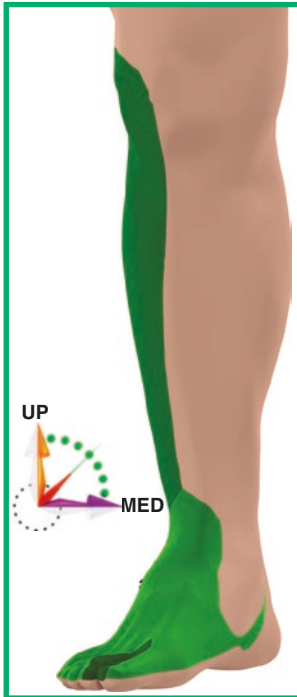
Motor innervation of the superficial branch



Motor innervation of the deep branch



Motor innervation of the fibular nerve



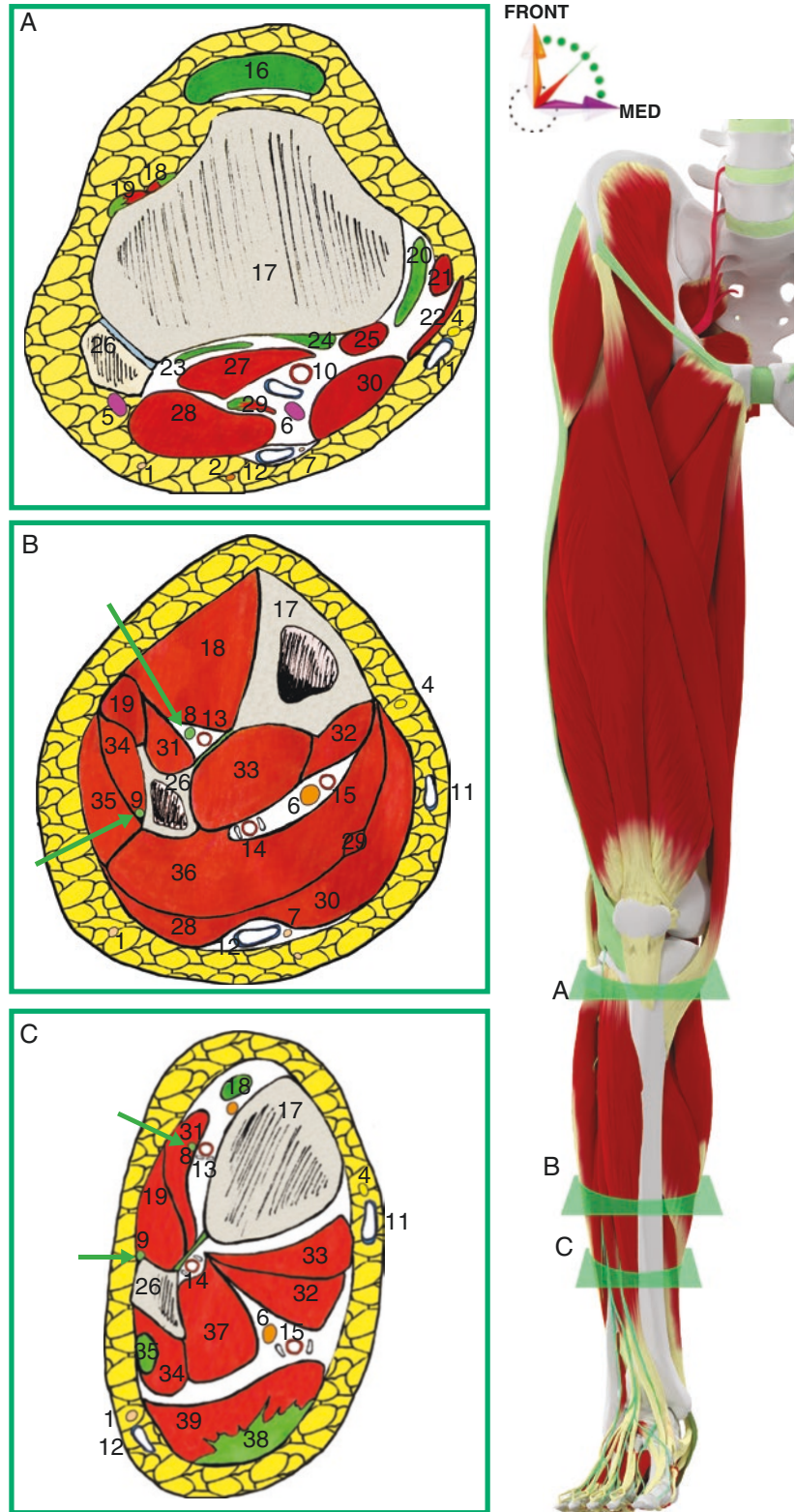
- Lateral sural cutaneous nerve
- Superficial fibular nerve
- Deep fibular nerve

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure Fi7. Motor and sensitive innervation of the fibular nerve

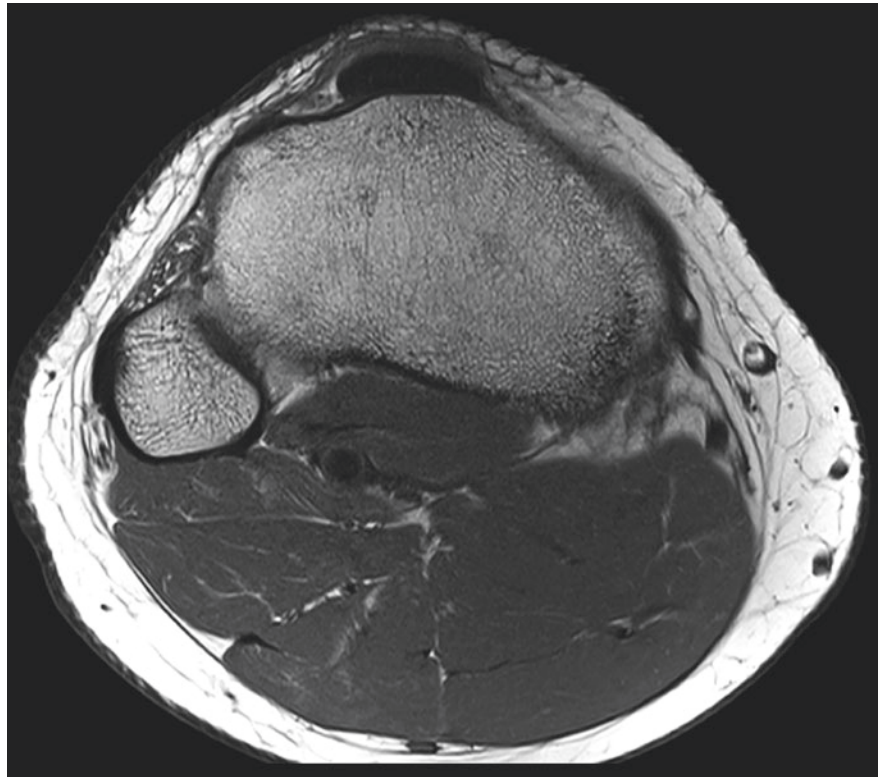
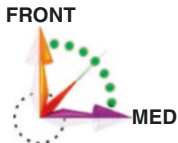
The Common Fibular Nerve

- 1- Lateral sural cutaneous nerve
- 2- Peroneal communicating nerve
- 3- Medial sural cutaneous nerve
- 4- Saphenous nerve
- 5- Fibular nerve
- 6- Tibial nerve
- 7- Sural nerve
- 8- Deep fibular nerve
- 9- Superficial fibular nerve
- 10- Popliteal artery and vein
- 11- Great saphenous vein
- 12- Small saphenous vein
- 13- Anterior tibial artery
- 14- Fibular artery and vein
- 15- Posterior tibial artery
- 16- Patellar ligament of quadriceps femoris muscle
- 17- Tibia
- 18- Tibialis anterior muscle
- 19- Extensor digitorum longus muscle
- 20- Medial collateral ligament
- 21- Gracilis muscle
- 22- Sartorius muscle
- 23- Synovial bursa
- 24- Posterior cruciate ligament
- 25- Semimembranosus muscle
- 26- Fibula
- 27- Popliteus muscle
- 28- Lateral head of the gastrocnemius muscle
- 29- Plantaris muscle
- 30- Medial head of the gastrocnemius muscle
- 31- Extensor hallucis longus muscle
- 32- Flexor digitorum longus muscle
- 33- Posterior tibial muscle
- 34- Peroneus brevis muscle
- 35- Peroneus longus muscle
- 36- Soleus muscle
- 37- Flexor hallucis longus muscle
- 38- Calcaneal tendon
- 39- Triceps surae muscle

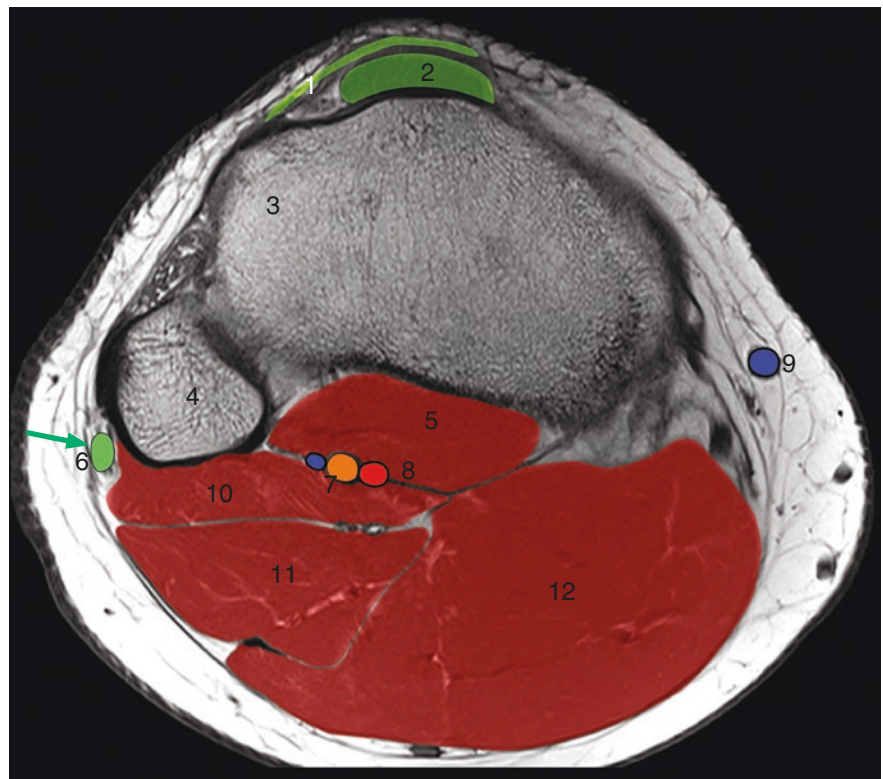


© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure Fi8. Relations of the fibular nerve in the leg, axial sections



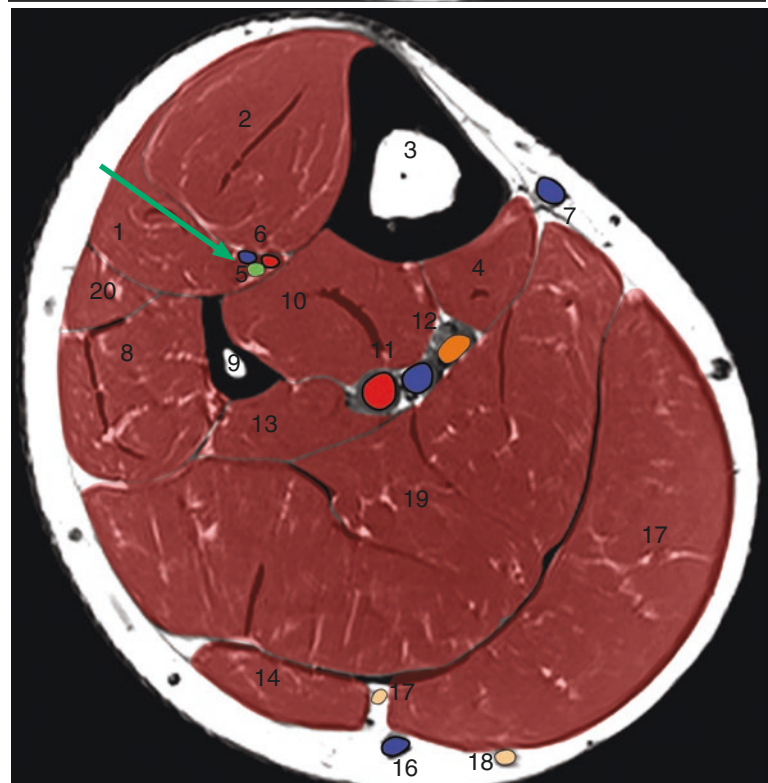
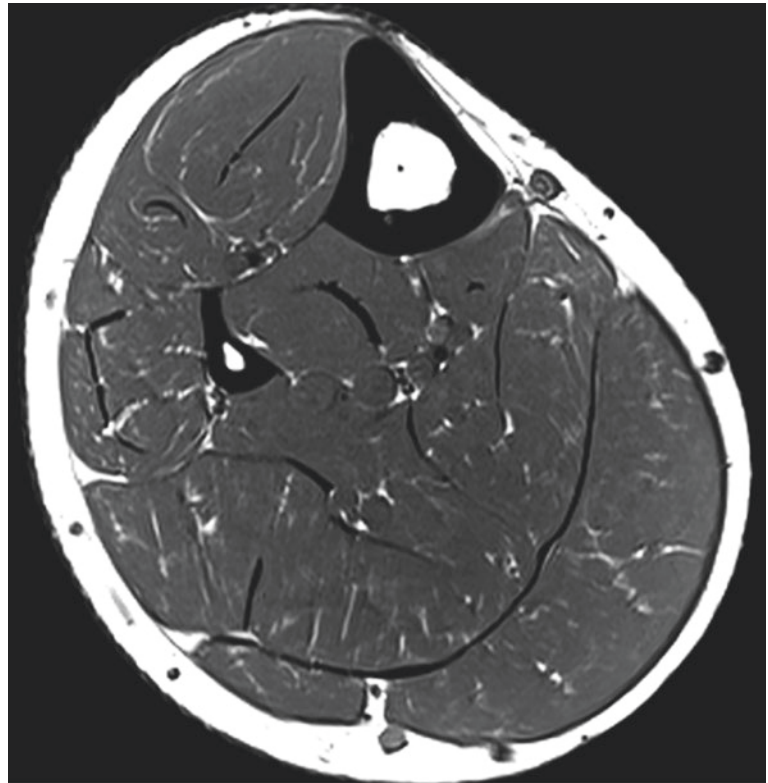
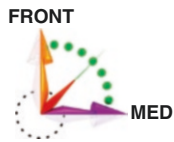
- 1- Patellar ligament
- 2- Deep infrapatellar bursa
- 3- Tibia
- 4- Fibula
- 5- Popliteus muscle
- 6- Common fibular nerve
- 7- Posterior tibial artery and vein
- 8- Tibial nerve
- 9- Great saphenous vein
- 10- Soleus muscle
- 11- Lateral head of gastrocnemius muscle
- 12- Medial head of gastrocnemius muscle



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure Fi9. MRI scans at the proximal third of the leg through the fibular nerve

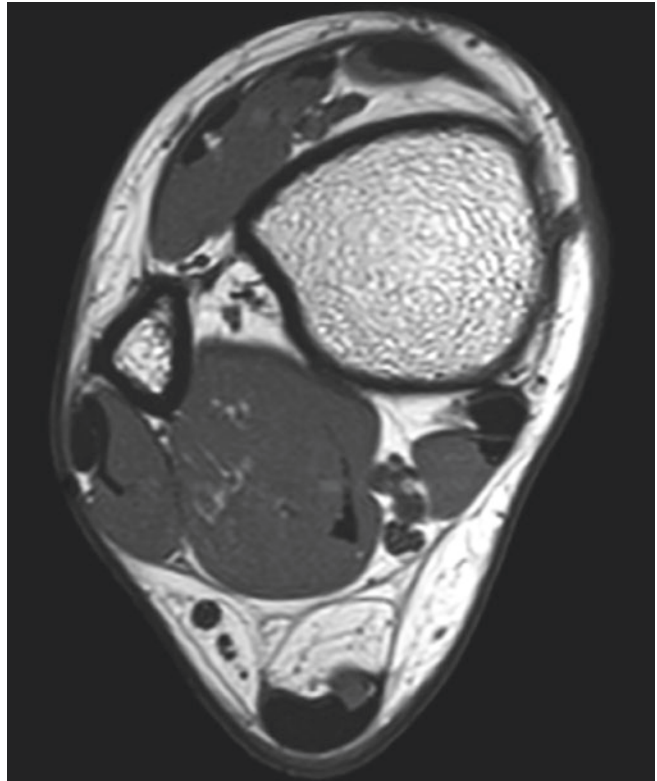
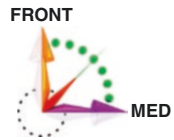
The Common Fibular Nerve



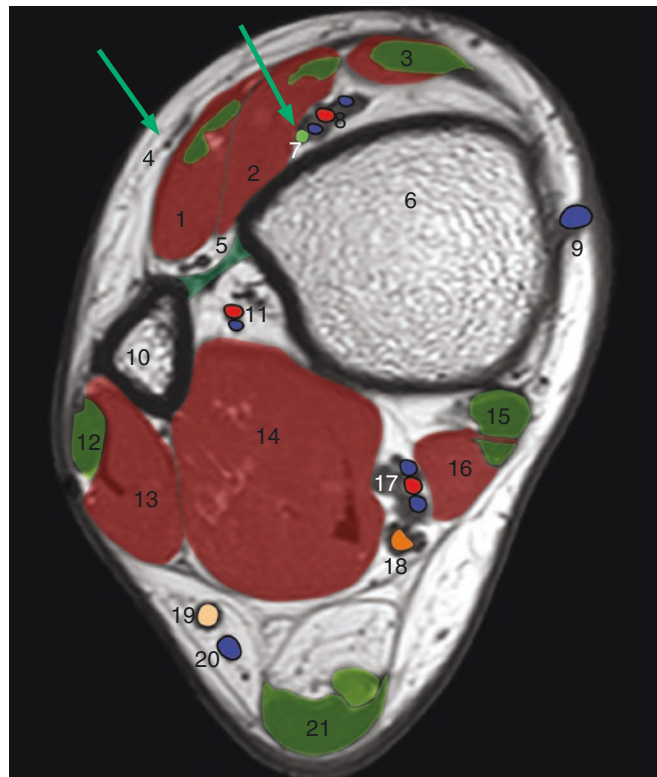
- 1- Extensor digitorum longus muscle
- 2- Tibialis anterior muscle
- 3- Tibia
- 4- Flexor digitorum longus muscle
- 5- Deep fibular nerve
- 6- Anterior tibial artery and vein
- 7- Great saphenous vein
- 8- Peroneus longus and brevis muscles
- 9- Fibula
- 10- Posterior tibial muscle
- 11- Posterior tibial artery and vein
- 12- Tibial nerve
- 13- Flexor hallucis longus muscle
- 14- Lateral head of gastrocnemius muscle
- 15- Medial head of gastrocnemius muscle
- 16- Small saphenous vein
- 17- Medial sural cutaneous nerve
- 18- Sural nerve
- 19- Soleus muscle
- 20- Extensor hallucis longus muscle

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure Fi10. MRI scans at the distal third of the leg through the fibular nerve



- 1- Extensor digitorum longus muscle
- 2- Extensor hallucis longus muscle
- 3- Tendon of the tibialis anterior muscle
- 4- Superficial fibular nerve
- 5- Interosseous membrane
- 6- Tibia
- 7- Deep fibular nerve
- 8- Anterior tibial artery and vein
- 9- Great saphenous vein
- 10- Fibula
- 11- Fibular artery and vein
- 12- Tendon of the peroneus longus muscle
- 13- Peroneus brevis muscle
- 14- Flexor hallucis longus muscle
- 15- Tendon of the posterior tibial muscle
- 16- Flexor digitorum longus muscle
- 17- Posterior tibial artery and vein
- 18- Tibial nerve
- 19- Sural nerve
- 20- Small saphenous vein
- 21- Tendons of the triceps surae and plantaris muscles



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure Fi11 MRI scans in the ankle through the fibular nerve

Pathology

Fibular Nerve Injury

The fibular nerve is a mixed nerve originating from the sciatic nerve. It originates in the popliteal fossa and goes around the neck of the fibula in order to innervate the muscles of the anterolateral compartment of the leg.

Aetiology

In most cases, various mechanisms can be found:

- **Compression:** a compression generally occurs at the level of the neck of the fibula, which is a sensible area of the common fibular nerve. This compression can be postural, perioperative, caused by a quick loss of weight, prolonged bed rest or an orthopaedic splint. A compression also may or may not occur from cancer lesions in variable proportions according to studies.
- **Section:** knee injuries are commonly implied.
- **Traction:** this mechanism favours positional injuries, which generally occur when the knee is flexing.
- **Ischaemia:** knee injuries can affect the popliteal artery, which cause poor functional prognosis ischaemia for the common fibular nerve.

Clinical Significance

- **Sensitive signs:** the pain on the antero-external face of the leg can evoke a paramedial L4–L5 discal herniation or a foraminal L5–S1 discal herniation, but the topography of the sensitive signs is slightly different. These can be elicited by using Tinel's sign at the level of the neck of the fibula. Hypoesthesia can be found on the dorsal side of the foot.
- **Motor signs:** the common fibular nerve takes charge of the motor innervation of the tibialis anterior, extensor hallucis longus, extensor digitorum longus and peroneus longus and brevis muscles. As such, an injury of this nerve causes a foot drop gait caused by a dysfunction in the flexion of the foot on the leg. A decrease of the ability of eversion of the foot can also be noticed, as this eversion is mainly performed by the peroneus muscles.

Clinical Forms

A classic form of injury, known as the “grape-picker palsy”, may happen in a professional context. It is an entrapment neuropathy in which the common fibular nerve gets compressed at the level of the neck of the fibula.

If there is no notion of trauma in the patient's history, there may however be some relevant sports activities: running or intensive jogging, favoured positions or particular habits.

Complementary Examinations

- An electroneuromyography can show a slowdown or a conduction block on the path of the nerve at the level of the neck of the fibula.
- If there is no traumatic context, an imagery of the knee makes research of a tumour possible. If there is a trauma, most notably leg torsion or malleolar fracture, a few simple radiographies will help in looking for a proximal fibular fracture in cases of Maisonneuve fractures (associated medial malleolus injury, mimicking a bimalleolar fracture).

Treatment

Immediate surgery is only recommended in cases of extrinsic compression which must be relieved quickly if the dysfunctions are sudden, recent or if they tend to evolve.

Different types of surgery can be suggested if there is no post-traumatic recovery or entrapment neuropathies. These surgeries consist of releasing the nerve at the level of the neck of the fibula (Figure [Fi12](#)).

In cases of “medical” causes, a surgery must only be envisioned as a secondary option, after failure of a well-conducted medical treatment.

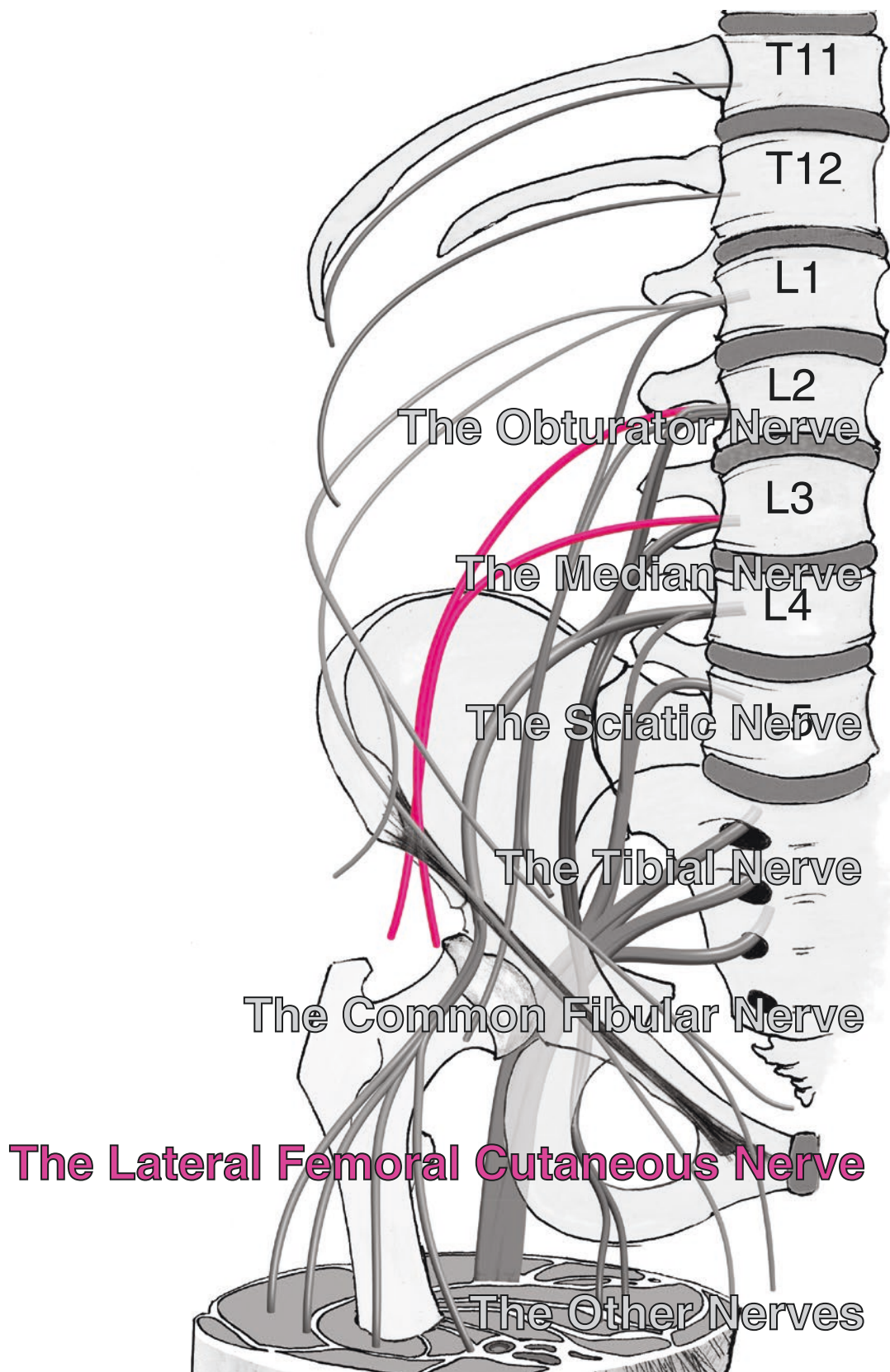
In published series, this surgery bears interesting results in all cases, with minimal invasion.



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure Fi12. Decompression surgery of the fibular nerve, at the neck of the fibula





© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

LFC

The Lateral Femoral Cutaneous Nerve

Morphological Data

The lateral femoral cutaneous nerve is a nerve with a sensitive function only. It innervates the lateral area of the buttock and of the thigh after going through the iliac fossa.

Origin

The lateral femoral cutaneous nerve is a collateral branch of the lumbar plexus. It is constituted of the L2 roots and of the branch which unites the L2 and L3 roots (Figures LFC1 and LFC2). It originates above the femoral and obturator nerves, which are terminal branches of the lumbar plexus.

Path

The lateral femoral cutaneous nerve goes in front of the genitofemoral nerve and then away towards the iliac fossa in order to join the notch between the anterior iliac spines of the hip bone (Figures LFC2 and LFC3). It emerges on the lateral border of the psoas, goes along the quadratus lumborum whilst passing in front of its distal insertion and then goes into a division of the aponeurosis of the iliacus muscle. It leaves the pelvis through an osteofibrous tunnel slightly below and medially in relation to the anterior superior iliac spine. It then goes under the inguinal ligament and penetrates into the thigh under the aponeurosis of the quadriceps femoris muscle. Finally, it crosses the sartorius muscle from the front and splits into several terminal branches (Figure LFC3).

The lateral femoral cutaneous nerve has a close relation with the anterior superior iliac spine, which is the main anatomical landmark used in surgery. This nerve is generally found a finger's width away towards the inside of the anterior superior iliac spine. It can go either behind, through or in front of the inguinal ligament and generally places itself medially in relation to the sartorius.

Neurovascular Relations

At its origin, the lateral femoral cutaneous nerve faces the external iliac vessels from a distance.

When going along the iliacus muscle, right before the anterior superior iliac spine, the lateral femoral cutaneous nerve is crossed in front by the deep circumflex iliac artery, which is a collateral branch of the external iliac artery.

At the level of the inguinal ligament, the superficial circumflex iliac vessels can be found, the artery of which is a branch of the femoral artery (Figure LFC4).

Terminal Branches

The lateral femoral cutaneous nerve ends when it crosses the anterior face of the sartorius muscle, which originates on the anterior superior iliac spine. It splits at this level into two terminal branches: the anterior and posterior branches (Figures LFC2 and LFC6).

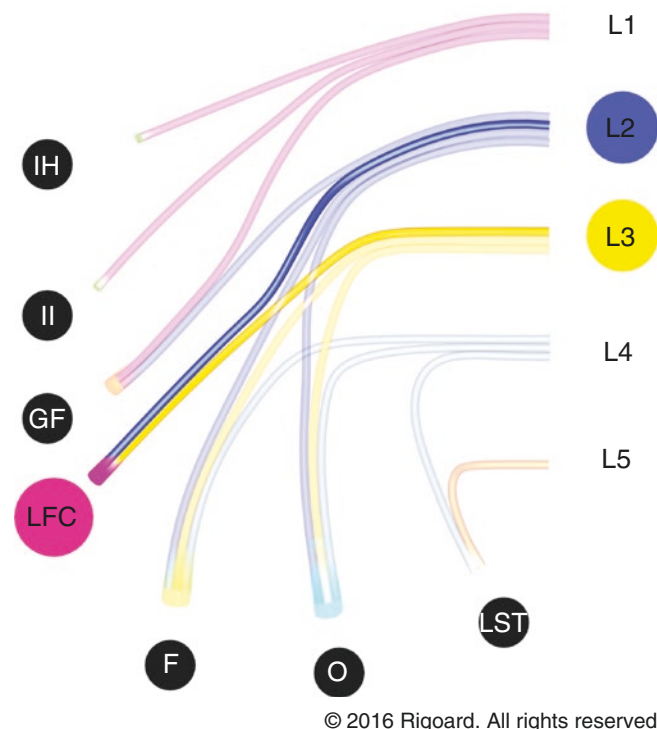
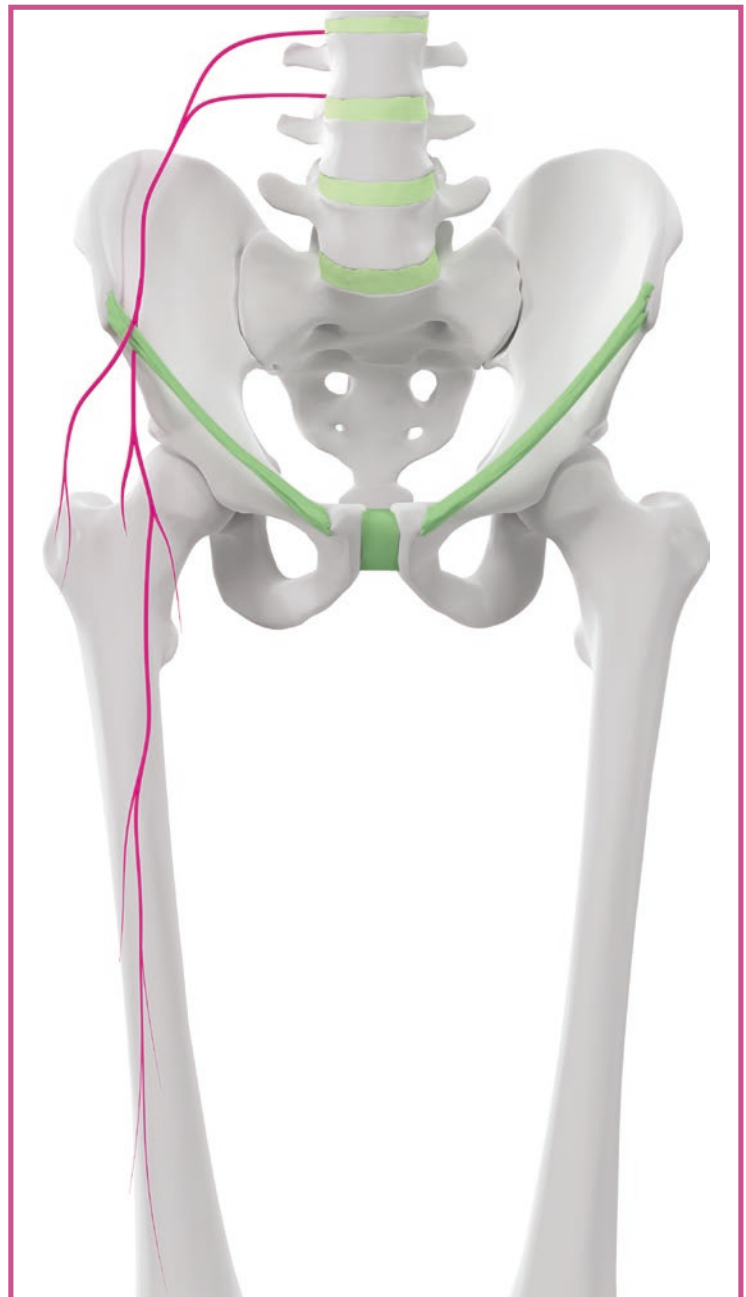
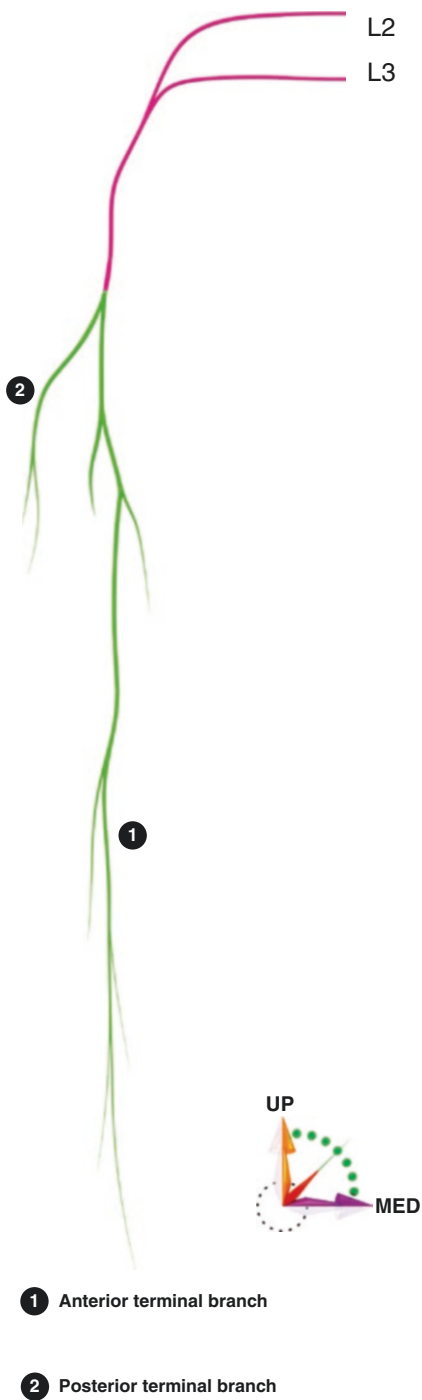


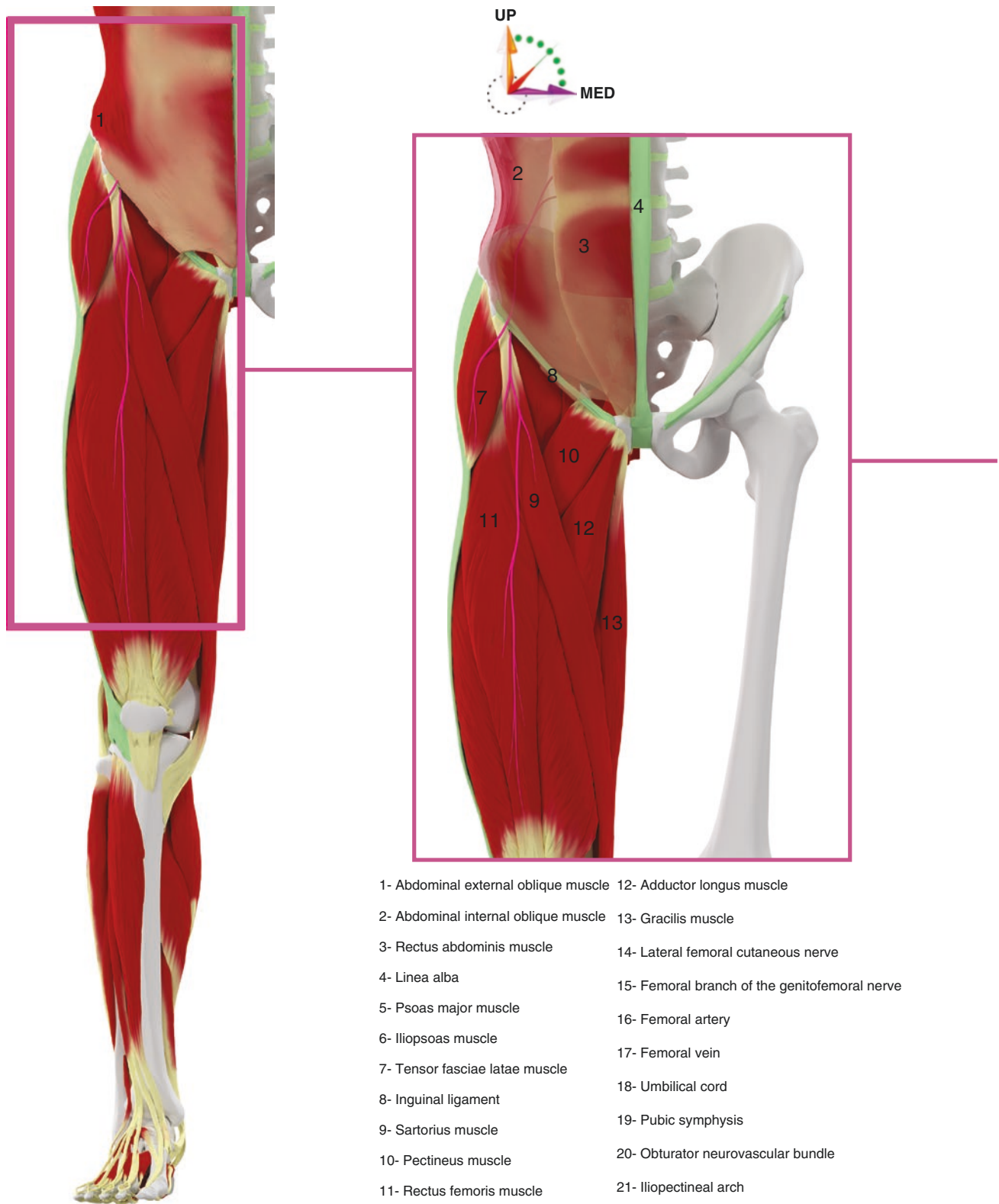
Figure LFC1. Origin of the lateral femoral cutaneous nerve



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

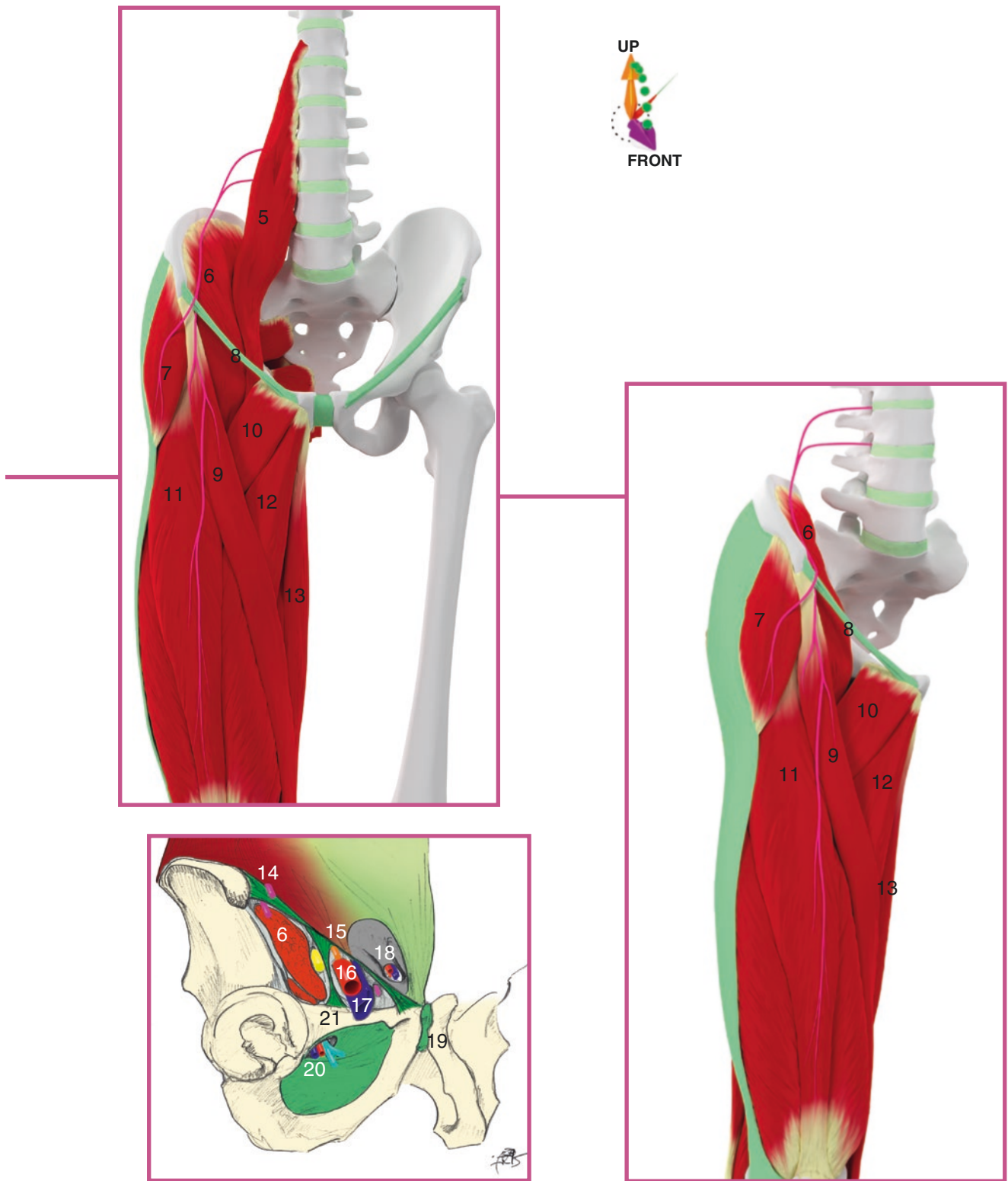
Figure LFC2. Topographical distribution of the lateral femoral cutaneous nerve and its relations with bones

The Lateral Femoral Cutaneous Nerve



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure LFC3. Muscular relations of the lateral femoral cutaneous nerve at the iliac fossa and thigh



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure LFC4. Muscular relations of the lateral femoral cutaneous nerve at the iliac fossa and at the thigh (from superficial to deep) (Drawing by P. Rigoard, based on Sobotta)





The Lateral Femoral Cutaneous Nerve

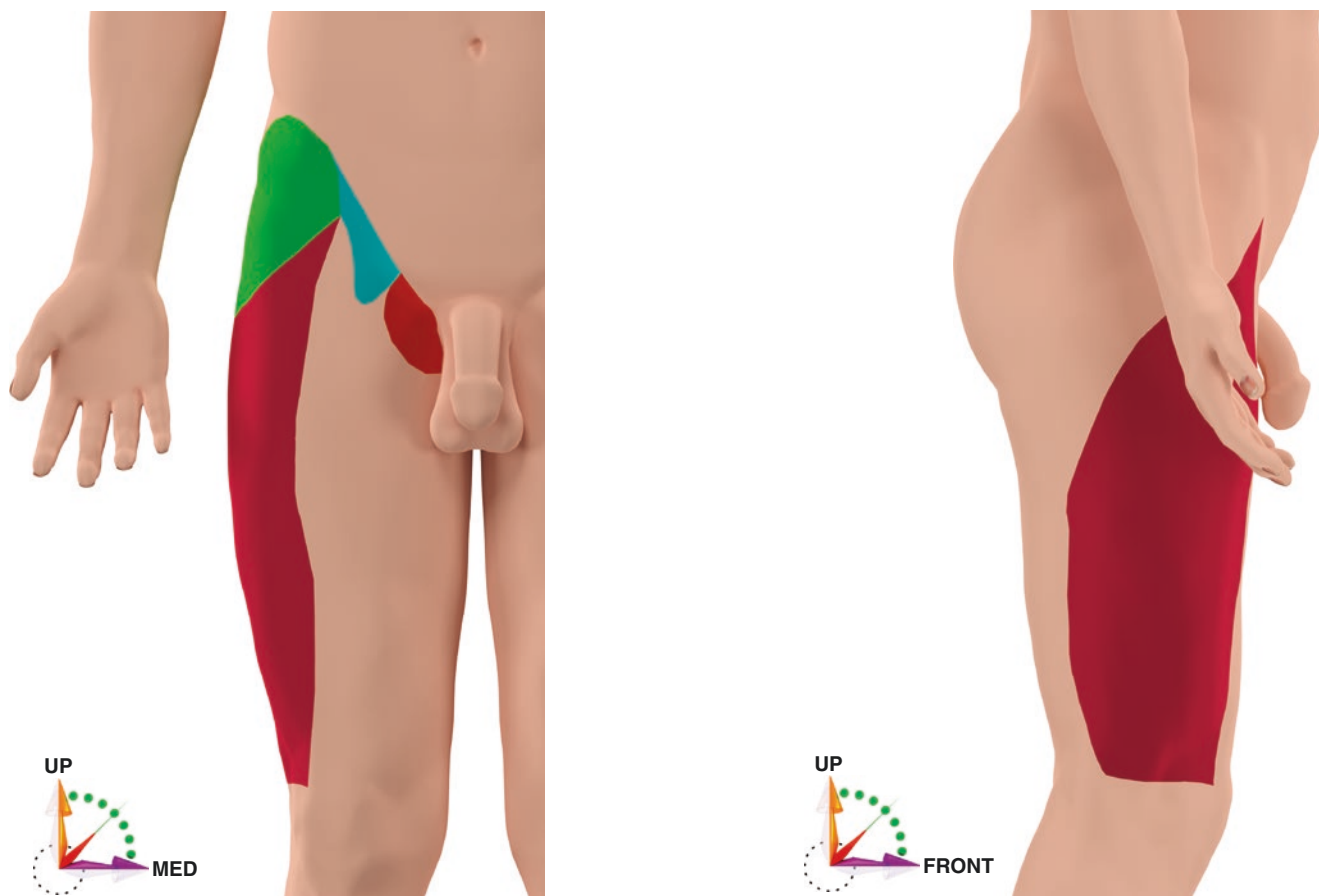
The anterior branch innervates the anterolateral area of the thigh, under the territories of the iliohypogastric and genitofemoral nerves. The innervation territory of the anterior branch ends at the upper part of the knee (Figure LFC5).

The posterior branch goes towards the greater trochanter. It innervates the posterolateral face of the buttock and the superior lateral part of the thigh (Figure LFC5).

Sensitive Function

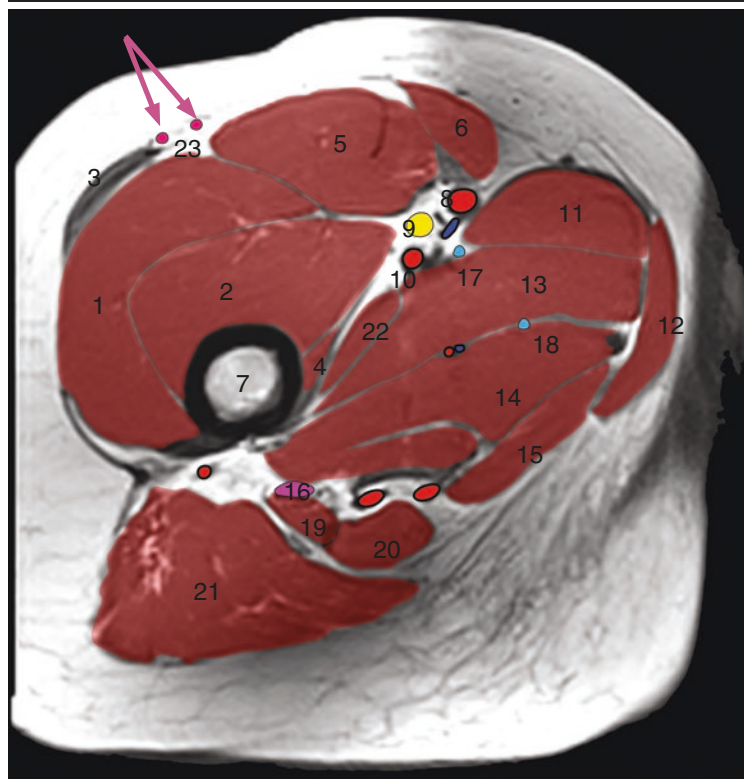
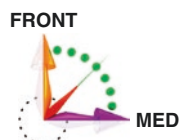
It takes charge of the sensitive innervation of the anterolateral face of the thigh down to the knee. Its territory is limited medially, in front by the sensitive territory of the femoral nerve, behind and above by the territories of the cluneal nerves and below by the territory of the posterior femoral cutaneous nerve.

-  Lateral femoral cutaneous nerve
-  Iliohypogastric nerve
-  Genitofemoral nerve
-  Ilioinguinal nerve



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure LFC5. Sensitive innervation of the lateral femoral cutaneous nerve



- 1- Vastus lateralis muscle
- 2- Vastus intermedius muscle
- 3- Tensor fasciae latae muscle
- 4- Vastus medialis muscle
- 5- Rectus femoris muscle
- 6- Sartorius muscle
- 7- Femur
- 8- Femoral artery and vein
- 9- Femoral nerve
- 10- Deep femoral artery and vein
- 11- Adductor longus muscle
- 12- Gracilis muscle
- 13- Adductor brevis muscle
- 14- Adductor magnus muscle
- 15- Semimembranosus muscle
- 16- Sciatic nerve
- 17- Anterior branch of the obturator nerve
- 18- Posterior branch of the obturator nerve
- 19- Tendon of the biceps femoris muscle
- 20- Tendon of the semitendinosus muscle
- 21- Gluteus maximus muscle
- 22- Pectineus muscle
- 23- Lateral femoral cutaneous nerve

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure LFC6. MRI scans at the proximal third of the thigh through the lateral femoral cutaneous nerve and its terminal branches

Pathology

Meralgia Paraesthetica

The lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, a collateral branch of the lumbar plexus, is solely sensitive. It goes along the iliac fossa whilst staying in contact with the iliacus muscle and then goes out of the pelvis between the anterior iliac spines. It innervates the superior part of the lateral face of the thigh.

Aetiology

- Compression: an entrapment neuropathy can occur when the nerve comes out of the pelvis, in contact with the notch between the anterior iliac spines.

Clinical Significance

The signs are exclusively sensitive. The pain often appears suddenly and is bilateral in 10% of cases. This pain can have a neuropathic connotation and can be linked with paraesthesiae.

The disorders concern the innervation territory of the lateral femoral cutaneous nerve. They can increase in strength during night-time or during prolonged standing and can be relieved by flexion of the thigh on the body.

The pain is increased by extension of the leg; progressively, a hypoesthesia settles in the painful territory.

Amongst the triggering factors, wearing clothes that are too tight (“skinny pants syndrome”) is notable, along with the stresses that are applied on the abdominal wall: pregnancy, obesity (Figure LFC7), persistent muscle contractions where the body and lower limb meet, such as in coxarthrosis.

Clinical examination can uncover a hypoesthesia in the painful area and, more rarely, trophic disorders with hair loss.

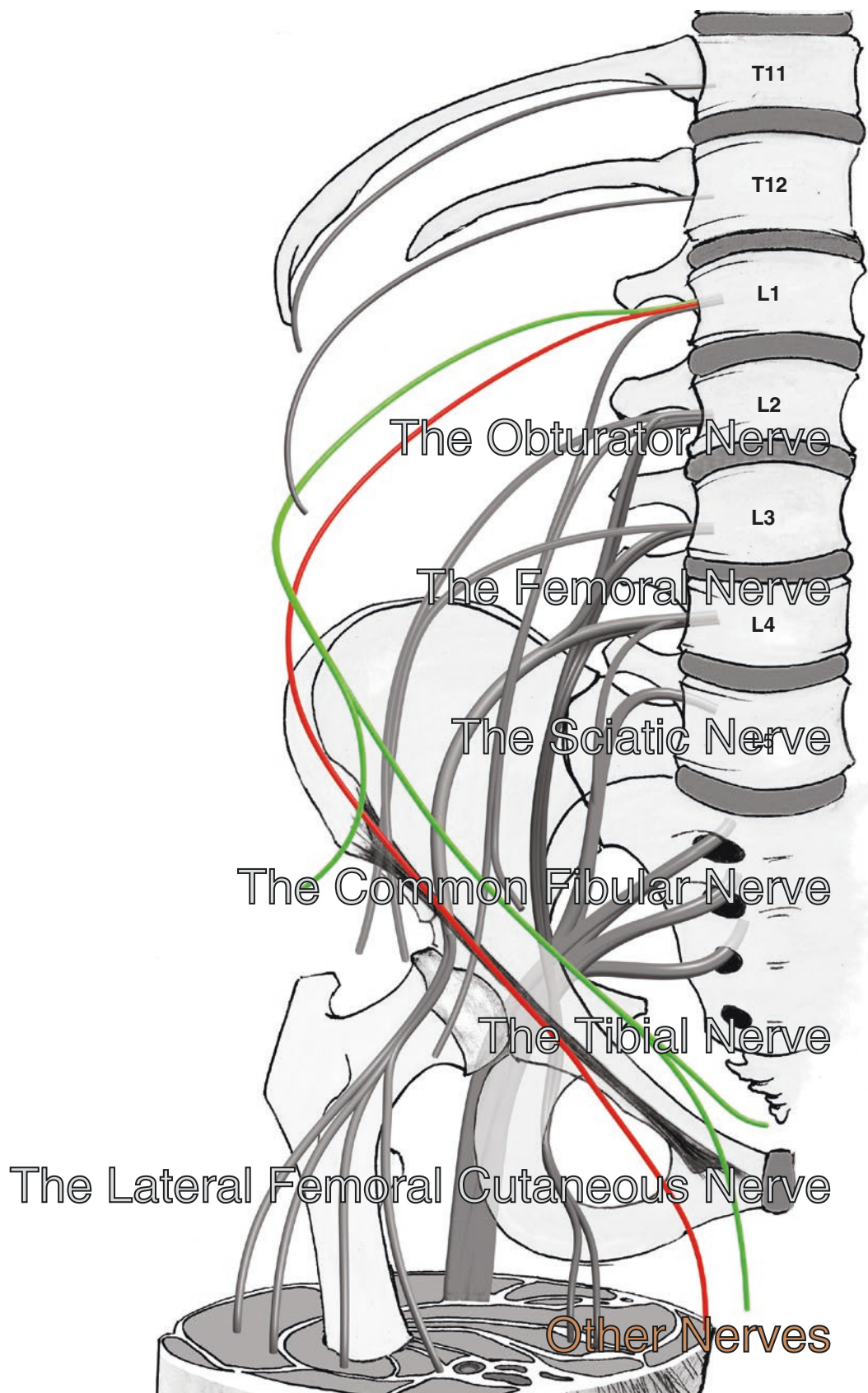
It is important to note that Leri’s sign cannot be found upon thigh extension. However, Tinel’s sign can be performed at the level of the iliac spine; the knee reflex occurs and remains symmetrical.



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure LFC7. Entrapment neuropathy of the lateral femoral cutaneous nerve which appeared in the aftermath of an important weight loss (skinny pants syndrome)





The Iliohypogastric Nerve

Morphological Data

The iliohypogastric nerve is a mixed nerve and a collateral branch of the lumbar plexus. It takes charge of the sensitive innervation of the external genitalia and of the superomedial face of the thigh. It also takes charge of the motor innervation of the inferior part of the abdominal wall.

Origin

The iliohypogastric nerve, a mixed nerve, comes from the L1 and also often from the T12 roots, above the ilioinguinal nerve (Figures I1 and I2a). It appears on the lateral border of the psoas.

Path

It goes through the quadratus lumborum and perforates the transverse muscle above the iliac crest just like the ilioinguinal nerve. At this level it divides into two branches: the lateral and anterior branches (Figure I2).

Neurovascular Relations

The iliohypogastric nerve, at its origin, faces the lumbar artery from a distance and below. Since most of its path is superficial, there is no particularly noticeable relation with any vessel.

Collateral Branches

It gives off muscular ramifications for the muscles of the abdominal wall.

Terminal Branches

The lateral cutaneous branch goes through the two muscle layers formed by the internal and external oblique muscles and then spreads towards the lower part of the lateral abdominal wall and the upper part of the lateral face of the buttock (Figure I2).

The anterior cutaneous branch continues its way between the muscles layers, along the inguinal ligament. It becomes

superficial by perforating the external oblique muscle, about 2.5 cm above the superficial inguinal ring. It innervates the hypogastric area and the adjacent part of the thigh at its superomedial face (Figure LFC5).

Sensitive Function

There are many anatomical variations, and very frequently the sensitive territories of these nerves overlap and assist each other; also, the ilioinguinal nerve's diameter is often inversely proportional to that of the iliohypogastric nerve, situated below. There is variability from one subject to another and from one side to the other in an individual in 60% of cases.

Anastomoses

The iliohypogastric and ilioinguinal nerves generally make anastomoses with each other only.

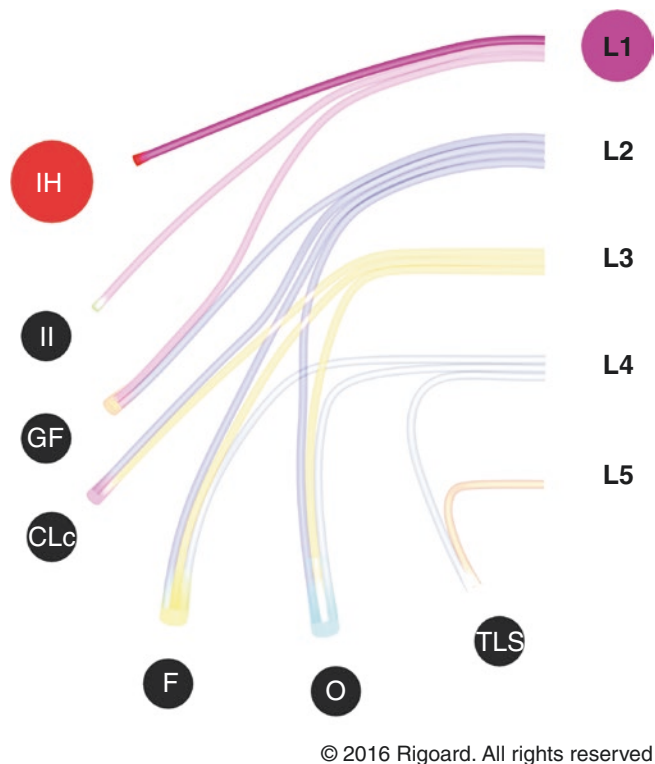
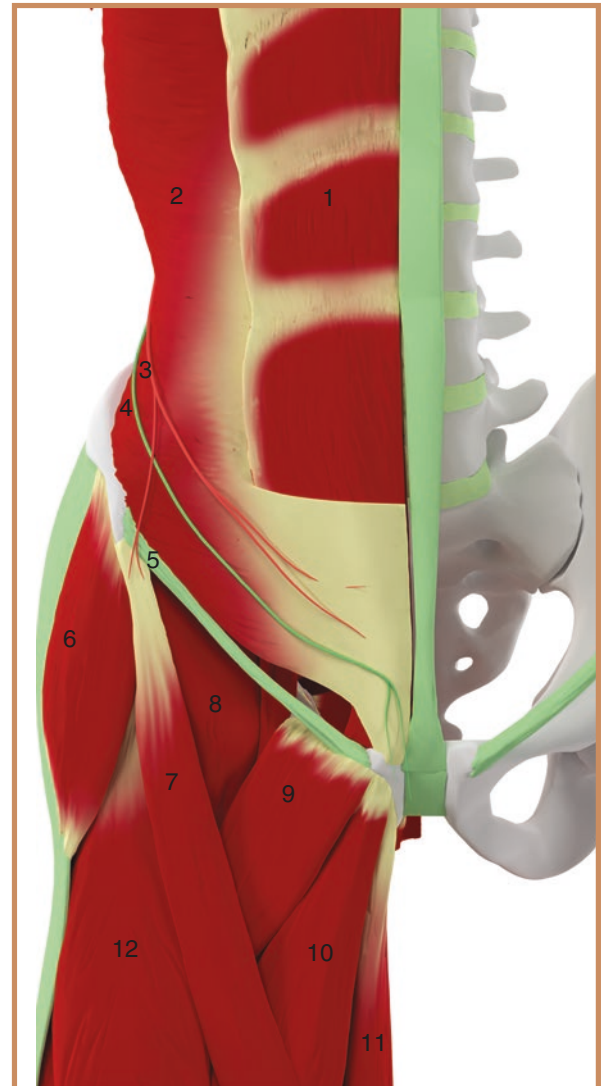
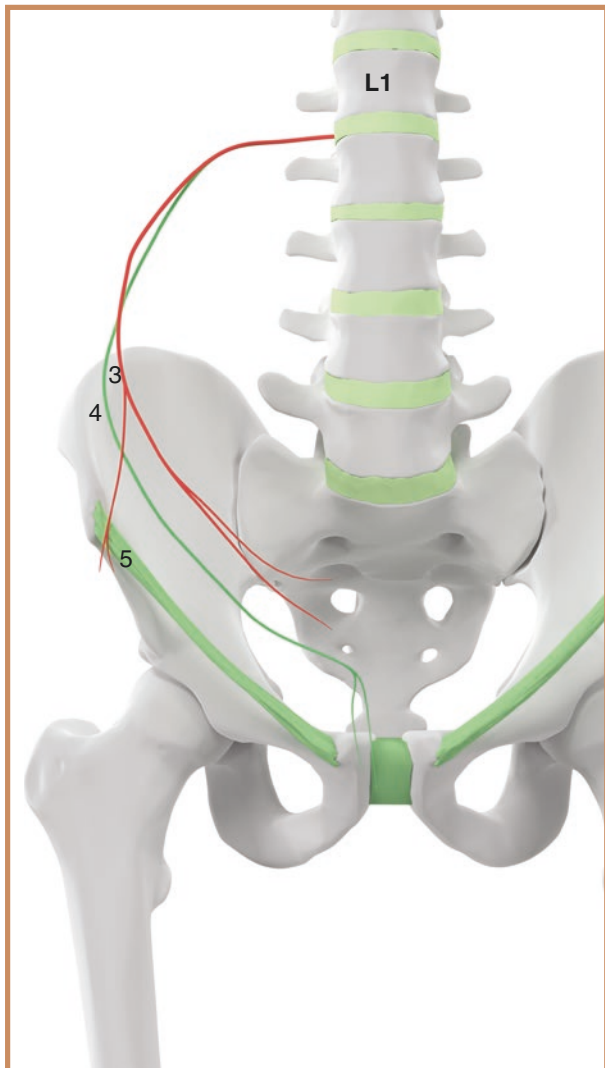
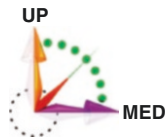


Figure I1. Origin of the iliohypogastric nerve



- 1- Rectus abdominis muscle
- 2- Transverse abdominal muscle
- 3- Iliohypogastric nerve
- 4- Ilioinguinal nerve
- 5- Inguinal ligament
- 6- Tensor fasciae latae muscle
- 7- Sartorius muscle
- 8- Psoas major muscle
- 9- Pectineus muscle
- 10- Adductor longus muscle
- 11- Gracilis muscle
- 12- Rectus femoris muscle

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure 12 Topographical distribution of the iliohypogastric and ilioinguinal nerves and their relations with bones and muscles

The Ilioinguinal Nerve

Morphological Data

The ilioinguinal nerve is a sensitive nerve which originates under the iliohypogastric nerve, with which it shares the same relations. It is a collateral branch of the lumbar plexus. It goes along the abdominal wall laterally and spreads towards the teguments of the hypogastric region.

Origin

The ilioinguinal nerve stems from the L1 root and goes under the iliohypogastric nerve in a subperitoneal way (Figures I3 and I4). It therefore shows the same path and same relations as this nerve.

Path

It appears on the lateral border of the psoas and goes through the transverse muscle near the anterior superior iliac spine (1cm above it) and then goes through the internal oblique muscle (Figure I4). It gives off motor branches to these two muscles. Its path continues under the aponeurosis of the oblique muscle towards the pubis and pubic symphysis. It is then either median to, below (less frequently) or outside of the spermatic cord in men or of the round ligament of the uterus in women. Still, it accompanies the spermatic cord, 2–4 cm below the superficial inguinal ring.

Neurovascular Relations

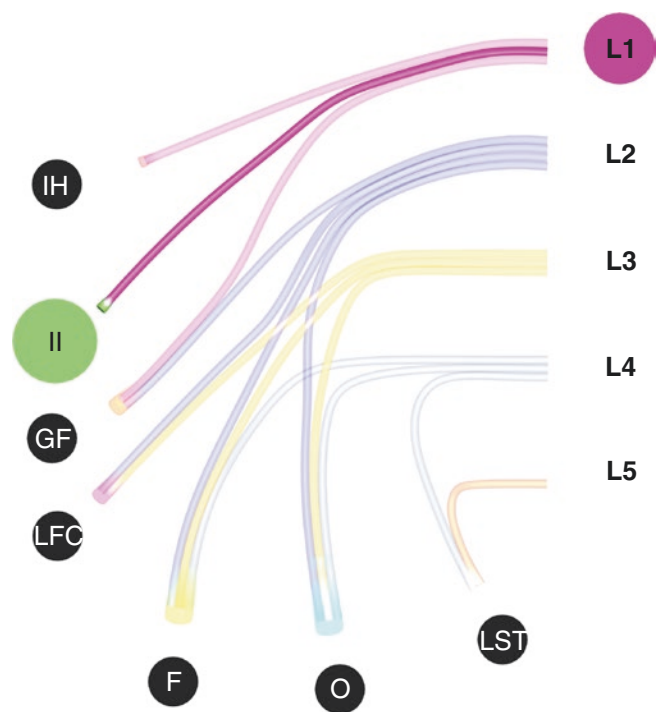
At its origin, the ilioinguinal nerve faces the iliohypogastric nerve and the lumbar artery from a distance and below.

Terminal Branches

The ilioinguinal nerve ends with two terminal branches, which are anterior and posterior.

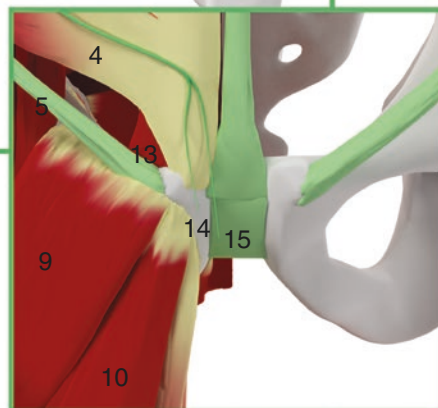
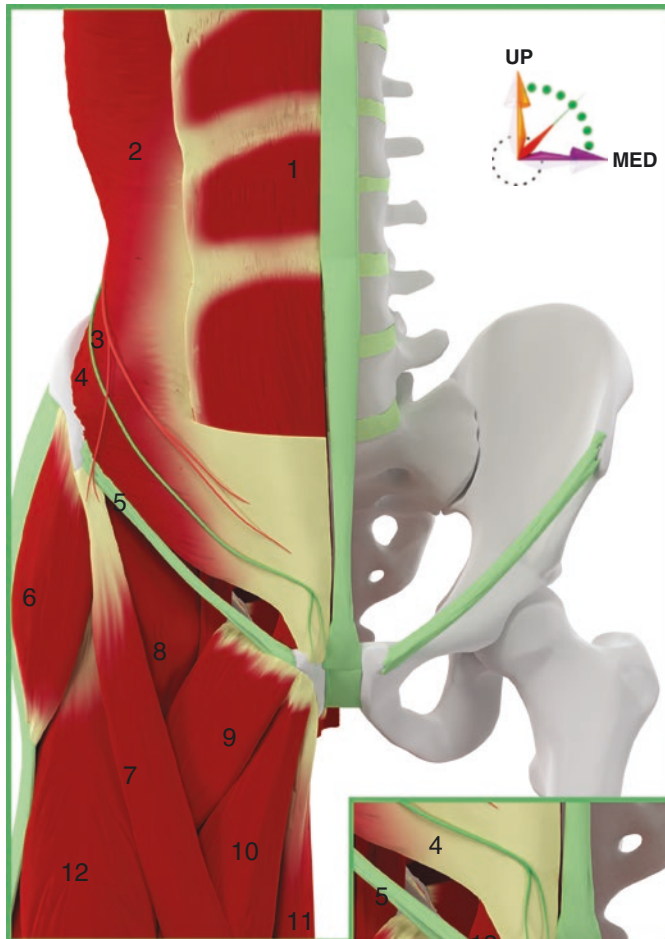
Sensitive Function

This nerve takes charge of the sensibility of the superomedial part of the thigh, of the root of the penis and scrotum in men or of the mons pubis and labia majora in women (Figure LFC5).



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure I3. Origin of the ilioinguinal nerve



- 1- Rectus abdominis muscle
- 2- Transverse abdominal muscle
- 3- Iliohypogastric nerve
- 4- Ilioinguinal nerve
- 5- Inguinal ligament
- 6- Tensor fasciae latae muscle
- 7- Sartorius muscle
- 8- Psoas major muscle
- 9- Pectineus muscle
- 10- Adductor longus muscle
- 11- Gracilis muscle
- 12- Rectus femoris muscle
- 13- Muscle pyramidal
- 14- Iliopectineal eminence
- 15- Pubic symphysis

© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure 14. Muscular relations and sensitive innervation of the iliohypogastric and ilioinguinal nerves

Pathology

Entrapment Neuropathies of the Ilioinguinal Nerve and of the Hypogastric Nerve

The ilioinguinal nerve is a sensitive collateral branch of the lumbar plexus. It goes laterally along the abdominal wall until the hypogastric region, innervating its wall.

The iliohypogastric nerve is a mixed collateral branch of the lumbar plexus. It innervates the skin of the external genitalia and the superior part of the medial face of the thigh.

Aetiology

These entrapment neuropathies are iatrogenic in most cases, especially after curing inguinal hernia, although they can also come as complications after appendectomy, urological interventions, iliac crest graft harvesting and gynaecological surgery (Figure 15).

A primitive nerve injury can be caused by a section, a compression, a stretching, a coagulation or a nerve contusion. A secondary injury of the nerve can come from a compression due to a scar, the formation of a schwannoma, an irritation caused by a stitch or a nearby granuloma.

Clinical Significance

- Sensitive signs: These signs appear as inguinal pain, felt by the patient as a continuous burning sensation, as opposed to paroxysmal. This pain increases when sitting, which induces a compression of the nerve when it goes through the oblique muscles, and when performing movements which cause a tension of the muscles of the abdominal wall. This pain can become paroxysmal when coughing or sneezing. Patients often position themselves in such a way as to relieve the pain, in a position of coxa vara with an inclination of the body towards the painful side (Figure 15b).

Sharp pains felt upon light, brushing touch would rather evoke the presence of a neuroma.

An injury of the iliohypogastric nerve causes an inguinal pain and a pain felt in the inferomedial quarter of the abdomen,

whilst an injury of the ilioinguinal nerve causes inguinal pain with irradiations towards the internal face of the thigh, the labia majora, the scrotum and the dorsal side of the penis (Figure LFC5). Hyperpathia and/or hypoesthesia can accompany this pain. Chronic pelvic pain can also merge with these symptoms, especially in women.

- Motor signs: The iliohypogastric nerve innervates the muscular wall of the abdomen in a non-exclusive way. If it is injured, there will be no significant motor deficit.

Clinical Forms

A diagnosis of neuropathic pain can be given if pain in the area mentioned above lasts for more than 4 weeks after surgery in the inguinal region, or after surgery with section of the transverse muscle such as a nephrectomy, hysterectomy or an infiltration to the ureter. For the femoral branch, an infiltration to the external iliac artery can also lead to this diagnosis. However, the pain can appear several weeks or several years after. The maximal frequency of this injury is found in the aftermath of healing an inguinal hernia.

Treatment

Infiltration is the first treatment option to be suggested.

The iliohypogastric nerve can be infiltrated when it crosses the iliac crest. The efficacy can be judged by the disappearance of spontaneous pain and pain triggered by pressing on the greater trochanter.

Surgical treatment, aimed at exploration or decompression of the nerve, is only recommended for refractory forms.

Even though recommended by some, an orchidectomy is not advised, as it only brings partial relief in 20% of cases and the onset of “phantom testicle” pain much more frequently. Denervation of the spermatic cord brings relief in 75% of cases in previously published papers.

The ilioinguinal nerve is injured more often than the iliohypogastric nerve. There is often a long period of inertia between the apparition of the symptoms and their complex treatment: between 1 and 4 years according to relevant literature.

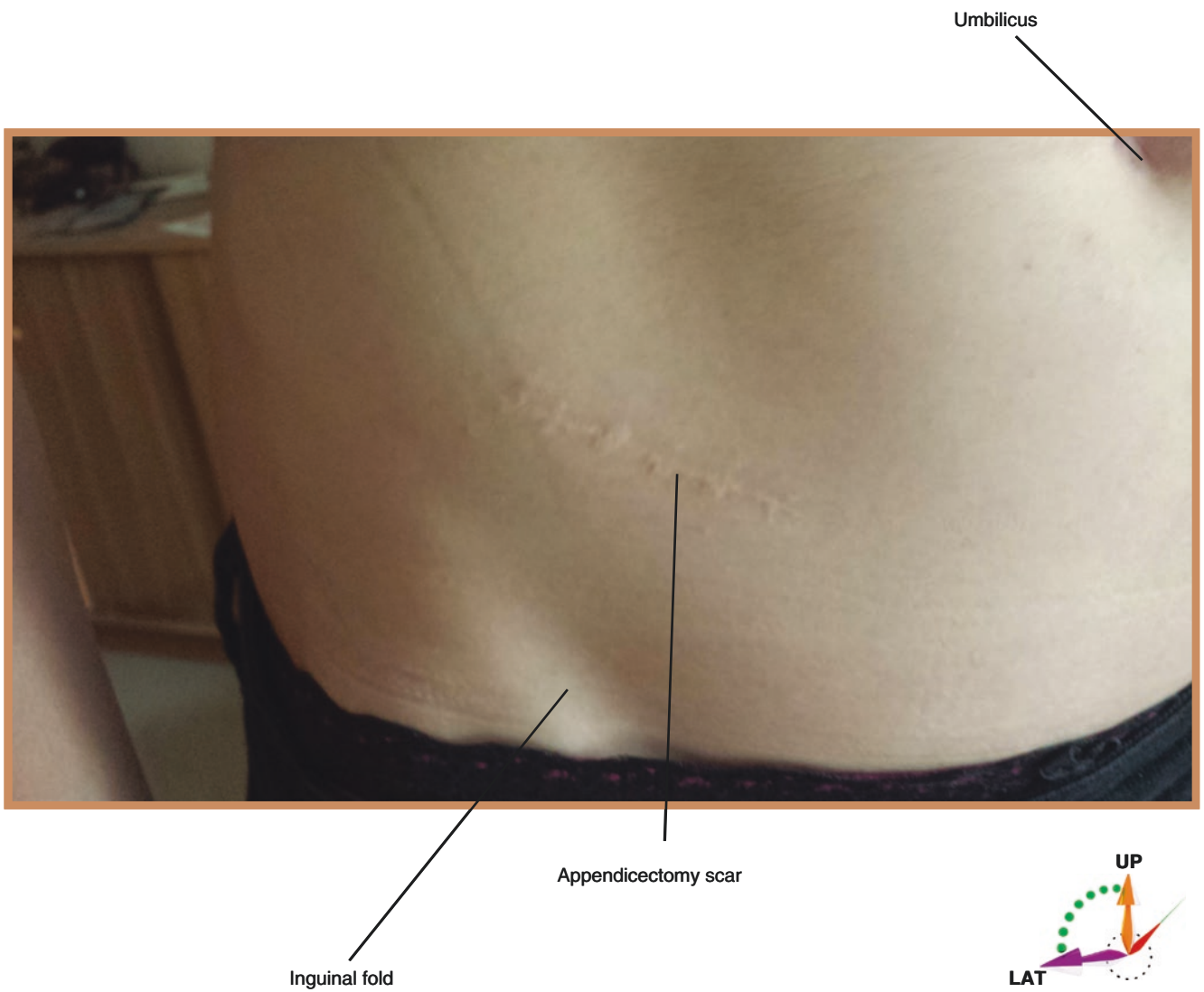


Figure 15. Case of a patient showing an ilioinguinal entrapment neuropathy linked to appendectomy complications

Bibliography

1. Bonniot A (1922) Anatomie du plexus lombaire chez l'homme. *Gaston Doin* 120–146
2. Bardeen C, Etling A (1901) A statistical study of the variations in the formation and position of the lumbo-sacral plexus in man. *AnatAnz* 124–128; 209–232

References

- Bouche P et al (2008) Entrapment neuropathies involving the ulnar nerve at the wrist (and into the hand) and the peroneal nerve. *Rev Neurol* 164(12):1073–1076
- Caldwell S, Hurwitz E, Adams A (1999) Piriformis syndrome: an annotated bibliography. *J Can Chiropr Assoc* 43(3):176–182
- Chevrot A (1997) *Imagerie clinique du pied*. Masson, Paris
- Cirak B, Guven M, Tosun N (2000) Tarsal tunnel syndrome: report of two cases with atypical etiology. *Turk Neurosurg* 10:131–134
- Esling F et al (2002) LE NEVROME DE MORTON : Résultats du traitement chirurgical par neurectomie, à propos de 36 cas revus e-mémoires de l'Académie Nationale de Chirurgie 1(1):13–16
- Fernandez E et al (1999) Neurosurgery of the peripheral nervous system: entrapment syndromes of the lower extremity. *Surg Neurol* 52(5):449–452
- Filler AG et al (2005) Sciatica of nondisc origin and piriformis syndrome: diagnosis by magnetic resonance neurography and interventional magnetic resonance imaging with outcome study of resulting treatment. *J Neurosurg Spine* 2(2):99–115
- Fishman LM et al (2002) Piriformis syndrome: diagnosis, treatment, and outcome—a 10-year study. *Arch Phys Med Rehabil* 83(3):295–301
- Goussard J (1993) Fausses douleurs sciatiques et muscle pyramidal du bassin. *EMC Instantanés médicaux* 1:31–34
- Guillon P, Carcopino J, Marie L (2001) Le syndrome du tunnel tarsien: diagnostic, étiologies et traitement. *Maitrise Orthopédique* 100
- Hughes RJ et al (2007) Treatment of Morton's neuroma with alcohol injection under sonographic guidance: follow-up of 101 cases. *AJR Am J Roentgenol* 188(6):1535–1539
- Humphreys DB, Novak CB, Mackinnon SE (2007) Patient outcome after common peroneal nerve decompression. *J Neurosurg* 107(2):314–318
- Joshi S, Joshi S, Athavale S (2006) Anatomy of tarsal tunnel and its applied significance. *J Anat Soc India* 55(1): 52–56
- Jroudi L, El Quessar A, Chakir N (2003) Le syndrome du muscle pyramidal: Une cause rare de sciatique non discale: À propos d'une observation. *J De Radiologie* 84(6):715–717
- Kim DH et al (2005) Surgical management of 33 ilioinguinal and iliohypogastric neuralgias at Louisiana State University Health Sciences Center. *Neurosurgery* 56(5):1013–1020; discussion 1013–1020
- Kim DH, Kline DG (1996) Management and results of peroneal nerve lesions. *Neurosurgery* 39(2):312–319; discussion 319–320
- Koga T, Matsuzaki A (2004) Surgical treatment of tarsal tunnel syndrome. *Orthopedics Traumatol* 53(2):441–444
- Labat J-J et al (2009) Buttocks sciatic pain. *Neurochirurgie* 55(4–5):459–462
- Ladermann A, Ceroni D, Magistris M (2005) Lésions du nerf sciatique en chirurgie de la hanche. *Rev Chir Orthop Reparatrice Appar Mot* 91(7):637–641
- Lapierre F et al (2009) The main tunnel syndromes. *Neurochirurgie* 55(4–5):393–412
- Mansat M (1986) Syndromes canalaires et des defilés. In *Enc. Med. Chir. Paris* 15005:A10–A11
- M'Bappé P (2005) Complications neurologiques de la grossesse (sciatique exclue). *Rev Rhum* 72(8):719–724
- Milants C, Lempereur S, Dubuisson A (2013) Bilateral peroneal neuropathy following bariatric surgery. *Neurochirurgie* 59(1):50–52

Mitteau M et al (2002) La section du ligament inter-métatarsien dans la maladie de Morton. *Eur J Orthopaedic Traumatol Surg* 1(2):95–97

Mumenthaler M, Goerke H (eds) (1991) *Peripheral nerve lesions: diagnosis and therapy*. Thieme, Stuttgart

Natelson SE (1997) Surgical correction of proximal femoral nerve entrapment. *Surg Neurol* 48(4):326–329

Noterman J (1975) Surgical pathology of the peripheral nerve. Introduction. *Acta Chirurgica Belgica Suppl* 1:9–25

Nouraei SAR et al (2007) A novel approach to the diagnosis and management of meralgia paresthetica. *Neurosurgery* 60(4):696–700; discussion 700

Pelier-Cady M, Saint-Cast Y, Saint-Cast C (2004) Syndrome du nerf tibial piégé dans la fosse poplitée. *J de Traumatologie du Sport* 21(2):116–119

Rigoard P et al (2009) Bases anatomiques des voies d'abord chirurgicales des nerfs du membre supérieur : à l'usage des jeunes neurochirurgiens. *Neurochirurgie* 55(4–5):384–392

Schmitt C, Cotton F, Gonnaud M (2009) Paralysie sciatique transitoire après embolisation de l'artère utérine. *Gynecol Obstet Fertil* 37(1):70–73

Uzenot D, Cantiniaux S, Pouget J (2007) Syndromes canaux entre «hanches» et «pieds». *Rev Rhum* 74(4):401–408

Volpe A, Tognon S, Fassina A (1998) Morton's syndrome: surgical strategies according to the digital nerve pathology. *Foot Ankle Surg* 4(3):129–137

Superior Member/Lower Member

Abrahams P et al (2014) *Atlas clinique d'anatomie humaine de McMinn et Abrahams imagerie clinique et de dissection*. Elsevier Masson, Issy-les-Moulineaux

Drake RL et al (2010) *Gray's anatomy for students*. Churchill Livingstone/Elsevier, Philadelphia

Kahle W, Léonhardt H, Platzer W (2002) *Atlas de poche d'anatomie. Tome 3: Système nerveux et organes des sens*. Flammarion médecines-sciences, Paris

Kim DH, Kline DG (2008) *Kline & Hudson's nerve injuries operative results for major nerve injuries, entrapments and tumors.*, Philadelphia: Saunders Elsevier. Available at: <http://www.clinicalkey.com/dura/browse/bookChapter/3-s2.0-C20090471691>. Accessed 18 Sept 2015

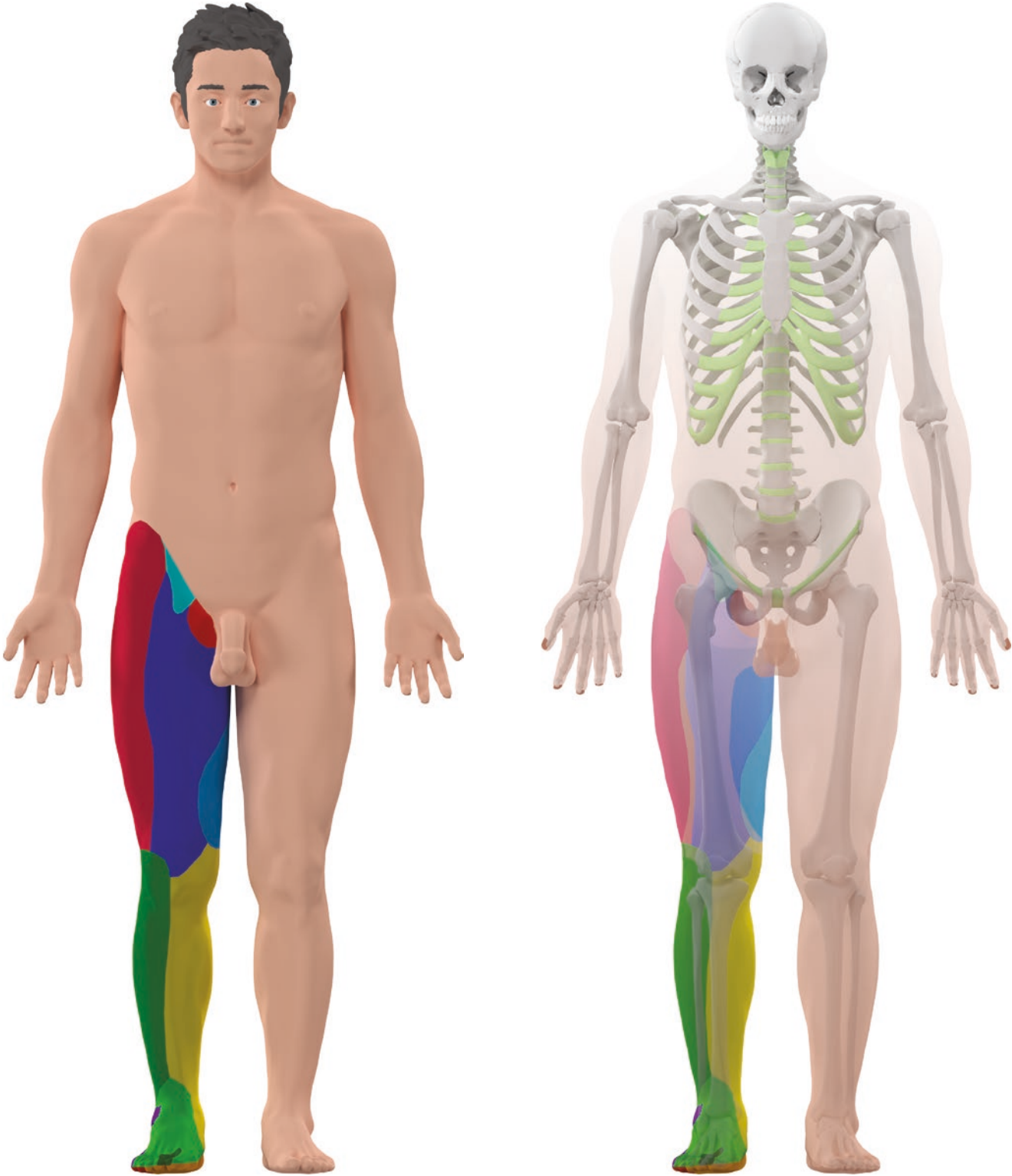
Netter FH, Kamina P (2011) *Atlas d'anatomie humaine*. Elsevier Masson, Issy-les-Moulineaux

Platzer W (2007) *Atlas de poche d'anatomie. Tome 1: Appareil locomoteur*. Flammarion médecines-sciences, Paris

Rouvière H (1976) *Précis d'anatomie et de dissection*. Masson, Paris/New York

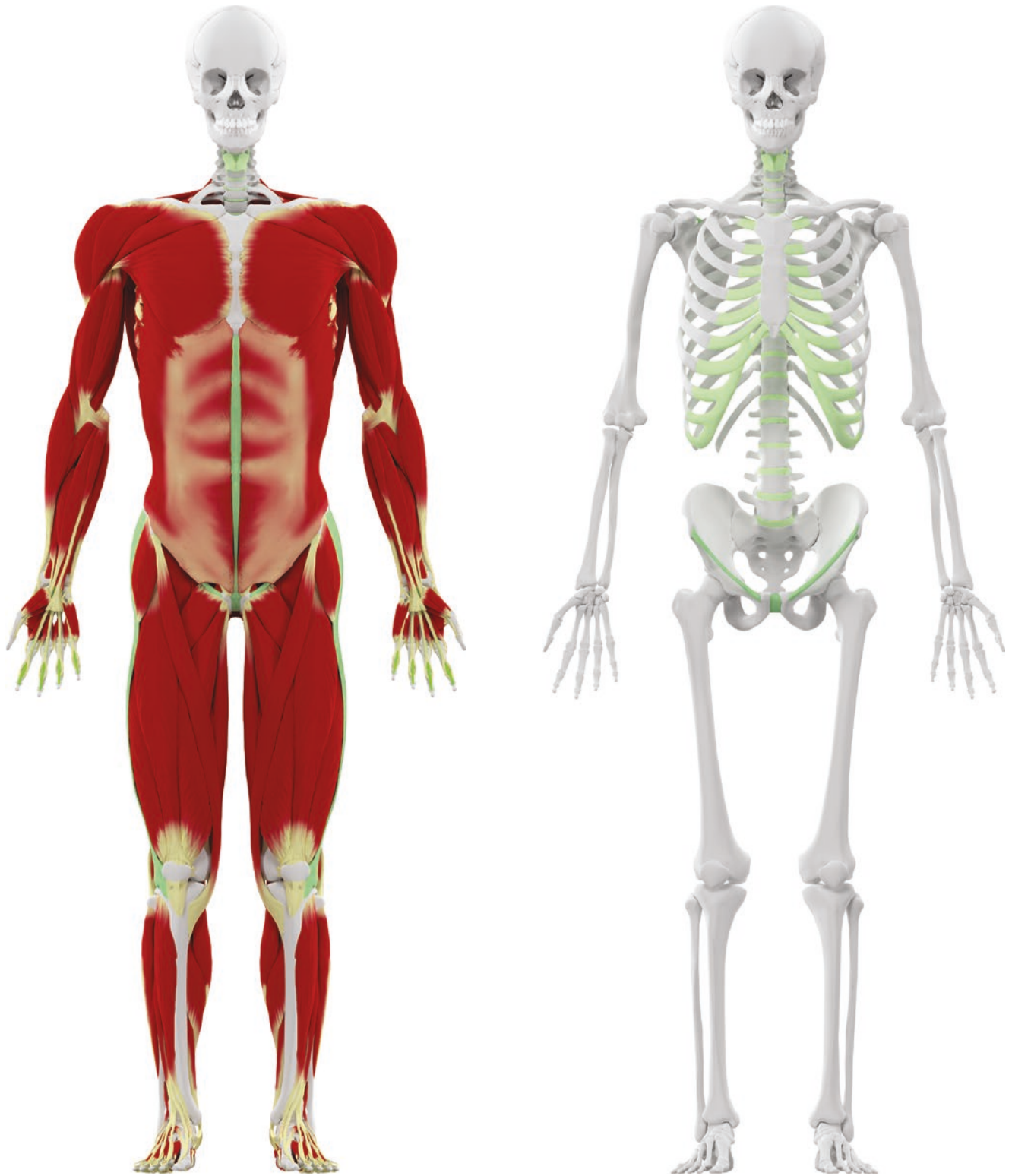
Sobotta J et al (2013) *Atlas d'anatomie humaine. Médecine sciences publications-Lavoisier*, Paris

General Views



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

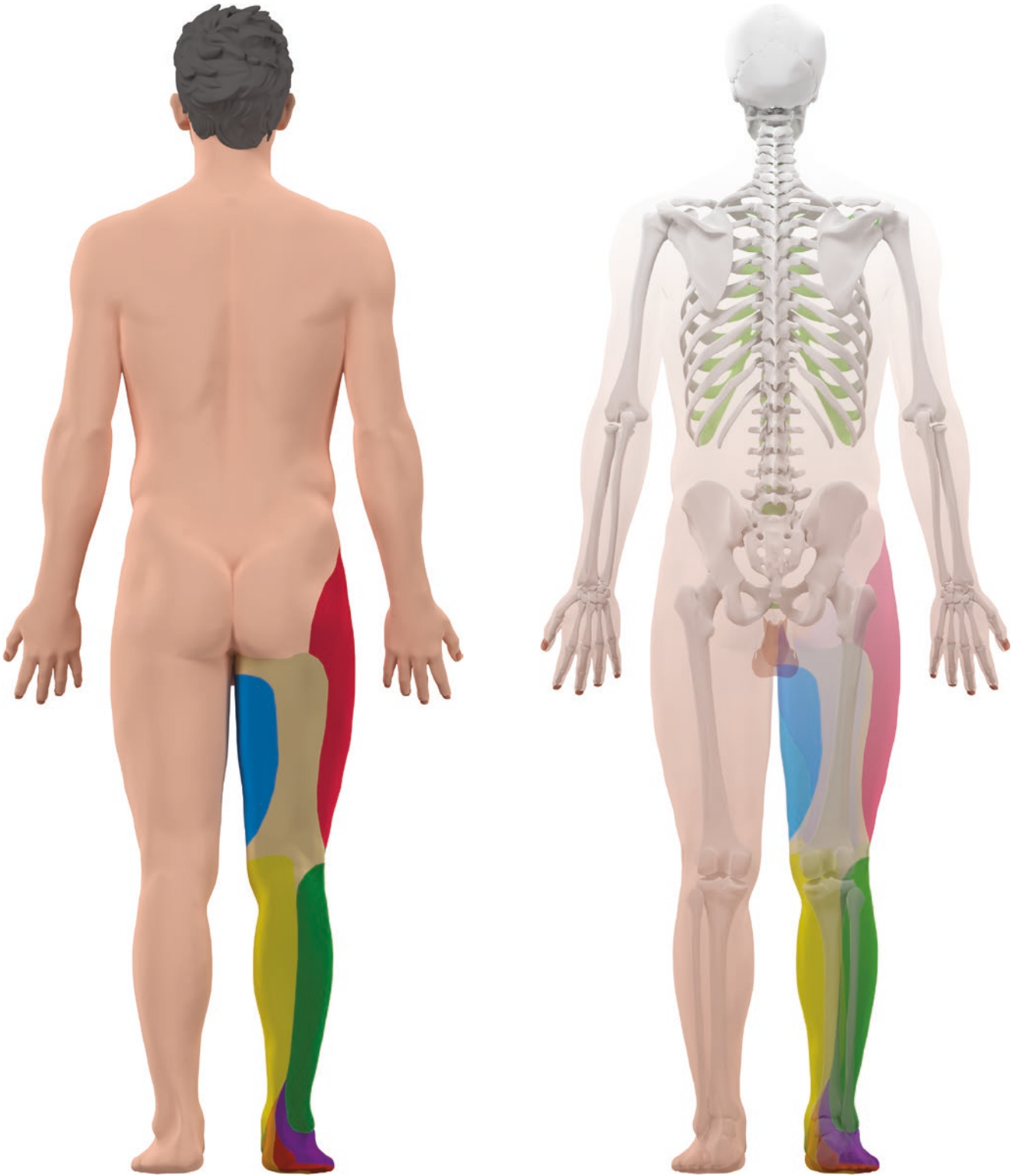
Figure GV1. General views



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

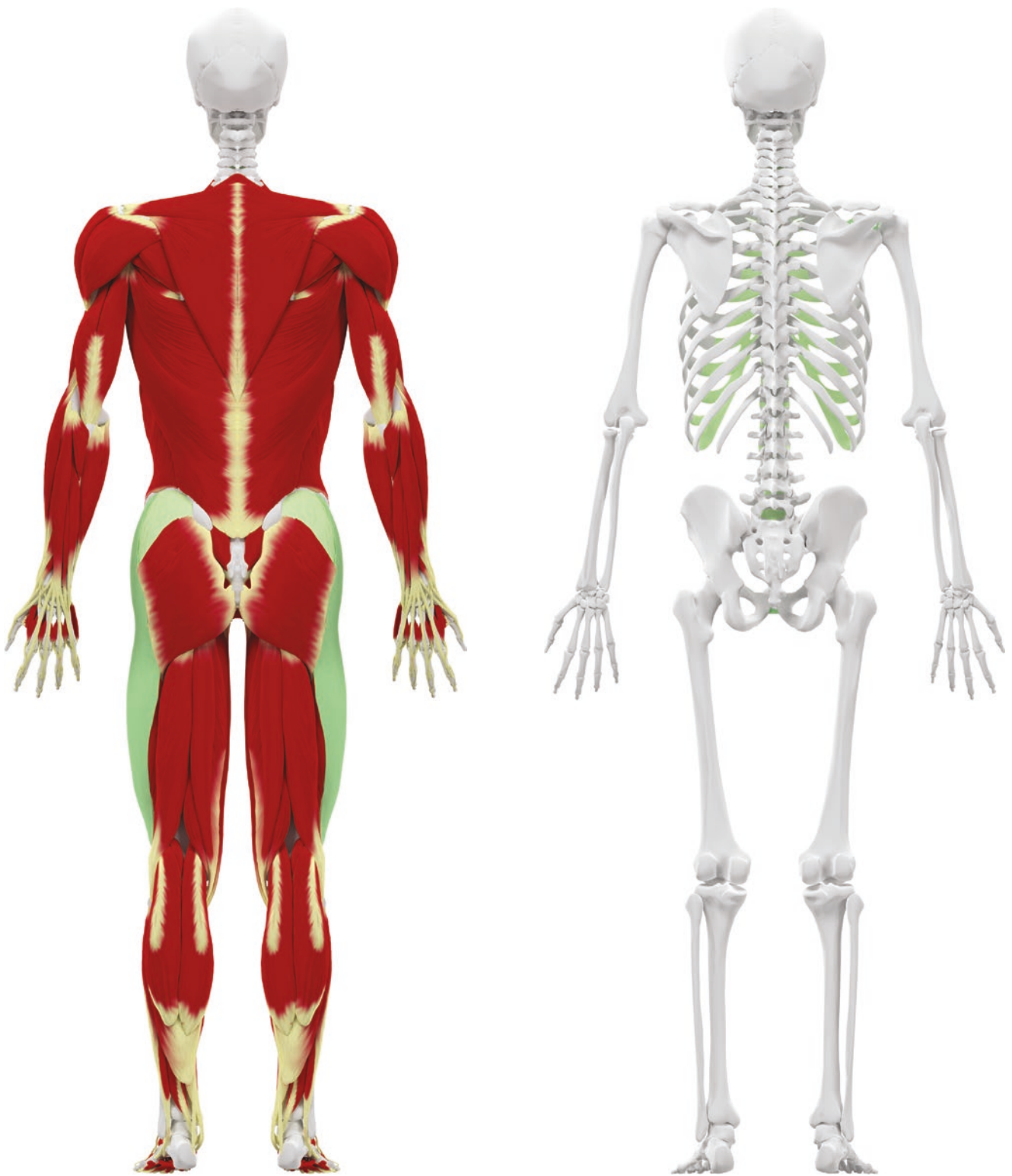
Figure GV2. General views

General Views



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure GV3. General views



© 2016 Rigoard. All rights reserved

Figure GV4. General views

INDEX

A

- Abdominal aorta, obturator nerve, 192, 194
- Abdominal oblique muscle, lateral femoral nerve
 - external, 284, 285
 - internal, 284, 285
- Abductor digiti minimi muscle
 - median nerve, 116
 - tibial nerve, 252
 - ulnar nerve, 142, 145
- Abductor hallucis muscle, tibial nerve, 252
- Abductor pollicis brevis muscle
 - median nerve, 116, 117, 119
 - ulnar nerve, 141, 142
- Abductor pollicis longus muscle
 - median nerve, 121, 127
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 77
 - radial nerve, 92, 93, 95, 97
 - ulnar nerve, 147, 153
- Accessory cephalic vein, radial nerve, 93
- Acetylcholine (ACh), 10, 11
- Adductor brevis muscle
 - femoral nerve, 220
 - lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, 287
 - obturator nerve, 201, 203
 - sciatic nerve, 235, 237
- Adductor canal, femoral nerve, 215
- Adductor longus muscle
 - femoral nerve, 210, 213, 214, 218, 220
 - iliohypogastric nerve, 293
 - ilioinguinal nerve, 295
 - lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, 284, 285, 287
 - lumbosacral plexus, 182, 183
 - obturator nerve, 192, 193, 197, 198, 201, 203, 204
 - sciatic nerve, 235, 237
- Adductor magnus muscle
 - femoral nerve, 210, 213, 218, 220, 221
 - lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, 287
 - obturator nerve, 192, 197, 201, 203, 204, 205
 - sciatic nerve, 228, 230, 234, 235, 237, 238
- Adductor pollicis muscle
 - median nerve, 116
 - ulnar nerve, 142, 145
- Agrin, 11
- Alar lamina, plexus, 24, 25
- Anastomoses, 2, 3
 - axillary nerve, 62, 64
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 74
- Anconeus muscle
 - median nerve, 121, 125
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 77, 78
 - radial nerve, 89, 91, 92, 93, 95, 97, 102
 - ulnar nerve, 138, 139, 147, 151
- Ankle
 - MRI scans, 259
 - fibular nerve, 277
 - sciatic nerve, 241
 - tibial nerve
 - muscular relations, 248, 249
 - neurovascular relations, 249
- Ankyrin, 11
- Antebrachial vein
 - median nerve, 114
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 73
- Anterior interosseous nerve syndrome
 - aetiology, 128
 - clinical forms and significance, 128
 - complementary examinations, 128
 - median nerve, 128, 129
 - treatment, 128
- Anteromedial intermuscular septum, femoral nerve, 214, 215
- Arm
 - dissection, axillary fossa, 44
 - lateral cutaneous nerve, 55
 - median nerve
 - MRI scans, 121, 124
 - neurovascular relations of, 110
 - path, 110
 - relations of, 120
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 70
 - MRI scans, 79
 - relations of, 70, 76

- radial nerve
 - MRI scans, 100, 101
 - path, 90
 - relations of, 90, 96
- ulnar nerve
 - MRI scans, 149, 150
 - neurovascular relations, 136
 - relations of, 146
- Artère et veine fibulaires, 236
- Artère et veine poplitées, 236
- Artère tibiale antérieure, 236
- Artère tibiale postérieure, 236
- Arteriole, 2, 3
- Articular branch, elbow, 109
- Axillary artery
 - median nerve, 110
 - radial nerve, 91
- Axillary nerve, 61
 - brachial plexus, 29, 40, 41
 - dissection, 44
 - median, 110, 122
 - morphological data
 - anastomoses, 62
 - collateral branches, 54, 57–59
 - motor function, 62, 63
 - MRI scans, 61
 - neurovascular relations, 54
 - origin, 54, 55
 - path, 54, 56
 - sensitive function, 62, 63
 - shoulder, relations of, 60
 - terminal branches, 54, 60–63
 - topographical distribution, 55
 - and musculocutaneous, 76, 78
 - pathology
 - aetiology, 64
 - clinical forms and significance, 64
 - complementary examinations, 64
 - treatment, 64
 - and radial, 99
 - and ulnar, 136, 148
- Axillary vein, brachial plexus, 44
- Axon, 4, 6, 9, 16

- injured nerve
 - traumatic injury of, 16, 17
 - types of, 15
- sprouting, 18, 19
- terminal, 11

B

- Band of Büngner, 17
- Basal cell membrane, 17
- Basal lamina, plexus, 24, 25
- Basilic vein, 93
 - median nerve, 114, 121, 123–127
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 71, 73, 77, 79, 80, 81, 82
 - radial nerve, 97, 100–103
 - ulnar nerve, 138, 147, 149–152
- Biceps brachii muscle
 - axillary nerve, 58
 - long head of, 61
 - short head of, 60
 - brachial plexus, 44
 - long thoracic nerve, 168
 - median nerve, 111, 113, 120, 123, 124, 125
 - long head, 120, 122
 - short head, 120
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 75, 76, 79–81
 - long head, 69, 73
 - short head, 69, 73
 - radial nerve, 96, 100–102
 - long head, 96, 99
 - medial head, 91
 - short head, 96
 - suprascapular nerve
 - long head, 162
 - short head, 162
 - ulnar nerve, 137, 138, 146, 149, 150, 151
 - long head, 146, 148
 - short head, 146
- Biceps femoris muscle
 - femoral nerve, 218, 220, 221
 - fibular nerve, 268
 - lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, 287

- obturator nerve, 192, 197, 203, 204, 205
- sciatic nerve, 228, 230, 233, 234, 235, 237, 238
- Biceps, long head
 - median nerve, 125
 - radial nerve, 102
 - ulnar nerve, 151
- Bladder, obturator nerve, 192, 194
- Bourse séreuse, sciatic nerve, 236
- Brachial artery, 61
 - median nerve, 110, 113, 114, 120, 122–125
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 71, 73, 76, 78, 80, 81
 - plexus, 44
 - radial nerve, 91, 96, 99–102
 - ulnar nerve, 136, 137, 140, 146, 148, 149, 150, 151
- Brachialis muscle
 - median nerve, 111, 113, 120, 124, 125
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 69–71, 73, 75, 77, 80, 81
 - radial nerve, 91, 92, 93, 96, 101, 102
 - ulnar nerve, 137, 138, 141, 146, 150, 151
- Brachial plexus, 46
 - at infraclavicular level, 44–47
 - morphological data, 40, 41
 - at supraclavicular level, 42, 43
- Brachial vein, 61
 - median nerve, 120, 122, 124, 125
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 76, 78, 80, 81
 - radial nerve, 96, 99, 101, 102
 - ulnar nerve, 146, 148, 150, 151
- Brachioradialis muscle
 - median nerve, 113, 114, 120, 124, 125, 127
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 71, 73, 77, 80, 81
 - radial nerve, 89, 91, 92, 93, 95, 96, 101, 102
 - ulnar nerve, 139, 141, 146, 150, 151, 153
- Buttock, sciatic nerve
 - muscular relations, 228
 - neurovascular relations, 229

C

- Calcaneal branch, tibial nerve, 252
- Calcaneal tendon
 - femoral nerve, 219
 - fibular nerve, 274
 - tibial nerve, 256
- Calf, tibial nerve
 - muscular relations, 248, 249
 - neurovascular relations, 249
- Carpal tunnel syndrome, 128, 262
 - anatomical atypias, 130
 - clinical atypias, 130
 - differential diagnosis, 130
 - median nerve, 128, 131
 - signs, 130
 - treatment, 130
- Cell nucleus, 16
- Cephalic vein, 60
 - long thoracic nerve, 168
 - median nerve, 114, 120, 123, 124, 125, 127
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 71, 73, 76, 79–81
 - radial nerve, 93, 96, 100, 101, 102
 - suprascapular nerve, 162
 - ulnar nerve, 146, 149, 150, 151
- Chef latéral du muscle gastrocnémien, 236
- Chef médial du muscle gastrocnémien, 236
- Circumflex nerve and artery, 57, 60
 - long thoracic nerve, 168
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 76
 - radial nerve, 96
 - suprascapular nerve, 162
 - ulnar nerve, 146
- Clavicle, brachial plexus, 45, 47, 58
- Colic flexure, lumbosacral plexus, 182, 184
- Collagen, 2, 11, 14
- Common fibular nerve
 - anastomoses, 272
 - dorsal cutaneous nerve, 267, 268, 270
 - lateral branch, 267, 268, 270, 271
 - medial branch, 267, 270
 - morphological data
 - collateral branches, 266
 - neurovascular relations, 266
 - origin, 266
 - path, 266
 - topographical distribution, 266, 267
 - motor function, 272, 273
 - pathology
 - aetiology, 278
 - clinical forms and significance, 278
 - complementary examinations, 278

- injury, 278
- signs, 278
- surgery types, 278, 279
- treatment, 278
- plexus, 31
- sensitive function, 272, 273
- superficial, 267, 268, 270
- terminal branches, 272
- Connective tissue, 9
- Coracobrachialis muscle, 60
 - long thoracic nerve, 168
 - median nerve, 120
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 69, 70, 71, 75, 76
 - radial nerve, 96
 - suprascapular nerve, 162
 - ulnar nerve, 146
- Cubital tunnel syndrome, 154, 155
 - aetiology, 154
 - clinical forms and significance, 154
 - complementary examinations, 154
 - treatment, 156
- Cuboid bone, tibial nerve, 252
- Cytoskeleton, 4

D

- Deltoid muscle, 91, 96
 - axillary nerve, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61
 - motor branch for, 55
 - spinal fibres of, 57
 - long thoracic nerve, 168
 - median nerve, 120, 122, 123
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 76, 78, 79
 - acromial fibres of, 70, 71
 - clavicular fibres of, 70, 71
 - radial nerve, 99, 100
 - suprascapular nerve, 162
 - ulnar nerve, 146, 148, 149
- Dermatomes, plexus, 28, 29
- Digital nerves, ulnar, 143
- Dok-7, 11
- Dorsal venous network, hand, 93
- Dystrophin, 11

E

- Elbow
 - median nerve
 - MRI scans, 125
 - muscular relations, 113
 - neurovascular relations, 112
 - path and muscular relations, 111
 - relations of, 121
 - vein, 125
 - musculocutaneous nerve
 - MRI scans, 81
 - relations of, 77
 - radial nerve
 - MRI scans, 102
 - path and relations of, 90
 - relations of, 97
 - vascular relations of, 91
 - ulnar nerve
 - MRI scans, 151
 - muscular relations, 138, 139
 - neurovascular relations, 137
 - relations of, 147
- Embryology, plexus
 - embryological development, 24
 - precursor cell growth, 24, 25
 - segmental spinal nerves, 24
- Endoneurium, 9
- Epicondylar muscles, tendon
 - median nerve, 121, 125
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 77
 - radial nerve, 97
 - ulnar nerve, 147, 151
- Epigastric artery, obturator nerve, 192, 194
- Epineurium, 2, 3, 9
- Epycondylar muscles
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 77, 81
 - radial nerve, 102
 - tendon
 - median nerve, 121
 - radial nerve, 97
 - ulnar nerve, 147
- ErbB2, 11
- ErbB4, 11

Erector spinae muscles, lumbosacral plexus, 182, 184, 185

Extensor carpi muscle

– median nerve, 126, 127

– radial nerve, 103

– ulnar nerve, 152, 153

Extensor carpi radialis brevis muscle

– median nerve, 121, 125, 126, 127

– musculocutaneous nerve and, 77, 81, 82

– radial nerve, 92, 93, 95, 97, 102, 103

– ulnar nerve, 147, 151, 152, 153

Extensor carpi radialis longus muscle

– median nerve, 121, 125, 127

– musculocutaneous nerve and, 77, 81

– radial nerve, 91, 95, 97, 102

– ulnar nerve, 147, 151, 153

Extensor carpi ulnaris muscle

– median nerve, 121

– musculocutaneous nerve, 77

– radial nerve, 92, 93, 95, 97

– ulnar nerve, 139, 147

Extensor digiti minimi muscle

– median nerve, 121, 127

– musculocutaneous nerve, 77

– radial nerve, 92, 93, 95, 97

– ulnar nerve, 147, 153

Extensor digitorum longus muscle

– femoral nerve, 219

– fibular nerve, 268, 270, 271, 274, 276, 277

– sciatic nerve, 231, 240, 241

– tibial nerve, 256, 258, 259

Extensor digitorum muscles, 82

– median nerve, 121, 127

– musculocutaneous nerve, 77

– posterior compartment

— median nerve, 126

— radial nerve, 103

— ulnar nerve, 152

– radial nerve, 91, 92, 93, 95, 97

– ulnar nerve, 139, 147, 153

Extensor hallucis longus muscle

– femoral nerve, 219

– fibular nerve, 270, 271, 274, 276, 277

– sciatic nerve, 240, 241

– tibial nerve, 256, 258, 259

Extensor indicis muscle

– median nerve, 121, 127

– musculocutaneous nerve, 77

– radial nerve, 92, 93, 97

– ulnar nerve, 147, 153

Extensor pollicis brevis muscle

– median nerve, 121, 127

– radial nerve, 92, 93, 95, 97

– ulnar nerve, 147, 153

Extensor pollicis longus muscle

– median nerve, 121, 127

– musculocutaneous nerve, 77

– radial nerve, 92, 93, 95, 97

– ulnar nerve, 147, 153

Extensor retinaculum

– median nerve, 127

– ulnar nerve, 153

F

Fascicles, 2, 3

Femoral artery

– of femoral nerve, 210, 215, 216, 222

– obturator nerve, 192, 194

– sciatic nerve, 228, 232

– and vein

— of femoral nerve, 212, 214, 218, 220, 221

— lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, 284, 285, 287

— obturator nerve, 202, 204, 205

— sciatic nerve, 235, 237, 238

Femoral nerve

– lumbosacral plexus, 181

– morphological data

— anastomoses, 216

— collateral branches, 210

— motor function, 216, 217

— MRI scans, 221

— muscular relations, 210, 212, 213, 214, 215

— neurovascular relations, 210, 214

— origin, 210

— path, 210

— sensitive function, 216, 217

— terminal branches, 216

— topographical distribution, 210, 211

– and obturator, 202, 204, 205

- pathology
 - aetiology, 222
 - clinical forms and significance, 222
 - entrapment neuropathy, 222, 223
 - femoral neuralgia, 222, 223
 - signs, 222
 - treatment, 222
- and sciatic, 235, 237
- Femoral nerve syndrome, 222, 223
- Femoral neuralgia, 222, 223
- Femoris muscle, tibial nerve, 256
- Femur, 220, 221
 - obturator nerve, 203, 204, 205
 - sciatic nerve, 235, 237, 238
- Fibular artery
 - tibial nerve, 248–250
 - and vein
 - sciatic nerve, 241
 - and tibial, 256, 259
- Fibular nerve
 - and femoral, 219, 221
 - obturator nerve, 205
 - and sciatic, 227, 230, 231, 238, 239, 240, 241
 - and tibial, 250, 256, 257, 258, 259
- Flexor carpi radialis muscle
 - median nerve, 113, 114, 119, 121, 126, 127
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 71, 73, 77, 82
 - radial nerve, 91, 97, 103
 - ulnar nerve, 147, 152, 153
- Flexor carpi ulnaris muscle
 - median nerve, 113, 114, 121, 126, 127
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 73, 77, 82
 - radial nerve, 91, 92, 93, 97, 103
 - ulnar nerve, 135, 138, 139, 141, 145, 147, 152, 153
- Flexor digiti minimi brevis muscle, 116
- Flexor digitorum brevis muscle, 252, 255
- Flexor digitorum longus muscle
 - femoral nerve, 219
 - fibular nerve, 270, 271, 274, 276, 277
 - sciatic nerve, 231, 240, 241
 - tibial nerve, 249, 256, 258, 259
- Flexor digitorum profundus muscle
 - median nerve, 113, 114, 119, 121, 126, 127
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 73, 77, 82
 - radial nerve, 97, 103
 - ulnar nerve, 135, 141, 145, 147, 152, 153
- Flexor digitorum superficialis muscle
 - median nerve, 116, 119, 121, 126, 127
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 77, 82
 - humeral head of, 73
 - radial head of, 73
 - radial nerve, 97, 103
 - ulnar nerve, 141, 147, 152, 153
- Flexor hallucis longus muscle
 - femoral nerve, 219
 - fibular nerve, 274, 276, 277
 - sciatic nerve, 240, 241
 - tibial nerve, 249, 256, 258, 259
- Flexor muscles, tibial nerve, 247
- Flexor pollicis brevis muscle
 - median nerve, 116, 117, 119
 - ulnar nerve, 142, 145
- Flexor pollicis longus muscle
 - median nerve, 113, 114, 119, 121, 126, 127
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 73, 77, 82
 - radial nerve, 97, 103
 - ulnar nerve, 141, 147, 152, 153
- Flexor pollicis muscle, ulnar nerve, 141
- Flexor retinaculum
 - median nerve, 114, 116
 - tibial nerve, 252
- Foot, tibial nerve
 - muscular relations, 252, 253
 - neuropathic pain sensations, 263
 - neurovascular relations, 251
- Forearm
 - median nerve
 - interosseous membrane, 126
 - median vein, 121
 - MRI scans, 126
 - muscular relations, 114
 - neurovascular relations, 114
 - relations of, 121
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 72
 - lateral cutaneous nerve and, 74
 - MRI scans, 82
 - relations of, 72, 77
 - radial nerve
 - MRI scans, 103
 - path and relations, 92

- relations, 97
- vascular relations, 93, 94
- ulnar nerve
- MRI scans, 152
- muscular relations, 141
- neurovascular relations, 140
- relations of, 147

G

- Gastrocnemius muscle
- femoral nerve, 219
 - fibular nerve, 268, 270, 271, 274, 275, 276
 - obturator nerve, 192, 197
 - sciatic nerve, 227, 230, 231, 239, 240
 - tibial nerve, 247, 248, 250, 255, 256, 257, 258
- Gemellus muscle
- femoral nerve, 210, 212
 - sciatic nerve, 228, 230
- Genicular artery, tibial nerve, 250
- Genitofemoral nerve
- and femoral, 210, 212
 - lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, 284, 285
 - lumbosacral plexus, 181
- Glenohumeral joint, motor branch, 55
- Gluteal artery
- of femoral nerve, 210, 212, 218
 - obturator nerve, 202
 - sciatic nerve, 228, 235
- Gluteal nerve, 228
- Gluteus maximus muscle
- femoral nerve, 210, 212, 218, 220
 - lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, 287
 - lumbosacral plexus, 182, 185
 - obturator nerve, 204
 - sciatic nerve, 230, 235, 237
- Gluteus medius muscle
- femoral nerve, 210, 212
 - lumbosacral plexus, 182, 185
 - sciatic nerve, 228
- Gluteus minimus muscle
- femoral nerve, 210, 212
 - sciatic nerve, 230
- Gracilis muscle

- femoral nerve, 214, 215, 219, 220, 221
 - fibular nerve, 274
 - iliohypogastric nerve, 293
 - ilioinguinal nerve, 295
 - lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, 284, 285, 287
 - lumbosacral plexus, 182, 183
 - obturator nerve, 192, 193, 197, 198, 201, 203
 - sciatic nerve, 228, 230, 235, 237, 238
 - tibial nerve, 248, 256
- Grande veine saphène, sciatic nerve, 236
- Growth cone, 24, 25
- Guyon's canal. *See* Ulnar tunnel syndrome

H

Hip

- femoral neuralgia, 222
- lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, 282
- sciatic nerve, traumatic posterior dislocation, 242, 243

Humeral circumflex artery

- median nerve, 110
- radial nerve, 91
- ulnar nerve, 136, 137

Humerus, 60, 61

- long thoracic nerve, 168
- median nerve, 110, 122, 123, 124, 125
- musculocutaneous nerve, 76, 78–81
- nutrient artery of, 57
- radial nerve, 96, 99, 100, 101, 102
- suprascapular nerve, 162
- ulnar nerve, 137, 146, 148, 149, 150, 151

I

Iliac artery

- circumflex, obturator nerve, 192, 194
- lumbosacral plexus, 182, 184, 185
- obturator nerve, 192, 194

Iliac vein, lumbosacral plexus, 182, 184

- Iliocostalis muscle, lumbosacral plexus, 182, 184
- Iliohypogastric nerve

- anastomoses, 292
- collateral branches, 292
- entrapment neuropathies
 - aetiology, 296
 - clinical forms and significance, 296
 - diagnosis, 296
 - signs, 296
 - treatment, 296
- and ilioinguinal, 295
- lumbosacral plexus, 181
- morphological data, 292
- neurovascular relations, 292
- origin, 292
- path, 292
- sensitive function, 292, 295
- terminal branches, 292
- topographical distribution, 292, 293

Ilioinguinal nerve

- entrapment neuropathies
 - aetiology, 296
 - appendicectomy complications, 296, 297
 - clinical forms and significance, 296
 - diagnosis, 296
 - signs, 296
 - treatment, 296
- and iliohypogastric, 293
- lumbosacral plexus, 181
- morphological data, 294
- neurovascular relations, 294
- origin, 294
- path, 294
- sensitive function, 294, 295
- terminal branches, 294

Iliopectineal arch

- femoral nerve, 210, 212, 215
- lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, 284, 285

Iliopsoas muscle

- femoral nerve, 210, 212, 213, 215
- lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, 284, 285
- lumbosacral plexus, 182, 183
- obturator nerve, 192, 197, 198

Iliotibial tract

- fibular nerve, 268, 270, 271
- obturator nerve, 192, 197
- sciatic nerve, 230

Inferior cluneal nerves, 202, 218, 228, 235

Infrapatellar bursa

- fibular nerve, 275
- sciatic nerve, 239
- tibial nerve, 257

Infraspinatus muscle

- axillary nerve, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61
- long thoracic nerve, 168
- median nerve, 120, 122
- musculocutaneous nerve, 76, 78
- radial nerve, 91, 96, 99
- suprascapular nerve, 162, 164
- ulnar nerve, 146, 148

Inguinal ligament

- iliohypogastric nerve, 293
- ilioinguinal nerve, 295
- lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, 284, 285

Injured myelin, 16

Injured nerve

- degeneration, 16, 17
- mechanisms
 - axonal sprouting, 18, 19
 - functional regeneration, 20
 - neuroplasticity, 20–21
 - neurotrophic factors, 20
 - potential functional consequences, 20
- pathophysiological mechanisms, 14, 15

Intercostal muscles

- long thoracic nerve, 168
- suprascapular nerve, 162

Intermuscular septum

- median nerve, 111
- ulnar nerve, 137

Internal jugular vein, brachial plexus, 47

Interossei muscles, ulnar nerve, 143

Interosseous artery, 82

- median nerve, 126
- radial nerve, 91, 93, 103
- ulnar nerve, 140, 152

Interosseous membrane

- forearm
 - radial nerve, 103
 - ulnar nerve, 152
- sciatic nerve, 241
- tibial nerve, 259

K

Knee, recurrent articular nerve, 269

L

Lateral femoral cutaneous nerve

- morphological data
 - anterior branch, 286
 - muscular relations, iliac fossa and thigh, 284, 285
 - neurovascular relations, 282
 - origin, 282
 - path, 282
 - posterior branch, 286
 - sensitive function, 286
 - terminal branches, 282
 - topographical distribution, 282, 283
- pathology
 - aetiology, 288
 - clinical examination, 288
 - entrapment neuropathy, 288, 289
 - meralgia paraesthetica, 288
 - signs, 288
- plexus, 31

Lateral sural cutaneous nerve

- and femoral, 219
- plexus, 31
- and sciatic, 230
- and tibial, 249

Latissimus dorsi muscle

- axillary nerve, 57, 60, 61
- long thoracic nerve, 168
- median nerve, 110, 122
- musculocutaneous nerve, 76, 78
- radial nerve, 91, 96, 99
- suprascapular nerve, 162
- ulnar nerve, 136, 146, 148

Leg

- femoral nerve, 219
- fibular nerve
 - muscular relations, 270, 271
 - neurovascular relations, 269, 271

– MRI scans, 257, 258

– sciatic nerve

— MRI scans, 240

— muscular relations, 231

– tibial nerve, relations of, 256

Levator ani muscle

– femoral nerve, 210, 212

– lumbosacral plexus, 182, 183

– sciatic nerve, 228

Ligament collatéral tibial, 236

Ligament croisé postérieur, 236

Ligament patellaire du muscle quadriceps, 236

Limb innervations, plexus

– cutaneous innervation, 26

– motor innervation, 26

– origin and constitution, 28–31

Linea alba

– lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, 284, 285

– lumbosacral plexus, 182, 184

Longissimus muscles, 182, 184

Long thoracic nerve

– brachial plexus, 40, 41

– lateral artery, 167

– morphological data

— axillary fossa, 166, 168

— motor function, 166

— motor innervation, 166, 167

— neurovascular relations, 166

— origin, 166

— path, 166

— terminal branches, 166

– pathologies

— aetiology, 169

— clinical forms and significance, 169

— scapula alata, 169, 170

— signs, 169

— treatment, 169

Lower limb nerves. *See also* Upper limb nerves

– branches, 187

– femoral nerve (*see* (Femoral nerve))

– fibular (*see* (Common fibular nerve))

– iliohypogastric nerve, 292–293, 295–296

– ilioinguinal nerve, 294–297

– lateral femoral (*see* (Lateral femoral cutaneous nerve))

– lumbosacral plexus (*see* (Lumbosacral plexus))

- obturator nerve (*see* (Obturator nerve))
- sciatic nerve (*see* (Sciatic nerve))
- tibial nerve (*see* (Tibial nerve))
- Lumbar plexus, 182, 184, 185, 186
 - branches, origin, 178, 179
 - MRI scans, 182, 184
- Lumbosacral plexus, 33, 186
 - lower limb plexus branches, 187
 - morphological data
 - lumbar plexus, 178, 179
 - sacral plexus, 180, 181
 - MRI scans, 182, 185
- Lumbrical muscles, median nerve, 119
- Lumbricals
 - median nerve, 116
 - tibial nerve, 255
 - ulnar nerve, 142, 145
- Lungs, 46

M

- Macrophage, 16, 17
- Medial collateral ligament, 219
- Medial cutaneous nerve
 - arm
 - axillary nerve, 60, 61
 - brachial plexus, 40, 41
 - long thoracic nerve, 168
 - median nerve, 120, 122
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 76, 78
 - plexus, 29
 - radial nerve, 96, 99
 - suprascapular nerve, 162
 - ulnar nerve, 146, 148
 - brachial plexus
 - arm, 44
 - forearm, 44
 - forearm
 - axillary nerve, 60, 61
 - long thoracic nerve, 168
 - median nerve, 120, 122, 123
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 76, 78, 79
 - plexus, 29
 - radial nerve, 96, 99, 100

- suprascapular nerve, 162
- ulnar nerve, 146, 148, 149
- Medial sural cutaneous nerve
 - and femoral, 219
 - plexus, 31
 - and sciatic, 230, 240
 - and tibial, 247, 254, 256, 258
- Medial vein
 - forearm
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 77
 - radial nerve, 97
 - ulnar nerve, 147
 - radial nerve, 102
 - ulnar nerve, 151
- Median nerve, 110, 111, 113, 114, 116, 120, 122, 124, 125, 126, 127
 - axillary nerve, 60, 61
 - brachial plexus, 40, 41, 44
 - and long thoracic, 168
 - morphological data
 - anastomoses, 118
 - arm, relations of, 121
 - collateral branches, 118
 - elbow and forearm, relations of, 121
 - motor and sensitive innervation, 119
 - MRI scans, 122–127
 - muscular relations, 113, 115
 - neurovascular relations, 108, 110, 112, 114, 117
 - origin, 108, 109
 - path, 108, 110–116
 - sensitive function, 118
 - terminal branches, 118
 - topographical distribution, 109
 - and musculocutaneous, 76, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82
 - pathology, 128
 - anterior interosseous nerve syndrome, 128, 129
 - carpal tunnel syndrome, 128, 130
 - plexus, 29
 - and radial, 96, 99, 100, 101, 102, 103
 - and suprascapular, 162
 - and ulnar, 136, 137, 146, 148, 149, 150, 151, 152
- Microfilaments, 4
- Microtubules, 4
- Motor innervation, 26
- Motor neuron, 24, 25

Muscle basal lamina, 11
 Muscle court fibulaire, sciatic nerve, 236
 Muscle dentelé antérieur, 60
 Muscle fibres, 17
 Muscle gracile, sciatic nerve, 236
 Muscle long extenseur de l'hallux, 236
 Muscle long extenseur des orteils, 236
 Muscle long fibulaire, sciatic nerve, 236
 Muscle long fléchisseur de l'hallux, 236
 Muscle long fléchisseur des orteils, 236
 Muscle plantaire, sciatic nerve, 236
 Muscle poplité, sciatic nerve, 236
 Muscle pyramidal, ilioinguinal nerve, 295
 Muscle sartorius, sciatic nerve, 236
 Muscle semi-membraneux, 236
 Muscle soléaire, sciatic nerve, 236
 Muscle subscapulaire, 60
 Muscle tibial antérieur, 236
 Muscle tibial postérieur, 236
 Muscle triceps sural, sciatic nerve, 236
 Musculocutaneous nerve, 60
 – brachial plexus, 40, 41, 44
 – and long thoracic, 168
 – and median, 110, 120, 123, 124, 125
 – morphological data
 — anastomoses, 74
 — arm, relations of, 70, 76
 — collateral branches, 74
 — distribution of, 69
 — elbow, relations of, 77
 — forearm, relations of, 72, 77
 — motor function, 74, 75
 — MRI scans, 78–82
 — neurovascular relations, 68, 71, 73, 74
 — origin, 68
 — path, 68–70, 72, 76–78
 — sensitive function, 73–75
 — terminal branches, 74
 – pathology, 83, 84
 — aetiology, 83
 — complementary examinations, 83
 — signs, 83
 — treatment, 83
 – plexus, 29

– and radial, 96, 100, 101, 102
 – and suprascapular, 162
 – and ulnar, 136, 146, 149, 150, 151
 Musculoskeletal system, 10
 Myelination, 6
 Myotome, 24, 25

N

Navicular bone, tibial nerve, 252
 Neck, fibular nerve
 – decompression surgery, 279
 – neurovascular relations, 269
 Nerf cutané sural latéral, 236
 Nerf cutané sural médial, 236
 Nerf fibulaire profond, 236
 Nerf fibulaire superficiel, 236
 Nerf saphène, 236
 Nerf sural, 236
 Nerf tibial, 236
 Nerve degeneration, 16, 17
 Nerve fascicle, 2, 3
 Nerve fibres
 – architecture of, 2, 3
 – classification of, 4, 5
 Nerve impulse, 13
 Neural tube, 24, 25
 Neuregulin, 11
 Neurofilaments, 4
 Neuroma, 17
 Neuromuscular junction (NMJ), 10, 11
 Neuroplasticity, 20–21
 Neurotrophic growth factor (NGF), 20
 Normal nerve
 – mechanical properties, 7, 12–13
 – NMJ and transmission, 10, 11
 – organisation, 2, 3
 – Schwann cell and myelination, 6
 – structure and physiology
 — axonal flow, 4, 5
 — cytoskeleton, 4
 – vascularisation, 8, 9

O

Obturator internus muscle

- femoral nerve, 210, 212, 213, 215
- lumbosacral plexus, 182, 183
- sciatic nerve, 228

Obturator internus syndrome, 242

Obturator nerve, 192, 197, 198, 204, 205

- anastomoses, 200, 201
 - collateral branches, 200, 202
 - and femoral, 210, 212, 218, 220, 221
 - internus muscle, 192, 194, 198
 - and lateral femoral cutaneous, 287
 - lumbosacral plexus, 181
 - morphological data
 - muscular relations, thigh, 192, 196, 198
 - neurovascular relations, 192
 - origin, 192, 194
 - path, pelvis, 192, 194
 - in popliteal fossa, 192, 197
 - topographical distribution, 192, 193
 - vascular relations, pelvis, 192, 195, 199
 - motor function, 200, 201
 - MRI scans, 204, 205
 - pathology
 - aetiology, 206
 - clinical forms and significance, 206
 - complementary examinations, 206
 - decompression surgery, 206
 - entrapment neuropathy, 206, 207
 - injury areas, 207
 - signs, 206
 - treatment, 206
 - plexus, 31
 - and sciatic, 228, 235, 237, 238
 - sensitive function, 200, 201
 - terminal branches, 200, 202
 - in thigh, 202, 203
- ### Obturator neurovascular bundle, 284, 285
- ### Olecranon
- median nerve, 111, 121
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 77
 - radial nerve, 97

- ulnar nerve, 147

Opponens digiti minimi muscle

- median nerve, 116
- ulnar nerve, 143

Opponens pollicis muscles, 117, 119

P

Palmar collateral nerve, 109

Palmar digital nerve

- median nerve
 - index, 116
 - middle finger, 116
 - ring finger, 116
- ulnar nerve
 - little finger, 143
 - ring finger, 143

Palmar interossei muscles, 145

Palmaris longus muscle

- median nerve, 113, 114, 119, 121, 127
- musculocutaneous nerve, 71, 73, 77
- radial nerve, 91, 97
- ulnar nerve, 138, 142, 147, 153

Patellar ligament

- fibular nerve, 270, 271, 275
- sciatic nerve, 239
- tibial nerve, 257

Pectineus muscle

- femoral nerve, 210, 212, 213, 214, 218, 220
- iliohypogastric nerve, 293
- ilioinguinal nerve, 295
- lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, 284, 285, 287
- lumbosacral plexus, 182, 183
- obturator nerve, 192, 193, 197, 198, 201, 203, 204
- sciatic nerve, 235, 237

Pectoralis major muscle

- axillary nerve, 57, 58, 60, 61
- brachial plexus, 44
- long thoracic nerve, 168
- median nerve, 120, 122
- musculocutaneous nerve, 76, 78
- radial nerve, 96, 99

- suprascapular nerve, 162
- ulnar nerve, 146, 148
- Pectoralis minor muscle
 - axillary nerve, 60, 61
 - long thoracic nerve, 168
 - median nerve, 120, 122
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 76, 78
 - radial nerve, 96, 99
 - suprascapular nerve, 162
 - ulnar nerve, 146, 148
- Pectoral nerves, brachial plexus, 40, 41
- Perineurium, 2, 3, 9
- Peroneal communicating branch
 - sciatic nerve, 230
 - tibial nerve, 248
- Peroneal communicating nerve
 - and femoral, 219
 - and fibular, 274
 - and tibial, 256
- Peroneus brevis muscle, 231
 - femoral nerve, 219
 - fibular nerve, 268, 274, 276, 277
 - sciatic nerve, 240, 241
 - tibial nerve, 249, 256, 258, 259
- Peroneus longus muscle
 - femoral nerve, 219
 - fibular nerve, 268, 270, 271, 274, 276, 277
 - sciatic nerve, 231, 240, 241
 - tibial nerve, 249, 256, 258, 259
- Perlecan, 11
- Petite veine saphène, sciatic nerve, 236
- Phrenic nerve, brachial plexus, 40, 41, 43
- Pioneer fibre, plexus, 24, 25
- Piriformis muscle
 - femoral nerve, 210, 212, 213
 - obturator nerve, 192, 198
 - sciatic nerve, 228, 230
- Piriformis syndrome, 242
- Plantaris muscles
 - femoral nerve, 219
 - fibular nerve, 274, 277
 - sciatic nerve, 241
 - tibial nerve, 248, 256, 259
- Plantar nerve
 - plexus, 31
 - and tibial, 247, 252
- Plexus
 - embryology
 - development, 24
 - precursor cell growth, 24, 25
 - segmental spinal nerves, 24
 - limbs innervation
 - motor, 26
 - origin and constitution, 28–31
 - notion of, 32, 33
- Popliteal artery
 - sciatic nerve, 230
 - tibial nerve, 250, 256
 - and vein
 - femoral nerve, 219
 - in femoral nerve, 219
 - fibular nerve, 274
 - sciatic nerve, 230
 - tibial nerve, 250, 256
- Popliteus muscle
 - femoral nerve, 219
 - fibular nerve, 274, 275
 - sciatic nerve, 239
 - tibial nerve, 248, 249, 250, 256, 257
- Posterior cutaneous nerve
 - of arm, 89
 - of forearm, 89
- Posterior interosseous nerve syndrome
 - aetiology, 104
 - clinical forms and significance, 104
 - complementary examinations, 104
 - signs, 104
 - treatment, 104
- Posterior sensitive branch,
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 69
- Precursor cells, 24
- Pronator quadratus muscle
 - median nerve, 121, 127
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 73
 - radial nerve, 97
 - ulnar nerve, 141, 147, 153
- Pronator teres muscle
 - median nerve, 113, 114, 119, 121, 125
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 71, 73, 77, 81
 - radial nerve, 91, 97, 102

- ulnar nerve, 147, 151
- Psoas major muscle
 - femoral nerve, 210, 212
 - iliohypogastric nerve, 293
 - ilioinguinal nerve, 295
 - lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, 284, 285
 - lumbosacral plexus, 181, 182, 183, 184
 - obturator nerve, 192, 194, 197
- Pubic symphysis
 - femoral nerve, 214, 215
 - ilioinguinal nerve, 295
 - lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, 284, 285
- Pudendal nerve, 228

Q

- Quadratus femoris muscle, 228, 230
- Quadratus lumborum muscle, 182, 184
- Quadratus plantae muscle, 252, 255
- Quadriceps femoris muscle, 211, 218, 219
- Quadriceps muscle
 - obturator nerve, 202
 - sciatic nerve, 235

R

- Radial artery
 - median nerve, 113, 114, 117
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 73, 82
 - radial nerve, 91
 - ulnar nerve, 137, 140
 - and vein
 - median nerve, 121, 126, 127
 - radial nerve, 97, 103
 - ulnar nerve, 147, 152, 153
- Radial nerve, 96, 99, 100, 101, 102, 103
 - axillary, 57, 60, 61
 - brachial plexus, 40, 41
 - long thoracic, 168
 - median, 110, 120, 122, 123, 124, 125, 126
 - morphological data

- anastomoses, 98
- arm, relations of, 96
- collateral branches, 89, 90, 92, 94
- elbow and forearm, relations of, 97
- motor function, 94, 95, 98
- MRI scans, 99–103
- neurovascular relations, 88, 91, 93, 94
- origin, 88, 89
- path, 88, 90, 92, 101–102
- sensitive function, 95, 98
- terminal branches, 89, 90, 92–94, 97, 100
- topographical distribution, 89
- vascular relations, 91, 93
- musculocutaneous, 76, 78–82
- pathology, posterior interosseous nerve syndrome, 104, 105
 - aetiology, 104
 - clinical forms and significance, 104
 - complementary examinations, 104
 - signs, 104
 - treatment, 104
- plexus, 29
- suprascapular, 162
- ulnar, 136, 146, 148, 149, 150, 151, 152
- Radial recurrent artery, 91
 - median nerve, 113
 - ulnar nerve, 140
- Rameau communicant fibulaire, 236
- Rectus abdominis muscles
 - iliohypogastric nerve, 293
 - ilioinguinal nerve, 295
 - lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, 284, 285
 - lumbosacral plexus, 182, 184, 185
- Rectus femoris muscle
 - femoral nerve, 211, 213, 214, 218, 220, 221
 - iliohypogastric nerve, 293
 - ilioinguinal nerve, 295
 - lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, 284, 285, 287
 - lumbosacral plexus, 182, 183
 - obturator nerve, 192, 197, 198, 202, 205
 - sciatic nerve, 235, 237, 238
- Rhomboid major and minor muscles, 47
- Rib, 44, 47, 166
- Riche-Cannieu anastomosis, 118, 144

S

Sacral plexus, 186

- branches, origin, 180
- and lumbar, muscular relations, 182, 183

Sacral promontory, lumbosacral plexus, 182, 185

Saphenous nerve

- and femoral, 211, 214, 218, 219, 221
- and fibular, 274
- obturator, 202, 205
- plexus, 31
- and sciatic, 235, 238
- and tibial, 256

Saphenous vein

- femoral nerve, 219, 221
- fibular nerve, 269, 275, 276, 277
- and sciatic, 235, 238, 239, 240, 241
- and tibial, 249, 250, 251, 256, 257, 258, 259

Sartorius muscle

- femoral nerve, 214, 215, 218, 219, 220, 221
- fibular nerve, 274
- iliohypogastric nerve, 293
- ilioinguinal nerve, 295
- lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, 284, 285, 287
- lumbosacral plexus, 182, 183
- obturator nerve, 192, 197, 198, 202, 204, 205
- sciatic nerve, 235, 237, 238
- tibial nerve, 256

Scalenus anterior muscle, brachial plexus, 46, 47

Scapula

- axillary nerve, 60, 61
- long thoracic nerve, 168
- median nerve, 120, 122
- musculocutaneous nerve, 76, 78
- radial nerve, 96, 99
- suprascapular nerve, 162
- ulnar nerve, 137, 146, 148

Scapula alata, thoracic nerve, 169, 170

Scapular nerve, brachial plexus, 40, 41

Schwann cells, 2, 6, 11, 12, 17

Sciatic nerve

- anastomoses, 232
- collateral branches, 232
- and femoral, 210, 212, 218, 220
- and lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, 287

- lumbosacral plexus, 181

- motor function, 232, 233, 234

- MRI scans, 237–241

- muscular relations, 228, 230, 231

- neurovascular relations, 229, 232

- obturator nerve, 202, 204

- origin, 226

- path, 226

- pathology

- aetiology, 242

- clinical forms and significance, 242

- complementary examinations, 242

- diaphyseal femoral fractures, 242, 243

- signs, 242

- traumatic posterior dislocation, hip, 242, 243

- treatment, 242

- sensitive function, 232, 234

- terminal branches, 232

- topographical distribution, 226, 227

Semimembranosus muscle, 228, 230

- femoral nerve, 214, 215, 218, 219, 220, 221

- fibular nerve, 274

- lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, 287

- obturator nerve, 192, 197, 198, 203, 204

- sciatic nerve, 233, 234, 235, 237, 238

- tibial nerve, 248, 256

Semitendinosus muscle

- femoral nerve, 214, 215, 220, 221

- lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, 287

- obturator nerve, 192, 197, 198, 203, 204

- sciatic nerve, 228, 230, 233, 234, 235, 237, 238

- tibial nerve, 248

Sensitive neuron, 24, 25

Serratus anterior muscle, 61

- brachial plexus, 47

- long thoracic nerve, 168

- median nerve, 120, 122

- musculocutaneous nerve, 76, 78

- radial nerve, 96, 99

- suprascapular nerve, 162

- ulnar nerve, 146, 148

Shoulder

- axillary nerve

- MRI scans, 61

- radiography, 64

- relations of, 60
- sensitive branches, 59
- lateral cutaneous nerve, 58
- MRI scans
- axillary nerve, 61
- median nerve, 122
- musculocutaneous nerve, 78
- radial nerve, 99
- ulnar nerve, 148
- Skinny pants syndrome, 288, 289
- Soleus muscle
 - femoral nerve, 219
 - fibular nerve, 268, 270, 271, 274, 275, 276
 - sciatic nerve, 227, 231, 239, 240
 - tibial nerve, 247, 248, 255, 256, 257, 258
- Soleus syndrome
 - aetiology, 260
 - clinical forms and significance, 260
 - complementary examinations, 260
 - removal surgery of schwannoma, popliteal fossa, 260, 261
 - signs, 260
 - treatment, 260
- Spectrin, 11
- Spinal ganglion, 24, 25
- Splenius cervicis muscles, brachial plexus, 47
- Sternocleidomastoid muscle, brachial plexus, 43, 46, 47
- Subclavian artery
 - brachial plexus, 47
 - median nerve, 110
- Subclavian jugular vein, brachial plexus, 47
- Subneural cleft, 11
- Subscapularis muscle
 - axillary nerve, 57, 61
 - long thoracic nerve, 168
 - median nerve, 110, 120, 122
 - musculocutaneous nerve, 78
 - musculocutaneous nerve and, 76
 - radial nerve, 96, 99
 - suprascapular nerve, 162
 - ulnar nerve, 136, 146, 148
- Subscapular nerves, brachial plexus, 40, 41
- Sulcus limitans, 24, 25
- Superficial fibular nerve, 31
- Superficial palmar arch, 117
- Superficial sensitive branch, 89
- Superficial terminal sensitive branch, 135
- Supinator muscle, 92, 93
- Suprascapular nerve, 162, 164
 - axillary nerve and, 57
 - brachial plexus, 40, 41
 - and long thoracic nerve, 168
 - morphological data
 - collateral branches, 160
 - motor function, 160
 - neurovascular relations, 160, 161
 - origin, 160
 - osteoligamentous and vascular relations, 161
 - path, 160–162
 - terminal branches, 160
 - osteoligamentous, 161
 - pathologies
 - aetiology, 163
 - clinical forms and significance, 163
 - complementary examinations, 163
 - treatment, 163
- Supraspinatus muscle
 - axillary nerve, 57
 - suprascapular nerve, 164
- Sural cutaneous nerve
 - lateral
 - and femoral, 219
 - plexus, 31
 - and sciatic, 230
 - and tibial, 249
 - medial
 - and femoral, 219
 - plexus, 31
 - and sciatic, 230, 240
 - and tibial, 247, 254, 256, 258
- Sural nerve
 - and fibular, 268, 274, 276, 277
 - and sciatic, 227, 231, 241
 - and tibial, 249, 256, 259
- Synapse basal lamina, 11
- Synaptic vesicle and nucleus, 11
- Synaptogenesis, 12
- Synovial bursa
 - femoral nerve, 219
 - fibular nerve, 274
 - tibial nerve, 256

T

Tarsal tunnel syndrome

- aetiology, 262
- clinical forms and significance, 262
- complementary examinations, 262
- conservative treatment, 262
- signs, 262, 263
- surgical treatment, 262, 263

Tendon calcanéen, sciatic nerve, 236

Tensor fasciae latae muscle

- femoral nerve, 210, 212, 213, 214, 218, 220
- iliohypogastric nerve, 293
- ilioinguinal nerve, 295
- lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, 284, 285, 287
- lumbosacral plexus, 182, 183
- obturator nerve, 192, 197, 202, 204
- sciatic nerve, 235, 237

Teres major muscle

- axillary nerve, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61
- long thoracic nerve, 168
- median nerve, 122
- musculocutaneous nerve, 70, 71, 76, 78
- radial nerve, 91, 96, 99
- suprascapular nerve, 162, 164
- ulnar nerve, 146, 148

Teres minor muscle

- axillary nerve, 57, 58, 60, 61
- long thoracic nerve, 168
- median nerve, 120, 122
- musculocutaneous nerve, 76, 78
- radial nerve, 91, 96, 99
- suprascapular nerve, 162, 164
- ulnar nerve, 146, 148

Teres minor nerve, axillary nerve, 54, 55

Terminal motor branch, ulnar nerve, 135

Terminal Schwann cell, 11

Thenar muscles, median nerve, 109

Thigh

- femoral nerve
 - MRI scans, 220, 221, 223
 - muscular relations, 213, 214, 284, 285
 - neurovascular relations, 214
- lateral collateral artery, ascending branch, 269
- obturator nerve

— MRI scans, 204, 205

— muscular relations, 196, 198

— vascular relations, 199

– sciatic nerve

— MRI scans, 237–239

— muscular relations, popliteal fossa, 230

Thoracic artery

– suprascapular nerve, 162

– ulnar nerve, 137

Thoracodorsal nerve, 40, 41

Thyroid, 46

Tibia, 219, 236, 239–241, 246, 256–259, 270, 274–277

Tibial artery

– femoral nerve, 219

– fibular nerve, 274

– and vein

— fibular nerve, 269, 275, 276, 277

— and sciatic, 240, 241

Tibialis anterior muscle

– femoral nerve, 219

– fibular nerve, 268, 270, 271, 274, 276, 277

– sciatic nerve, 231, 240, 241

– tibial nerve, 256, 258, 259

Tibial muscle, 227

– femoral nerve, 219

– fibular nerve, 276

– sciatic nerve, 240

Tibial nerve

– anastomosis, 254

– collateral branches types

— articular branches, 254

— muscular branches, 254

— sensitive branches, 254

– and femoral, 219, 221

– morphological data

— neurovascular relations, 246

— origin, 246

— path, 246

— in popliteal fossa, neurovascular relations, 250

— topographical distribution, 246, 247

– motor function, 254, 255

– and obturator, 205

– pathology

— soleus syndrome, 260, 261

— tarsal tunnel syndrome, 262

- and sciatic, 227, 230, 238, 239, 241
- sensitive function, 254, 255
- terminal branches, 254

Trapezius muscle

- axillary nerve, 57, 58
- inferior fibres, 57, 59
- middle fibres, 57, 59
- superior fibres, 57, 59
- brachial plexus, 43, 47
- radial nerve
- inferior fibres, 91
- middle fibres, 91
- superior fibres, 91

Triceps brachii muscle

- axillary nerve, 57
- lateral head of, 59, 60, 61
- long head of, 59, 60
- medial head of, 61
- long thoracic nerve, 168
- median nerve, 113, 125
- lateral head, 122–124
- long head, 123, 124
- medial head, 121–124
- tendon, 121
- musculocutaneous nerve, 76, 77, 78, 81
- lateral head, 78–80
- long head, 79, 80
- medial head, 78–80
- tendon of, 77
- radial nerve, 89, 92, 93, 102
- lateral head, 91, 95, 96, 99–101
- long head, 91, 95, 96, 100, 101
- medial head, 91, 95, 97, 99–101
- tendon, 97
- suprascapular nerve
- lateral head, 162, 164
- long head, 162, 164
- ulnar nerve, 151
- lateral head, 146, 148, 149, 150
- long head, 138, 139, 146, 149, 150
- medial head, 138, 139, 147, 148, 149, 150
- tendon, 147

Triceps surae muscle

- femoral nerve, 219
- fibular nerve, 274, 277

- sciatic nerve, 241
- tibial nerve, 256, 259
- Type IV collagen, 11

U

Ulna, 102, 103

- median nerve, 121, 125, 126, 127
- musculocutaneous nerve, 77, 78, 82
- radial nerve, 97
- ulnar nerve, 147, 151, 152, 153

Ulnar artery

- median nerve, 114, 117
- musculocutaneous nerve, 73
- radial nerve, 91
- and vein

- median nerve, 121, 126, 127
- radial nerve, 97, 103
- ulnar nerve, 147, 152, 153

Ulnar nerve, 136, 137, 138, 139, 141, 146, 148–153, 162

- and axillary, 60, 61
- brachial plexus, 40, 41, 44
- dorsal branch, 143
- long thoracic, 168
- median and, 110, 111, 114, 120, 122, 123, 124, 125, 126, 127
- morphological data
- anastomoses, 144
- arm, relations of, 146
- collateral branches, 142–144
- distribution of, 135
- elbow and forearm, relations of, 147
- motor and sensitive innervation, 144, 145
- MRI scans, 148–153
- muscular relations, 138, 139, 141–143
- neurovascular relations, 136, 137, 140, 144
- origin, 134, 135
- path, 134, 136–139, 141, 142
- sensitive function, 144
- musculocutaneous, 76, 78–82
- pathology
- cubital tunnel syndrome, 154–156
- ulnar tunnel syndrome, 156, 157
- plexus, 29

- radial nerve and, 96, 99, 100, 101, 102, 103
- superficial branch, 143
- Ulnar tunnel syndrome, 156, 157
 - aetiology, 156
 - clinical forms and significance, 156
 - complementary examinations, 156
 - signs, 156
 - treatment, 156
- Ultra-terminal sprouting, 18
- Umbilical cord, lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, 284, 285
- Upper limb nerves. *See also* Lower limb nerves
 - axillary (*see* Axillary nerve)
 - brachial plexus (*see* Brachial plexus)
 - long thoracic (*see* Long thoracic nerve)
 - median (*see* Median nerve)
 - musculocutaneous (*see* Musculocutaneous nerve)
 - radial (*see* Radial nerve)
 - suprascapular, 160–165
 - ulnar (*see* Ulnar nerve)
- Utrophin, 11

V

Vasa nervorum, 2, 3, 9
 Vascularisation, 8, 9
 Vas deferens, obturator nerve, 192, 194
 Vastus intermedius muscle

- femoral nerve, 220, 221
- lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, 287
- obturator nerve, 203, 204, 205
- sciatic nerve, 235, 237, 238
- Vastus lateralis muscle
 - femoral nerve, 210, 213, 215, 218, 220, 221
 - lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, 287
 - obturator nerve, 192, 197, 203, 204, 205
 - sciatic nerve, 235, 237, 238
- Vastus medialis muscle
 - femoral nerve, 210, 213, 215, 218, 220, 221
 - lateral femoral cutaneous nerve, 287
 - obturator nerve, 192, 197, 198, 203, 204, 205
 - sciatic nerve, 235, 237, 238
- Ventral root, 24, 25
- Venule, 2, 3
- Vertebral artery, brachial plexus, 43

W

Wallerian degeneration, 16
 Wrist

- median nerve, MRI scans, 127
- ulnar nerve
 - entrapment at, 157
 - MRI scans, 153
 - radiographies, 156